THE STUDENTS' SERIES

OF LATIN CLASSICS


GINN AND COMPANY
Ex Libris



Caius Julius Caesar.

(British Museum.)

The Students' Series of Latin Classics

CAESAR

GALLIC WAR, BOOKS I-V

EDITED

WITH AN INTRODUCTION, NOTES, SYNONYMS, WORD-GROUPS, AND VOCABULARY

BY

HAROLD W. JOHNSTON, PH.D.
PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN THE INDIANA UNIVERSITY

AND

FREDERICK W. SANFORD, A.B.
FELLOW IN THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO

οὐ πόλλ' ἀλλὰ πολύ

BENJ. H. SANBORN & CO.
BOSTON, U.S.A.

Norwood Press
J. S. Cushing & Co. — Berwick & Smith Co.
Norwood, Mass., U.S.A.

PREFACE.

THE portion of Caesar's *Gallic War* most commonly read in schools comprises the first four books. Many teachers, however, desire additional material from which to make selections in place of the portions that are particularly difficult or lacking in interest. The fifth book contains three leading narratives, each complete in itself, — the Second Campaign in Britain, the Defeat of Sabinus and Cotta, and the Siege of Cicero's Camp. The first is of peculiar interest to English-speaking peoples, the second and third are singularly graphic, while all are fairly simple in style. This book has therefore been included in the present edition, as being well adapted to meet the purpose mentioned above.

The text is based upon that of Meusel's School Edition, but where portions are inclosed in brackets as probably not genuine, in some cases the words have been omitted, in others the brackets; otherwise, with few exceptions, only certain changes in orthography and punctuation have been admitted. The quantity of long vowels has been marked in conformity with other volumes of the Student's Series.

To facilitate the acquiring of a vocabulary, each word occurring more than once in Books I–V, with the exception of proper nouns, has been printed in **heavy-faced** type at the place of first occurrence. A third of these

fifteen hundred words the pupil should be familiar with when he finishes his First Book in Latin. Careful drill on these words, with frequent reviews, will familiarize a pupil with ninety per cent of the words on an average page of the text by the time he has read the first two books.

In the introduction, the sketch of Caesar's life is intended to set forth in brief compass the facts most pertinent to Caesar's part in the history of the Roman republic.

The chapters devoted to military and Gallic antiquities, the editors believe, contain as much information as a student needs to have at hand in a text-book. As these topics are naturally to be consulted often by the student, they have been arranged in numbered sections for convenience of reference in the notes.

In the preparation of a commentary it has been kept in mind that a text-book is at best but a supplement to the teacher's work. The editors have therefore endeavored to write as concise notes as possible, while giving adequate assistance to the mastery of Latin idiom and to the understanding of difficult passages. Consideration of disputed questions of antiquities, history, and grammar has in general been reduced to dogmatic statement, in the belief that teachers prefer to have such questions left mainly to the fuller discussion appropriate to the class-room. At the end of the notes on each chapter of the Helvetian War in the first book, and similarly throughout the notes on the second book, questions have been appended relating chiefly to principal parts of verbs and to case and mood constructions. These questions, it is thought, will be of no little assistance, particularly in

the reiteration of the commoner syntactic principles so essential at this stage of study.

The value of tables of synonyms and of related and contrasted words has been demonstrated in a preceding volume of this series, — D'Ooge's *Cicero, Select Orations*. In this volume, as in the former, only broad distinctions in synonyms and contrasted words have been attempted, references being given to the text, where each word may be studied at first hand.

Definitions in the vocabulary have been based on a careful study of the meanings of each word in all the passages in which it occurs. Of idiomatic phrases, only the more common have been given in the vocabulary, while those less frequent or unusually difficult have been explained in the notes.

Maps and illustrations have been taken chiefly from the works of Napoleon, Stoffel, and Rheinhard.

To Professor E. M. Pease, editor-in-chief of the Students' Series, the editors express their grateful appreciation of his many stimulating and helpful suggestions during the preparation of manuscript and the reading of the proof.

HAROLD W. JOHNSTON.
FREDERICK W. SANFORD.

APRIL, 1906.

CONTENTS.

MAPS, PLANS, AND ILLUSTRATIONS.

INTRODUCTION.

LIFE OF CAESAR.

Boyhood. — Caius Julius Caesar was born in Rome, 100 B.C., on the 12th of the month *Quintilis*, afterwards called July (*mensis Iulius*) in his honor. The Julian *gens* was of high standing and claimed a divine descent. Of Caesar's father we know only that he had held the office of praetor, and that he died in 84. Caesar's mother, Aurelia, who lived until the year 54, seems to have been a woman of admirable character, devoted to her home and children, like Cornelia, mother of the Gracchi. Of Caesar's early education little is known, except that he had at one time for tutor a citizen of Gaul, Gnipho, who may have aroused his pupil's first interest in the Gallic people. Caesar's early years, 100 to 82 B.C., witnessed the bitter strife of two political parties, the optimates and the democrats, resulting in revolution, counter-revolution, and massacre of political opponents now by the one party, now by the other. The most prominent leader of the democratic party during this period was the distinguished general, Caius Marius, Caesar's uncle by marriage. In 82 the optimates, or the party of the senatorial oligarchy, gained the ascendency, supported by the legions

of their general, Lucius Cornelius Sulla, fresh from his victories over Rome's enemies in Asia Minor. Sulla was then made dictator, and before resigning his office in 79 revised the constitution of the republic by a series of laws intended to establish his party in a secure place of power.

Young Manhood. Political Affiliations. — In his political sympathies Caesar may well have been influenced by the career of Marius. At all events he early identified himself with the democratic party, and while yet a mere stripling refused obedience to the dictator Sulla, who bade him divorce his wife, Cornelia, daughter of one of the most active democratic leaders, Lucius Cinna. Confiscation of his property and enforced flight from Rome did not break the young Caesar's resolution. The intercession of influential friends at length obtained for him an unwilling pardon from Sulla, who is said to have warned the petitioners that there was many a Marius in the young man, and that he would some day prove the ruin of the party of the optimates.

Military Service in Asia. — Withdrawing for the present to Asia Minor, where Mithridates had resumed hostilities, Caesar saw his first military service, distinguishing himself for bravery at the storming of Mitylene in 80, and participating later in an expedition against the pirates of the Asiatic coast.

The Years 78–74. — At the news of Sulla's death in 78 Caesar returned to Rome. In 77 and 76 he made his appearance in a public capacity by prosecuting for extortion and plunder of provincial subjects two prominent

Sullan partisans. Though the defendants were acquitted, Caesar attracted much attention by conspicuous oratorical powers. In 76 he went to Rhodes for instruction under Molo, a celebrated rhetorician of the time. Further military service in Asia Minor followed in 74.

POLITICAL CAREER.

Military Tribune. Priestly Honors. — Returning to Rome shortly after, Caesar was elected military tribune, having been elected in absence to a place in the college of *pontifices*, the high priests of the Roman religion.

Political Activity. — He now entered zealously into a movement, already in progress several years, for the repeal of Sulla's legislation. In 70 this agitation culminated in depriving the optimates of most of the added power which Sulla had secured for them. The main agents in the reform, though not the original movers, were the consuls, Cnaeus Pompeius and Marcus Crassus, both destined to close connection with Caesar in political life.

Pompey and Crassus. — Pompey, six years older than Caesar, and already a distinguished general, was a man of integrity both in public and private life, and for many years to come the foremost figure in the popular imagination, although his lack of political acumen prevented him from being an effective leader in affairs of state. Crassus was the wealthiest citizen of Rome. He was a man of unscrupulous character, his controlling motive mercenary, although not unmixed with an ambition for high place in public life and for military renown.

The Growing Leader. — The next ten years Caesar spent mostly in Rome, ingratiating himself with the people and seeking to advance the interests of the democratic party. His own allegiance to it he endeavored to emphasize upon one occasion by displaying the image of Marius in the funeral procession of Marius's wife, Julia, to the delight of the democratic faction in the city; upon another, by restoring the statue of Marius and the trophies of his victories, which had been removed from the Capitol under Sulla's régime.

Quaestor. — In 68 he held the quaestorship, an office connected with state finances. Assigned to service under the governor of Farther Spain, he is said to have displayed marked ability in the discharge of his duties.

Second Marriage. Pompey goes to Asia. — Upon returning to Rome in 67 Caesar married Pompeia, granddaughter of Sulla the dictator, having lost his first wife, Cornelia, a year or two before. In this and the following year he gave earnest support to two democratic measures intrusting Pompey with extraordinary powers and means in order to suppress piracy in the Mediterranean and to end the third Mithridatic war.

Aedile. — In 65 Caesar held the office of aedile, which involved, along with other duties, the management of public games and exhibitions. Following the custom of the time, he spent his own money lavishly in order to win popularity and so pave the way to higher offices. He was unsuccessful in an attempt to have Egypt assigned to him, as an ex-aedile, for organization into a province.

Pontifex Maximus and Praetor.—In 63, by means of profuse bribery, Caesar was elected over older rivals to the highest religious office, that of Pontifex Maximus. He was also elected to the praetorship for the following year, an office invested with judicial functions.

Catiline's Conspiracy.—In this same year the energetic efforts of Cicero, one of the consuls, frustrated a conspiracy formed by Lucius Catilina for the overthrow of the government. Caesar himself was charged more or less openly with complicity in the plot. As Catiline was attached to the democratic party rather than to any other, Caesar had doubtless countenanced his earlier ambition to obtain the consulship by the usual means. When Catiline's lack of success led him to adopt a method promising a reign of terror, Caesar, in all probability, withdrew his support.

Caesar courts Pompey's Favor.—At the beginning of 62 it was known that Pompey would soon return to Italy. His high place in popular esteem, greater now than ever before from his recent conquests in Asia Minor, made his political support seem of the utmost importance to parties and to individuals. Caesar endeavored to insure his favor by proposing to intrust him with the rebuilding of the Capitol, and by supporting a bill to give him a military command in Italy in order to protect the state against Catiline's forces. Caesar was deprived of his praetorship by the angry senate, but was soon restored. Both measures failed of enactment.

Governor of a Spanish Province.—As propraetor, in 61, Caesar governed the province of Farther Spain. His

political career had plunged him deeply in debt. Before going to his province he was enabled to pacify pressing creditors by a heavy loan from Crassus. In Spain, he subdued a number of tribes not before in subjection to the provincial government, and was equally successful in readjusting civil and economic affairs, which had fallen into much confusion.

The First Triumvirate.—Returning to Italy in the spring of 60, Caesar came forward as a candidate for the consulship. To strengthen his candidacy and his political position in general, he formed with Pompey and Crassus a private political alliance, known in history as the first triumvirate. Both Pompey and Crassus needed the aid of Caesar's political adroitness to further their own interests. Pompey, in particular, who had returned from Asia in 62, was driven into the alliance by the senate's refusal to ratify his admirable settlement of Asiatic affairs and to assign lands in Italy to his discharged veterans.

Caesar's Consulship. — As consul, in 59, Caesar held the highest regular office in the gift of the people. His colleague was Marcus Bibulus, a devoted optimate. Caesar laid before the senate a bill providing for the purchase of lands for the more needy of Pompey's veterans. The senate refused its sanction, whereupon the measure was taken before the popular assembly and carried amid much violence. Pompey's Asiatic arrangements were also ratified. Another measure, presented probably at the instance of Crassus, relieved the tax-gatherers of Asia, who had bid too high for the privilege of collection. Other laws were

passed, of much importance, but of less immediate political effect. Bibulus at first resisted Caesar's legislation. Finding opposition useless, he finally retired from the contest, protesting the validity of Caesar's acts. The humorists of the day termed it "The consulship of Julius and Caesar."

Marriage of Pompey and Julia. — A strong personal bond between Caesar and Pompey was now formed by the marriage of the latter to Caesar's daughter, Julia. Despite political considerations involved in this marriage, which the critics of the time were quick to discover, Pompey and Julia lived a life of mutual devotion until the wife's death in 54. Caesar married Calpurnia, daughter of Calpurnius Piso, consul-elect for 58, having divorced Pompeia in 62.

Assignment of Provinces. — In 60, the senate, following the custom of assigning promagisterial duties two years in advance, had decreed that the consuls of 59 should, as proconsuls in 58, have charge of forests and roads in Italy. This seems to have been done in anticipation of Caesar's election and in order to prevent him from obtaining an important proconsular position. As the foremost leader of the democracy he was not to be set aside so easily. The popular assembly nullified the senate's arrangement and voted him the governorship of Cisalpine Gaul and Illyricum for five years, with an army of three legions. On Pompey's motion the senate added the province of Transalpine Gaul, with one legion. Caesar's term of office as a provincial governor dated from March 1st, 59.

CONQUEST OF GAUL.

During the following nine years, 58–50, Caesar was engaged in the conquest and pacification of extra-provincial Gaul. He usually spent his winters in Cisalpine Gaul, attending to administrative duties, at the same time keeping informed of events in Rome. The details of successive campaigns may be studied best in connection with his own narrative. The renewal of his governorship for another five years enabled him to complete the subjugation of the Gallic people. A crisis came in 52, when the Gauls, under the leadership of Vercingetorix, a young Arvernian noble and a general of unusual ability, organized in a last desperate attempt to maintain their independence. The campaign, culminating in the siege and capture of the stronghold of Alesia, tested as never before Caesar's ability as a general and the endurance and capacity of his soldiers. The following winter Caesar spent in winter quarters at Bibracte, the summer of 51 in completing the work of conquest in various districts, the next winter and part of 50 in conciliating the conquered people and in effecting a temporary provincial organization.

CIVIL WAR.

Renewal of the Triumvirate. — The entire period of Caesar's absence in Gaul was marked by political strife in Rome and by mob rule increasing in violence toward the end. The triumvirs renewed their compact in a conference at Lucca in 56. Pompey and Crassus were con-

suls the next year, and secured the prolongation of Caesar's Gallic command for a second term of five years. For themselves they obtained the government for an equal period of the provinces of Spain and Syria respectively.

Estrangement of Caesar and Pompey. — The death of Julia in 54, and of Crassus in 53, opened the way for the estrangement of Caesar and Pompey, the latter gradually becoming jealous of Caesar's growing prestige, and coming to a better understanding with the optimates. The optimates, afraid of further political humiliation and loss of power at the hands of a successful democratic general, when he should return to Rome, were determined effectually to check his career. For three years, 52–50, their efforts were directed to the winning of Pompey and to the termination of Caesar's command before the time contemplated in the terms of his appointment. Their object in this was to reduce Caesar to a private station, in which he would be subject to attacks in the courts on the ground of provincial maladministration. With the courts in their control, his conviction and political ruin were a foregone conclusion.

Civil War Begins. — Caesar, through friends in Rome, sought by various measures to obtain the privilege of candidacy in absence for a second consulship, upon which he might enter immediately after returning from Gaul, thus leaving no interval of unofficial standing. All efforts at a compromise proved vain, as the Pompeians would not accept Caesar's proposal that both he and Pompey lay down their arms. Early in January, 49, in

reply to a virtual declaration of outlawry against him made by the senate, Caesar cast the die by crossing the river Rubicon, the southern boundary of his Cisalpine province.

Pompey's Flight. Campaign in Spain. — Pompey and the senate, having made no adequate preparations for war, assembled their forces at Brundisium and escaped across the Adriatic in March. Unable to follow for the present from lack of transport facilities, Caesar proceeded to Spain by land, and in a campaign of three months forced the surrender of the Pompeian legions stationed there.

Battle of Pharsalus. — Early in 48 he crossed the Adriatic, and near Dyrrachium attempted to blockade the army which Pompey had gathered. In the course of the operations Pompey's superior numbers enabled him to break through the blockade and almost inflict a disastrous defeat. Caesar withdrew into Thessaly, followed by his opponent. Their armies finally joined battle near Pharsalus on August 9th. To Pompey's 47,000 legionaries, 7000 cavalry, and auxiliaries, Caesar could oppose but 22,000 legionaries and 1000 cavalry, with auxiliaries, perhaps 30,000 in all. The Pompeian army was utterly routed, 15,000 falling and more than 23,000 being captured. Caesar lost 200 of his rank and file and 30 centurions. Pompey fled and was murdered by order of Ptolemy, king of Egypt, on attempting to land at Pelusium.

Campaigns in Egypt and Asia Minor. — The months from October, 48, to June, 47, Caesar spent in Alexandria,

where the small force with him was besieged by the Egyptians, but finally saved by reënforcements brought by Mithridates of Pergamum. Caesar settled a contest for the throne of Egypt by installing Cleopatra together with a younger brother. Proceeding to Asia Minor, he adjusted disputes in various districts, and routed Pharnaces of Pontus in the victory which he is said to have reported to a friend in the laconic dispatch, *veni, vidi, vici*. In September he was again in Rome, bringing order out of the confusion following upon his long absence.

Campaign in Africa. — In December, 47, Caesar crossed with his troops to Africa, where Cato and other adherents of Pompey and the republic had gathered a large army, supported by King Juba of Numidia. On April 6th, 46, Caesar annihilated these forces at Thapsus. Cato committed suicide at Utica rather than survive the republic or humiliate himself by surrendering. In July Caesar returned to Rome and celebrated a magnificent triumph for his victories over foreign peoples. He was then chosen dictator for ten years.

Second Campaign in Spain. — Administrative work was interrupted by the necessity of another campaign in Spain, where the adherents of Pompey and the senatorial party made their last stand, led by a son of Pompey and by Labienus, Caesar's most trusted lieutenant in the Gallic War, but one of his bitterest foes in the Civil War. Their forces were defeated in a desperate battle at Munda on March 17th, 45, Labienus being among the slain. In September Caesar returned to Rome to resume the task of reorganization.

REORGANIZATION OF GOVERNMENT.

Caesar's Policy. — Caesar's policy of reorganization contemplated, so far as mechanism was concerned, the concentration of large powers in his own hands. In purpose it looked to the welfare, not only of Rome, but of Italy and the provinces. This purpose had been, more or less definitely, the ideal of the democratic party.

His Titles and his Powers. — The steps by which Caesar attained a power virtually supreme were taken at different times in the years 49 to 44. The tribunician power for life was granted in 48; the censorship, under another name, in 46, and later the titles of *imperator* and *parens patriae*. Caesar also held the consulship several times, and probably retained proconsular power when not actually consul. By increasing the senate's numbers to nine hundred he was able to control it through appointment of his own supporters. Directly or indirectly he exercised control over legislation, the selection of candidates for office, and the appointment of provincial governors.

Measures of Reform. — To improve political and economic conditions in Rome itself, Caesar endeavored to found colonies in the provinces, in which to settle the poor of the city. The number, too, participating in the distribution of cheap grain was reduced from 320,000 to 150,000. His own discharged veterans Caesar planned to distribute among the new colonies or in small numbers in different parts of Italy. Public lands were destined to division among small farmers in order to foster waning agricul-

ture. A law was enacted requiring the employment of a certain proportion of free laborers among the pastoral classes in Italy. State finances were better systematized and supervised, while important laws were passed relating to debt and rates of interest.

Public Works. — A new Forum was constructed north of the old Forum; south of the latter the Basilica Julia, begun in 54, was dedicated, though unfinished, in 46. Other public works were projected for Rome or elsewhere, among them a library of Greek and Latin authors. The calendar, now in much confusion, was scientifically corrected in 46 to correspond to the solar year.

Municipal Charters. — A measure of the greatest importance provided a charter for the towns and cities of Italy, in order to give them a uniform local government. Possibly Caesar intended eventually to extend this law, with modifications, to the cities of the empire. In 49 he carried out his long-cherished project of bestowing full Roman citizenship on those Gauls of the Cisalpine province who lived between the Po and the Alps, thus placing them on the same political footing with the Cisalpine Gauls south of the Po.

The Provinces. — The appointment of provincial governors by Caesar was a step of the utmost importance, making, as it did, each governor directly responsible to a central authority vested in one man. Though this system was not followed in its entirety by Caesar's successors, yet from this time the provinces began to enjoy a degree of prosperity and freedom from oppression in marked contrast to the past.

CAESAR'S DEATH.

Upon returning to Rome from Spain Caesar varied the task of administration by preparations for a campaign against the Parthians, intending to set out in March, 44. During the early months of the year lavish honors were heaped upon him, in addition to the bestowal of the perpetual dictatorship. These honors served to increase the long-standing dissatisfaction with the change in government, particularly among the adherents of the old senatorial party. This discontent in fact had affected many of Caesar's own followers, who were dissatisfied with the position they occupied and with what they deemed the small personal gains accruing from the Civil War. In consequence a plot was formed to assassinate the dictator, participated in by some of Caesar's most trusted and favored friends. Though warnings of danger, more or less specific, were given him from time to time, Caesar turned a deaf ear to them and neglected to take precautions for his safety. The plot culminated on the 15th of March, 44, when Caesar was stabbed to death at a meeting of the senate in the portico attached to Pompey's theater.

It was the hope of those implicated in the assassination to restore the old form of the republic; but Caesar's death created a condition in the state which the conspirators had not the ability to control. A period of civil war followed, terminated only by the complete subjugation of the Roman world to Caesar's great-nephew, Augustus, thirteen years later.

CAESAR'S WRITINGS.

Minor Works. — Of Caesar's literary works the most important were incidental to his later public career. Certain compositions of his earlier years are mentioned by Suetonius, a *Laudes Herculis*, a tragedy entitled *Oedipus*, and a collection of witticisms, which appears to have been continued in the later years of his life. Augustus forbade the publication of these works after Caesar's death. A treatise entitled *De Analogia*, dedicated to Cicero, dealt with the theory of correct usage in Latin and the means of determining it. It was written while Caesar was crossing the Alps to rejoin his army, probably in the spring of 54. An *Anticato* replied, in vindication of Caesar's own career, to the panegyrics published by Cato's friends and admirers after his suicide at Utica. *Iter* was the title of a poem composed by Caesar when on the way to his last campaign in Spain, in 46. Collections of speeches and letters were also preserved in later times. With the exception of meager fragments and a few letters still to be found in Cicero's collected letters, all of these minor works are lost.

The Commentaries. — Caesar's literary fame rests on his commentaries on the Gallic and Civil Wars. The *Gallic War* is a work in seven books, each book detailing the events of a single campaign, the whole covering the years 58–52. A friend, Aulus Hirtius, added an eighth book describing the events of 51 and 50, thus bridging over the gap between the *Gallic War* and the *Civil War*. Caesar's seven books were published probably in 51. The *Civil*

War in three books, covering the years 49 and 48, were published after Caesar's death; they are evidently in an unfinished condition, as shown by the limited period dealt with and by lapses both of a stylistic and historical character. Supplementary works by unknown authors describe the remaining campaigns of the Civil War under the titles, *Bellum Alexandrinum*, *Bellum Africum*, and *Bellum Hispaniense*.

Purpose of the Commentaries. — Caesar's aim in writing memoirs of his two great wars was primarily political, not literary. In the *Gallic War* he doubtless wished to inform the educated public of Rome and Italy of what he had done to enhance his country's glory, and how he had added a great territory to her domain; further, to demonstrate that his policy of conquest, in its inception at least, had been forced upon him by the necessity of guarding Roman interests in the north against the barbarians beyond the Rhine. The manifest purpose of the *Civil War* is to show that Caesar had done everything within reason to avoid war, and that, in contrast to his enemies, a spirit of forbearance and kindliness had not failed him amid the hardships and bitterness of military operations.



Coin of Caesar.

THE ROMAN ARMY.

COMPOSITION.

1. **The Legions.** — The chief strength of a Roman army lay in the legions (*legiones*) of infantry, composed of Roman citizens between the ages of seventeen and forty-six. Since the time of Marius service in the ranks had been restricted practically to the lower and poorer classes, men of the upper classes serving only as officers. The legionary took oath for a service of twenty years. Levies were authorized regularly by the senate, though we find Caesar levying troops on his own responsibility in anticipation of the senate's sanction.

2. The legions were distinguished by numbers. Before the end of the Gallic War Caesar's forces comprised the 1st, and the 6th to the 15th inclusive.

3. The ideal numerical strength of a legion is uncertain. Caesar's legions at their best probably numbered not more than five thousand each. The actual number available for effective service must have varied according to losses and such supplementary drafts as may have been made.

4. Each legion was divided into ten cohorts (*cohortes*), each cohort into three maniples (*manipuli*), each maniple into two centuries (*centuriae*).

5. **Infantry Auxiliaries.** — Rome's infantry auxiliaries (*auxilia*) were furnished by Roman provinces and by

allied or independent nations and tribes. Those in Caesar's army included slingers (*funditores*, p. 55[1]) from the Balearic islands, archers (*sagittarii*) from Crete and Numidia, and other light-armed troops (*milites levis armaturae*, p. 55). Though considerable in number, they were not much relied upon. They were commanded by native and by Roman officers (*praefecti*). Those from the provinces, at least, were organized into cohorts. Light-armed troops, not archers or slingers, were armed with light javelins of various kinds, and in common with the slingers probably carried a round shield (*parma*). The slingers used as missiles stones and elongated lead bullets (*glandes*, p. 47).

6. **The Cavalry.** — The cavalry (*equitatus*) at this time formed part of the auxiliaries. Caesar's cavalry came from Gaul, Spain, and Germany. The greater part was levied in Gaul each summer, disbanding in the fall. Possibly a small contingent was permanently attached to each legion and wintered with it. The cavalry in Caesar's army ranged in number between 4000 and 5000. Its divisions were squadrons (*alae*) of 300 to 400, divided into troops (*turmae*) of 30 to 40, each troop comprising probably three decuries (*decuriae*). The chief cavalry officer was a Roman. The officers of the squadrons and troops (*praefecti* and *decuriones*) were sometimes Roman, sometimes of the same nationality as the soldiers under them.

The cavalryman carried a round shield (*parma*), wore

[1] This and similar references are to illustrations scattered through the Latin text.

a metal helmet (*cassis*), and perhaps a cuirass (*lorica*). His offensive weapons were a sword, longer than that of the Roman legionary, and a spear (*tragula*). See p. 103.

7. **Miscellaneous Elements.** — *Optiones*, assistants and substitutes for the centurions.

Evocati, veterans who reënlisted at the expiration of their term of service. They received higher pay than other common soldiers, were exempt from camp duties, and were furnished horses on the march.

Beneficiarii, soldiers assigned to special duties in attendance on higher officers.

Speculatores, individual scouts.

Exploratores, small detachments, usually of cavalry, employed in reconnaissance.

Signiferi, *Aquiliferi*, standard bearers (¶ 28, and p. 66).

Tubicines, *Cornicines*, *Bucinatores* (¶ 27, and p. 66).

8. Caesar seems to have had with him the usual *contubernales*, tent companions, young men in particular, who on the ground of personal or political friendship accompanied him in Gaul to acquaint themselves with military service under his immediate supervision.

9. The engineers (*fabri*) were skilled artisans of various kinds, probably not forming a separate corps, but drawn from the ranks as occasion demanded. The chief engineer was called *praefectus fabrum*.

10. **Non-combatants.** — *Calones*, slaves employed as camp servants, especially in attendance upon the officers.

Mercatores, traders, sutlers, who followed the army, selling the soldiers provisions not included in the regular rations, and purchasing booty of them.

OFFICERS.

11. **Commander-in-Chief.** — The commander-in-chief of the army was called *dux*, leader, general, or *imperator*, the latter a title of honor bestowed by his army after a victory. See p. 18.

12. **Lieutenants.** — The *legati*, Caesar's highest officers, were of senatorial rank and were nominated by himself. They held no fixed commands, but were assigned to various duties, such as the command of one or more legions in battle, the conduct of independent expeditions, the command of winter quarters, the levying of troops, and the building of fleets. They participated in councils of war. See p. 18.

13. **Tribunes.** — The military tribunes (*tribuni militum*), six in each legion, in earlier days had commanded the legion, two at a time. Caesar's tribunes were nominated by himself, though as a rule part of them were elected by the people. Political considerations had more or less to do with their appointment. In consequence they formed a less capable body of officers than the lieutenants, such commands as were assigned to them consisting of detachments smaller than a legion. They were also employed in other capacities, judicial and administrative, and participated in councils of war. See p. 18.

14. **Quaestor.** — The quaestors (*quaestores*) were finance officers elected annually by the Roman people and assigned by lot to their respective places, one accompanying each of the provincial governors. With the army a quaestor had charge of the pay of the troops, of the commissariat,

and of the sale of booty and prisoners. Occasionally Caesar's quaestor commanded troops.

15. **Centurions.** — The plebeian centurions (*centuriones*), one for each century, were appointed from the ranks by the commander-in-chief on the basis of merit, and could not rise to higher commands. They were of different grades, but the order of promotion is uncertain. Probably one centurion commanded each cohort. Certain centurions in each legion, known as centurions of the first rank (*centuriones primorum ordinum*), ranked higher than the others and were admitted to councils of war. The first centurion of the first cohort of a legion was styled chief centurion (*primipilus*), and in battle had under his special protection the legionary eagle (¶ 28). A centurion carried a staff (*vitis*) as an emblem of authority, and wore on his helmet a transverse crest (*crista transversa*). See p. 18.

16. **Prefects.** — The prefects (*praefecti*) have already been noted as the officers of the auxiliary forces and of the engineers (¶¶ 5, 6, 9).

DRESS AND EQUIPMENT.

17. **Dress.** — The legionary wore no uniform. His clothing was as follows: *tunica*, the usual woolen tunic, close-fitting, short-sleeved, reaching to the knees and confined at the waist by a girdle (*cingulum*); *sagum*, a thick woolen cloak for inclement weather, provided possibly with a hood, — it was fastened at the right shoulder, leaving the right arm free; *caligae*, low boots of leather, hob-

nailed, fastened across the instep and around the lower part of the leg. See pp. 55, 95, and 137.

As a mark of distinction the commander in chief wore a scarlet cloak (*paludāmentum*), while the lieutenants and tribunes wore red tunics.

18. **Defensive Armor.** — *Galea*, a helmet of metal or of leather strengthened by metal strips, surmounted by a detachable crest. See pp. 64 and 120.

Lorica, cuirass, a sort of leather tunic reënforced across the breast and back by metal strips.

Scutum, a concave shield worn on the left arm in battle. It was approximately two and a half feet by four, made of boards covered outside with cloth and leather, and metal-rimmed. From the center projected a metal boss (*umbo*). When not in use the shield was protected by a leather covering (*tegimentum*), and on the march was carried hanging at the left side or on the back.

It is uncertain whether the soldiers wore greaves (*ocreae*) — bronze shields protecting the legs from the knee down. The higher officers carried no shield, but wore cuirasses.

19. **Offensive Weapons.** — *Pilum*, a heavy javelin with round or square wooden shaft, and an iron head, of which all but the tip was of soft metal. After piercing the enemy's shield the head might bend and so become useless to the enemy for hurling back. The total length of the javelin was about six and one half feet. It could be hurled eighty feet or more. See p. 41.

The *pilum murale*, wall-javelin, was a heavier weapon hurled from intrenchments, walls, and towers.

Gladius, a sword about two feet long, straight, double-edged, and pointed, used for thrusting rather than for cutting. It was worn at the right side in a leather-covered scabbard (*vagina*), held by a belt (*balteus*) hung from the left shoulder. As higher officers carried no shields, their swords hung at the left side. See p. 46.

BAGGAGE.

20. **Soldiers' Packs.** — In addition to arms and armor soldiers carried individual packs (*sarcinae*) on the march. These were attached to forked poles carried over the shoulder, a contrivance introduced by Marius. The packs comprised rations for a number of days varying according to circumstances, a cooking utensil, several stakes for the camp rampart, saw, hatchet, spade, basket, the whole weighing probably forty-five pounds. When loaded with his pack the soldier was said to be *impeditus*, incumbered, without it *expeditus*, unincumbered. Before a battle the packs were deposited in one place and guarded.

21. **Heavy Baggage.** — The heavy baggage, *impedimenta*, consisted of extra supplies of arms and clothing, tents, hand-mills, artillery, provisions for long marches, etc. It was carried chiefly by pack animals (*iumenta*), though wagons and carts must have been used also, especially for the artillery. Pack animals and draft animals for a legion may well have numbered five or six hundred, requiring many muleteers (*muliones*).

Each legion had its own baggage train and when im-

mediately followed by it, was incumbered, *impedita*, without it unincumbered, *expedita*.

PROVISIONS, PAY, ETC.

22. **Provisions.** — The soldiers' diet was chiefly vegetable, consisting of bread or of a sort of porridge, both of wheat, though it was sometimes necessary to substitute barley. Unground grain was issued usually every fifteen or sixteen days, to be ground into coarse flour in hand-mills. The amount per day was about two pounds. Meat was used occasionally. Grain was supplied by allied or subject Gallic tribes, probably without pay. Extra provisions might be purchased from the sutlers (¶ 10).

23. **Pay.** — The pay of a legionary was 125 denarii a year, which Caesar increased to 225 toward the beginning of the Civil War. This sum had a greater purchasing power than what is usually given as its equivalent, $45. Deductions were made for such parts of the food, clothing, and equipment as were furnished by the state. A soldier's resources were materially increased by the sale of booty and by special gifts from the commanding general. A centurion received double the pay of a common soldier.

After discharge a soldier received a sum of money (3000 denarii in the time of the Empire, possibly also in Caesar's time) or a tract of land.

24. **Rewards.** — Special bravery might be rewarded by presents of money, by promotion, or by badges of honor such as armlets, chains, necklaces, brooches, medals, crown-wreaths.

25. **Punishments.** — These, according to the offense, were corporal, deprivation of pay for a stated period, degradation from a higher to a lower rank, public dismissal from the service, and even the death penalty.

If whole bodies of troops were at fault, they might be given barley instead of wheat for food, be compelled to bivouac outside the camp, or be subjected to *decimatio*, the choice by lot of every tenth man for the death penalty.

26. **Work.** — In addition to performing the work entailed by regular warfare, soldiers were also frequently employed in time of peace on public works, canals, bridges, roads, and buildings.

SIGNAL INSTRUMENTS AND STANDARDS.

27. **Signal Instruments.** — *Tuba*, trumpet, a straight instrument of metal used for various signals, particularly of attack and retreat. See p. 66.

Cornu, horn, probably one for each maniple, used to repeat the main signals of the *tuba* in battle.

Bucina, used to mark the night watches.

Lituus, the signal instrument of the cavalry.

28. **Standards.** — The standard of the legion was a silver eagle (*aquila*, pp. 113 and 146) carried by the eagle bearer (*aquilifer*); in battle it was under the special protection of the *primipilus* (¶ 15).

The minor standards belonged to the maniples; probably the standard of the first maniple of each cohort served as the standard of the cohort. These standards in general consisted of a staff with a cross-bar near the

top, from which hung streamers. Below were various silver ornaments; the disks (*phalerae*) were probably presented to the maniples for distinguished services. Possibly a small banner with appropriate lettering was attached to each standard to identify the maniple. See p. 33.

The *vexillum*, a square flag fastened to a cross-bar on a staff, was the standard of the cavalry troops (¶ 6), and probably of the infantry auxiliaries; also of legionary detachments sent out on special service. A red *vexillum* displayed on the general's tent served as a signal to form for battle, sometimes as the signal for attack.

In camp the standards were planted in the ground, under a shelter which constituted a shrine (*sacrarium*). On the march they were probably kept to the front of the maniples, in battle probably in or behind the second rank, the soldiers of the first rank, perhaps also of the second, being called *antesignani*. In battle the standards played an important part, as it was the bearers to whom commands were directed with the signal instruments.

The loss of a standard was considered an extreme disgrace. To spur on the soldiers, the bearer sometimes threw his standard forward into the ranks of the enemy.

ARTILLERY.

29. The machines for hurling missiles were called in general *tormenta* (*torquere*, to twist). As the Latin name implies, their power came from twisted materials, such as ropes and the sinews and hair of animals.

The *ballista* hurled heavy stones or beams (p. 112).

The catapult (*catapulta*) shot large arrows (p. 112).

The *scorpio*, the only piece mentioned by name in the *Gallic War*, was probably a small catapult or ballista.

Artillery was employed most often in the attack on, and defense of, fortified towns, to some extent on ships of war, and occasionally in the field, especially for the defense of a camp or redoubt.

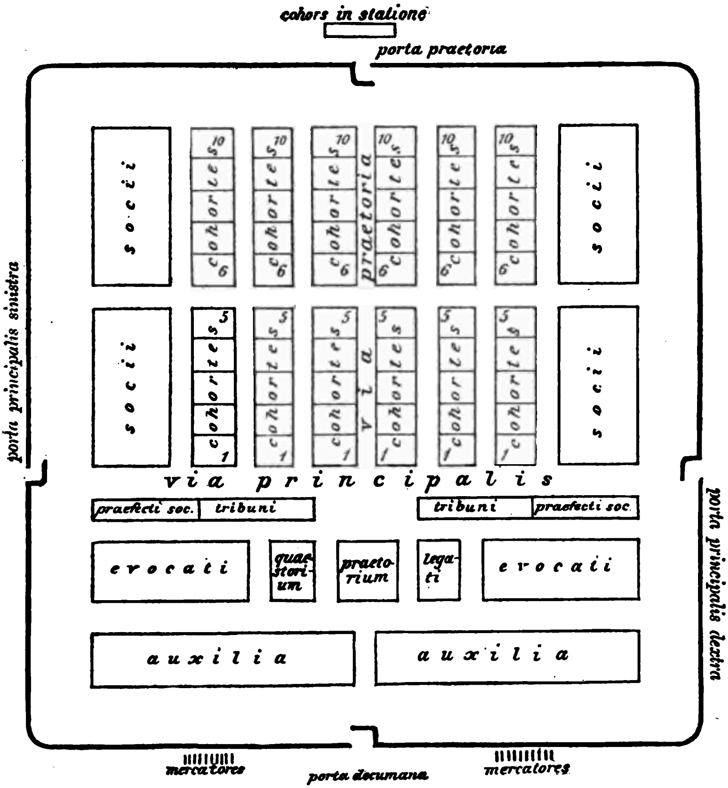
THE CAMP.

30. The Roman army constructed a fortified camp at the end of each day's march. Officers sent in advance laid out the camp in a suitable spot, preferably on the crest and slope of a hill, due regard being paid to proximity of water, fuel, and forage. The work of intrenching was done by the soldiers, who soon became expert at the task. The shape of the camp, rectangular theoretically, was necessarily adapted to the ground chosen.

The intrenchments (see p. 78) consisted regularly of a trench (*fossa*) of varying dimensions, and a rampart (*agger*, *vallum*) formed for the most part of the earth thrown inward from the trench and faced with sod when possible. A palisade (*vallum*) of wooden stakes crowned the outer edge of the rampart. Between rampart and tents, on all sides, a space of about two hundred feet was left to afford protection from missiles, to maneuver troops, and to store the baggage train. The four gates were so arranged with elbows in the rampart that an enemy upon entering had to expose his unprotected right side.

Tents were usually made of skins, ten men occupying

each one. In winter quarters (*hiberna*) the barracks were huts roofed with straw or skins. Winter camps,



Roman Camp (for six legions).

also field camps on occasions of special danger and when occupied for some length of time, might be provided with towers, redoubts, and various other defenses.

The time from sunset to sunrise was divided into four watches (*vigiliae*), the third beginning at midnight. The night guards were relieved at the end of each watch. The watchword for the night was communicated to the troops written on wooden tablets (*tesserae*).

THE MARCH.

31. When not threatened by attack, a marching army (*agmen*) was headed by a vanguard (*primum agmen*), usually of cavalry, sometimes reënforced by infantry auxiliaries; then came the main body, each legion followed by its baggage train (¶ 21). When near the enemy, several legions marched in front, with the entire baggage train placed behind them and protected by other legions acting as a rear guard (*novissimum agmen*). Sometimes, for further protection of the baggage, troops marched at the sides of the train, forming a hollow parallelogram. Or, when marching a short distance in expectation of an immediate engagement, the legions in front laid aside even their light baggage (¶ 20), and marched in three columns of cohorts, so arranged as to swing into line of battle at a moment's notice.

A day's march under ordinary circumstances covered something more than fifteen miles, a forced march (*magnum iter*) as much as twenty miles or even more.

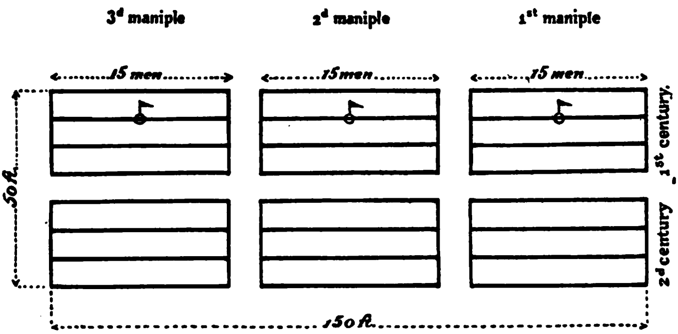
THE BATTLE.

32. **The Battle Line.** — In battle the legions were stationed side by side, doubtless preserving their identity by narrow intervals. Each legion was most frequently

arrayed in three lines of cohorts (*triplex acies*), sometimes in two (*duplex acies*). Our knowledge of the formation is far from definite. The following account of the triple line seems plausible: —

Four cohorts stood side by side in the first line, three side by side in each of the other two. In each cohort the maniples were arranged side by side, with one of the two centuries in each maniple behind the other. The depth of the line may have varied in different battles; we may assume a normal depth of eight ranks, *i.e.* four ranks to each century.

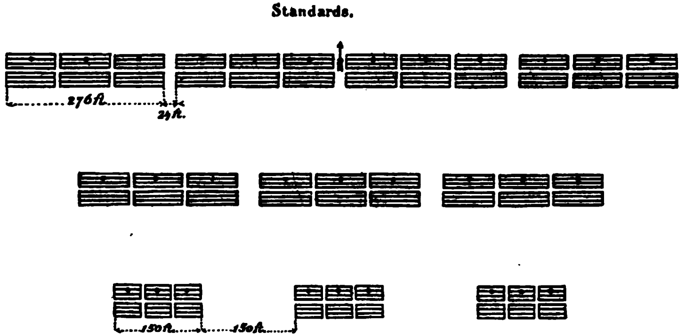
The following figure represents a cohort formed eight ranks deep in close array, the formation employed in parades, reviews, and when marching to battle, but still at a distance from the enemy. Before the actual shock



COHORT OF 360 MEN IN 8 RANKS, NOT DEPLOYED.

of battle it would be necessary to deploy the cohorts of the first and second lines at least, in order to give each soldier sufficient room in which to wield javelin and

sword. The next figure shows a legion in three lines, the first and second deployed for battle.



LEGION ARRAYED IN THREE LINES, THE FIRST TWO DEPLOYED FOR BATTLE.

33. **The Battle.** — Before a battle the general usually made his troops a brief address of encouragement (*cohortatio*). At the signal for attack the first line of cohorts advanced, quickening its pace as it neared the enemy. The two front ranks, when within striking distance, hurled their javelins, those of the second rank probably hurling theirs through the intervals of the first, if we may assume the men to be arranged in checker-board fashion. The ranks behind as they came within the distance of a javelin's cast hurled their javelins in rapidly succeeding volleys over the heads of those in front. Each rank drew swords immediately after its javelin volley. The first shock of the hand-to-hand fighting with swords fell upon the *antesignani*, who were the pick of the legion (¶ 28). As the front ranks became thinned or fagged,

the men in the ranks behind pressed forward to take their places. The second line of cohorts followed the first at some distance. If the first line failed to rout the enemy and became decimated or exhausted in the fight, the second line gradually worked its way into the fight until it had relieved the entire first line. The third line of cohorts constituted a reserve, to be employed according to occasion. It might face about and meet a division of the enemy coming from another direction than the front. At times a spirited enemy would advance so rapidly as to afford no chance for the javelin volleys.

The terms right wing (*dextrum cornu*), left wing (*sinistrum cornu*), and center (*media acies*) were used without indicating tactical divisions of the line.

Other occasional formations were the wedge (*cuneus*), a formation in column of attack, to break through superior numbers; the *orbis*, a circle or a square with rounded corners, hollow or solid, for defense against superior numbers attacking on all sides.

The cavalry, stationed usually on the wings, was employed most often in pursuit of a fleeing enemy. The infantry auxiliaries seem to have had no fixed part or place in battle, but to have been employed in skirmishing, in protecting the baggage, and in other capacities as circumstances dictated.

ASSAULTS AND SIEGES.

34. Three methods of attack on fortified places may be distinguished, though features of the different methods were often combined.

(1) **Assault.** — In attack by assault (*repentina oppugnatio*) the trench was first filled with earth and fascines (*crates*), while part of the troops, especially the light-armed, attempted to drive the defenders from the wall. Soldiers then advanced to scale the wall with ladders (*scalae*) or to break down the gates, sometimes adopting the "tortoise" formation (*testudo*, p. 128), composed of a detachment of soldiers in close array, those in the first rank holding their shields closely locked in front, while those behind held their shields overhead.

35. (2) **Siege.** — Regular siege (*oppugnatio*) was employed against the stronger towns. If the ground at the point chosen for attack was not unduly broken, it was leveled, the trench filled in, and an attempt made to breach the wall by undermining it, by pulling down stones and timbers with huge mural hooks (*falces murales*, p. 85) attached to long poles, or by use of the battering-ram (*aries*); the latter was a long, heavy beam with a metal head, swung by ropes in a movable shed (*testudo arietaria*, p. 72). In approaching the wall the troops were protected by galleries of open-ended sheds (*vineae*, p. 90), by screens (*plutei*, p. 74), and by strongly built sappers' huts (*testudines, musculi*), all of these devices being movable. One or more movable towers (*turres ambulatoriae*, p. 150) were sometimes employed to protect attacking parties by driving defenders from walls. A tower extended several stories high, moved on wheels or rollers, and carried soldiers and artillery. A battering-ram might be installed in the first story. Towers and sheds were often protected against fire by fresh hides or wet coverings.

36. If the ground was so broken or steep as to require it, a siege mole (*agger*) was constructed, usually at right angles to the wall. It was begun out of missile range, galleries, screens, and a movable tower furnishing protection to the builders. The mole probably consisted of two parallel retaining walls of cross-laid timbers, the space in and between the walls being filled with logs, stones, and earth. The whole formed a causeway, possibly sixty feet in width normally, extending up to the foot of the enemy's wall. It afforded a way of approach for attacking parties, together with the appliances employed in breaching a wall; also for the movable tower located on the mole itself and advanced as the work of construction was pushed forward.

The defenders resisted by sorties, by countermines under the mole, by hurling weapons of various sorts, by setting fire to screens, sheds, tower, and even to the mole when much wood was used in its construction, and by catching the battering-ram with grappling contrivances.

37. (3) **Blockade.** — Blockade, or investment (*obsidio*), was resorted to in the case of towns too strong to be taken otherwise. Its object was to starve the defenders into submission. The blockade was accomplished by constructing around the town a line of intrenchments (*circumvallatio*), crowned with palisades and towers, and strengthened at intervals by redoubts (*castella*). By another line of intrenchments, facing in the opposite direction, the attacking army might protect itself against reënforcements coming to the aid of the besieged.

THE ROMAN FLEET.

38. At the beginning of the Gallic War Caesar had no fleet, but was obliged to build and equip one when occasion demanded. The vessels employed were as follows: —

Naves longae, war galleys, in comparison with ordinary merchantmen were longer in proportion to breadth, more lightly built, of less draught, and speedier. In rough weather, at least, they were drawn up on the beach. They were propelled partly by sail, but mainly by oars, which were arranged in banks or tiers, each rower handling an oar. Caesar's galleys probably contained not more than three banks. The steering of the galleys, as well as of other vessels, was effected by means of two large paddles, one at each side astern.

A galley was provided with a beak (*rostrum*) of metal, or at least tipped with metal, under the prow near the water line, for ramming opposing vessels. Wooden towers were erected on deck, from which to work artillery, or to render more effective the discharge of other weapons. The most effective and the regular mode of attack, in addition to ramming, was to board an enemy's vessel and engage in a hand-to-hand battle. The galleys were, therefore, provided with grappling contrivances (*copulae*), with which to seize and hold the enemy's ships. In the sea fight with the Veneti (Bk. III, 14–15) a special invention, consisting of strong hooks attached to long poles, was employed to cripple the sailing vessels of the enemy by breaking or cutting their rigging.

Sailors (*nautae*) and rowers (*remiges*) were provincials, the rowers possibly slaves. Upon one occasion the legionaries worked the oars. The fighting crew was composed of legionaries.

39. *Speculatoria navigia*, scout ships, were smaller than the war galleys, and had no *rostra*.

40. *Naves onerariae*, freight ships, were employed as transports along with the war galleys. As already indicated, they had a greater proportionate breadth and a greater draught than the war galleys. Sails were depended upon more than in the case of the galleys, though oars were also used. These vessels were anchored in port.

41. *Naves actuariae*, transports, were swifter than those last described, and were propelled by sails and oars. They were also made lower and broader to facilitate loading and beaching.

42. *Vectoria navigia*, transports, is a general term covering both of the classes last mentioned.

43. The fleet as a whole was commanded by a lieutenant in Caesar's absence, single ships by tribunes and centurions.



SCENE IN A ROMAN CAMP.

THE GALLIC ARMY.

44. **Clothing.** — The Gallic soldier's clothing consisted of a tunic-like coat with or without sleeves, a mantle (*sagulum*), and trousers (*bracae*). Coats and mantles were frequently woven with gayly colored stripes. Ornaments of bronze and gold were worn, rings, armlets, and necklaces.

45. **Defensive Armor.** — The armor of the common soldier was a wooden shield, of different forms and sizes. The leaders wore iron or bronze coats of mail, and helmets decorated most often with horns. See p. 10.

46. **Offensive Weapons.** — The Gallic sword, of bronze or iron, was usually longer and broader than that of the Roman legionary, and was used more for cutting than for thrusting (p. 149); the *gaesum* was a heavy javelin; *tragula,* a spear either for hurling or thrusting; *matara,* a broad-tipped spear; *verutum,* a dart or lance; *lancea,* a lance, carried by the cavalry in particular. Bows and slings were also in use.

47. **Standards.** — The figure of a boar carried on a pole seems to have been the most common, if not the only, standard. See p. 10.

48. **The Camp.** — Gallic camps as a rule were mere encampments, not like the fortified Roman camps. The Aquitani (Bk. III, 23), however, speedily imitated the

Roman method of fortifying camps, and later other Gauls did the same.

49. **Gallic Strongholds.** — The Gallic strongholds or towns (*oppida*) most often occupied high positions naturally defended; these were strengthened further by trenches, by well-constructed walls (p. 58) of timber and stones, sometimes crowned with towers.

50. **The Gauls in Battle.** — The Gauls sometimes adopted the *phalanx* formation, resembling the *testudo* (¶ 34), but applied to a much larger body of troops; the men in the front rank presented a solid barrier of shields, while those behind held their shields overhead.

51. In attacking Roman camps the Gauls learned in the later campaigns to employ Roman devices, movable towers (¶ 35), sappers' huts (¶ 35), scaling ladders (¶ 34), mural hooks (¶ 35), and fascines (¶ 34). They also employed the testudo formation (¶ 34).



COIN: THE SUBJUGATION OF GAUL.

TRANSALPINE GAUL.

THE COUNTRY.

52. **Extent.** — Transalpine Gaul in Caesar's time comprised the region now known as France, together with the larger portion of Switzerland, Alsace, Lorraine, Belgium, and southern Holland.

53. **Character of the Country.** — The generally level character of the country and the presence of navigable rivers rendered communication easy among the Gallic tribes. Forests and marshes covered a more extensive area than in modern times.

54. **Climate and Products.** — The climate, north of the Cevennes, was probably more rigorous than now. The various cereals of southern Europe were cultivated quite extensively, though pastoral husbandry was held in higher repute, especially in the northern districts. The southern district, already a Roman province, had much the same climate as Italy and produced the same fruits. The mining of iron, copper, silver, and gold was carried on in parts of Gaul.

THE PEOPLE.

55. **Origin.** — The Gauls, or Celts, had for many centuries occupied the country in which Caesar found them.

They came from east of the Rhine, destroyed or conquered the population already in the land, and intermarried to some extent with the survivors. The language of the invaders came to prevail.

56. **Divisions.** — Without an attempt at scientific accuracy, Caesar describes the Gauls in three divisions or ethnological groups, on the basis of language, customs, and laws. The inhabitants of the central division called themselves Celts. They were, however, of the same origin as the Belgae north of them, and there was probably no great divergence in the language of the two. The Belgae, who came into Gaul probably at a later date than the Celts, claimed to be descended from the Germans, and there may have been an admixture of German blood in them. In the third division, Aquitania, the Celtic element had not established itself in numbers relatively so large as in other parts of Gaul, nor was the Celtic language in general use. The precise origin of the population which the Celtic invaders found in Aquitania is not certain. It was doubtless a mixture of race elements, largely Iberian, and is represented by the modern Basques.

57. **Characteristics of the Gauls.** — The Gauls in general were of greater stature than the Romans. Their complexion was fair, their hair a reddish blond. In dress they were especially fond of bright colors. The chiefs decorated themselves with golden rings, bracelets, and necklaces, though such ornaments were not unknown among other classes. In temperament the Gauls were boastful, impulsive, and hasty in forming resolves and

plans, often disastrous in outcome. These qualities were augmented by a childish curiosity and credulousness of chance rumors and of stories told them by traders. In battle they were courageous and impetuous, but lacked staying qualities, being easily disheartened by defeat. They showed no little cleverness in imitating the military contrivances of their enemies.

58. **Houses.** — The Gallic houses were made of wood and wickerwork, dome-shaped and with thatched roofs. Those in the country were placed, if possible, in the vicinity of forests and streams for the sake of coolness.

59. **Towns.** — Walled towns constituted strongholds of refuge in time of war for the inhabitants of villages and of the open country.

60. **Stage of Civilization.** — The Gauls of Caesar's time had advanced far beyond a state of barbarism. Cattle-breeding, agriculture, mining, and intertribal commerce were conducted in an orderly way. Duties or tolls were levied on merchandise conveyed on the rivers, and a system of coinage had been developed. Traffic was carried on with the Britons, as well as with traders from the Roman province and the Greek city of Massilia. The more southern tribes, at least, had reduced their language to writing, employing Greek letters. Latin, too, was more or less familiar to the southern Celts. Education, rude as it was, must have been confined to a small portion of the inhabitants, particularly the druids. The tribes nearer the Roman province had lost something of their native vigor through contact with civilization, while the more remote Belgae retained in a greater degree their

originally rugged character. One strong Belgic tribe refused to allow the importation of wine and other enervating luxuries.

61. **Religion.** — The religion of the Gauls probably presented many variations of a loeal character. It was dominated by a priestly caste, the druids, who were not subject to military service or to taxation. One of their number held supreme authority as a sort of druidical pope. The druids exercised great influence, largely through their power of excommunicating those who refused obedience to their mandates. They had jurisdiction in religious matters, often also in civil cases. The secrets of their religious teachings were handed down orally, never committed to writing. Many novices were constantly under instruction, submitting to a long period of study. Those who wished to attain unusual proficiency in the mysteries went to Britain for study, where the Gauls themselves believed the druidical system to have originated.

Among their teachings was the immortality of the soul and its transmigration into other human beings. This belief, they thought, by removing the fear of death, afforded the most powerful inspiration to valorous conduct. Human sacrifices were still practiced, apparently, in Caesar's time. The victims were by preference criminals. Under Roman names, Caesar gives as the chief Gallic divinities Mercury, Apollo, Mars, Jupiter, and Minerva.

62. **Political and Social Organization.** — The Gallic states, or tribes, were divided into districts. Each tribe

had its council of elders, which Caesar calls by the Roman term *senatus*. Certain tribes had kings, probably all at an earlier date. By revolutions the majority had done away with monarchy, substituting an annually elected magistrate in some cases, while in others the senates alone seem to have exercised the powers of government.

63. In addition to the druids, there existed one other powerful class, that of the nobles or knights. It was perhaps from their numbers that the senates were formed. As the wealthy class, they appear to have held a monopoly of the land, and owned slaves. In the absence of well-organized institutions to secure justice, the lower classes were often oppressed by the more powerful, or were overwhelmed by debt. Large numbers, therefore, attached themselves to members of the nobility as free clients (*clientes*) or retainers, or even entered into a relation of serfdom or virtual slavery to their masters, expecting protection in return. A noble whose resources and retainers were sufficient might maintain a status virtually independent of the state.

64. **Factional Spirit.** — As a result of political and social conditions, each tribe was riven by factions. The same factional spirit so prevailed among the various tribes as to prevent the maturing of a national spirit. No regular councils of the Gallic tribes as a whole were held, though upon occasion delegates from a number of tribes would meet and agree to make common cause in war.

65. **Hegemony.** — Powerful tribes were sometimes able to establish sovereignty of varying degrees over their

a number of men noted in Latin literature, among them Vergil and Livy. The people north of the Po were clamoring for full Roman citizenship. In 67, on his journey home from Spain at the end of his quaestorship, Caesar is said to have urged these Transpadani to press their claim. Not until he himself gained control of the Roman government was the coveted citizenship bestowed.

Caesar refers to this province as *Gallia cisalpina, Gallia citerior, citerior provincia,* or simply as Italy.

THE TRANSALPINE PROVINCE.

68. To secure a land route to their Spanish domain, acquired at the close of the third century, it was necessary for the Romans to control the Gallic country along the Mediterranean. The first step toward this end was taken in 154, when Rome aided the allied Greek city of Massilia against the Ligurians, west of the Maritime Alps. Another campaign occurred in 125, likewise to assist Massilia. In 123 the Romans formed treaty relations with the Haedui, giving them the title of friends and allies. In 122 the town of Aquae Sextiae was founded. In 121 the Allobroges were brought under subjection, and at the same time a severe blow was dealt the power of the Arverni, who, with their client tribes, had come to the aid of the Allobroges. In 118 the colony of Narbo was founded, and about the same time the conquered territory was organized into a province, Massilia retaining its independence. From this time forward the process of introducing Roman civiliza-

tion went steadily on, Roman men of business settling in the country in large numbers.

The boundaries of the province were for the most part natural, the Alps, the Cevennes, and the river Rhone. Caesar refers to this province as *Gallia ulterior*, *Gallia provincia*, *ulterior provincia*, *provincia nostra*.

ILLYRICUM.

The province of Illyricum comprised the eastern coast of the Adriatic from the peninsula of Histria to Epirus.

The Romans first came into contact with the Illyrians about 233 B.C., when their Italian allies were suffering from the depredations of Illyrian pirates. A Roman army was sent to chastise the offenders. A second war occurred in 219, and further troubles in 168 caused the Romans to annex the country as a province. The ancient Illyrians are thought to be the ancestors of the modern Albanians.

This province played a relatively small part in Caesar's administrative duties as a provincial governor. He records but two visits to it, in the years 57 and 54.

BRITAIN.

69. The term Britain as used by Caesar included England, Scotland, and Wales. Ireland is mentioned under its ancient name of Hibernia. Mona is to be identified with Anglesey. Before Caesar's time there was but the vaguest idea of the island, though its tin mines seem to have been long known. Caesar's contribution to the knowledge of Britain, while not extensive, had at least the merit of first-hand information. He conceived its shape as triangular, estimating its circumference at two thousand Roman miles, somewhat more than the actual measurement.

The Britons of Cantium, or Kent, on the southeast coast, were in a more advanced stage of civilization than those farther inland. According to our author they were descendants of invaders from Belgium, differing but little from the northern Gauls. The tribes of the interior believed themselves to be indigenous. Probably all the inhabitants of Britain and Ireland were mainly of Celtic stock. The details of Caesar's description are found in Bk. V, 12–14.

The Romans did not gain a firm foothold in Britain until a century after Caesar's invasion, under the Emperor Claudius.

GERMANY.

70. The information given by Caesar with reference to Germany is the earliest from an authentic source. It is not extensive (Bk. IV, 1–3, and Bk. VI, 21–28), and must be supplemented from sources of a later date, Tacitus's *Germania* in particular.

Compared with the Gauls, in physical characteristics the Germans were of larger stature, but much resembled them otherwise. Their manner of life was of a ruder type, though no little diversity existed in the civilization of different tribes. The classes below the nobility enjoyed a much greater degree of independence and individual freedom. Some tribes had kings; in others, popular forms of government existed. According to the information obtained by Caesar, there was no private and individual ownership of land. Allotments of land, made to clans and families, were changed annually. Agriculture was not practiced so extensively as in Gaul. Caesar notes the absence of the druidical system. We know from Tacitus that there was a priestly caste possessing no little influence and power. The gods, according to Caesar, were those of nature, the Sun, Vulcan, Luna. Caesar's narrative will give sufficient information as to the prowess and military tactics of the Germans.

C. IULI CAESARIS

BELLI GALLICI

LIBER PRIMUS.

WAR WITH THE HELVETII, 1–29.

The divisions and peoples of Gaul.

1. Gallia **est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs**; **quārum ūnam incolunt** Belgae, **aliam** Aquītānī, **tertiam** quī **ipsōrum linguā** Celtae, **nostrā** Gallī **appellantur**. **Hī** omnēs linguā, **īnstitūtīs, lēgibus inter sē differunt.** Gallōs **ab** Aquītānīs Garumna **flūmen**, ā Belgīs Mātrona **et** Sēquana dīvidit.

Hōrum omnium **fortissimī** sunt Belgae, **propterea quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe** commeant atque ea, quae ad **effēminandōs animōs pertinent, important, proximī**que sunt Germānīs, quī **trāns** Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum **continenter bellum gerunt.** Quā **dē causā** Helvētiī **quoque reliquōs** Gallōs **virtūte** praecēdunt, quod **ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs** cum Germānīs **contendunt, cum aut suīs fīnibus** eōs **prohibent** aut ipsī in eōrum fīnibus bellum gerunt.

Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallōs **obtinēre dictum** est, **initium capit** ā flūmine Rhodanō; **continētur** Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, fīnibus Belgārum; **attingit etiam** ab

Sēquanīs et Helvētiīs flūmen Rhēnum; **vergit** ad **septentriōnēs**. Belgae ab **extrēmīs** Galliae fīnibus **oriuntur**, pertinent ad **īnferiōrem** partem flūminis Rhēnī, **spectant** in septentriōnem et orientem **sōlem**. Aquītānia **ā** Garumnā flūmine ad Pȳrēnaeōs **montēs** et eam partem Ōceanī, quae est ad Hispāniam, pertinet; spectat inter **occāsum** sōlis et septentriōnēs.

The Helvetii, led by Orgetorix, plan to migrate.

2. **Apud** Helvētiōs longē **nōbilissimus** fuit et dītissimus Orgetorīx. Is, M. Messālā et M. Pīsōne **cōnsulibus**, **rēgnī cupiditāte inductus coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit**, et **cīvitātī persuāsit**, **ut** dē fīnibus suīs cum omnibus **cōpiīs exīrent**; **perfacile** esse, cum virtūte omnibus **praestārent**, **tōtīus** Galliae **imperiō potīrī**.

Their motives.

Id hōc **facilius** eīs persuāsit, quod **undique locī nātūrā** Helvētiī continentur: ūnā **ex** parte flūmine Rhēnō **lātissimō** atque **altissimō**, quī **agrum** Helvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit; **alterā** ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā **lacū** Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiīs dīvidit. Hīs **rēbus fīēbat**, ut et **minus lātē vagārentur** et minus facile **fīnitimīs** bellum **īnferre possent**; quā ex parte **hominēs bellandī cupidī māgnō dolōre adficiēbantur**. **Prō multitūdine autem** hominum et prō **glōriā** bellī atque fortitūdinis **angustōs** sē fīnēs **habēre arbitrābantur**, quī in **longitūdinem mīlia passuum** CCXL, in **lātitūdinem** CLXXX **patēbant**.

Preparations for departure.

3. Hīs rēbus **adductī** et **auctōritāte** Orgetorīgis **permōtī cōnstituērunt** ea, quae ad **proficīscendum** pertinērent, **comparāre, iūmentōrum** et **carrōrum quam māximum numerum** coëmere, sēmentēs quam māximās facere, ut in **itinere** cōpia **frūmentī suppeteret,** cum proximīs cīvitātibus **pācem** et **amīcitiam cōnfīrmāre.** Ad eās rēs **cōnficiendās** biennium sibi **satis** esse **dūxērunt**; in tertium **annum profectiōnem** lēge cōnfīrmant.

Orgetorix and certain other Gallic chiefs plot to gain supreme power in their states.

Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās Orgetorīx **dux dēligitur.** Is sibi **lēgātiōnem** ad cīvitātēs **suscipit.** In eō itinere persuādet Casticō, Catamantaloedis **fīliō**, Sēquanō, cūius **pater** rēgnum in Sēquanīs **multōs** annōs obtinuerat et **ā senātū populī** Rōmānī **amīcus** appellātus erat, ut rēgnum in cīvitāte suā **occupāret,** quod pater **ante** habuerit; **item**que Dumnorīgī Haeduō, **frātrī** Dīviciācī, quī eō **tempore prīncipātum** in cīvitāte obtinēbat ac **māximē plēbī acceptus** erat, ut **idem cōnārētur,** persuādet eīque **fīliam** suam in **mātrimōnium dat.**

Perfacile factū esse **illīs probat** cōnāta **perficere,** proptereā quod ipse suae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrus esset; **nōn** esse dubium, **quīn** tōtīus Galliae **plūrimum** Helvētiī possent; sē suīs cōpiīs suōque **exercitū** illīs rēgna **conciliātūrum** cōnfīrmat. Hāc **ōrātiōne** adductī inter sē **fidem** et **iūs iūrandum** dant, et rēgnō occupātō **per** trēs **potentissimōs** ac **fīrmissimōs** populōs tōtīus Galliae sēsē potīrī posse **spērant.**

The plot is discovered. Death of Orgetorix.

4. Ea rēs est Helvētiīs per indicium **ēnūntiāta**. **Mōribus** suīs Orgetorīgem ex **vinculīs** causam dīcere **coēgērunt**; **damnātum poenam sequī oportēbat**, ut **ignī** cremāretur. **Diē** cōnstitūtā causae dictiōnis Orgetorīx ad **iūdicium** omnem suam **familiam**, ad hominum mīlia **decem**, undique coēgit, et omnēs **clientēs** obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum māgnum numerum habēbat, **eōdem condūxit**; per eōs, **nē** causam dīceret, sē **ēripuit**. Cum cīvitās **ob** eam rem **incitāta armīs** iūs suum exsequī cōnārētur multitūdinemque hominum ex agrīs **magistrātūs** cōgerent, Orgetorīx **mortuus** est; **neque** abest **suspīciō**, ut Helvētiī arbitrantur, quīn ipse sibi **mortem cōnscīverit**.

The Helvetii continue their preparations. Other peoples join them.

5. **Post** ēius mortem **nihilō** minus Helvētiī id, quod cōnstituerant, facere cōnantur, ut ē fīnibus suīs exeant. **Ubi iam** sē ad eam rem **parātōs** esse arbitrātī sunt, **oppida** sua omnia, numerō ad **duodecim**, **vīcōs** ad **quadringentōs**, reliqua **prīvāta aedificia incendunt**, frūmentum omne, **praeter** quod sēcum **portātūrī** erant, combūrunt, ut **domum** reditiōnis **spē sublātā** parātiōrēs ad omnia **perīcula subeunda** essent; trium **mēnsium** molita **cibāria** sibi **quemque** domō **efferre iubent**.

Persuādent Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrīgīs fīnitimīs, utī eōdem **ūsī cōnsiliō**, oppidīs suīs vīcīsque exustīs, **ūnā** cum eīs proficīscantur, Bōiōsque, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum **trānsierant** Nōrēiamque **oppūgnārant**, **receptōs** ad sē **sociōs** sibi **adsciscunt**.

The routes open to them.

6. Erant **omnīnō** itinera **duo**, quibus itineribus domō exīre possent: ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et **difficile**, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, **vix quā singulī** carrī dūcerentur, mōns autem altissimus **impendēbat**, ut facile **perpaucī** prohibēre possent; alterum per prōvinciam nostram, **multō facilius** atque **expedītius**, propereā quod inter fīnēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī **nūper pācātī** erant, Rhodanus **fluit** isque nōn **nūllīs** locīs **vadō** trānsītur.

They plan to pass through the Roman province.

Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvētiōrum fīnibus Genava. Ex eō oppidō **pōns** ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē **vel** persuāsūrōs, quod **nōndum bonō animō** in populum Rōmānum **vidērentur, existimābant**, vel **vī** coāctūrōs, ut per suōs fīnēs eōs **īre paterentur**. Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātīs diem dīcunt, quā diē ad **rīpam** Rhodanī omnēs **conveniant**. Is diēs erat a. d. v. Kal. Apr., L. Pīsōne, A. Gabīniō cōnsulibus.

Caesar arrives at Geneva.

7. Caesarī cum id **nūntiātum** esset, eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī, **mātūrat** ab **urbe** proficīscī, et quam māximīs potest itineribus in Galliam **ulteriōrem** contendit et ad Genavam **pervenit**. Prōvinciae tōtī quam māximum potest **mīlitum** numerum **imperat**, — erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre **legiō** ūna, — pontem, quī erat ad Genavam, iubet **rescindī**.

The Helvetii ask permission to go through the Roman province.

Ubi dē ēius **adventū** Helvētiī **certiōrēs** factī sunt, **lēgātōs** ad eum **mittunt** nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, cūius lēgātiōnis Nammēius et Verucloetius **prīncipem** locum obtinēbant, quī dīcerent, sibi esse in animō **sine ūllō maleficiō** iter per prōvinciam facere, proptereā quod aliud iter habērent nūllum; **rogāre**, ut ēius **voluntāte** id sibi facere **liceat**.

To gain time, Caesar delays his reply.

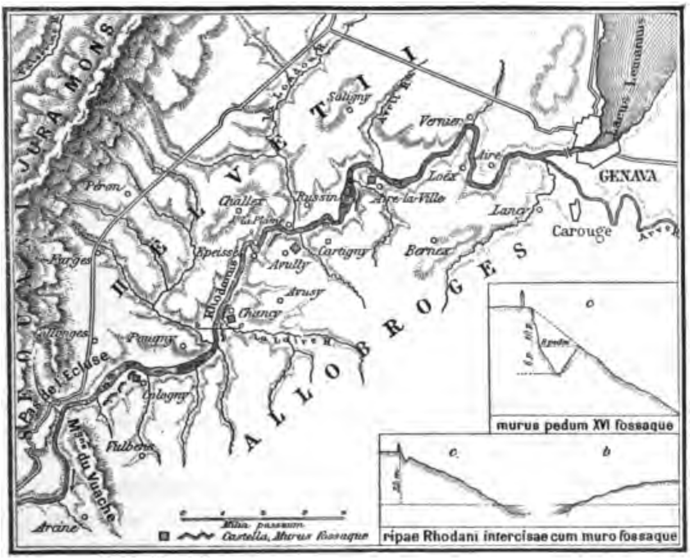
Caesar, quod **memoriā tenēbat**, L. Cassium cōnsulem **occīsum** exercitumque ēius ab Helvētiīs **pulsum** et **sub iugum** missum, **concēdendum** nōn **putābat**; neque hominēs **inimīcō** animō, datā **facultāte** per prōvinciam itineris faciundī, **temperātūrōs** ab **iniūriā** et maleficiō exīstimābat. **Tamen**, ut **spatium intercēdere** posset, **dūm** mīlitēs, quōs imperāverat, convenīrent, lēgātīs **respondit** diem sē ad **dēlīberandum sūmptūrum**; **sī quid vellent**, ad Īd. Aprīl. **reverterentur**.

He fortifies the southern bank of the Rhone.

8. Intereā eā legiōne, quam sēcum habēbat, mīlitibusque, quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum **influit**, ad montem Iūram, quī fīnēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiīs dīvidit, mīlia passuum XVIIII **mūrum** in **altitūdinem pedum** sēdecim **fossam**que **perdūcit**. Eō **opere perfectō praesidia dispōnit, castella commūnit, quō** facilius, sī sē **invītō** trānsīre cōnārentur, prohibēre posset.

The request of the Helvetii is denied.

Ubi ea diēs, quam cōnstituerat cum lēgātīs, **vēnit** et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, **negat**, sē mōre et **exemplō** populī Rōmānī posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare; et, sī vim facere cōnentur, prohibitūrum **ostendit**. Helvētiī eā



CAESAR'S FORTIFICATIONS ALONG THE RHONE.

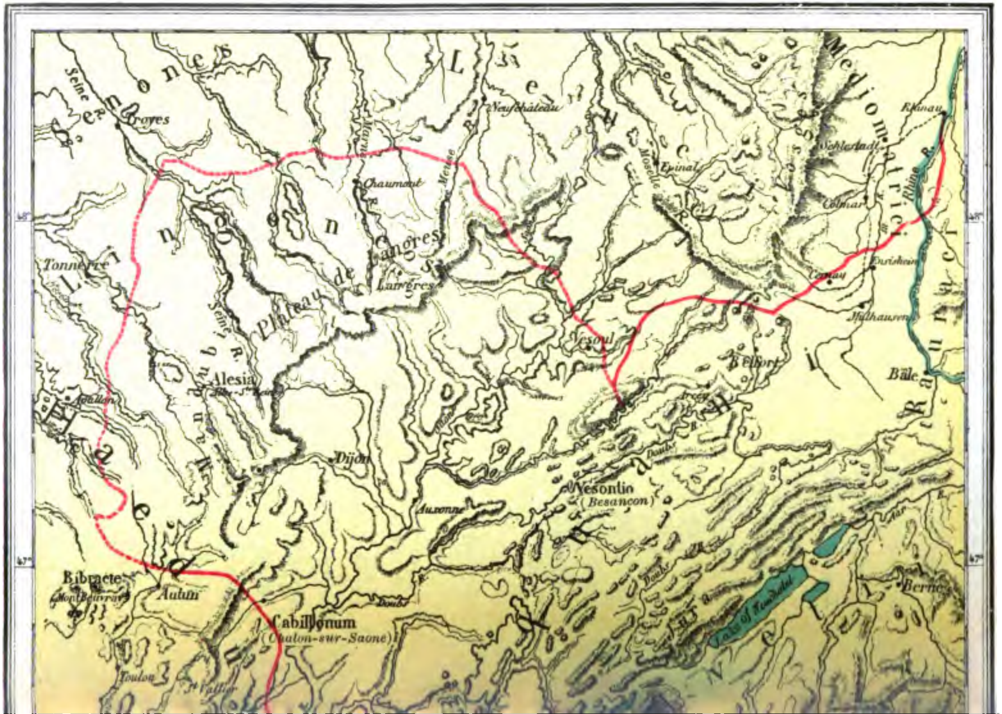
spē **dēiectī, nāvibus iūnctīs ratibusque complūribus** factīs, aliī vadīs Rhodanī, quā **minima** altitūdō flūminis erat, nōn **numquam** interdiū, saepius **noctū**, sī **perrumpere** possent, cōnātī, operis **mūnītiōne** et mīlitum **concursū** et **tēlīs repulsī** hōc cōnātū **dēstitērunt**.

The Sequani permit the Helvetii to pass through their country.

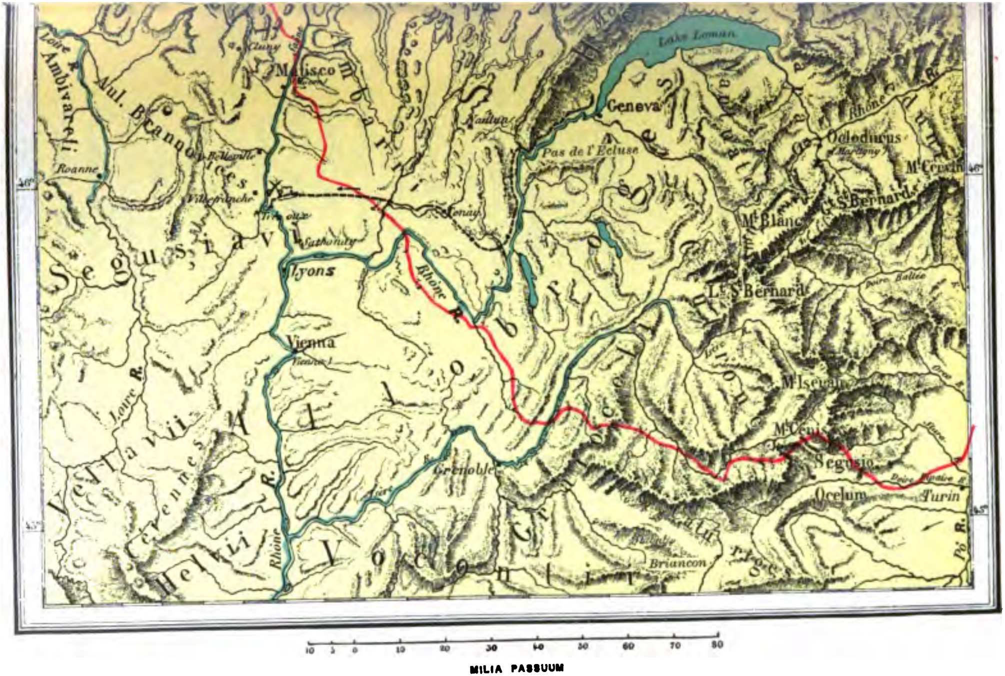
9. **Relinquēbātur** ūna per Sēquanōs **via,** quā Sēquanīs invītīs **propter angustiās** īre nōn poterant. Hīs cum suā **sponte** persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem Haeduum mittunt, ut eō dēprecātōre ā Sēquanīs **impetrārent.** Dumnorīx **grātiā** et largītiōne apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat, et Helvētiīs erat amīcus, quod ex eā cīvitāte Orgetorīgis fīliam in mātrimōnium dūxerat, et cupiditāte rēgnī adductus **novīs** rēbus **studēbat,** et quam plūrimās cīvitātēs suō **beneficiō** habēre **obstrictās** volēbat. **Itaque** rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat, ut per fīnēs suōs Helvētiōs īre patiantur, **obsidēs**que utī inter sēsē dent, perficit: Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant; Helvētiī, ut sine maleficiō et iniūriā trānseant.

Caesar resolves to prevent the migration of the Helvetii. He goes to Cisalpine Gaul to bring up additional troops.

10. Caesarī nūntiātur, Helvētiīs esse in animō per agrum Sēquanōrum et Haeduōrum iter in Santonum fīnēs facere, quī nōn longē ā Tolōsātium fīnibus absunt, quae cīvitās est in prōvinciā. Id sī fieret, **intellegēbat** māgnō cum perīculō prōvinciae futūrum, ut hominēs **bellicōsōs,** populī Rōmānī inimīcōs, locīs patentibus māximēque **frūmentāriīs** fīnitimōs habēret. Ob eās causās eī mūnītiōnī, quam fēcerat, T. Labiēnum lēgātum **praeficit**; ipse in Ītaliam māgnīs itineribus contendit duāsque **ibi** legiōnēs **cōnscrībit,** et trēs, quae **circum** Aquilēiam **hiemābant,** ex **hībernīs ēdūcit** et, quā proximum iter in ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpēs erat, cum hīs **quīnque** legiōnibus īre contendit.



Senones
Lingones
Leuci
Mediomatrici
Rauraci
Sequani
Haedui
Mandubii
Seine
Troyes
Tonnerre
Neufchâteau
Marne
Chaumont
Meuse
Langres
Plateau de Langres
Seine R.
Alesia
Moselle
Épinal
Schlestadt
Colmar
Rhine R.
Rhinau
Mulhausen
Bâle
Vesoul
Belfort
Dijon
Auxonne
Doubs
Vesontio
(Besançon)
Bibracte
(Mont Beuvray)
Autun
Cabillonum
(Chalon-sur-Saône)
Toulon
Lake of Neuchâtel
Berne



CAMPAIGN OF 58 B.C.

On his return the mountain tribes attack him, without success.

Ibi Ceutronēs et Graiocelī et Caturīgēs locīs **superiōribus** occupātīs itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. Complūribus hīs proeliīs pulsīs, ab Ocelō, quod est oppidum **citeriōris** prōvinciae extrēmum, in fīnēs Vocontiōrum ulteriōris prōvinciae diē **septimō** pervenit; **inde** in Allobrogum fīnēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt **extrā** prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum **prīmī**.

The Haedui and Allobroges appeal to him for protection against the Helvetii.

11. Helvētiī iam per angustiās et fīnēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās **trādūxerant**, et in Haeduōrum fīnēs pervēnerant eōrumque agrōs **populābantur**. Haeduī, cum sē suaque ab eīs **dēfendere** nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum **auxilium**: **ita** sē omnī tempore dē populō Rōmānō **meritōs** esse, ut **paene** in **cōnspectū** exercitūs nostrī agrī **vāstārī**, **līberī** eōrum in **servitūtem** abdūcī, oppida **expūgnārī** nōn **dēbuerint**.

Eōdem tempore Ambarrī, **necessāriī** et **cōnsanguineī** Haeduōrum, Caesarem certiōrem faciunt, sēsē, **dēpopulātīs** agrīs, nōn facile ab oppidīs vim **hostium** prohibēre. Item Allobrogēs, quī trāns Rhodanum vīcōs **possessiōnēs**que habēbant, **fugā** sē ad Caesarem recipiunt, et **dēmōnstrant**, sibi **praeter** agrī solum **nihil** esse reliquī. Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn **exspectandum** sibi **statuit**, dum omnibus **fortūnīs** sociōrum **cōnsūmptīs** in Santonōs Helvētiī pervenīrent.

Caesar routs a division of the Helvetii at the river Saône.

12. Flūmen est Arar, quod per fīnēs Haeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum īnfluit, **incrēdibilī** lēnitāte, ita ut **oculīs**, in **utram** partem fluat, **iūdicārī** nōn possit. Id Helvētiī ratibus ac **lintribus** iūnctīs trānsībant. Ubi per **ex-**



Gallic Soldier, Standard-bearer, and Officer.

plōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est, trēs iam partēs cōpiārum Helvētiōs id flūmen trādūxisse, **quārtam** ferē partem **citrā** flūmen Ararim reliquam esse, dē tertiā **vigiliā** cum legiōnibus tribus ē **castrīs** profectus ad eam partem

pervēnit, quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. Eōs **impedītōs** et **inopīnantēs adgressus** māgnam partem eōrum **concīdit**; reliquī sēsē fugae **mandārunt** atque in proximās **silvās abdidērunt.** Is **pāgus** appellābātur Tigurīnus; **nam** omnis cīvitās Helvētia in **quattuor** pāgōs dīvīsa est.

He thereby avenges the defeat of a Roman army.

Hīc pāgus ūnus, cum domō exīsset patrum nostrōrum memoriā, L. Cassium cōnsulem **interfēcerat** et ēius exercitum sub iugum mīserat. Ita **sīve cāsū** sīve cōnsiliō **deōrum immortālium**, quae pars cīvitātis Helvētiae **īnsīgnem calamitātem** populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea prīnceps poenās persolvit. Quā in rē Caesar nōn **sōlum pūblicās, sed** etiam prīvātās iniūriās **ultus** est, quod ēius socerī L. Pīsōnis **avum,** L. Pīsōnem lēgātum, Tigurīnī eōdem proeliō, quō Cassium, interfēcerant.

He crosses the Saône. The Helvetii send a deputation to him.

13. Hōc proelīo factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut **cōnsequī** posset, pontem in Ararī faciendum **cūrat** atque ita exercitum trādūcit. Helvētiī **repentīnō** ēius adventū **commōtī**, cum id, quod ipsī diēbus xx **aegerrimē** cōnfēcerant, ut flūmen trānsīrent, illum ūnō diē fēcisse intellegerent, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt; cūius lēgātiōnis Dīvicō prīnceps fuit, quī bellō Cassiānō dux Helvētiōrum fuerat.

Divico's speech.

Is ita cum Caesare **ēgit**: sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faceret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs Helvētiōs, ubi eōs Caesar cōnstituisset atque esse voluis-

set; **sīn** bellō **persequī persevērāret**, reminīscerētur et **veteris incommodī** populī Rōmānī et **prīstinae** virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod **imprōvīsō** ūnum pāgum **adortus** esset, cum eī, quī flūmen trānsīssent, suīs auxilium **ferre** nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut suae **māgnopere** virtūtī **tribueret** aut ipsōs **dēspiceret**. Sē ita ā patribus **māiōribusque** suīs **didicisse**, ut **magis** virtūte contenderent, quam **dolō** aut **īnsidiīs** nīterentur. **Quārē** nē **committeret**, ut is locus, ubi **cōnstitissent**, ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et **interneciōne** exercitūs **nōmen** caperet aut memoriam **prōderet**.

Caesar's reply.

14. Hīs Caesar ita respondit: **eō** sibi **minus dubitātiōnis** darī, quod eās rēs, quās lēgātī Helvētiī **commemorāssent**, memoriā tenēret, atque eō **gravius** ferre, quō minus **meritō** populī Rōmānī **accidissent**; quī sī **alicūius** iniūriae sibi cōnscius fuisset, nōn fuisse difficile cavēre; sed eō dēceptum, quod neque commissum ā sē intellegeret, quārē **timēret**, neque sine causā timendum putāret. Quod sī veteris **contumēliae** oblīvīscī vellet, num etiam **recentium** iniūriārum, quod eō invītō iter per prōvinciam per vim **temptāssent**, quod Haeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogas **vexāssent**, memoriam **dēpōnere** posse? Quod suā **victōriā tam** īnsolenter glōriārentur, quodque tam **diū** sē impūne iniūriās intulisse **admīrārentur**, eōdem pertinēre. **Cōnsuēsse enim** deōs immortālēs, quō gravius hominēs ex **commūtātiōne** rērum **doleant**, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcīscī velint, hīs **secundiōrēs interdum** rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere.

He offers terms of peace. The Helvetii reject them.

Cum ea ita sint, tamen, sī obsidēs ab eīs sibi dentur, utī ea, quae **polliceantur**, factūrōs intellegat, et sī Haeduīs dē iniūriīs, quās ipsīs sociīsque eōrum intulerint, item sī Allobrogibus **satisfaciant**, sēsē cum eīs pācem esse factūrum.

Dīvicō respondit: ita Helvētiōs ā maiōribus suīs **īnstitūtōs** esse, utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare cōnsuērint; ēius reī populum Rōmānum esse **testem**. Hōc **respōnsō** datō **discessit**.

The Roman cavalry meets with a reverse. Caesar continues his pursuit of the enemy.

15. **Posterō** diē castra ex eō locō **movent**. Idem facit Caesar **equitātum**que omnem, ad numerum quattuor mīlium, quem ex omnī prōvinciā et Haeduīs atque eōrum sociīs coāctum habēbat, **praemittit**, quī videant, quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant. Quī **cupidius** novissimum **agmen īnsecūtī aliēnō** locō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt; et **paucī** dē nostrīs **cadunt**. Quō proeliō sublātī Helvētiī, quod **quīngentīs equitibus tantam** multitūdinem equitum **prōpulerant**, **audācius** subsistere nōn numquam et novissimō agmine proeliō nostrōs **lacessere coepērunt**. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat ac satis habēbat in **praesentiā** hostem rapīnīs, pābulātiōnibus populātiōnibusque prohibēre. Ita diēs **circiter** xv iter fēcērunt, utī inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum prīmum nōn **amplius** quīnīs aut sēnīs mīlibus passuum **interesset**.

The Haedui fail to furnish grain.

16. Interim cotīdiē Caesar Haeduōs frūmentum, quod essent **pūblicē** pollicitī, flāgitāre. Nam propter **frīgora,** quod Gallia sub septentriōnibus, ut ante dictum est, **posita** est, nōn **modo** frūmenta in agrīs **mātūra** nōn erant, sed nē **pābulī quidem** satis māgna cōpia suppetēbat; eō autem frūmentō, quod flūmine Ararī nāvibus subvexerat, propterea ūtī minus poterat, quod iter ab Ararī Helvētiī **āverterant,** ā quibus discēdere **nōlēbat.** Diem ex diē dūcere Haeduī; **cōnferrī, comportārī, adesse** dīcere.

Caesar censures their chiefs.

Ubi sē diūtius dūcī intellēxit et diem **īnstāre,** quō diē frūmentum mīlitibus **mētīrī** oportēret, **convocātīs** eōrum prīncipibus, quōrum māgnam cōpiam in castrīs habēbat, in hīs Dīviciācō et Liscō, quī **summō** magistrātuī **praeerat,** quem vergobretum appellant Haeduī, quī creātur annuus et **vītae** necisque in suōs habet **potestātem,** graviter eōs **accūsat,** quod, cum neque **emī** neque ex agrīs sūmī possit, tam necessāriō tempore, tam **propinquīs** hostibus, ab eīs nōn **sublevētur**; **praesertim** cum māgnā ex parte eōrum **precibus** adductus bellum suscēperit, multō etiam gravius, quod sit dēstitūtus, **queritur.**

Liscus informs Caesar that one faction of the Haedui is hostile to the Romans.

17. Tum dēmum Liscus ōrātiōne Caesaris adductus, quod **anteā tacuerat, prōpōnit**: esse nōn nūllōs, quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimum **valeat,** quī **prīvātim plūs** possint quam ipsī magistrātūs. Hōs sēditiōsā atque

improbā ōrātiōne multitūdinem **dēterrēre**, nē frūmentum cōnferant, quod dēbeant: praestāre, sī iam prīncipātum Galliae obtinēre nōn possint, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia **perferre**; neque **dubitāre** dēbēre, quīn, sī Helvētiōs **superāverint** Rōmānī, ūnā cum reliquā Galliā Haeduīs **lībertātem** sint ēreptūrī. Ab īsdem nostra cōnsilia, quaeque in castrīs gerantur, hostibus ēnūntiārī; hōs ā sē **coërcērī** nōn posse. Quīn etiam, quod necessāriam rem coāctus Caesarī ēnūntiārit, intellegere sēse, **quantō** id cum perīculō fēcerit, et ob eam causam, quam diū potuerit, tacuisse.

Dumnorix the leader of the anti-Roman faction.

18. Caesar hāc ōrātiōne Liscī Dumnorīgem, Dīviciācī frātrem, dēsīgnārī **sentiēbat**; sed, quod plūribus **praesentibus** eās rēs **iactārī** nōlēbat, **celeriter concilium dīmittit**, Liscum **retinet**. **Quaerit** ex **sōlō** ea, quae in **conventū** dīxerat. Dīcit **līberius** atque audācius.

His ambitions.

Eadem **sēcrētō** ab aliīs quaerit; **reperit** esse **vēra**; ipsum esse Dumnorīgem, summā audāciā, māgnā apud plēbem propter **līberālitātem** grātiā, cupidum rērum novārum. Complūrēs annōs **portōria** reliquaque omnia Haeduōrum **vectīgālia parvō pretiō redēmpta** habēre, propterea quod, illō **licente, contrā** licērī **audeat nēmō**. Hīs rēbus et suam rem **familiārem auxisse** et facultātēs ad largiendum māgnās comparāsse; māgnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū **semper alere** et circum sē habēre, neque sōlum domī, sed etiam apud fīnitimās cīvitātēs largiter posse, atque huius

potentiae causā **mātrem** in Biturīgibus hominī illīc nōbilissimō ac potentissimō **conlocāsse**; ipsum ex Helvētiīs **uxōrem** habēre, **sorōrem** ex mātre et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās cīvitātēs conlocāsse. Favēre et **cupere** Helvētiīs propter eam **adfīnitātem**, **ōdisse** etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia ēius **dēminūta** et Dīviciācus frāter in **antīquum** locum grātiae atque **honōris** sit **restitūtus**. Sī quid accidat Rōmānīs, summam in spem per Helvētiōs **rēgnī** obtinendī venīre; imperiō populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā, quam habeat, grātiā **dēspērāre**.

His treachery in the cavalry skirmish.

Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō Caesar, quod proelium **equestre adversum** paucīs ante diēbus esset factum, initium ēius fugae factum ā Dumnorīge atque ēius equitibus — nam equitātuī, quem auxiliō Caesarī Haeduī mīserant, Dumnorīx praeerat; — eōrum fugā reliquum esse equitātum **perterritum**.

Caesar plans to have Dumnorix punished.

19. Quibus rēbus **cōgnitīs**, cum ad hās suspīciōnēs certissimae rēs **accēderent**, quod per fīnēs Sēquanōrum Helvētiōs trādūxisset, quod obsidēs inter eōs dandōs cūrāsset, quod ea omnia nōn modo **iniussū** suō et cīvitātis, sed etiam **īnscientibus** ipsīs fēcisset, quod ā magistrātū Haeduōrum accūsārētur, satis esse causae arbitrābātur, quārē in eum aut ipse **animadverteret** aut cīvitātem animadvertere iubēret.

He summons Diviciacus to an interview.

Hīs omnibus rēbus ūnum **repūgnābat**, quod Dīviciācī frātris summum in populum Rōmānum **studium**, summam in sē voluntātem, **ēgregiam** fidem, **iūstitiam**, temperantiam cōgnōverat; nam, nē ēius **suppliciō** Dīviciācī animum offenderet, **verēbātur.** Itaque **priusquam quicquam** cōnārētur, Dīviciācum ad sē **vocārī** iubet et, cotīdiānīs **interpretibus remōtīs**, per C. Valerium Troucillum, prīncipem Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem suum, cui summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat, cum eō **conloquitur**; **simul** commonefacit, quae ipsō praesente in conciliō Gallōrum dē Dumnorīge sint dicta, et ostendit, quae **sēparātim** quisque dē eō apud sē dīxerit. **Petit** atque **hortātur**, ut sine ēius offēnsiōne animī vel ipse dē eō causā cōgnitā statuat, vel cīvitātem statuere iubeat.

Diviciacus intercedes for his brother.

20. Dīviciācus multīs cum **lacrimīs** Caesarem complexus obsecrāre coepit, nē quid **gravius** in frātrem statueret: **scire** sē illa esse vēra, nec quemquam ex eō plūs quam sē dolōris capere, propterea quod, cum ipse grātiā plūrimum domī atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimum propter adulēscentiam posset, per sē crēvisset; quibus **opibus** ac nervīs nōn sōlum ad **minuendam** grātiam, sed paene ad **perniciem** suam ūterētur. Sēsē tamen et amōre **frāternō** et **existimātiōne vulgī** commovērī. Quod sī quid eī ā Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amīcitiae apud eum tenēret, nēminem exīstimātūrum nōn suā voluntāte factum; quā ex rē futūrum, utī tōtīus Galliae animī ā sē āverterentur.

Caesar pardons Dumnorix, with a warning.

Haec cum plūribus **verbīs flēns** ā Caesare peteret, Caesar ēius **dextram** prēndit; **cōnsōlātus** rogat, fīnem **ōrandī** faciat; tantī ēius apud sē grātiam esse ostendit, utī et **reī pūblicae** iniūriam et suum dolōrem ēius voluntātī **ac** precibus **condōnet.** Dumnorīgem ad sē vocat, frātrem **adhibet**; quae in eō **reprehendat,** ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae cīvitās querātur, prōpōnit; **monet,** ut in reliquum tempus omnēs suspīciōnēs **vītet**; praeterita sē Dīviciācō frātrī condōnāre dīcit. Dumnorīgī **custōdēs** pōnit, ut, quae agat, quibuscum **loquātur,** scīre possit.



IMPERATOR, LEGATUS, CENTURIO, LICTOR.

Caesar plans to attack the Helvetii.

21. Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus, hostēs sub monte **cōnsēdisse** mīlia passuum ab ipsīus **castrīs**

octō, **quālis** esset nātūra montis et quālis in **circuitū** **ascēnsus**, quī cōgnōscerent, mīsit. **Renūntiātum** est, facilem esse. Dē tertiā vigiliā T. Labiēnum, lēgātum prō praetōre, cum duābus legiōnibus et eīs ducibus, quī iter cōgnōverant, summum iugum montis **ascendere** iubet; quid suī cōnsilī sit, ostendit. Ipse dē quārtā vigiliā eōdem itinere, quō hostēs ierant, ad eōs contendit equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius, quī reī **mīlitāris** **perītissimus** habēbātur et in exercitū L. Sullae et **posteā** in M. Crassī fuerat, cum explōrātōribus praemittitur.

The plan fails through the mistake of an officer.

22. Prīmā **lūce**, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenērētur, ipse ab hostium castrīs nōn longius mīlle et quīngentīs passibus abesset, neque, ut posteā ex **captīvīs** **comperit**, aut ipsīus adventus aut Labiēnī cōgnitus esset, Cōnsidius **equō** **admissō** ad eum **accurrit**, dīcit montem, quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit, ab hostibus tenērī; id sē ā Gallicīs armīs atque **īnsīgnibus** cōgnōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum **collem** **subdūcit**, **aciem** **īnstruit**.

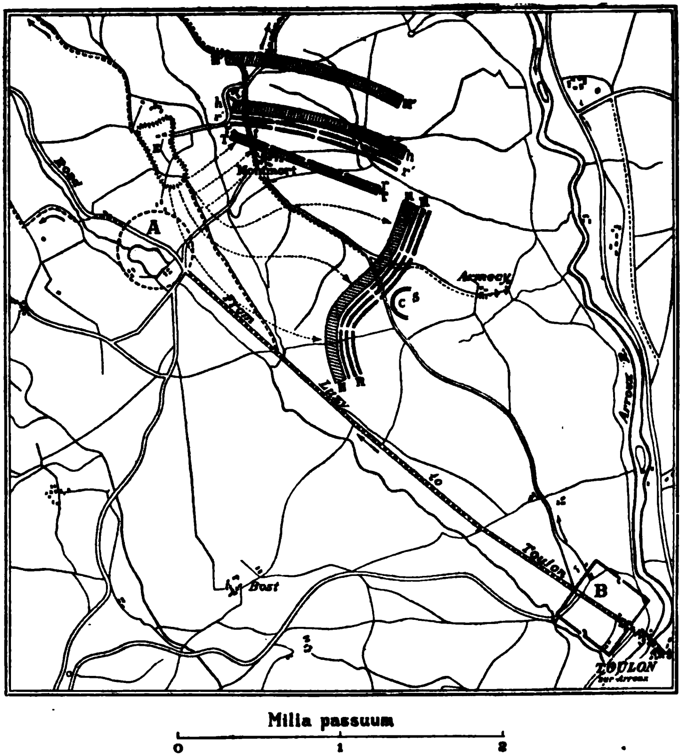
Labiēnus, ut erat eī **praeceptum** ā Caesare, nē proelium committeret, **nisi** ipsīus cōpiae **prope** hostium castra vīsae essent, ut undique ūnō tempore in hostēs **impetus** fieret, monte occupātō nostrōs exspectābat proeliōque abstinēbat. Multō **dēnique** diē per explōrātōrēs Caesar cōgnōvit, et montem ā suīs tenērī et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōnsidium **timōre** perterritum, quod nōn vīdisset, prō vīsō sibi renūntiāvisse. Eō diē, quō cōnsuērat **intervāllō**, hostēs sequitur et mīlia passuum tria ab eōrum castrīs castra pōnit.

The Roman army turns towards Bibracte for supplies. The Helvetii harass the Roman rear-guard.

23. **Postrīdiē** ēius diēī, quod omnīnō **bīduum supererat,** cum exercituī frūmentum mētīrī oportēret, et quod ā Bibracte, oppidō Haeduōrum longē māximō et cōpiōsissimō, nōn amplius mīlibus passuum XVIII aberat, reī **frūmentāriae prōspiciendum** exīstimāvit; itaque iter ab Helvētiīs āvertit ac Bibracte īre contendit. Ea rēs per fugitīvōs L. Aemilī, decuriōnis equitum Gallōrum, hostibus nūntiātur. Helvētiī, **seu** quod timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē exīstimārent, eō magis, quod **prīdiē,** superiōribus locīs occupātīs, proelium nōn commīsissent, sīve eō, quod rē frūmentāriā **interclūdī** posse **cōnfīderent, commūtātō** cōnsiliō atque itinere **conversō** nostrōs ā novissimō agmine īnsequī ac lacessere coepērunt.

Both sides are arrayed for battle. The Helvetii attack.

24. **Postquam** id animum advertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subdūxit equitātumque, quī **sustinēret** hostium impetum, mīsit. Ipse interim in colle **mediō triplicem** aciem īnstrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum; in summō iugō duās legiōnēs, quās in Galliā citeriōre **proximē** cōnscrīpserat, et omnia auxilia conlocārī, ac tōtum montem hominibus **complērī,** et intereā **sarcinās** in ūnum locum cōnferrī et eum ab eīs, quī in superiōre aciē cōnstiterant, **mūnīrī** iussit. Helvētiī cum omnibus suīs carrīs secūtī **impedīmenta** in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsī, **cōnfertissimā** aciē **rēiectō** nostrō equitātū, **phalange** factā sub prīmam nostram aciem **successērunt.**



THE BATTLE WITH THE HELVETII.

A. Helvetian camp on morning of battle.
B. Roman camp on morning of battle.
S. Summit of hill of Armecy.
C. Intrenchment made by recruits.
RR. Four veteran legions in line of battle.
HH. Helvetii in first attack.
H'H'. Helvetii in retreat.
TT. Boii and Tulingi.
r'. Roman 1st and 2d lines facing Helvetii.
rr. Roman 3d line facing Boii and Tulingi.
hh. Helvetii renewing attack.
E. Helvetian baggage in park.
———. Roman line of march.
- - - - -. Helvetian line of march.

A hard fight ensues.

25. Caesar, **prīmum** suō, **deinde** omnium ex cōnspectū remōtīs equīs, ut aequātō omnium perīculō spem fugae tolleret, **cohortātus** suōs proelium commīsit. Mīlitēs ē locō superiōre **pīlīs** missīs facile hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt. Eā **disiectā**, **gladiīs** dēstrictīs in eōs impetum fēcērunt. Gallīs māgnō ad **pūgnam** erat impedīmentō, quod plūribus eōrum **scūtīs** ūnō ictū pīlōrum **trānsfīxīs** et conligātīs, cum **ferrum** sē **inflexisset**, neque ēvellere neque **sinistrā** impedītā satis **commodē pūgnāre** poterant, multī ut diū iactātō bracchiō praeoptārent scūtum **manū ēmittere** et nūdō **corpore** pūgnāre.

The Helvetii give way. They are reinforced and rally again.

Tandem vulneribus dēfessī et pedem **referre** et, quod mōns aberat circiter mīlle passūs, eō sē recipere coepērunt. Captō monte et succēdentibus nostrīs, Bōiī et Tulingī, quī hominum mīlibus circiter xv agmen hostium **claudēbant** et novissimīs praesidiō erant, ex itinere nostrōs ab **latere apertō** adgressī **circumvenīre**, et id **cōnspicātī** Helvētiī, quī in montem sēsē recēperant, **rūrsus** īnstāre et proelium **redintegrāre** coepērunt. Rōmānī conversa **sīgna bipertītō** intulērunt; prīma et secunda aciēs, ut **victīs** ac **submōtīs resisteret**, tertia, ut venientēs sustinēret.

Their forces are finally crushed.

26. Ita ancipitī proeliō diū atque **ācriter** pūgnātum est. Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, alterī sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alterī ad

impedīmenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō, cum ab **hōrā** septimā ad **vesperum** pūgnātum sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam **noctem** etiam ad impedīmenta pūgnātum est, proptereā quod prō **vāllō** carrōs **obiēcerant** et ē locō superiōre in nostrōs venientēs tēla **cōiciēbant**, et nōn nūllī inter carrōs **raedās**que matarās ac **trāgulās subiciēbant** nostrōsque **vulnerābant.** Diū cum esset pūgnātum, impedīmentīs castrīsque nostrī potītī sunt. Ibi Orgetorīgis fīlia atque ūnus ē fīliīs captus est.

Caesar pursues the survivors.

Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum mīlia cxxx superfuērunt eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt, nūllam partem noctis itinere **intermissō**; in fīnēs Lingonum diē quārtō pervēnērunt, cum et propter vulnera mīlitum et propter sepultūram occīsōrum nostrī **trīduum morātī** eōs sequī nōn potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonas **litterās nūntiōs**que mīsit, nē eōs frūmentō **nēve** aliā rē **iuvārent**; quī sī iūvissent, sē eōdem locō, quō Helvētiōs, habitūrum. Ipse trīduō intermissō cum omnibus cōpiīs eōs sequī coepit.

They sue for peace.

27. Helvētiī omnium rērum **inopiā** adductī lēgātōs dē **dēditiōne** ad eum mīsērunt. Quī cum eum in itinere convēnissent sēque ad pedēs **prōiēcissent** suppliciterque locūtī flentēs pācem petīssent, atque eōs in eō locō, quō tum essent, suum adventum exspectāre iussisset, **pāruērunt.** Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, **servōs**, quī ad eōs **perfūgissent, poposcit.**

Six thousand flee, but are recaptured. Of the survivors, all but the Boii are sent back to their homes.

Dum ea **conquīruntur** et cōnferuntur, nocte intermissā, circiter hominum mīlia VI ēius pāgī, quī Verbigenus appellātur, sīve timōre perterritī, nē armīs **trāditīs** suppliciō adficerentur, sīve spē **salūtis** inductī, quod in tantā multitūdine **dēditīciōrum** suam fugam aut **occultārī** aut omnīnō **ignōrārī** posse exīstimārent, prīmā nocte ē castrīs Helvētiōrum **ēgressī** ad Rhēnum fīnēsque Germānōrum contendērunt.

28. Quod ubi Caesar resciit, quōrum per fīnēs ierant, hīs, utī conquīrerent et **redūcerent**, sī sibi **pūrgātī** esse vellent, imperāvit; reductōs in hostium numerō habuit; reliquōs omnēs obsidibus, armīs, **perfugīs** trāditīs in dēditiōnem accēpit.

Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrīgōs in fīnēs suōs, **unde** erant profectī, revertī iussit; et, quod omnibus frūgibus **āmissīs** domī nihil erat, quō **famem tolerārent**, Allobrogibus imperāvit, ut eīs frūmentī cōpiam facerent; ipsōs oppida vīcōsque, quōs incenderant, restituere iussit.

Id eā māximē **ratiōne** fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum, unde Helvētiī discesserant, **vacāre**, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum Germānī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ex suīs fīnibus in Helvētiōrum fīnēs trānsīrent et fīnitimī Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Bōiōs, petentibus Haeduīs, quod ēgregiā virtūte erant cōgnitī, ut in fīnibus suīs conlocārent, concessit; quibus illī agrōs dedērunt, quōsque posteā in **parem** iūris lībertātisque **condiciōnem**, atque ipsī erant, recēpērunt.

Enumeration of the Helvetii and their allies.

29. In castrīs Helvētiōrum **tabulae** repertae sunt litterīs Graecīs cōnfectae et ad Caesarem relātae, quibus in tabulīs **nōminātim** ratiō cōnfecta erat, quī numerus domō exīsset eōrum, quī arma ferre possent, et item sēparātim, **quot puerī**, senēs **mulierēsque**. Quārum omnium rērum **summa** erat **capitum** Helvētiōrum mīlium CCLXIII, Tulingōrum mīlium XXXVI, Latobrīgōrum XIIII, Rauracōrum XXIII, Bōiōrum XXXII; ex hīs, quī arma ferre possent, ad mīlia nōnāgintā duo. Summa omnium fuērunt ad mīlia CCCLXVIII. Eōrum, quī domum **rediērunt**, cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar imperāverat, repertus est numerus mīlium C et X.

WAR WITH ARIOVISTUS, 30–54.

Caesar receives the congratulations of Gallic chiefs.

30. Bellō Helvētiōrum cōnfectō, tōtīus ferē Galliae lēgātī, prīncipēs cīvitātum, ad Caesarem grātulātum convēnērunt: intellegere sēsē, **tametsī** prō veteribus Helvētiōrum iniūriīs populī Rōmānī ab hīs poenās bellō **repetīssent**, tamen eam rem nōn minus ex **ūsū terrae** Galliae quam populī Rōmānī accidisse, propterea quod eō cōnsiliō **flōrentissimīs** rēbus domōs suās Helvētiī relīquissent, utī tōtī Galliae bellum īnferrent imperiōque potīrentur locumque **domiciliō** ex māgnā cōpiā dēligerent, quem ex omnī Galliā **opportūnissimum** ac frūctuōsissimum iūdicāssent, reliquāsque cīvitātēs **stīpendiāriās** habērent.

He sanctions their plan for a general council.

Petiērunt, utī sibi concilium tōtīus Galliae in diem certam **indīcere** idque Caesaris voluntāte facere licēret; sēsē habēre **quāsdam** rēs, quās ex **commūnī cōnsēnsū** ab eō petere vellent. Eā rē **permissā**, diem conciliō cōnstituērunt et iūre iūrandō, nē quis ēnūntiāret, nisi quibus commūnī cōnsiliō mandātum esset, inter sē sānxērunt.

The chiefs return to Caesar and request a private interview.

31. Eō conciliō dīmissō, īdem prīncipēs cīvitātum, quī ante fuerant, ad Caesarem revertērunt petiēruntque, utī sibi sēcrētō dē suā omniumque salūte cum eō agere licēret. Eā rē impetrātā sēsē omnēs flentēs Caesarī ad pedēs prōiēcērunt: nōn minus sē id contendere et **labōrāre**, nē ea, quae dīxissent, ēnūntiārentur, quam utī ea, quae vellent, impetrārent, proptereā quod, sī ēnūntiātum esset, summum in **cruciātum** sē ventūrōs vidērent.

Speech of Diviciacus. Two factions divide the Celtic states. Settlement of Germans in Gaul.

Locūtus est prō hīs Dīviciācus Haeduus: Galliae tōtīus **factiōnēs** esse duās; hārum alterius prīncipātum tenēre Haeduōs, alterius Arvernōs. Hī cum tantopere dē potentātū inter sē multōs annōs contenderent, factum esse, utī ab Arvernīs Sēquanīsque Germānī mercēde **arcesserentur**. Hōrum **prīmō** circiter mīlia xv Rhēnum trānsīsse; **posteāquam** agrōs et cultum et cōpiās Gallōrum hominēs **ferī** ac **barbarī** adamāssent, trāductōs plūrēs; **nunc** esse in Galliā ad c et xx mīlium numerum.

The downfall of the Haeduan faction.

Cum hīs Haeduōs eōrumque clientēs **semel** atque **iterum** armīs contendisse; māgnam calamitātem pulsōs accēpisse, omnem nōbilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātum āmīsisse. Quibus proeliīs calamitātibusque **frāctōs**, quī et suā virtūte et populī Rōmānī **hospitiō** atque amīcitiā plūrimum ante in Galliā potuissent, coāctōs esse Sēquanīs obsidēs dare nōbilissimōs cīvitātis et iūre iūrandō cīvitātem obstringere, sēsē neque obsidēs repetītūrōs neque auxilium ā populō Rōmānō **implōrātūrōs** neque **recūsātūrōs**, **quōminus** perpetuō sub illōrum **diciōne** atque imperiō essent. Ūnum sē esse ex omnī cīvitāte Haeduōrum, quī addūcī nōn potuerit, ut iūrāret aut līberōs suōs obsidēs daret. Ob eam rem sē ex cīvitāte **profūgisse** et Rōmam ad senātum vēnisse auxilium **postulātum**, quod sōlus neque iūre iūrandō neque obsidibus tenērētur.

The Sequani are even more unfortunate.

Sed pēius **victōribus** Sēquanīs quam Haeduīs victīs accidisse, propterea quod Ariovistus, **rēx** Germānōrum, in eōrum fīnibus cōnsēdisset tertiamque partem agrī Sēquanī, quī esset **optimus** tōtīus Galliae, occupāvisset, et nunc dē alterā parte tertiā Sēquanōs **dēcēdere** iubēret, propterea quod paucīs mēnsibus ante Harūdum mīlia hominum XXIIII ad eum vēnissent, quibus locus ac **sēdēs parārentur.** Futūrum esse paucīs annīs, utī omnēs ex Galliae fīnibus pellerentur atque omnēs Germānī Rhēnum trānsīrent; neque enim cōnferendum esse Gallicum cum Germānōrum agrō, neque hanc **cōnsuētūdinem** vīctūs cum illā comparandam.

Tyranny of Ariovistus. Only Caesar and the Roman people can save the Gauls.

Ariovistum autem, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō vīcerit, quod proelium factum sit ad Magetobrigam, superbē et crūdēliter imperāre, obsidēs nōbilissimī cūiusque līberōs poscere et in eōs omnia exempla cruciātūsque ēdere, sī qua rēs nōn ad **nūtum** aut ad voluntātem ēius facta sit. Hominem esse barbarum, īrācundum, temerārium; nōn posse ēius imperia diūtius sustinērī. Nisi quid in Caesare populōque Rōmānō sit auxilī, omnibus Gallīs idem esse faciendum, quod Helvētiī fēcerint, ut domō ēmigrent, aliud domicilium, aliās sēdēs, remōtās ā Germānīs, petant fortūnamque, **quaecumque** accidat, **experiantur.**

Haec sī ēnūntiāta Ariovistō sint, nōn dubitāre, quīn dē omnibus obsidibus, quī apud eum sint, gravissimum supplicium sūmat. Caesarem vel auctōritāte suā atque exercitūs vel recentī victōriā vel nōmine populī Rōmānī dēterrēre posse, nē māior multitūdō Germānōrum Rhēnum trādūcātur, Galliamque omnem ab Ariovistī iniūriā posse dēfendere.

Oppression of the Sequani by Ariovistus.

32. Hāc ōrātiōne ab Dīviciācō habitā, omnēs, quī aderant, magnō **flētū** auxilium ā Caesare petere coepērunt. Animadvertit Caesar ūnōs ex omnibus Sēquanōs nihil eārum rērum facere, quās **cēterī** facerent, sed trīstēs capite **dēmissō** terram intuērī. Ēius reī quae causa esset, **mīrātus** ex ipsīs quaesiit. Nihil Sēquanī respondēre, sed in eādem trīstitiā tacitī **permanēre.** Cum ab hīs saepius

quaereret neque ūllam omnīnō **vōcem** exprimere posset, īdem Dīviciācus Haeduus respondit: hōc esse **miseriōrem** et graviōrem fortūnam Sēquanōrum quam reliquōrum, quod sōlī nē in **occultō** quidem querī neque auxilium implōrāre audērent **absentisque** Ariovistī crūdēlitātem, velut sī **cōram** adesset, horrērent, propterea quod reliquīs tamen fugae facultās darētur, Sēquanīs **vērō**, quī **intrā** fīnēs suōs Ariovistum recēpissent, quōrum oppida omnia in potestāte ēius essent, omnēs cruciātūs essent perferendī.

Caesar sets forth his reasons for determining to check the settlement of the Germans in Gaul.

33. Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs Caesar Gallōrum animōs verbīs cōnfīrmāvit pollicitusque est, sibi eam rem **cūrae** futūram; māgnam sē habēre spem, et beneficiō suō et auctōritāte adductum Ariovistum fīnem iniūriīs factūrum. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā concilium dīmīsit.

Et **secundum** ea multae rēs eum hortābantur, quārē sibi eam rem **cōgitandam** et suscipiendam putāret, in prīmīs, quod Haeduōs, frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque **saepenumerō** ā senātū appellātōs, in servitūte atque in diciōne vidēbat Germānōrum tenērī, eōrumque obsidēs esse apud Ariovistum ac Sēquanōs intellegēbat; quod in tantō imperiō populī Rōmānī **turpissimum** sibi et reī pūblicae esse arbitrābātur.

Paulātim autem Germānōs cōnsuēscere Rhēnum trānsīre et in Galliam māgnam eōrum multitūdinem venīre, populō Rōmānō perīculōsum vidēbat; neque sibi hominēs ferōs ac barbarōs temperātūrōs exīstimābat, quīn, cum omnem Galliam occupāvissent, ut ante Cimbrī Teutonī-

que fēcissent, in prōvinciam exīrent atque inde in Ītaliam contenderent, praesertim cum Sēquanōs ā prōvinciā nostrā Rhodanus dīvideret; quibus rēbus quam **mātūrrimē occurrendum** putābat. Ipse autem Ariovistus tantōs sibi **spīritūs**, tantam **arrogantiam** sūmpserat, ut ferendus nōn vidērētur.

He summons Ariovistus to an interview. Ariovistus refuses to come.

34. Quam ob rem **placuit** eī, ut ad Ariovistum lēgātōs mitteret, quī ab eō postulārent, utī aliquem locum medium **utrīusque conloquiō** dēligeret; velle sēsē dē rē pūblicā et summīs utrīusque rēbus cum eō agere. Eī lēgātiōnī Ariovistus respondit: sī quid ipsī ā Caesare **opus** esset, sēsē ad eum ventūrum fuisse; sī quid ille sē velit, illum ad sē venīre oportēre. **Praetereā** sē neque sine exercitū in eās partēs Galliae venīre audēre, quās Caesar **possidēret**, neque exercitum sine māgnō **commeātū** atque mōlīmentō in ūnum locum **contrahere** posse. Sibi autem **mīrum** vidērī, quid in suā Galliā, quam bellō vīcisset, aut Caesarī aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō **negōtī** esset.

Caesar makes certain demands of Ariovistus.

35. Hīs respōnsīs ad Caesarem relātīs, iterum ad eum Caesar lēgātōs cum hīs **mandātīs** mittit: **quoniam** tantō suō populīque Rōmānī beneficiō adfectus, cum in cōnsulātū suō rēx atque amīcus ā senātū appellātus esset, hanc sibi populōque Rōmānō grātiam referret, ut in conloquium venīre **invītātus** gravārētur neque dē commūnī rē discendum sibi et cōgnōscendum putāret, haec esse, quae

ab eō postulāret: prīmum, nē quam multitūdinem hominum amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādūceret; deinde, obsidēs, quōs habēret ab Haeduīs, **redderet**, Sēquanīsque permitteret, ut, quōs illī habērent, voluntāte ēius reddere illīs licēret; **nēve** Haeduōs iniūriā lacesseret, nēve hīs sociīsque eōrum bellum īnferret.

Sī id ita fēcisset, sibi populōque Rōmānō **perpetuam** grātiam atque amīcitiam cum eō futūram; sī nōn impetrāret, sēsē, quoniam M. Messālā, M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus senātus cēnsuisset, utī, quīcumque Galliam prōvinciam obtinēret, quod **commodō** reī pūblicae facere posset, Haeduōs cēterōsque amīcōs populī Rōmānī dēfenderet, sē Haeduōrum iniūriās nōn **neglēctūrum.**

Ariovistus replies defiantly.

36. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: iūs esse bellī, ut, quī vīcissent, eīs, quōs vīcissent, quem ad **modum** vellent, imperārent. Item populum Rōmānum victīs nōn ad alterius praescrīptum, sed ad suum arbitrium imperāre cōnsuēsse. Sī ipse populō Rōmānō nōn **praescrīberet,** quem ad modum suō iūre ūterētur, nōn oportēre sē ā populō Rōmānō in suō iūre impedīrī.

Haeduōs sibi, quoniam bellī fortūnam temptāssent et armīs **congressī** ac superātī essent, stīpendiāriōs esse factōs. Māgnam Caesarem iniūriam facere, quī suō adventū vectīgālia sibi dēteriōra faceret. Haeduīs sē obsidēs redditūrum nōn esse, neque hīs neque eōrum sociīs iniūriā bellum inlātūrum, sī in eō **manērent,** quod convēnisset, **stīpendium**que **quotannis penderent**; sī id nōn fēcissent,

longē eīs frāternum nōmen populī Rōmānī āfutūrum. Quod sibi Caesar **dēnūntiāret**, sē Haeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglēcturum, nēminem sēcum sine suā perniciē contendisse. Cum vellet, congrederētur; intellēctūrum, quid invictī Germānī, **exercitātissimī** in armīs, quī inter ānnōs XIIII tēctum nōn subīssent, virtūte possent.

The Haedui and Treveri complain of German oppression. Caesar hastens against Ariovistus:

37. Haec eōdem tempore Caesarī mandāta referēbantur, et lēgātī ab Haeduīs et ā Trēverīs veniēbant: Haeduī questum, quod Harūdēs, quī nūper in Galliam **trānsportātī** essent, fīnēs eōrum populārentur; sēsē nē obsidibus quidem datīs pācem Ariovistī redimere potuisse; Trēverī autem, pāgōs **centum** Suēbōrum ad rīpās Rhēnī cōnsēdisse, quī Rhēnum trānsīre cōnārentur; hīs praeesse Nasuam et Cimberium frātrēs. Quibus rēbus Caesar **vehementer** commōtus mātūrandum sibi exīstimāvit, nē, sī nova manus Suēbōrum cum veteribus cōpiīs Ariovistī sēsē **coniūnxisset**, minus facile resistī posset. Itaque rē frūmentāriā, quam celerrimē potuit, comparātā māgnīs itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

He forestalls Ariovistus in the occupation of Vesontio.

38. Cum triduī viam **prōcessisset**, nūntiātum est eī, Ariovistum cum suīs omnibus cōpiīs ad occupandum Vesontiōnem, quod est oppidum māximum Sēquanōrum, contendere trīduīque viam ā suīs fīnibus prōcessisse. Id nē accideret, māgnopere sibi praecavendum Caesar

exīstimābat. **Namque** omnium rērum, quae ad bellum ūsuī erant, summa erat in eō oppidō facultās, idemque nātūrā locī **sic** mūniēbātur, ut māgnam ad dūcendum bellum daret facultātem, proptereā quod flūmen Dūbis ut circinō **circumductum** paene tōtum oppidum **cingit**; reliquum spatium, quod est nōn amplius pedum MDC,

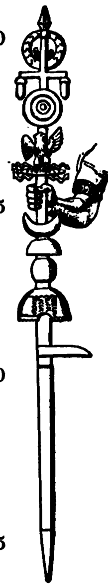


BESANÇON (VESONTIO).

quā flūmen intermittit, mōns continet māgnā altitūdine, ita, ut rādīcēs ēius montis ex utrāque parte rīpae flūminis **contingant.** Hunc mūrus **circumdatus** arcem **efficit** et cum oppidō coniungit. **Hūc** Caesar māgnīs **nocturnis** diurnīsque itineribus contendit occupātōque oppidō ibi praesidium conlocat.

Reports of German prowess cause a panic in the Roman army.

39. Dum paucōs diēs ad Vesontiōnem reī frūmentāriae commeātūsque causā morātur, ex **percontātiōne** nostrōrum vōcibusque Gallōrum ac mercātōrum, quī **ingentī māgnitūdine** corporum Germānōs, incrēdibilī virtūte atque **exercitātiōne** in armīs esse **praedicābant**, — saepenumerō sēsē cum hīs congressōs nē **vultum** quidem atque aciem oculōrum dīcēbant ferre potuisse, — tantus **subitō** timor omnem exercitum occupāvīt, ut nōn mediocriter omnium **mentēs** animōsque **perturbāret**.



SIGNUM.

Hīc prīmum ortus est ā **tribūnīs** mīlitum, **praefectīs** reliquīsque, quī ex urbe amīcitiae causā Caesarem secūtī nōn māgnum in rē mīlitārī ūsum habēbant; quōrum alius aliā causā inlātā, quam sibi ad proficīscendum necessāriam esse dīceret, petēbat, ut ēius voluntāte discēdere licēret; nōn nūllī **pudōre** adductī, ut timōris suspīciōnem vītārent, **remanēbant.** Hī neque vultum **fingere** neque interdum lacrimās tenēre poterant; abditī in tabernāculīs aut suum fātum querēbantur aut cum familiāribus suīs commūne perīculum miserābantur. Vulgō tōtīs castrīs testāmenta obsīgnābantur.

Hōrum vōcibus ac timōre paulātim etiam eī, quī māgnum in castrīs ūsum habēbant, mīlitēs **centuriōnēs**que quīque equitātuī praeerant, perturbābantur. Quī sē ex hīs minus timidōs exīstimārī volēbant, nōn sē hostem verērī, sed angustiās itineris et māgnitūdinem silvārum, quae in-

tercēderent inter ipsōs atque Ariovistum, aut rem frūmentāriam, ut satis commodē **supportārī** posset, timēre dīcēbant. Nōn nūllī etiam Caesarī nūntiābant, cum castra movērī ac sīgna ferrī iussisset, nōn fore **dictō audientēs** mīlitēs neque propter timōrem sīgna lātūrōs.

Caesar reproves his officers for their fears. Character of the enemy.

40. Haec cum animadvertisset, convocātō cōnsiliō omniumque **ōrdinum** ad id cōnsilium adhibitīs centuriōnibus vehementer eōs **incūsāvit**: prīmum, quod, aut quam in partem aut quō cōnsiliō dūcerentur, sibi quaerendum aut cōgitandum putārent. Ariovistum sē cōnsule cupidissimē populī Rōmānī amīcitiam **adpetīsse**; **cūr** hunc tam **temerē** quisquam ab **officiō** discessūrum iūdicāret? Sibi quidem persuādērī, cōgnitīs suīs **postulātīs** atque aequitāte condiciōnum **perspectā** eum neque suam neque populī Rōmānī grātiam repudiātūrum.

Quod sī **furōre** atque **āmentiā impulsus** bellum intulisset, quid tandem verērentur? Aut cūr dē suā virtūte aut dē ipsīus **dīligentiā** dēspērārent? Factum ēius hostis perīculum patrum nostrōrum memoriā, cum Cimbrīs et Teutonīs ā C. Mariō pulsīs nōn minōrem **laudem** exercitus quam ipse **imperātor** meritus vidēbātur; factum etiam nūper in Ītaliā servīlī **tumultū**, quōs tamen aliquid ūsus ac **disciplīna**, quam ā **nōbīs** accēpissent, sublevārent. Ex quō iūdicārī posse, quantum habēret in sē bonī cōnstantia, propterea quod, quōs **aliquamdiū inermēs** sine causā timuissent, hōs posteā **armātōs** ac victōrēs superāssent.

Dēnique hōs esse eōsdem Germānōs, quibuscum sae-

penumerō Helvētiī congressī nōn sōlum in suīs, sed etiam in illōrum fīnibus **plērumque** superārint, quī tamen parēs esse nostrō exercituī nōn potuerint. Sī quōs adversum proelium et fuga Gallōrum commovēret, hōs, sī quaererent, reperīre posse, **diūturnitāte** bellī **dēfatigātīs** Gallīs, Ariovistum, cum multōs mēnsēs castrīs sē ac **palūdibus** tenuisset neque suī potestātem fēcisset, dēspērantēs iam dē pūgnā et **dispersōs** subitō adortum magis ratiōne et cōnsiliō quam virtūte vīcisse. Cui ratiōnī contrā hominēs barbarōs atque **imperītōs** locus fuisset, hāc nē ipsum quidem spērāre nostrōs exercitūs capī posse.

Fears are groundless. It is the business of subordinates to obey without question. The army will march on at once.

Quī suum timōrem in reī frūmentāriae **simulātiōnem** angustiāsque itineris cōnferrent, facere arroganter, cum aut dē officiō imperātōris dēspērāre aut praescrībere vidērentur. Haec sibi esse cūrae; frūmentum Sēquanōs, Leucōs, Lingonēs **subministrāre**, iamque esse in agrīs frūmenta mātūra; dē itinere ipsōs **brevī** tempore iūdicātūrōs.

Quod nōn fore dictō audientēs neque sīgna lātūrī dīcantur, nihil sē eā rē commovērī; scīre enim, quibuscumque exercitus dictō audiēns nōn fuerit, aut male rē gestā fortūnam **dēfuisse**, aut aliquō **facinore** compertō avāritiam esse convictam. Suam innocentiam perpetuā vītā, fēlīcitātem Helvētiōrum bellō esse perspectam.

Itaque sē, quod in **longiōrem** diem conlātūrus fuisset, repraesentātūrum et proximā nocte dē quārtā vigiliā castra mōtūrum, ut quam prīmum intellegere posset,

utrum apud eōs pudor atque officium **an** timor plūs valēret. Quod sī praetereā nēmō sequātur, tamen sē cum sōlā **decimā** legiōne itūrum, dē quā nōn dubitāret, sibique eam **praetōriam cohortem** futūram. Huic legiōnī Caesar et indulserat praecipuē et propter virtūtem cōnfīdēbat māximē.

The soldiers apologize for their conduct. Caesar advances against Ariovistus.

41. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā, mīrum in modum conversae sunt omnium mentēs summaque **alacritās** et cupiditās bellī gerendī inlāta est, prīncepsque decima legiō per tribūnōs mīlitum eī grātiās ēgit, quod dē sē optimum iūdicium fēcisset, sēque esse ad bellum gerendum parātissimam cōnfīrmāvīt. Deinde reliquae legiōnēs cum tribūnīs mīlitum et prīmōrum ōrdinum centuriōnibus ēgērunt, utī Caesarī satisfacerent: sē neque **umquam** dubitāsse neque timuisse neque dē summā bellī suum iūdicium, sed imperātōris esse exīstimāvisse.

Eōrum satisfactiōne acceptā et itinere **exquīsītō** per Dīviciācum, quod ex Gallīs eī māximam fidem habēbat, ut mīlium amplius **quīnquāgintā** circuitū locīs apertīs exercitum dūceret, dē quārtā vigiliā, ut dīxerat, profectus est. Septimō diē, cum iter nōn intermitteret, ab explōrātōribus certior factus est, Ariovistī cōpiās ā nostrīs mīlia passuum IIII et XX abesse.

Ariovistus seeks an interview. Caesar consents, but takes precautions for his safety.

42. Cōgnitō Caesaris adventū Ariovistus lēgātōs ad eum mittit: quod anteā dē conloquiō postulāsset, id per



The Campaign against Ariovistus.

sē fierī licēre, quoniam propius accessisset sēque id sine perīculō facere posse exīstimāret. Nōn respuit condiciōnem Caesar iamque eum ad sānitātem revertī arbitrābātur, cum id, quod anteā petentī dēnegāsset, **ultrō** pollicērētur, māgnamque in spem veniēbat, prō suīs tantīs populīque Rōmānī in eum beneficiīs, cōgnitīs suīs postulātīs, fore, utī **pertināciā** dēsisteret. Diēs conloquiō dictus est ex eō diē **quīntus**. Interim saepe cum lēgātī ultrō citrōque inter eōs mitterentur, Ariovistus postulāvit, nē quem **peditem** ad conloquium Caesar addūceret; verērī sē, nē per īnsidiās ab eō circumvenīrētur; uterque cum equitātū venīret; aliā ratiōne sēsē nōn esse ventūrum.

Caesar, quod neque conloquium **interpositā** causā tollī volēbat neque salūtem suam Gallōrum equitātuī committere audēbat, commodissimum esse statuit, omnibus equīs Gallīs equitibus **dētractīs**, eō **legiōnāriōs** mīlitēs legiōnis decimae, cui quam māximē cōnfīdēbat, **impōnere**, ut praesidium quam amīcissimum, sī quid opus factō esset, habēret. Quod cum fieret, nōn inrīdiculē quīdam ex mīlitibus decimae legiōnis dīxit: plūs, quam pollicitus esset, Caesarem facere; pollicitum sē in cohortis praetōriae locō decimam legiōnem habitūrum, ad equum rescrībere.

The interview. Caesar reminds Ariovistus of the favors conferred upon him.

43. **Plānitiēs** erat māgna et in eā **tumulus** terrēnus satis grandis. Hīc locus **aequum** ferē spatium ā castrīs Ariovistī et Caesaris aberat. Eō, ut erat dictum, ad conloquium vēnērunt. Legiōnem Caesar, quam equīs **dēve-**

xerat, passibus cc ab eō tumulō cōnstituit. Item equitēs Ariovistī parī intervāllō cōnstitērunt. Ariovistus, ex equīs ut conloquerentur et praeter sē **dēnōs** ad conloquium addūcerent, postulāvit.

Ubi eō ventum est, Caesar initiō ōrātiōnis sua senātūsque in eum beneficia commemorāvit, quod rēx appellātus esset ā senātū, quod amīcus, quod mūnera **amplissima** missa; quam rem et paucīs contigisse et prō māgnīs hominum officiīs cōnsuēsse tribuī **docēbat**; illum, cum neque **aditum** neque causam postulandī **iūstam** habēret, beneficiō ac līberālitāte suā ac senātūs ea **praemia** cōnsecūtum.

Friendship of the Romans and Haedui. Caesar renews his demands.

Docēbat etiam, quam veterēs quamque iūstae causae necessitūdinis ipsīs cum Haeduīs intercēderent, quae senātūs cōnsulta, **quotiēns** quamque honōrifica in eōs facta essent, ut omnī tempŏre tōtīus Galliae prīncipātum Haeduī tenuissent, prius etiam quam nostram amīcitiam adpetīssent. Populī Rōmānī hanc esse cōnsuētūdinem, ut sociōs atque amīcōs nōn modo suī nihil **dēperdere,** sed grātiā, **dignitāte,** honōre auctiōrēs vellet esse; quod vērō ad amīcitiam populī Rōmānī **attulissent,** id eīs ēripī quis patī posset?

Postulāvit deinde eadem, quae lēgātīs in mandātīs dederat: nē aut Haeduīs aut eōrum sociīs bellum īnferret, obsidēs redderet, sī nūllam partem Germānōrum domum **remittere** posset, **at** nē quōs amplius Rhēnum trānsīre paterētur.

Ariovistus defends his occupation of Gallic territory.

44. Ariovistus ad postulāta Caesaris pauca respondit, dē suīs virtūtibus multa praedicāvit: trānsīsse Rhēnum sēsē nōn suā sponte, sed rogātum et arcessītum ā Gallīs; nōn sine māgnā spē māgnīsque praemiīs domum propinquōsque relīquisse; sēdēs habēre in Galliā ab ipsīs concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs; stīpendium capere iūre bellī, quod victōrēs victīs impōnere cōnsuērint. Nōn sēsē Gallīs, sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse; omnēs Galliae cīvitātēs ad sē oppūgnandum vēnisse ac contrā sē castra habuisse; eās omnēs cōpiās ā sē ūnō proeliō pulsās ac superātās esse. Sī iterum experīrī velint, sē iterum parātum esse **dēcertāre**; sī pāce ūtī velint, **inīquum** esse dē stīpendiō recūsāre, quod suā voluntāte ad id tempus pependerint.

Amīcitiam populī Rōmānī sibi ōrnāmentō et praesidiō, nōn **dētrīmentō** esse oportēre, atque sē hāc spē petīsse. Sī per populum Rōmānum stīpendium remittātur et dēditīciī subtrahantur, nōn minus **libenter** sēsē recūsātūrum populī Rōmānī amīcitiam, quam adpetierit.

He denies Roman authority in this part of Gaul.

Quod multitūdinem Germānōrum in Galliam trādūcat, id sē suī mūniendī, nōn Galliae oppūgnandae causā facere; ēius reī **testimōnium** esse, quod nisi rogātus nōn vēnerit et quod bellum nōn intulerit, sed dēfenderit. Sē prius in Galliam vēnisse quam populum Rōmānum. Numquam ante hōc tempus exercitum populī Rōmānī Galliae prōvinciae fīnibus ēgressum. Quid sibi vellet? Cūr in

suās possessiōnēs venīret? Prōvinciam suam hanc esse Galliam, **sicut** illam nostram. Ut ipsī concēdī nōn oportēret, sī in nostrōs fīnēs impetum faceret, sīc item nōs esse inīquōs, quod in suō iūre sē interpellārēmus.

He makes light of the friendship of the Romans and Haedui, and warns Caesar from the region.

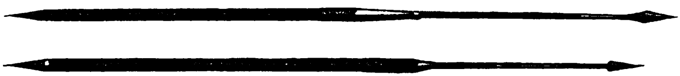
Quod frātrēs ā senātū Haeduōs appellātōs dīceret, nōn sē tam barbarum neque tam imperītum esse rērum, ut nōn scīret, neque bellō Allobrogum proximō Haeduōs Rōmānīs auxilium tulisse neque ipsōs in hīs **contentiōnibus**, quās Haeduī sēcum et cum Sēquanīs habuissent, auxiliō populī Rōmānī ūsōs esse.

Dēbēre sē **suspicārī**, **simulātā** Caesarem amīcitiā, quem exercitum in Galliā habeat, suī **opprimendī** causā habēre. Quī nisi dēcēdat atque exercitum **dēdūcat** ex hīs **regiōnibus**, sēsē illum nōn prō amīcō, sed prō hoste habitūrum. Quod sī eum interfēcerit, multīs sēsē nōbilibus prīncipibusque populī Rōmānī grātum esse factūrum, — id sē ab ipsīs per eōrum nūntiōs compertum habēre, — quōrum omnium grātiam atque amīcitiam ēius morte redimere posset. Quod sī dēcessisset et **līberam** possessiōnem Galliae sibi trādidisset, māgnō sē illum praemiō remūnerātūrum et, quaecumque bella gerī vellet, sine ūllō ēius **labōre** et perīculō cōnfectūrum.

Caesar asserts the priority of Roman authority in Gaul.

45. Multa ā Caesare in eam **sententiam** dicta sunt, quārē negōtiō dēsistere nōn posset: neque suam neque

populī Rōmānī cōnsuētūdinem patī, utī optimē meritōs sociōs **dēsereret**, neque sē iūdicāre, Galliam **potius** esse Ariovistī quam populī Rōmānī. Bellō superātōs esse Arvernōs et Rutēnōs a Q. Fabiō Māximō, quibus populus Rōmānus **ignōvisset** neque in prōvinciam **redēgisset** neque stīpendium imposuisset. Quod sī antīquissimum quodque tempus spectārī oportēret, populī Rōmānī iūstissimum esse in Galliā imperium; sī iūdicium senātūs **observārī** oportēret, līberam dēbēre esse Galliam, quam bellō victam suīs lēgibus ūtī voluisset.



PILA.

The German cavalry attacks the Roman cavalry. The conference breaks up.

46. Dum haec in conloquiō geruntur, Caesarī nūntiātum est, equitēs Ariovistī propius tumulum accēdere et ad nostrōs adequitāre, **lapidēs** tēlaque in nostrōs cōicere. Caesar loquendī fīnem fēcit sēque ad suōs recēpit suīsque imperāvit, nē quod omnīnō tēlum in hostēs rēicerent. Nam **etsī** sine ūllō perīculō legiōnis dēlēctae cum equitātū proelium fore vidēbat, tamen committendum nōn putābat, ut pulsīs hostibus dīcī posset, eōs ab sē per fidem in conloquiō circumventōs. Posteāquam in vulgus mīlitum ēlātum est, quā arrogantiā in conloquiō Ariovistus ūsus omnī Galliā Rōmānīs **interdīxisset**, impetumque ut in nostrōs ēius equitēs fēcissent eaque rēs

conloquium dīrēmisset, multō māior alacritās studiumque pūgnandī māius exercituī **iniectum** est.

Ariovistus seeks another interview.

47. Bīduō post Ariovistus ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīsit: velle sē dē eīs rēbus, quae inter eōs agī coeptae neque perfectae essent, agere cum eō; utī aut iterum conloquiō diem cōnstitueret, aut, sī id minus vellet, ex suīs lēgātīs aliquem ad sē mitteret. Conloquendī Caesarī causa vīsa nōn est, et eō magis, quod prīdiē ēius diēī Germānī retinērī nōn potuerant, quīn tēla in nostrōs cōicerent. Lēgātum ex suīs sēsē māgnō cum perīculō ad eum missūrum et hominibus ferīs obiectūrum exīstimābat.

Caesar sends representatives. Ariovistus puts them in chains.

Commodissimum vīsum est C. Valerium Procillum, C. Valerī Cabūrī fīlium, summā virtūte et humānitāte **adulēscentem**, cūius pater ā C. Valeriō Flaccō cīvitāte dōnātus erat, et propter fidem et propter linguae Gallicae **scientiam**, quā multā iam Ariovistus **longinquā** cōnsuētūdine ūtēbātur, et quod in eō peccandī Germānīs causa nōn esset, ad eum mittere, et ūnā M. Metium, quī hospitiō Ariovistī ūtēbātur.

Hīs mandāvit, ut, quae dīceret Ariovistus, cōgnōscerent et ad sē referrent. Quōs cum apud sē in castrīs Ariovistus **cōnspexisset**, exercitū suō praesente **conclāmāvit**: quid ad sē venīrent? an speculandī causā? Cōnantēs dīcere prohibuit et in **catēnās** coniēcit.

Ariovistus marches past Cæsar's camp. Cavalry skirmishes. The German style of cavalry battle.

48. Eōdem diē castra **prōmōvit** et mīlibus passuum VI ā Caesaris castrīs sub monte cōnsēdit. Postrīdiē ēius diēī praeter castra Caesaris suās cōpiās trādūxit et mīlibus passuum duōbus **ultrā** eum castra fēcit eō cōnsiliō, utī frūmentō commeātūque, quī ex Sēquanīs et Haeduīs supportārētur, Caesarem interclūderet. Ex eō diē diēs **continuōs** V Caesar prō castrīs suās cōpiās **prōdūxit** et aciem īnstrūctam habuit, ut, sī vellet Ariovistus proeliō contendere, eī potestās nōn deesset.

Ariovistus hīs omnibus diēbus exercitum castrīs continuit, equestrī proeliō cotīdiē contendit. **Genus** hōc erat pūgnae, quō sē Germānī **exercuerant.** Equitum mīlia erant VI, **totidem** numerō peditēs vēlōcissimī ac fortissimī, quōs ex omnī cōpiā singulī singulōs suae salūtis causā dēlēgerant; cum hīs in proeliīs **versābantur**, ad eōs sē equitēs recipiēbant; hī, sī quid erat **dūrius**, **concurrēbant**, sī quī graviōre vulnere acceptō equō dēciderat, **circumsistēbant**; sī quō erat longius **prōdeundum** aut celerius recipiendum, tanta erat hōrum exercitātiōne **celeritās**, ut iubīs sublevātī equōrum cursum **adaequārent.**

Caesar establishes a second camp. Ariovistus attacks it unsuccessfully.

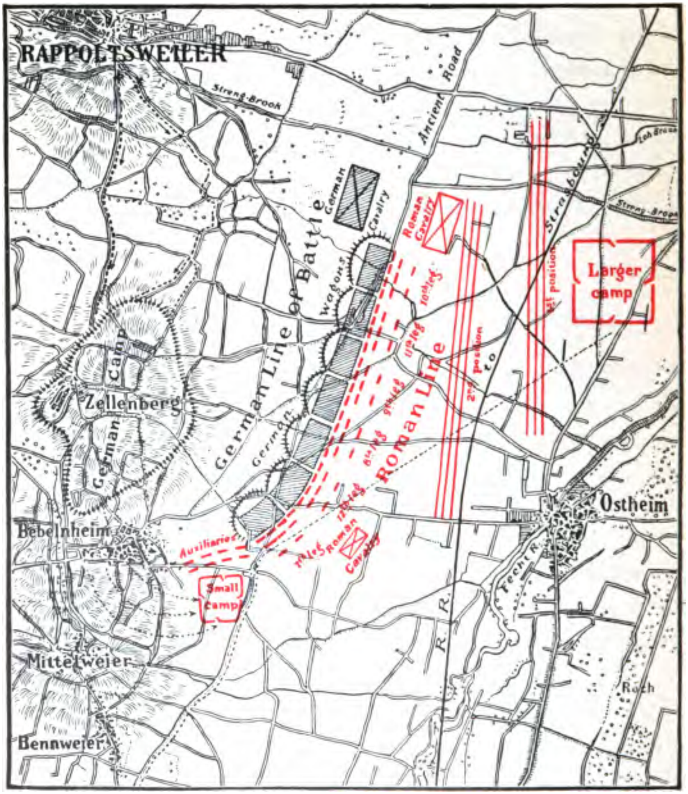
49. Ubi eum castrīs sē tenēre Caesar intellēxit, nē diūtius commeātū prohibērētur, ultrā eum locum, quō in locō Germānī cōnsēderant, circiter passūs DC ab hīs, castrīs **idōneum** locum dēlēgit aciēque triplicī īnstrūctā

ad eum locum vēnit. Prīmam et secundam aciem in armīs esse, tertiam castra mūnīre iussit. Hīc locus ab hoste circiter passūs DC, utī dictum est, aberat. Eō circiter hominum XVI mīlia expedīta cum omnī equitātū Ariovistus mīsit, quae cōpiae nostrōs **terrērent** et mūnītiōne prohibērent. Nihilō **sētius** Caesar, ut ante cōnstituerat, duās aciēs hostem prōpulsāre, tertiam opus perficere iussit. Mūnītīs castrīs duās ibi legiōnēs relīquit et partem auxiliōrum, quattuor reliquās in castra māiōra redūxit.

Caesar offers battle. The Germans await the new moon.

50. Proximō diē īnstitūtō suō Caesar ex castrīs utrīsque cōpiās suās ēdūxit, **paulum**que ā māiōribus castrīs **prōgressus** aciem īnstrūxit hostibusque pūgnandī potestātem fēcit. Ubi nē tum quidem eōs prōdīre intellēxit, circiter merīdiē exercitum in castra redūxit. Tum dēmum Ariovistus partem suārum cōpiārum, quae castra minōra oppūgnāret, mīsit. Ācriter **utrimque usque** ad vesperum pūgnātum est. Sōlis occāsū suās cōpiās Ariovistus multīs et inlātīs et acceptīs vulneribus in castra redūxit.

Cum ex captīvīs quaereret Caesar, quam ob rem Ariovistus proeliō nōn dēcertāret, hanc reperiēbat causam, quod apud Germānōs ea cōnsuētūdō esset, ut mātrēs familiae eōrum **sortibus** et vāticinātiōnibus dēclārārent, utrum proelium committī ex ūsū esset, necne; eās ita dīcere: nōn esse **fās** Germānōs superāre, sī ante novam **lūnam** proeliō contendissent.



THE BATTLE WITH ARIOVISTUS.

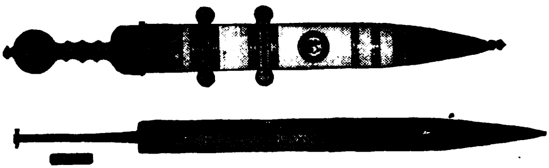
Caesar attacks the German camp. The Germans array for battle by tribes.

51. Postrīdiē ēius diēī Caesar praesidiō utrīsque castrīs, quod satis esse vīsum est, relīquit, **ālāriōs** omnēs in cōnspectū hostium prō castrīs minōribus cōnstituit, quod minus multitūdine mīlitum legiōnāriōrum prō hostium numerō valēbat, ut ad **speciem** ālāriīs ūterētur; ipse triplicī īnstrūctā aciē usque ad castra hostium accessit. Tum dēmum **necessāriō** Germānī suās cōpiās castrīs ēdūxērunt generātimque cōnstituērunt paribus intervāllīs, Harūdēs, Marcomannōs, Tribocōs, Vangionēs, Nemetēs, Sedusiōs, Suēbōs, omnemque aciem suam raedīs et carrīs circumdedērunt, nē qua spēs in fugā relinquerētur. Eō mulierēs imposuērunt, quae ad proelium proficīscentēs mīlitēs **passīs** manibus flentēs implōrābant, nē sē in servitūtem Romānīs trāderent.

A general engagement ensues. The Roman right wing victorious. The left in danger, reinforced by the reserves.

52. Caesar singulīs legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs et **quaestōrem** praefēcit, utī eōs testēs suae quisque virtūtis habēret; ipse ā dextrō **cornū**, quod eam partem minimē fīrmam hostium esse animadverterat, proelium commīsit. Ita nostrī ācriter in hostēs sīgnō datō impetum fēcērunt, itaque hostēs **repente** celeriterque **prōcurrērunt**, ut spatium pīla in hostēs cōiciendī nōn darētur. Rēiectīs pīlīs **comminus** gladiīs pūgnātum est. At Germānī celeriter ex cōnsuētūdine suā phalange factā impetūs gladiōrum **excēpērunt**. Repertī sunt complūrēs nostrī, quī in

phalanga īnsilīrent et scūta manibus revellerent et dēsuper vulnerārent. Cum hostium aciēs ā sinistrō cornū pulsa atque in fugam coniecta esset, ā dextrō cornū vehe-



GLADIUS.

menter multitūdine suōrum nostram aciem **premēbant**. Id cum animadvertisset P. Crassus adulēscēns, quī equitātuī praeerat, quod expedītior erat quam eī, quī inter aciem versābantur, tertiam aciem labōrantibus nostrīs **subsidiō** mīsit.

The Germans are completely routed. Caesar's deputies are rescued.

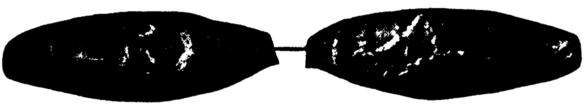
53. Ita proelium restitūtum est, atque omnēs hostēs **terga vertērunt** nec prius **fugere** dēstitērunt quam ad flūmen Rhēnum, mīlia passuum ex eō locō circiter v, pervēnērunt. Ibi perpaucī aut vīribus cōnfīsī trānāre contendērunt aut lintribus **inventīs** sibi salūtem repperērunt. In hīs fuit Ariovistus, quī nāviculam **dēligātam** ad rīpam **nactus** eā profūgit; reliquōs omnēs cōnsecūtī equitēs nostrī interfēcērunt. Duae fuērunt Ariovistī uxōrēs, ūna Suēba **nātiōne**, quam domō sēcum dūxerat, altera Nōrica, rēgis Vocciōnis soror, quam in Galliā dūxerat ā frātre missam; utraque in eā fugā **periit**; duae fīliae; hārum altera occīsa, altera capta est.

C. Valerius Procillus, cum ā custōdibus in fugā **trīnīs** catēnīs vīnctus traherētur, in ipsum Caesarem hostēs equitātū īnsequentem **incidit**. Quae quidem rēs Caesarī nōn minōrem quam ipsa victōria **voluptātem** attulit, quod hominem **honestissimum** prōvinciae Galliae, suum familiārem et **hospitem**, ēreptum ex manibus hostium sibi restitūtum vidēbat, neque ēius calamitāte dē tantā voluptāte et **grātulātiōne** quicquam fortūna dēminuerat. Is sē praesente dē sē ter sortibus **cōnsultum** dīcēbat, utrum īgnī **statim necārētur**, an in aliud tempus **reservārētur**; sortium beneficiō sē esse **incolumem**. Item M. Metius repertus et ad eum reductus est.

Caesar establishes his army in winter quarters and departs for Cisalpine Gaul.

54. Hōc proeliō trāns Rhēnum nūntiātō, Suēbī, quī ad rīpās Rhēnī vēnerant, domum revertī coepērunt; quōs Ubiī, quī proximī Rhēnum incolunt, perterritōs sēnsērunt; īnsecūtī māgnum ex eīs numerum occīdērunt.

Caesar, ūnā **aestāte** duōbus māximīs bellīs cōnfectīs, mātūrius **paulō**, quam tempus annī postulābat, in hīberna in Sēquanōs exercitum dēdūxit; hībernīs Labiēnum praeposuit; ipse in citeriōrem Galliam ad conventūs agendōs profectus est.



GLANS (used in the Civil War. Feri Pomp(eium)).

LIBER SECUNDUS.

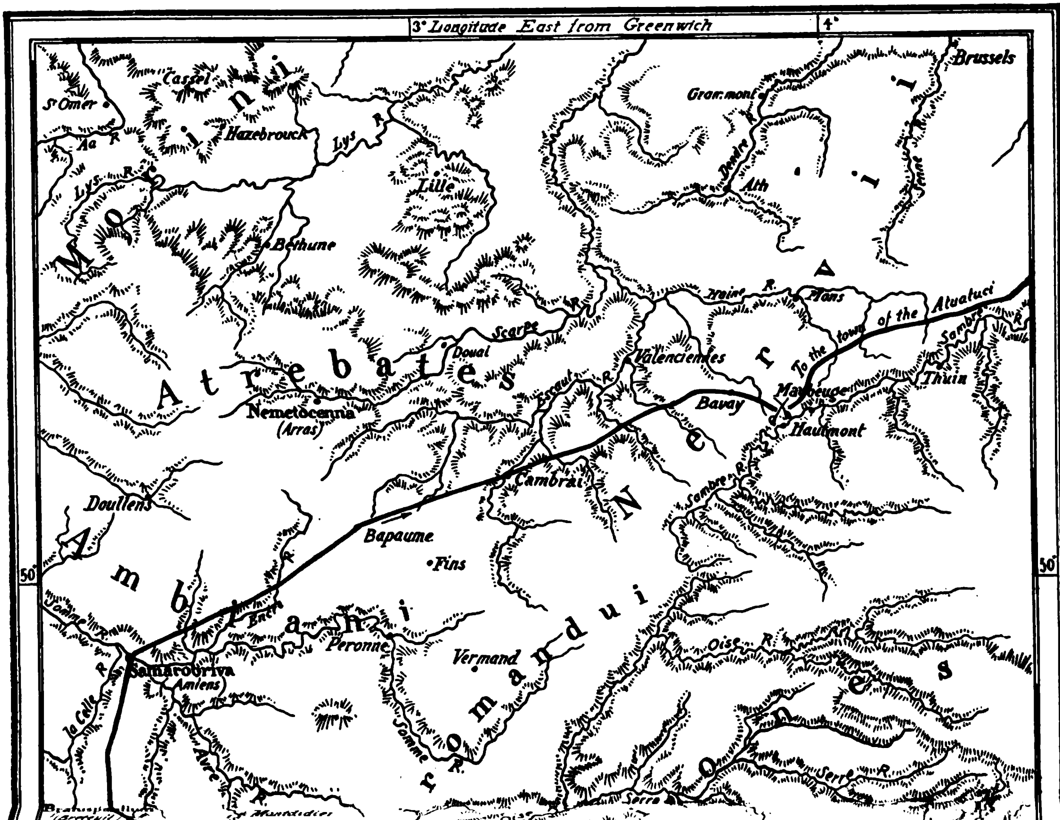
WAR WITH THE BELGAE, 1–33.

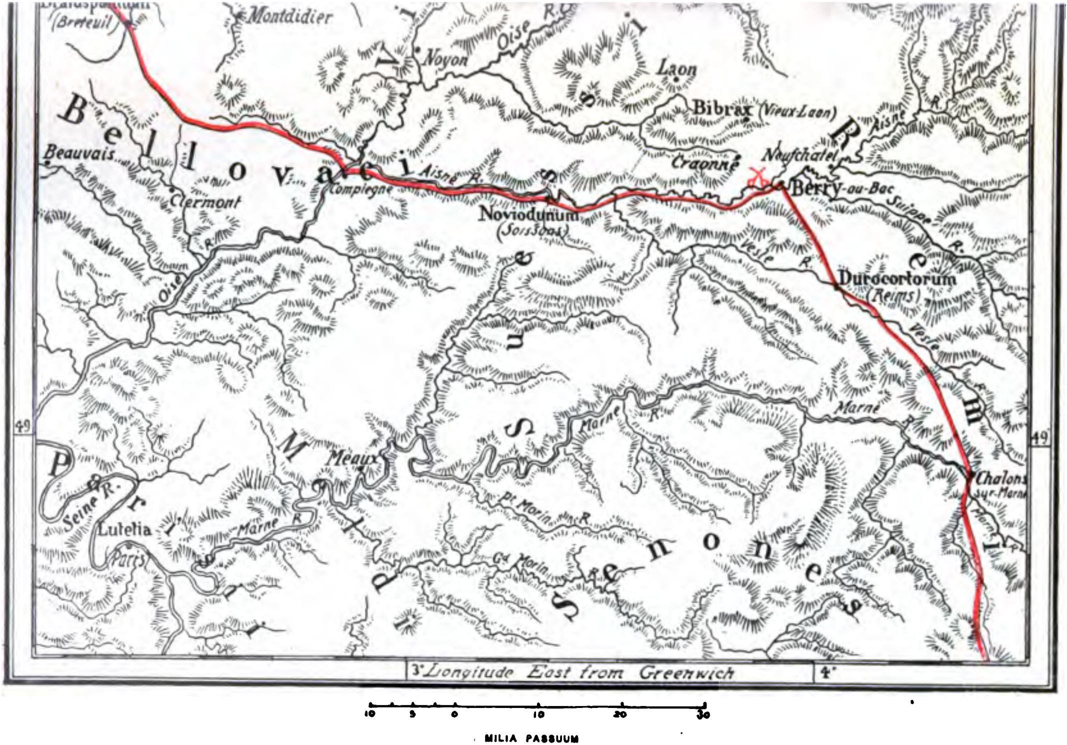
The Belgae form a league. Their motives.

1. Cum esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā, ita utī **suprā** dēmōnstrāvimus, **crēbrī** ad eum **rūmōrēs** adferēbantur, litterīsque item Labiēnī certior fīēbat, omnēs Belgās, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dīxerāmus, contrā populum Rōmānum **coniūrāre** obsidēsque inter sē dare. Coniūrandī hās esse causās: prīmum, quod verērentur, nē omnī pācātā Galliā ad eōs exercitus noster addūcerētur; deinde, quod ab nōn nūllīs Gallīs **sollicitārentur, partim** quī, ut Germānōs diūtius in Galliā versārī nōluerant, ita populī Rōmānī exercitum hiemāre atque **inveterāscere** in Galliā molestē ferēbant, partim quī **mōbilitāte** et **levitāte** animī novīs imperiīs studēbant; ab nōn nūllīs etiam, quod in Galliā ā potentiōribus atque eīs, quī ad condūcendōs hominēs facultātēs habēbant, **vulgō** rēgna occupābantur; quī minus facile eam rem imperiō nostrō cōnsequī poterant.

Caesar enlists two new legions and advances against the Belgae. The Remi ally themselves with him.

2. Hīs nūntiīs litterīsque commōtus Caesar duās legiōnēs in citeriōre Galliā novās cōnscrīpsit et **initā**


3° Longitude East from Greenwich
4°
50°
Morini
Atrebates
Nervii
Ambiani
Veromandui
Suessiones
Brussels
Grammont
Ath
Dendre R.
Senne
Mons
Haine R.
To the town of the Atuatuci
Sambre R.
Thuin
Maubeuge
Haumont
Bavay
Valenciennes
Escaut R.
Scarpe
Douai
Lille
Lys R.
St Omer
Cassel
Hazebrouck
Aa R.
Bethune
Nemetocenna
(Arras)
Cambrai
Bapaume
Fins
Doullens
Somme R.
Samarobriva
Amiens
Peronne
Vermand
Ancre
Avre
La Celle
Oise R.
Serre R.



CAMPAIGN OF 57 B.C.

aestāte, in ulteriōrem Galliam quī dēdūceret, Q. Pedium lēgātum mīsit. Ipse, cum prīmum pābulī cōpia esse **inciperet**, ad exercitum vēnit. Dat negōtium Senonibus reliquīsque Gallīs, quī fīnitimī Belgīs erant, utī ea, quae apud eōs gerantur, cōgnōscant sēque dē hīs rēbus certiōrem faciant. Hī **cōnstanter** omnēs nūntiāvērunt, manūs cōgī, exercitum in ūnum locum condūcī. Tum vērō dubitandum nōn exīstimāvit, quīn ad eōs proficīscerētur. Rē frūmentāriā prōvīsā castra movet diēbusque circiter xv ad fīnēs Belgārum pervenit.

3. Eō cum dē imprōvīsō celeriusque omnium **opiniōne** vēnisset, Rēmī, quī proximī Galliae ex Belgīs sunt, ad eum lēgātōs Iccium et Andebrogium, prīmōs cīvitātis, mīsērunt, quī dīcerent, sē suaque omnia in fidem atque potestātem populī Rōmānī permittere, neque sē cum reliquīs Belgīs **cōnsēnsisse** neque contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāsse, parātōsque esse et obsidēs dare et **imperāta** facere et oppidīs recipere et frūmentō cēterīsque rēbus iuvāre; reliquōs omnēs Belgās in armīs esse, Germānōsque, quī **cis** Rhēnum incolant, sēsē cum hīs coniūnxisse, tantumque esse eōrum omnium furōrem, ut nē Suessiōnēs quidem, frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque suōs, quī eōdem iūre et īsdem lēgibus ūtantur, ūnum imperium ūnumque magistrātum cum ipsīs habeant, dēterrēre potuerint, quīn cum hīs cōnsentīrent.

Origin of the Belgae. Strength of the Belgian contingents.

4. Cum ab eīs quaereret, quae cīvitātēs quantaeque in armīs essent et quid in bellō possent, sīc reperiēbat:

plērōsque Belgās esse ortōs ā Germānīs, Rhēnumque **antīquitus** trāductōs propter locī fertilitātem ibi cōnsēdisse Gallōsque, quī ea loca incolerent, **expulisse**, sōlōsque esse, quī patrum nostrōrum memoriā, omnī Galliā vexātā, Teutonōs Cimbrōsque intrā suōs fīnēs **ingredī** prohibuerint; quā ex rē fierī, utī eārum rērum memoriā māgnam sibi auctōritātem māgnōsque spīritūs in rē mīlitārī sūmerent.

Dē numerō eōrum omnia sē habēre **explōrāta** Rēmī dīcēbant, proptereā quod **propinquitātibus** adfīnitātibusque coniūnctī, quantam quisque multitūdinem in commūnī Belgārum conciliō ad id bellum pollicitus sit, cōgnōverint. Plūrimum inter eōs Bellovacōs et virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum numerō valēre; hōs posse cōnficere armāta mīlia centum, pollicitōs ex eō numerō ēlēcta mīlia LX tōtīusque bellī imperium sibi postulāre. Suessiōnēs suōs esse fīnitimōs; fīnēs lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possidēre. Apud eōs fuisse rēgem nostrā etiam memoriā Dīviciācum, tōtīus Galliae potentissimum, quī cum māgnae partis hārum regiōnum, tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuerit; nunc esse rēgem Galbam; ad hunc propter iūstitiam prūdentiamque summam tōtīus bellī omnium voluntāte **dēferrī**; oppida habēre numerō XII, pollicērī mīlia armāta L; totidem Nerviōs, qui māximē ferī inter ipsōs habeantur longissimēque absint; XV mīlia Atrebātēs, Ambiānōs X mīlia, Morinōs XXV mīlia, Menapiōs VII mīlia, Caletōs X mīlia, Veliocassēs et Viromanduōs totidem, Atuatucōs XVIIII mīlia; Condrūsōs, Eburōnēs, Caerōsōs, Caemānōs, quī ūnō nōmine Germānī appellantur, arbitrārī ad XL mīlia.

The Remi give hostages. The Haedui are directed to invade the country of the Bellovaci. Caesar encamps across the river Aisne.

5. Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus **līberāliterque** ōrātiōne **prōsecūtus** omnem senātum ad sē convenīre prīncipumque līberōs obsidēs ad sē addūcī iussit. Quae omnia ab hīs **dīligenter** ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Dīviciācum Haeduum māgnopere cohortātus docet, quantō opere reī pūblicae commūnisque salūtis intersit manūs hostium **distinērī**, nē cum tantā multitūdine ūnō tempore **cōnflīgendum** sit. Id fierī posse, sī suās cōpiās Haeduī in fīnēs Bellovacōrum **intrōdūxerint** et eōrum agrōs populārī coeperint. Hīs datīs mandātīs eum ā sē dīmittit.

Postquam omnēs Belgārum cōpiās in ūnum locum coāctās ad sē venīre vīdit, neque iam longē abesse ab eīs, quōs mīserat, explōrātōribus et ab Rēmīs cōgnōvit, flūmen Axonam, quod est in extrēmīs Rēmōrum fīnibus, exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit atque ibi castra posuit. Quae rēs et latus ūnum castrōrum rīpīs flūminis mūniēbat et, post eum quae erant, **tūta** ab hostibus reddēbat et, commeātūs ab Rēmīs reliquīsque cīvitātibus ut sine perīculō ad eum portārī possent, efficiēbat. In eō flūmine pōns erat. Ibi praesidium pōnit et in alterā parte flūminis Q. Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum cum **sex** cohortibus relinquit; castra in altitūdinem pedum XII vāllō fossāque **duodēvīgintī** pedum mūnīrī iubet.

The Belgae attack Bibrax, stronghold of the Remi.

6. Ab hīs castrīs oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Bibrax aberat mīlia passuum VIII. Id ex itinere māgnō impetū Belgae oppūgnāre coepērunt. Aegrē eō diē **sustentātum**

est. Gallōrum eadem atque Belgārum **oppūgnātiō** est haec. Ubi, circumiectā multitūdine hominum tōtīs **moenibus**, undique in mūrum lapidēs **iacī** coeptī sunt mūrusque **dēfēnsōribus nūdātus** est, **testūdine** factā succēdunt mūrumque subruunt. Quod tum facile fīēbat. Nam cum tanta multitūdō lapidēs ac tēla cōicerent, in mūrō cōnsistendī potestās erat nūllī. Cum fīnem oppūgnandī nox fēcisset, Iccius Rēmus, summā nōbilitāte et grātiā inter suōs, quī tum oppidō praeerat, ūnus ex eīs, quī lēgātī dē pāce ad Caesarem vēnerant, nūntiōs ad eum mittit, nisi subsidium sibi **submittātur**, sēsē diūtius sustinēre nōn posse.

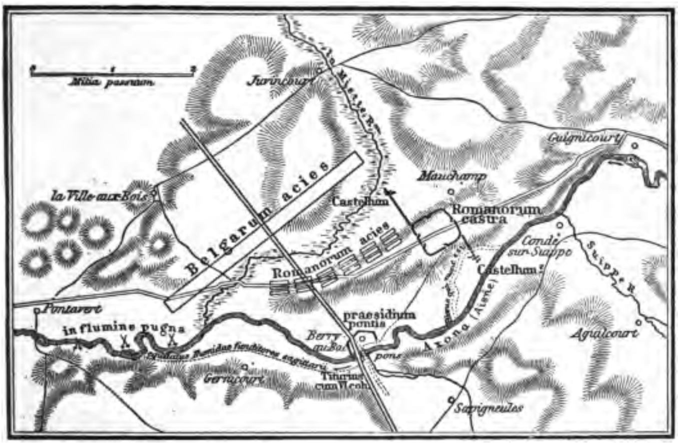
Caesar sends aid. The Belgae march against him.

7. Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar īsdem ducibus ūsus, quī nūntiī ab Icciō vēnerant, Numidās et Crētas **sagittāriōs** et **funditōrēs** Baleārēs subsidiō **oppidānīs** mittit; quōrum adventū et Rēmīs cum spē dēfēnsiōnis studium **prōpūgnandī** accessit et hostibus eādem dē causā spēs potiundī oppidī discessit. Itaque **paulisper** apud oppidum morātī agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulātī, omnibus vīcīs aedificiīsque, quō **adīre** potuerant, incēnsīs, ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiīs contendērunt et ā mīlibus passuum minus duōbus castra posuērunt; quae castra, ut **fūmō** atque īgnibus **sīgnificābātur**, amplius mīlibus passuum VIII in lātitūdinem patēbant.

Caesar tests his men in cavalry skirmishes. He prepares for battle. Description of the ground.

8. Caesar prīmō et propter multitūdinem hostium et propter eximiam opīniōnem virtūtis proeliō supersedēre

statuit; cotīdiē tamen equestribus proeliīs, quid hostis virtūte posset et quid nostrī audērent, perīclitābātur. Ubi nostrōs nōn esse īnferiōrēs intellēxit, locō prō castrīs ad aciem īnstruendam nātūrā opportūnō atque idōneō, quod is collis, ubi castra posita erant, paululum ex plānitiē **ēditus** tantum adversus in lātitūdinem patēbat, quantum



THE BATTLE AT THE AISNE.

locī aciēs īnstrūcta occupāre poterat, atque ex utrāque parte lateris **dēiectūs** habēbat et in **fronte lēniter** fastīgātus paulātim ad plānitiem redībat, ab utrōque latere ēius collis trānsversam fossam obdūxit circiter passuum cccc, et ad extrēmās fossās castella cōnstituit ibique **tormenta** conlocāvit, nē, cum aciem īnstrūxisset, hostēs, quod tantum multitūdine poterant, ab lateribus pūgnantēs suōs circumvenīre possent. Hōc factō, duābus legiō-

nibus, quās proximē cōnscrīpserat, in castrīs relictīs, ut, sī quō opus esset, subsidiō dūcī possent, reliquās VI legiōnēs prō castrīs in aciē cōnstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpias ex castrīs ēductās īnstrūxērunt.

The Belgae are repulsed in crossing the river.

9. Palūs erat nōn māgna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc sī nostrī trānsīrent, hostēs exspectābant; nostrī autem, sī ab illīs initium trānseundī fieret, ut impedītōs adgrederentur, parātī in armīs erant. Interim proeliō equestrī inter duās aciēs contendēbātur. Ubi neutrī trānseundī initium faciunt, secundiōre equitum proeliō nostrīs, Caesar suōs in castra redūxit. Hostēs **prōtinus** ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt, quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est. Ibi vadīs repertīs partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnātī sunt eō cōnsiliō, ut, sī possent, castellum, cui praeerat Q. Titūrius lēgātus, expūgnārent pontemque interscinderent, sī minus potuissent, agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur, quī māgnō nōbīs ūsuī ad bellum gerendum erant, commeātūque nostrōs prohibērent.

10. Caesar certior factus ab Titūriō omnem equitātum et **levis armātūrae** Numidās, funditōrēs sagittāriōsque ponte trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Ācriter in eō locō pūgnātum est. Hostēs impedītōs nostrī in flūmine adgressī māgnum eōrum numerum occīdērunt; per eōrum corpora reliquōs audācissimē trānsīre cōnantēs multitūdine tēlōrum reppulērunt prīmōsque, quī trānsierant, equitātū circumventōs interfēcērunt.



1. Funditor. 2. Levis Armaturae Pedes. 3. Legionarii Milites.

They decide to retire to their respective territories.

Hostēs, ubi et dē expūgnandō oppidō et dē flūmine trānseundō spem sē **fefellisse** intellēxērunt, neque nostrōs in locum inīquiōrem prōgredī pūgnandī causā vīdērunt, atque ipsōs rēs frūmentāria **dēficere** coepit, conciliō convocātō cōnstituērunt, optimum esse domum suam quemque revertī, et quōrum in fīnēs prīmum Rōmānī exercitum intrōdūxissent, ad eōs dēfendendōs undique convenīrent, ut potius in suīs quam in aliēnīs fīnibus dēcertārent et **domesticīs** cōpiīs reī frūmentāriae ūterentur. Ad eam sententiam cum reliquīs causīs haec quoque ratiō eōs dēdūxit, quod Dīviciācum atque Haeduōs fīnibus Bello-

vacōrum **adpropinquāre** cōgnōverant. Hīs persuādērī, ut diūtius morārentur neque suīs auxilium ferrent, nōn poterat.

Retreat of the Belgae. The Roman cavalry is sent in pursuit and inflicts great loss.

11. Eā rē cōnstitūtā, secundā vigiliā māgnō cum **strepitū** ac tumultū castrīs ēgressī nūllō certō ōrdine neque imperiō, cum sibi quisque prīmum itineris locum peteret et domum pervenīre **properāret**, fēcerunt, ut **cōnsimilis** fugae profectiō vidērētur. Hāc rē statim Caesar per **speculātōrēs** cōgnitā, īnsidiās veritus, quod, quā dē causā discēderent, nōndum perspexerat, exercitum equitātumque castrīs continuit. Prīmā lūce cōnfīrmātā rē ab explōrātōribus, omnem equitātum, quī novissimum agmen morārētur, praemīsit. Hīs Q. Pedium et L. Aurunculēium Cottam lēgātōs praefēcit; T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus **subsequī** iussit.

Hī novissimōs adortī et multa mīlia passuum prōsecūtī māgnam multitūdinem eōrum fugientium concīdērunt, cum ab extrēmō agmine, ad quōs ventum erat, cōnsisterent **fortiter**que impetum nostrōrum mīlitum sustinērent, **priōrēs**, quod abesse ā perīculō vidērentur neque ūllā **necessitāte** neque imperiō continērentur, **exaudītō clāmōre** perturbātīs ōrdinibus omnēs in fugā sibi praesidium pōnerent. Ita sine ūllō perīculō tantam eōrum multitūdinem nostrī interfēcērunt, quantum fuit diēī spatium; sub occāsum sōlis sequī dēstitērunt sēque in castra, ut erat imperātum, recēpērunt.

Caesar attacks Noviodunum. The Suessiones surrender.

12. Postrīdiē ēius diēī Caesar, priusquam sē hostēs ex **terrōre** ac fugā reciperent, in fīnēs Suessiōnum, quī proximī Rēmīs erant, exercitum dūxit et māgnō itinere ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id ex itinere oppūgnāre cōnātus, quod **vacuum** ab dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātitūdinem fossae mūrīque altitūdinem, paucīs dēfendentibus, expūgnāre nōn potuit. Castrīs mūnītīs **vīneās** agere, quaeque ad oppūgnandum ūsuī erant, comparāre coepit. Interim omnis ex fugā Suessiōnum multitūdō in oppidum proximā nocte convēnit. Celeriter vīneīs ad oppidum āctīs, **aggere** iactō **turribus**que cōnstitūtīs, māgnitūdine operum, quae neque vīderant ante Gallī neque audierant, et celeritāte Rōmānōrum permōtī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditiōne mittunt et, petentibus Rēmīs, ut **cōnservārentur**, impetrant.

Caesar marches into the country of the Bellovaci, who sue for peace.

13. Caesar obsidibus acceptīs prīmīs cīvitātis atque ipsīus Galbae rēgis duōbus fīliīs, armīsque omnibus ex oppidō trāditīs, in dēditiōnem Suessiōnēs accipit exercitumque in Bellovacōs dūcit. Quī cum sē suaque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent atque ab eō oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter mīlia passuum v abesset, omnēs maiōrēs **nātū** ex oppidō ēgressī manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce sīgnificāre coepērunt, sēsē in ēius fidem ac potestātem venīre neque contrā populum Rōmānum armīs contendere. Item, cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, puerī mulierēsque ex mūrō passīs manibus suō mōre pācem ab Rōmānīs petiērunt.



GALLIC WALL.

Caesar receives them under his protection, out of deference to the Haedui. The Ambiani also submit.

14. Prō hīs Dīviciācus — nam post **discessum** Belgārum dīmissīs Haeduōrum cōpiīs ad eum reverterat — facit verba: Bellovacōs omnī tempore in fidē atque amīcitiā cīvitātis Haeduae fuisse; impulsōs ab suīs prīncipibus, quī dīcerent, Haeduōs ā Caesare in servitūtem redāctōs omnēs indīgnitātēs contumēliāsque perferre, et ab Haeduīs dēfēcisse et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Quī ēius cōnsilī prīncipēs fuissent, quod intellegerent, quantam calamitātem cīvitātī intulissent,

in Britanniam profūgisse. Petere nōn sōlum Bellovacōs, sed etiam prō hīs Haeduōs, ut suā **clēmentiā** ac **mānsuētūdine** in eōs ūtātur. Quod sī fēcerit, Haeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnēs Belgās amplificātūrum, quōrum auxiliīs atque opibus, sī qua bella inciderint, sustentāre cōnsuērint.

15. Caesar honōris Dīviciācī atque Haeduōrum causā sēsē eōs in fidem receptūrum et cōnservātūrum dīxit, et quod erat cīvitās māgnā inter Belgās auctōritāte atque hominum multitūdine praestābat, DC obsidēs poposcit. Hīs trāditīs omnibusque armīs ex oppidō conlātīs, ab eō locō in fīnēs Ambiānōrum pervēnit; quī sē suaque omnia sine **morā dēdidērunt.**

Character of the Nervii. Caesar invades their country. They encamp south of the river Sambre.

Eōrum fīnēs Nerviī attingēbant. Quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sīc reperiēbat: nūllum esse aditum ad eōs mercātōribus; nihil patī **vīnī** reliquārumque rērum ad lūxuriam pertinentium īnferrī, quod hīs rēbus relanguēscere animōs et remittī virtūtem exīstimārent; esse hominēs ferōs māgnaeque virtūtis; **increpitāre** atque incūsāre reliquōs Belgās, quī sē populō Rōmānō dēdidissent patriamque virtūtem prōiēcissent; cōnfīrmāre, sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque ūllam condiciōnem pācis acceptūrōs.

16. Cum per eōrum fīnēs trīduum iter fēcisset, inveniēbat ex captīvīs, Sabim flūmen ā castrīs suīs nōn amplius mīlia passuum x abesse; trāns id flūmen omnēs Nerviōs cōnsēdisse adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum exspectāre ūnā

cum Atrebātibus et Viromanduīs, fīnitimīs suīs — nam hīs utrīsque persuāserant, utī eandem bellī fortūnam experīrentur; — exspectārī etiam ab eīs Atuatucōrum cōpiās atque esse in itinere; mulierēs, quīque per **aetātem** ad pūgnam **inūtilēs** vidērentur, in eum locum coniēcisse, quō propter palūdēs exercituī aditus nōn esset.

Caesar selects a site for a camp. The Nervii plan to surprise his troops.

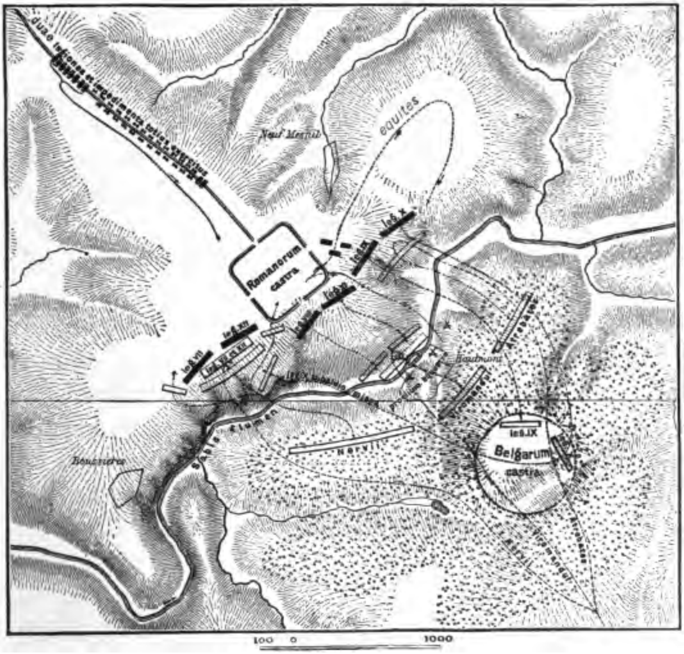
17. Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs explōrātōrēs centuriōnēsque praemittit, quī locum castrīs idōneum dēligant. Cum ex dēditīciīs Belgīs reliquīsque Gallīs complūrēs Caesarem secūtī ūnā iter facerent, quīdam ex hīs, ut posteā ex captīvīs cōgnitum est, eōrum diērum cōnsuētūdine itineris nostrī exercitūs perspectā, nocte ad Nerviōs pervēnērunt atque hīs dēmōnstrārunt, inter singulās legiōnēs impedīmentōrum māgnum numerum intercēdere, neque esse quicquam negōtī, cum prīma legiō in castra vēnisset reliquaeque legiōnēs māgnum spatium abessent, hanc sub sarcinīs adorīrī; quā pulsā impedīmentīsque dīreptīs futūrum, ut reliquae contrā cōnsistere nōn audērent.

Adiuvābat etiam eōrum cōnsilium, quī rem dēferēbant, quod Nerviī antīquitus, cum equitātū nihil possent, — neque enim ad hōc tempus eī reī student, sed quicquid possunt, **pedestribus** valent cōpiīs, — quō facilius fīnitimōrum equitātum, sī **praedandī** causā ad eōs vēnissent, impedīrent, tenerīs **arboribus** incīsīs atque īnflexīs, crēbrīsque in lātitūdinem rāmīs ēnātīs, et rubīs sentibusque **interiectīs** effēcerant, ut īnstar mūrī hae **saepēs** mūnīmentum **praebērent**, quō nōn modo nōn intrārī, sed nē perspicī

quidem posset. Hīs rēbus cum iter agminis nostrī impedīrētur, nōn omittendum sibi cōnsilium Nerviī exīstimāvērunt.

Description of the battle-ground.

18. Locī nātūra erat haec, quem locum nostrī castrīs dēlēgerant. Collis ab summō aequāliter **dēclīvis** ad flū-



PASSUS

THE BATTLE WITH THE NERVII.

men Sabim, quod suprā nōmināvimus, vergēbat. Ab eō flūmine parī acclīvitāte collis **nāscēbātur** adversus huic et

contrārius, passūs circiter cc īnfimus apertus, ab superiōre parte **silvestris**, ut nōn facile intrōrsus perspicī posset. Intrā eās silvās hostēs in occultō sēsē continēbant; in apertō locō secundum flūmen paucae **statiōnēs** equitum vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitūdō pedum circiter trium.

Arrangement of the Roman line of march. The enemy beat back the Roman cavalry and attack the men at work on the camp.

19. Caesar equitātū praemissō subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiīs; sed ratiō ōrdōque agminis **aliter** sē habēbat, ac Belgae ad Nerviōs dētulerant. Nam quod hostibus adpropinquābat, cōnsuētūdine suā Caesar VI legiōnēs expedītās dūcēbat; post eās tōtīus exercitūs impedīmenta conlocārat; inde duae legiōnēs, quae proximē cōnscrīptae erant, tōtum agmen claudēbant praesidiōque impedīmentīs erant.

Equitēs nostrī cum funditōribus sagittāriīsque flūmen trānsgressī cum hostium equitātū proelium commīsērunt. Cum sē illī identidem in silvās ad suōs reciperent ac rūrsus ex silvā in nostrōs impetum facerent neque nostrī longius, quam quem ad fīnem porrēcta loca aperta pertinēbant, **cēdentēs** īnsequī audērent, interim legiōnēs VI, quae prīmae vēnerant, opere **dīmēnsō** castra mūnīre coepērunt.

Ubi prīma impedīmenta nostrī exercitūs ab eīs, quī in silvīs abditī **latēbant**, vīsa sunt, quod tempus inter eōs committendī proelī convēnerat, ut intrā silvās aciem ōrdinēsque cōnstituerant atque ipsī sēsē cōnfīrmāverant, subitō omnibus cōpiīs prōvolāvērunt impetumque in nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt. Hīs facile pulsīs ac prōturbātīs, incrēdibilī celeritāte ad flūmen **dēcucurrērunt**, ut paene ūnō

tempore et ad silvās et in flūmine et iam in manibus nostrīs hostēs vidērentur. Eādem autem celeritāte adversō colle ad nostra castra atque eōs, quī in opere occupātī erant, contendērunt.

Hasty arrangements. Value of discipline and intelligence in an emergency.

20. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda: vexillum prōpōnendum, quod erat īnsīgne, cum ad arma concurrī oportēret, sīgnum tubā dandum, ab opere **revocandī** mīlitēs, quī paulō longius aggeris petendī causā prōcesserant, arcessendī, aciēs īnstruenda, mīlitēs cohortandī, sīgnum dandum. Quārum rērum māgnam partem temporis **brevitās** et incursus hostium impediēbat. Hīs **difficultātibus** duae rēs erant subsidiō, scientia atque ūsus mīlitum, quod superiōribus proeliīs exercitātī, quid fierī oportēret, nōn minus commodē ipsī sibi praescrībere quam ab aliīs docērī poterant, et quod ab opere singulīsque legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs Caesar discēdere nisi mūnītīs castrīs **vetuerat.** Hī propter propinquitātem et celeritātem hostium nihil iam Caesaris imperium exspectābant, sed per sē, quae vidēbantur, **administrābant.**

Caesar encourages his troops at various points. The men fall into line as best they can.

21. Caesar necessāriīs rēbus imperātīs ad cohortandōs mīlitēs, quam in partem **fors obtulit,** dēcucurrit et ad legiōnem decimam **dēvēnit.** Mīlitēs nōn longiōre ōrātiōne cohortātus, quam utī suae prīstinae virtūtis memoriam retinērent **neu** perturbārentur animō hostiumque impetum

fortiter sustinērent, quod nōn longius hostēs aberant, quam quō tēlum **adigī** posset, proelī committendī sīgnum dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandī causā profectus pūgnantibus occurrit. Temporis tanta fuit **exiguitās** hostiumque tam parātus ad **dīmicandum** animus, ut nōn modo ad īnsīgnia accommodanda, sed etiam ad galeās induendās scūtīsque tegimenta dētrahenda tempus dēfuerit. Quam quisque ab opere in partem cāsū dēvēnit quaeque prīma sīgna cōnspexit, ad haec cōnstitit, nē in quaerendīs suīs pūgnandī tempus dīmitteret.



Galea.

22. Īnstrūctō exercitū, magis ut locī nātūra dēiectusque collis et necessitās temporis, quam ut reī mīlitāris ratiō atque ōrdō postulābat, cum **dīversae** legiōnēs aliae aliā in parte hostibus resisterent, saepibusque **dēnsissimīs**, ut ante dēmōnstrāvimus, interiectīs **prōspectus** impedīrētur, neque certa subsidia conlocārī neque, quid in quāque parte opus esset, **prōvidērī** neque ab ūnō omnia imperia

administrārī poterant. Itaque in tantā rērum **inīquitāte** fortūnae quoque **ēventūs** variī sequēbantur.

Various stages of the infantry battle.

23. Legiōnis **nōnae** et decimae mīlitēs, ut in sinistrā parte aciē cōnstiterant, pīlīs ēmissīs cursū ac **lassitūdine exanimātōs** vulneribusque cōnfectōs Atrebātēs — nam hīs ea pars obvēnerat — celeriter ex locō superiōre in flūmen **compulērunt** et trānsīre cōnantēs īnsecūtī gladiīs māgnam partem eōrum impedītam interfēcērunt. Ipsī trānsīre flūmen nōn dubitāvērunt, et in locum inīquum prōgressī rūrsus resistentēs hostēs, redintegrātō proeliō, in fugam coniēcērunt.

Item aliā in parte dīversae duae legiōnēs, **undecima** et **octāva**, prōflīgātīs Viromanduīs, quibuscum erant congressae, ex locō superiōre, in ipsīs flūminis rīpīs **proeliābantur**. At tōtīs ferē castrīs ā fronte et ā sinistrā parte nūdātīs, cum in dextrō cornū legiō **duodecima** et nōn māgnō ab eā intervāllō septima cōnstitisset, omnēs Nerviī cōnfertissimō agmine duce Boduōgnātō, quī summam imperī tenēbat, ad eum locum contendērunt; quōrum pars ab apertō latere legiōnēs circumvenīre, pars summum castrōrum locum petere coepit.

The Roman cavalry and light-armed troops flee again. The cavalry of the Treveri depart for home and report a Roman defeat.

24. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostrī levisque armātūrae peditēs, quī cum eīs ūnā fuerant, quōs prīmō hostium impetū pulsōs dīxeram, cum sē in castra reciperent,

adversīs hostibus occurrēbant ac rūrsus aliam in partem fugam petēbant, et **cālōnēs**, quī ab **decumānā portā** ac summō iugō collis nostrōs victōrēs flūmen trānsīsse cōnspexerant, praedandī causā ēgressī, cum **respexissent** et hostēs in nostrīs castrīs versārī vīdissent, **praecipitēs**



1. Signiferi. 2. Tubicen. 3. Bucinator.

fugae sēsē mandābant. Simul eōrum, quī cum impedīmentīs veniēbant, clāmor **fremitus**que oriēbātur, **aliīque** aliam in partem perterritī ferēbantur.

Quibus omnibus rēbus permōtī equitēs Trēverī, quōrum inter Gallōs virtūtis opīniō est **singulāris**, quī auxilī

causā ā cīvitāte missī ad Caesarem vēnerant, cum multitūdine hostium castra nostra complēri, legiōnēs premī et paene circumventās tenērī, cālōnēs, equitēs, funditōrēs, Numidās dispersōs **dissipātōsque** in omnēs partēs fugere vīdissent, dēspērātīs nostrīs rēbus domum contendērunt; Rōmānōs pulsōs superātōsque, castrīs impedīmentīsque eōrum hostēs potītōs cīvitātī renūntiāvērunt.

Caesar rallies the 12th legion, stationed on the right wing. The enemy are checked.

25. Caesar ab decimae legiōnis cohortātiōne ad dextrum cornū profectus, ubi suōs **urgērī** sīgnīsque in ūnum locum conlātīs duodecimae legiōnis cōnfertōs mīlitēs sibi ipsōs ad pūgnam esse impedīmentō vīdit, quārtae cohortis omnibus centuriōnibus occīsīs, sīgniferō interfectō, sīgnō āmissō, reliquārum cohortium omnibus ferē centuriōnibus aut vulnerātīs aut occīsīs, in hīs prīmipīlō P. Sextiō Baculō, fortissimō **virō**, multīs gravibusque vulneribus cōnfectō, ut iam sē sustinēre nōn posset, reliquōs esse tardiōrēs et nōn nūllōs ab novissimīs dēsertō locō proeliō **excēdere** ac tēla vītāre, hostēs neque ā fronte ex īnferiōre locō subeuntēs intermittere et ab utrōque latere īnstāre et rem esse in angustō vīdit, neque ūllum esse subsidium, quod submittī posset, scūtō ab novissimīs mīlitī dētractō, quod ipse eō sine scūtō vēnerat, in prīmam aciem prōcessit centuriōnibusque nōminātim appellātīs reliquōs cohortātus mīlitēs sīgna īnferre et manipulōs laxāre iussit, quō facilius gladiīs ūtī possent. Cūius adventū spē inlātā mīlitibus ac redintegrātō animō, cum prō sē

quisque in cōnspectū imperātōris etiam in extrēmīs suīs rēbus **operam** nāvāre cuperet, paulum hostium impetus tardātus est.

The 12th and 7th legions are rearranged for mutual protection.

26. Caesar, cum septimam legiōnem, quae iūxtā cōnstiterat, item urgērī ab hoste vīdisset, tribūnōs mīlitum monuit, ut paulātim sēsē legiōnēs coniungerent et conversa sīgna in hostēs īnferrent. Quō factō cum aliīs aliī subsidium ferrent neque timērent, nē āversī ab hoste circumvenīrentur, audācius resistere ac fortius pūgnāre coepērunt.

The rear-guard and the 10th legion come to the rescue.

Interim mīlitēs legiōnum duārum, quae in novissimō agmine praesidiō impedīmentīs fuerant, proeliō nūntiātō, cursū incitātō in summō colle ab hostibus cōnspiciēbantur, et T. Labiēnus castrīs hostium potītus et ex locō superiōre, quae rēs in nostrīs castrīs gererentur, cōnspicātus decimam legiōnem subsidiō nostrīs mīsit. Quī cum ex equitum et cālōnum fugā, quō in locō rēs esset quantōque in perīculō et castra et legiōnēs et imperātor versārētur, cōgnōvissent, nihil ad celeritātem sibi reliquī fēcērunt.

The tide of battle turns decisively.

27. Hōrum adventū tanta rērum commūtātiō est facta, ut nostrī, etiam quī vulneribus cōnfectī **prōcubuissent**, scūtīs innīxī proelium redintegrārent, cālōnēs perterritōs

hostēs cōnspicātī etiam inermēs armātīs occurrerent, equitēs vērō, ut turpitūdinem fugae virtūte dēlērent, omnibus in locīs pūgnandō sē legiōnāriīs mīlitibus **praeferrent.**

Bravery of the Gauls.

At hostēs etiam in extrēmā spē salūtis tantam virtūtem praestitērunt, ut, cum prīmī eōrum cecidissent, proximī iacentibus **insisterent** atque ex eōrum corporibus pūgnārent, hīs dēiectīs et coacervātīs cadāveribus, quī superessent, ut ex tumulō tēla in nostrōs cōicerent et pīla **intercepta** remitterent; ut nōn nēquīquam tantae virtūtis hominēs iūdicārī dēbēret ausōs esse trānsīre lātissimum flūmen, ascendere altissimās rīpās, subīre inīquissimum locum; quae facilia ex difficillimīs animī māgnitūdō redēgerat.

The non-combatants of the Nervii send envoys to beg for mercy. Caesar spares them.

28. Hōc proeliō factō et prope ad interneciōnem **gente** ac nōmine Nerviōrum redāctō, māiōrēs nātū, quōs ūnā cum puerīs mulieribusque in **aestuāria** ac palūdēs coniectōs dīxerāmus, hāc pūgnā nūntiātā, cum victōribus nihil impedītum, victīs nihil tūtum arbitrārentur, omnium, quī supererant, cōnsēnsū lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt sēque eī dēdidērunt, et in commemorandā cīvitātis calamitāte ex DC ad trēs senātōrēs, ex hominum mīlibus LX vix ad D, quī arma ferre possent, sēsē redāctōs esse dīxērunt. Quōs Caesar, ut in miserōs ac supplicēs ūsus misericordiā vidērētur, dīligentissimē cōnservāvit suīsque

fīnibus atque oppidīs ūtī iussit et fīnitimīs imperāvit, ut ab iniūriā et maleficiō sē suōsque prohibērent.

The Atuatuci gather in a strongly fortified town.

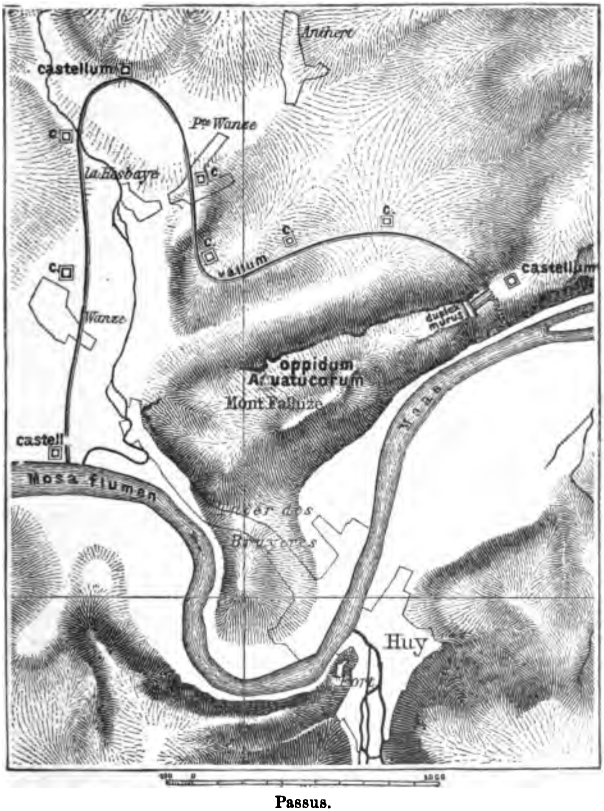
29. Atuatucī, dē quibus suprā dīximus, cum omnibus cōpiīs auxiliō Nerviīs venīrent, hāc pūgnā nūntiātā ex itinere domum revertērunt; cūnctīs oppidīs castellīsque dēsertīs sua omnia in ūnum oppidum **ēgregiē** nātūrā mūnītum contulērunt. Quod cum ex omnibus in circuitū partibus altissimās rūpēs dēiectūsque habēret, ūnā ex parte lēniter **acclīvis** aditus in lātitūdinem nōn amplius pedum cc relinquēbātur; quem locum **duplicī** altissimō mūrō mūnierant; tum māgnī **ponderis saxa** et **praeacūtās trabēs** in mūrō conlocābant.

Their origin.

Ipsī erant ex Cimbrīs Teutonīsque prōgnātī, quī, cum iter in prōvinciam nostram atque Ītaliam facerent, eīs impedīmentīs, quae sēcum agere ac portāre nōn poterant, citrā flūmen Rhēnum dēpositīs **custōdiam** ex suīs ac praesidium vi mīlia hominum ūnā relīquerant. Hī post eōrum obitum multōs annōs ā fīnitimīs **exagitātī**, cum **aliās** bellum īnferrent, aliās inlātum dēfenderent, cōnsēnsū eōrum omnium pāce factā hunc sibi domiciliō locum dēlēgerant.

They at first jeer at the Roman siege-works.

30. Ac prīmō adventū exercitūs nostrī crēbrās ex oppidō excursiōnēs faciēbant, **parvulīs**que proeliīs cum



Passus.

Oppidum Atuatucorum.

nostrīs contendēbant; posteā vāllō pedum xii, in circuitū xv mīlium crēbrīsque castellīs circummūnītī oppidō sēsē continēbant. Ubi vīneīs āctīs, aggere **exstrūctō**, turrim **procul** cōnstituī vīdērunt, prīmum inrīdēre ex mūrō atque increpitāre vōcibus, quod tanta **māchinātiō** ā tantō spatiō īnstituerētur: quibusnam manibus aut quibus vīribus, praesertim hominēs **tantulae** statūrae,—nam plērumque omnibus Gallīs prae māgnitūdine corporum suōrum brevitās nostra contemptuī est,—tantī **oneris** turrim in mūrō sēsē posse conlocāre cōnfīderent?

Frightened by the advance of the tower, they offer to surrender, but beg to retain their arms.

31. Ubi vērō movērī et adpropinquāre mūrīs vīdērunt, novā atque **inūsitātā** speciē commōtī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce mīsērunt, quī ad hunc modum locūtī: nōn sē exīstimāre Rōmānōs sine ope deōrum bellum gerere, quī tantae altitūdinis māchinātiōnēs tantā celeritāte prōmovēre possent, sē suaque omnia eōrum potestātī permittere dīxērunt. Ūnum petere ac **dēprecārī**: sī forte prō suā clēmentiā ac mānsuētūdine, quam ipsī ab aliīs audīrent, statuisset, Atuatucōs esse cōnservandōs, nē sē armīs dēspoliāret. Sibi omnēs ferē fīnitimōs esse inimīcōs ac suae virtūtī invidēre; ā quibus sē dēfendere trāditīs armīs nōn possent. Sibi praestāre, sī in eum cāsum dēdūcerentur, **quamvīs** fortūnam ā populō Rōmānō patī quam ab hīs per cruciātum interficī, inter quōs dominārī cōnsuēssent.

Their request is denied, but they are promised protection against their neighbors. They secretly retain part of their arms.

32. Ad haec Caesar respondit: sē magis cōnsuētūdine suā quam meritō eōrum cīvitātem cōnservātūrum, sī, prius quam mūrum **ariēs** attigisset, sē dēdidissent; sed dēditiōnis nūllam esse condiciōnem nisi armīs trāditīs. Sē id, quod in Nerviīs fēcisset, factūrum fīnitimīsque imperātūrum, nē quam dēditīciīs populī Rōmānī iniūriam īnferrent.



Testudo Arietaria.

Rē renūntiātā ad suōs, quae imperārentur, facere dīxērunt. Armōrum māgnā multitūdine dē mūrō in fossam, quae erat ante oppidum, iactā, sīc ut prope summam mūrī aggerisque altitūdinem acervī armōrum adaequārent, et tamen circiter parte tertiā, ut posteā perspectum est, **cēlātā** atque in oppidō retentā, portīs **patefactīs** eō diē pāce sunt ūsī.

They treacherously attack the Romans at night.

33. Sub vesperum Caesar portās claudī mīlitēsque ex oppidō exīre iussit, nē quam noctū oppidānī ā mīlitibus iniūriam acciperent. Illī ante initō, ut intellēctum est, cōnsiliō, quod dēditiōne factā nostrōs praesidia dēductūrōs aut dēnique indīligentius **servātūrōs crēdiderant**, partim cum eīs, quae retinuerant et cēlāverant, armīs, partim scūtīs ex cortice factīs aut vīminibus intextīs, quae subitō, ut temporis exiguitās postulābat, **pellibus** indūxerant, tertiā vigiliā, quā minimē arduus ad nostrās mū-

nītiōnēs ascēnsus vidēbātur, omnibus cōpiīs repente ex oppidō **ēruptiōnem** fēcērunt.

They are repulsed. Caesar sells them into slavery.

Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperāverat, īgnibus **sīgnificātiōne** factā, ex proximīs castellīs eō concursum est, pūgnātumque ab hostibus ita ācriter est, ut ā virīs fortibus in extrēmā spē salūtis inīquō locō contrā eōs, quī ex vāllō turribusque tēla iacerent, pūgnārī dēbuit, cum in ūnā virtūte omnis spēs cōnsisteret. Occīsīs ad hominum mīlibus IIII, reliquī in oppidum rēiectī sunt.

Postrīdiē ēius diēī refrāctīs portīs, cum iam dēfenderet nēmō, atque **intrōmissīs** mīlitibus nostrīs sectiōnem ēius oppidī **ūniversam** Caesar **vēndidit**. Ab eīs, quī ēmerant, capitum numerus ad eum relātus est mīlium LIII.

CLOSE OF THE CAMPAIGN, 34–35.

Publius Crassus reports the submission of certain states on the northwest coast.

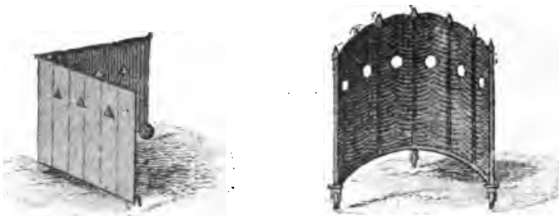
34. Eōdem tempore ā P. Crassō, quem cum legiōne ūnā mīserat ad Venetōs, Venellōs, Osismōs, Coriosolitas, Esuviōs, Aulercōs, Redonēs, quae sunt **maritimae** cīvitātēs Ōceanumque attingunt, certior factus est, omnēs eās cīvitātēs in diciōnem potestātemque populī Rōmānī esse redāctās.

Tribes across the Rhine send deputations to Caesar. He establishes his army in winter quarters and proceeds to Cisalpine Gaul.

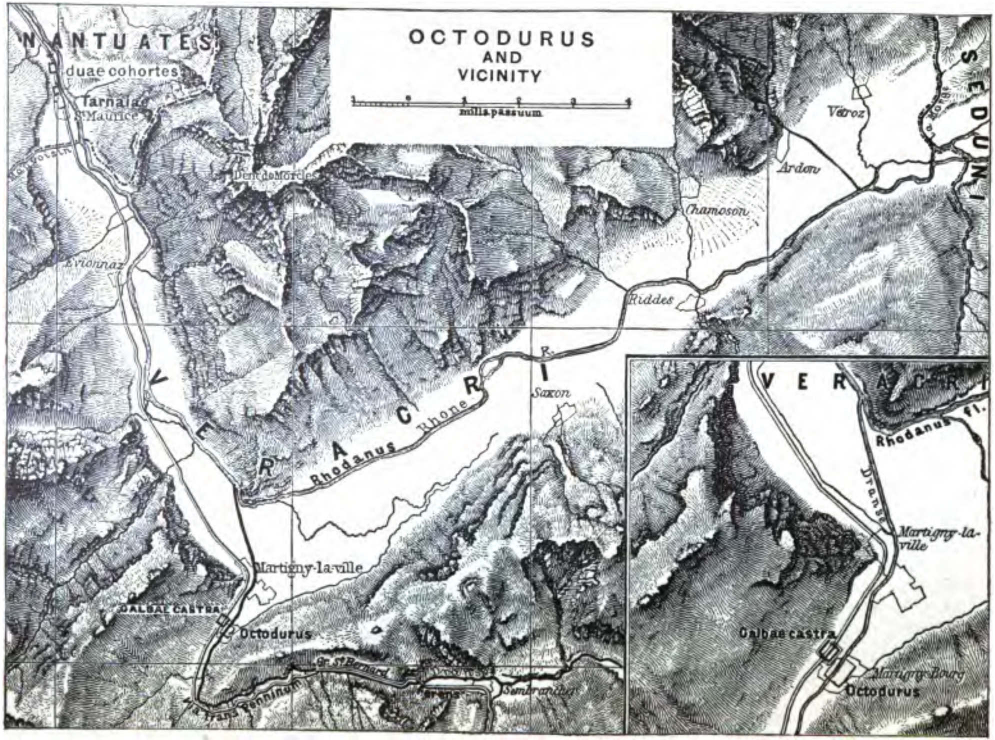
35. Hīs rēbus gestīs, omnī Galliā pācātā, tanta hūius bellī ad barbarōs opīniō perlāta est, utī ab eīs nātiōnibus,

quae trāns Rhēnum incolerent, lēgātī ad Caesarem mitterentur, quī sē obsidēs datūrās, imperāta factūrās pollicērentur. Quās lēgātiōnēs Caesar, quod in Ītaliam Īllyricumque properābat, initā proximā aestāte ad sē revertī iussit.

Ipse, in Carnutēs, Andēs, Turonōs quaeque cīvitātēs propinquae eīs locīs erant, ubi bellum gesserat, legiōnibus in hīberna dēductīs, in Ītaliam profectus est. Ob eāsque rēs ex litterīs Caesaris diērum xv **supplicātiō dēcrēta** est, quod ante id tempus accidit nūllī.



PLUTEI.


OCTODURUS
AND
VICINITY
millia passuum
NANTUATES
duae cohortes
Tarnaiae
St Maurice
Dent de Morcles
Evionnaz
VERAGRI
Rhodanus
Rhone
R.
Saxon
Riddes
Chamoson
Ardon
Vétroz
La Morge
SEDUNI
Martigny-la-ville
GALBAE CASTRA
Octodurus
Gr. St Bernard
Via Trans Penninum
Sembrancher
Rhodanus fl.
Dranse
Martigny-la-ville
Galbae castra
Martigny-Bourg
Octodurus

LIBER TERTIUS.

EVENTS AT OCTODURUS, 1-6.

Servius Galba is sent to open an important road across the Alps. He decides to winter at Octodurus. Hostility of the natives.

1. Cum in Ītaliam proficīscerētur Caesar, Ser. Galbam cum legiōne duodecimā et parte equitātūs in Nantuātēs, Veragrōs Sedūnōsque mīsit, quī ā fīnibus Allobrogum et lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō ad summās Alpēs pertinent. Causa mittendī fuit, quod iter per Alpēs, quō māgnō cum perīculō māgnīsque cum portōriīs mercātōrēs īre cōnsuērant, patefierī volēbat. Huic permīsit, sī opus esse arbitrārētur, utī in hīs locīs legiōnem hiemandī causā conlocāret.

Galba, secundīs **aliquot** proeliīs factīs castellīsque complūribus eōrum expūgnātīs, missīs ad eum undique lēgātīs obsidibusque datīs et pāce factā, cōnstituit cohortēs duās in Nantuātibus conlocāre et ipse cum reliquīs ēius legiōnis cohortibus in vīcō Veragrōrum, quī appellātur Octodūrus, hiemāre; quī vīcus positus in **valle** nōn māgnā **adiectā** plānitiē altissimīs montibus undique continētur. Cum hīc in duās partēs flūmine dīviderētur, alteram partem ēius vīcī Gallīs concessit, alteram vacuam ab hīs relictam cohortibus ad hiemandum **attribuit**. Eum locum vāllō fossāque mūnīvit.

2. Cum diēs hībernōrum complūrēs trānsīssent, frūmentumque eō comportārī iussisset, subitō per explōrā-

tōrēs certior factus est, ex eā parte vīcī, quam Gallīs concesserat, omnēs noctū discessisse montēsque, quī impendērent, ā māximā multitūdine Sedūnōrum et Veragrōrum tenērī.

Id aliquot dē causīs acciderat, ut subitō Gallī bellī **renovandī** legiōnisque opprimendae cōnsilium caperent: prīmum, quod legiōnem, neque eam **plēnissimam**, dētractīs cohortibus duābus et complūribus **singillātim**, quī commeātūs petendī causā missī erant, absentibus, propter **paucitātem** dēspiciēbant; tum etiam, quod propter inīquitātem locī, cum ipsī ex montibus in vallem dēcurrerent et tēla cōicerent, nē prīmum quidem impetum suum posse sustinērī exīstimābant. Accēdēbat, quod suōs ab sē līberōs abstractōs obsidum nōmine dolēbant, et Rōmānōs nōn sōlum itinerum causā, sed etiam perpetuae possessiōnis culmina Alpium occupāre cōnārī et ea loca fīnitimae prōvinciae **adiungere** sibi persuāsum habēbant.

Galba calls a council of war. It is decided to defend the camp.

3. Hīs nūntiīs acceptīs Galba, cum neque opus hībernōrum mūnītiōnēsque plēnē essent perfectae neque dē frūmentō reliquōque commeātū satis esset prōvīsum, quod dēditiōne factā obsidibusque acceptīs nihil dē bellō timendum exīstimāverat, cōnsiliō celeriter convocātō sententiās exquīrere coepit. Quō in cōnsiliō, cum tantum repentīnī perīculī praeter opīniōnem accidisset ac iam omnia ferē superiōra loca multitūdine armātōrum complēta cōnspicerentur, neque subsidiō venīrī neque commeātūs supportārī interclūsīs itineribus possent, prope iam dēspērātā salūte nōn nūllae ēius modī sententiae dīcē-

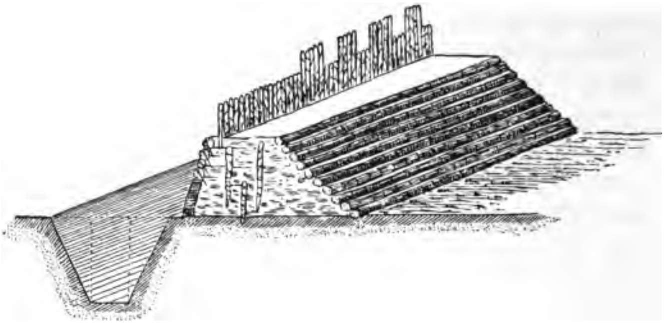
bantur, ut impedīmentīs relictīs ēruptiōne factā īsdem itineribus, quibus eō pervēnissent, ad salūtem contenderent. Māiōrī tamen partī placuit, hōc reservātō ad extrēmum cāsum cōnsiliō interim reī ēventum experīrī et castra dēfendere.

The enemy attack with greatly superior numbers.

4. Brevī spatiō interiectō, vix ut eīs rēbus, quās cōnstituissent, conlocandīs atque administrandīs tempus darētur, hostēs ex omnibus partibus sīgnō datō dēcurrere, lapidēs gaesaque in vāllum cōicere. Nostrī prīmō **integrīs** vīribus fortiter prōpūgnāre neque ūllum **frūstrā** tēlum ex locō superiōre mittere, et quaecumque pars castrōrum nūdāta dēfēnsōribus premī vidēbātur, eō occurrere et auxilium ferre, sed hōc superārī, quod diūturnitāte pūgnae hostēs dēfessī proeliō excēdēbant, aliī integrīs vīribus succēdēbant; quārum rērum ā nostrīs propter paucitātem fierī nihil poterat, ac nōn modo dēfessō ex pūgnā excēdendī, sed nē **sauciō** quidem ēius locī, ubi cōnstiterat, relinquendī ac suī recipiendī facultās dabātur.

The Romans determine upon a sally.

5. Cum iam amplius hōrīs sex continenter pūgnārētur ac nōn sōlum vīrēs, sed etiam tēla nostrōs dēficerent, atque hostēs ācrius īnstārent languidiōribusque nostrīs vāllum **scindere** et fossās complēre coepissent, rēsque esset iam ad extrēmum perducta cāsum, P. Sextius Baculus, prīmī **pīlī** centuriō, quem Nervicō proeliō complūribus cōnfectum vulneribus dīximus, et item C. Volusēnus, tri-



CAMP RAMPART AND DITCH.

būnus mīlitum, vir et cōnsilī māgnī et virtūtis, ad Galbam accurrunt atque ūnam esse spem salūtis docent, sī ēruptiōne factā extrēmum auxilium experīrentur. Itaque convocātīs centuriōnibus celeriter mīlitēs certiōrēs facit, paulisper intermitterent proelium ac tantummodo tēla missa exciperent sēque ex labōre **reficerent**, post datō sīgnō ex castrīs ērumperent atque omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnerent.

The movement is successful. Galba returns to the Transalpine province.

6. Quod iussī sunt, faciunt, ac subitō omnibus portīs ēruptiōne factā neque cōgnōscendī, quid fieret, neque suī **colligendī** hostibus facultātem relinquunt. Ita commūtātā fortūnā eōs, quī in spem potiundōrum castrōrum vēnerant, undique circumventōs interficiunt, et ex hominum mīlibus amplius xxx, quem numerum barbarōrum ad castra vēnisse **cōnstābat**, plūs tertiā parte interfectā

reliquōs perterritōs in fugam cōiciunt ac nē in locīs quidem superiōribus cōnsistere patiuntur. Sīc omnibus hostium cōpiīs fūsīs armīsque **exūtīs** sē intrā mūnītiōnēs suās recipiunt.

Quō proeliō factō, quod saepius fortūnam temptāre Galba nōlēbat atque aliō sē in hīberna cōnsiliō vēnisse meminerat, aliīs occurrisse rēbus vīderat, māximē frūmentī commeātūsque inopiā permōtus, posterō diē omnibus ēius vīcī aedificiīs incēnsīs in prōvinciam revertī contendit ac nūllō hoste prohibente aut iter dēmorante incolumem legiōnem in Nantuātēs, inde in Allobrogēs perdūxit ibique hiemāvit.

RISING OF THE VENETI, 7-16.

Publius Crassus levies upon the coast tribes for supplies.

7. Hīs rēbus gestīs, cum omnibus dē causīs Caesar pācātam Galliam exīstimāret, superātīs Belgīs, expulsīs Germānīs, victīs in Alpibus Sedūnīs, atque ita initā **hieme** in Īllyricum profectus esset, quod eās quoque nātiōnēs adīre et regiōnēs cōgnōscere volēbat, **subitum** bellum in Galliā **coortum** est.

Ēius bellī haec fuit causa. P. Crassus adulēscēns cum legiōne septimā proximus **mare** Ōceanum in Andibus hiemābat. Is, quod in hīs locīs inopia frūmentī erat, praefectōs tribūnōsque mīlitum complūrēs in fīnitimās cīvitātēs frūmentī causā dīmīsit; quō in numerō est T. Terrasidius missus in Esuviōs, L. Trebius Gallus in Coriosolitas, Q. Velānius cum T. Sīliō in Venetōs.

Description of the Veneti. They form a league with neighboring states, detain Roman officers, and demand back their hostages.

8. Hūius est cīvitātis longē amplissima auctōritās omnis **ōrae** maritimae regiōnum eārum, quod et nāvēs habent Venetī plūrimās, quibus in Britanniam **nāvigāre** cōnsuērunt, et scientiā atque ūsū rērum nauticārum cēterōs **antecēdunt**, et in māgnō impetū maris **vāstī** atque apertī, paucīs **portibus** interiectīs, quōs tenent ipsī, omnēs ferē, quī eō marī ūtī cōnsuērunt, habent **vectīgālēs**.

Ab hīs fit initium retinendī Sīlī atque Velānī, quod per eōs suōs sē obsidēs, quōs Crassō dedissent, **recuperātūrōs** exīstimābant. Hōrum auctōritāte fīnitimī adductī — ut sunt Gallōrum subita et repentīna cōnsilia — eādem dē causā Trebium Terrasidiumque retinent, et celeriter missīs lēgātīs per suōs prīncipēs inter sē coniūrant, nihil nisi commūnī cōnsiliō āctūrōs eundemque omnēs fortūnae **exitum** esse lātūrōs, reliquāsque cīvitātēs sollicitant, ut in eā lībertāte, quam ā māiōribus accēperint, permanēre quam Rōmānōrum servitūtem perferre mālint. Omnī ōrā maritimā celeriter ad suam sententiam perductā commūnem lēgātiōnem ad P. Crassum mittunt: sī velit suōs recuperāre, obsidēs sibi remittat.

Caesar orders a fleet built on the river Loire. The Veneti and allies make diligent preparations. They rely much upon their naval strength.

9. Quibus dē rēbus Caesar ā Crassō certior factus, quod ipse aberat longius, nāvēs interim longās **aedifi-**

cārī in flūmine Ligerī, quod īnfluit in Ōceanum, rēmigēs ex prōvinciā īnstituī, **nautās gubernātōrēs**que comparārī iubet. Hīs rēbus celeriter administrātīs, ipse, cum prīmum per annī tempus potuit, ad exercitum contendit.

Venetī reliquaeque item cīvitātēs cōgnitō Caesaris adventū, simul quod, quantum in sē facinus admīsissent, intellegēbant, lēgātōs, quod nōmen ad omnēs nātiōnēs sānctum inviolātumque semper fuisset, retentōs ab sē et in vincula coniectōs, prō māgnitūdine perīculī bellum parāre et māximē ea, quae ad ūsum nāvium pertinent, prōvidēre īnstituunt, hōc māiōre spē, quod **multum** nātūrā locī cōnfīdēbant. Pedestria esse itinera concīsa aestuāriīs, **nāvigātiōnem** impedītam propter **īnscientiam** locōrum paucitātemque portuum sciēbant, neque nostrōs exercitūs propter frūmentī inopiam diūtius apud sē morārī posse cōnfīdēbant; ac iam ut omnia contrā opīniōnem acciderent, tamen sē plūrimum nāvibus posse, Rōmānōs neque ūllam facultātem habēre nāvium, neque eōrum locōrum, ubi bellum gestūrī essent, vada, portūs, **īnsulās** nōvisse; ac longē aliam esse nāvigātiōnem in conclūsō marī atque in vāstissimō atque apertissimō Ōceanō perspiciēbant.

Hīs initīs cōnsiliīs oppida mūniunt, frūmenta ex agrīs in oppida comportant, nāvēs in Venetiam, ubi Caesarem prīmum bellum gestūrum cōnstābat, quam plūrimās possunt, cōgunt. Sociōs sibi ad id bellum Osismōs, Lexoviōs, Namnetēs, Ambiliatōs, Morinōs, Diablintēs, Menapiōs adscīscunt; auxilia ex Britanniā, quae contrā eās regiōnēs posita est, arcessunt.

In spite of all difficulties Caesar determines to subdue them.

10. Erant hae difficultātēs bellī gerendī, quās suprā ostendimus, sed tamen multa Caesarem ad id bellum incitābant: iniūria retentōrum equitum Rōmānōrum, **rebelliō** facta post dēditiōnem, **dēfectiō** datīs obsidibus, **tot** cīvitātum coniūrātiō, in prīmīs, nē, hāc parte neglēctā, reliquae nātiōnēs sibi idem licēre arbitrārentur. Itaque cum intellegeret, omnēs ferē Gallōs novīs rēbus studēre et ad bellum mōbiliter celeriterque **excitārī**, omnēs autem hominēs nātūrā lībertātī studēre et condiciōnem servitūtis ōdisse, priusquam plūrēs cīvitātēs cōnspīrārent, partiendum sibi ac lātius **distribuendum** exercitum putāvit.

To prevent a general uprising Caesar sends troops to important points in Gaul. Decimus Brutus is placed in command of the fleet.

11. Itaque T. Labiēnum lēgātum in Trēverōs, quī proximī flūminī Rhēnō sunt, cum equitātū mittit. Huic mandat, Rēmōs reliquōsque Belgās adeat atque in officiō contineat Germānōsque, quī auxiliō ā Gallīs arcessītī dīcēbantur, sī per vim nāvibus flūmen trānsīre cōnentur, prohibeat. P. Crassum cum cohortibus legiōnāriīs XII et māgnō numerō equitātūs in Aquītāniam proficīscī iubet, nē ex hīs nātiōnibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur ac tantae nātiōnēs coniungantur. Q. Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus in Venellōs, Coriosolitas Lexoviōsque mittit, quī eam manum distinendam cūret. D. Brūtum adulēscentem **classī** Gallicīsque nāvibus, quās ex Pictonibus et Santonīs reliquīsque pācātīs regiōnibus

convenīre iusserat, praeficit et, cum prīmum possit, in Venetōs proficīscī iubet. Ipse eō pedestribus cōpiīs contendit.

Location of the towns of the Veneti. Difficulty of attacking them.

12. Erant ēius modī ferē **sitūs** oppidōrum, ut posita in extrēmīs lingulīs prōmunturiīsque neque pedibus aditum habērent, cum ex altō sē **aestus** incitāvisset, quod accidit semper hōrārum XII spatiō, neque nāvibus, quod rūrsus minuente aestū nāvēs in vadīs **adflīctārentur**. Ita utrāque rē oppidōrum oppūgnātiō impediēbātur. Ac sī quandō māgnitūdine operis forte superātī, extrūsō marī aggere ac mōlibus atque hīs oppidī moenibus adaequātīs, dēspērāre fortūnīs suīs coeperant, māgnō numerō nāvium **adpulsō**, cūius reī summam facultātem habēbant, sua dēportābant omnia sēque in proxima oppida recipiēbant; ibi sē rūrsus īsdem **opportūnitātibus** locī dēfendēbant. Haec eō facilius māgnam partem aestātis faciēbant, quod nostrae nāvēs **tempestātibus** dētinēbantur, summaque erat vāstō atque apertō marī, māgnīs aestibus, **rārīs** ac prope nūllīs portibus difficultās nāvigandī.

The naval equipment of the Veneti.

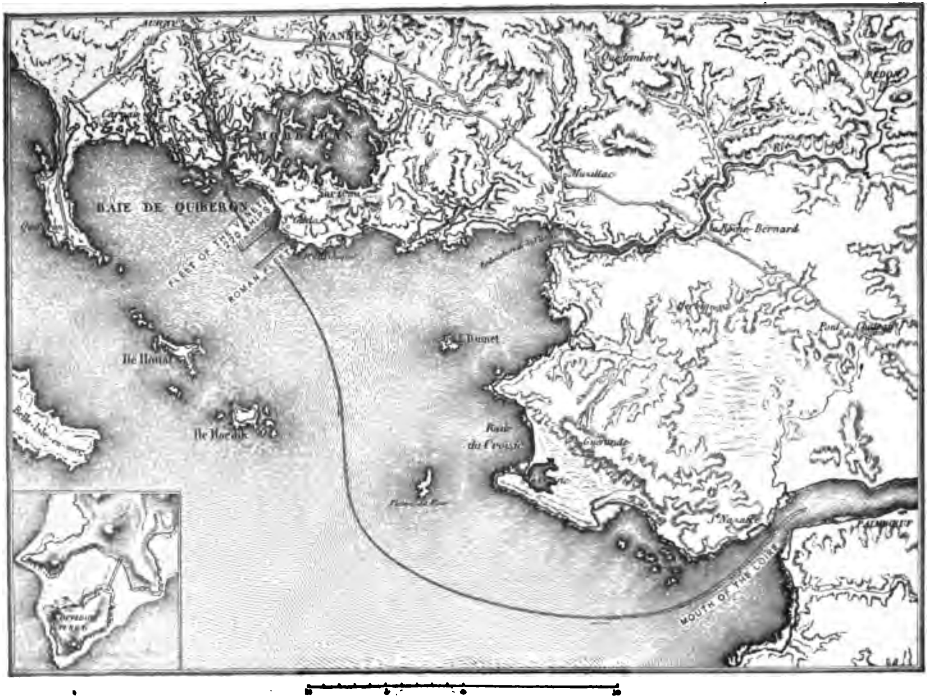
13. Namque ipsōrum nāvēs ad hunc modum factae armātaeque erant: carīnae **aliquantō plāniōrēs** quam nostrārum nāvium, quō facilius vada ac dēcessum aestūs excipere possent; prōrae **admodum** ērēctae atque item **puppēs**, ad māgnitūdinem **flūctuum** tempestātumque **accommodātae**; nāvēs tōtae factae ex rōbore ad quamvīs vim et contumēliam perferendam; trānstra ex pedālibus

in altitūdinem trabibus, cōnfīxa clāvīs **ferreīs** digitī pollicis crassitūdine; **ancorae** prō **fūnibus** ferreīs catēnīs **revīnctae**; pellēs prō **vēlīs** alūtaeque tenuiter cōnfectae, hae sīve propter inopiam līnī atque ēius ūsūs īnscientiam, sīve eō, quod est magis vērī **simile**, quod tantās tempestātēs Ōceanī tantōsque impetūs **ventōrum** sustinērī ac tanta onera nāvium regī vēlīs nōn satis commodē posse arbitrābantur.

Cum hīs nāvibus nostrae classī ēius modī congressus erat, ut ūnā celeritāte et pulsū **rēmōrum** praestāret, reliqua prō locī nātūrā, prō vī tempestātum illīs essent **aptiōra** et accommodātiōra. Neque enim eīs nostrae **rōstrō nocēre** poterant, — tanta in eīs erat **firmitūdō**, — neque propter altitūdinem facile tēlum adigēbātur, et eādem dē causā minus commodē cōpulīs continēbantur. Accēdēbat, ut, cum saevīre ventus coepisset et sē ventō dedissent, et tempestātem ferrent facilius et in vadīs cōnsisterent **tūtius** et ab aestū relictae nihil saxa et cōtēs timērent; quārum rērum omnium nostrīs nāvibus cāsus erat extimēscendus.

The enemy escape by sea when their towns are taken. The Roman fleet arrives. The naval battle.

14. Complūribus expūgnātīs oppidīs Caesar, ubi intellēxit, frūstrā tantum labōrem sūmī neque hostium fugam captīs oppidīs reprimī neque eīs nocērī posse, statuit exspectandam classem. Quae ubi convēnit ac prīmum ab hostibus vīsa est, circiter ccxx nāvēs eōrum, parātissimae atque omnī genere armōrum ōrnātissimae, profectae ex portū nostrīs adversae cōnstitērunt; neque satis Brūtō,



Milia Passuum.

MAP OF THE CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE VENETI.

quī classī praeerat, vel tribūnīs mīlitum centuriōnibusque, quibus singulae nāvēs erant attribūtae, cōnstābat, quid agerent aut quam ratiōnem pūgnae īnsisterent. Rōstrō enim nocērī nōn posse cōgnōverant; turribus autem excitātīs, tamen hās altitūdō puppium ex barbarīs nāvibus superābat, ut neque ex īnferiōre locō satis commodē tēla adigī possent et missa ā Gallīs gravius acciderent.

Ūna erat māgnō ūsuī rēs **praeparāta** ā nostrīs, **falcēs** praeacūtae īnsertae adfīxaeque **longuriīs**, nōn absimilī **fōrmā mūrālium** falcium. Hīs cum fūnēs, quī **antemnās** ad mālōs dēstinābant, **comprehēnsī** adductīque erant, **nāvigiō** rēmīs incitātō praerumpēbantur. Quibus abscīsīs antemnae necessāriō **concidēbant**, ut, cum omnis Gallicīs nāvibus spēs in vēlīs **armāmentīs**que cōnsisteret, hīs ēreptīs omnis ūsus nāvium ūnō tempore ēriperētur. Reliquum erat **certāmen** positum in virtūte, quā nostrī mīlitēs facile superābant, atque eō magis, quod in cōnspectū Caesaris atque omnis exercitūs rēs gerēbātur, ut nūllum paulō fortius factum latēre posset; omnēs enim collēs ac loca superiōra, unde erat propinquus dēspectus in mare, ab exercitū tenēbantur.



FALX MURALIS.

Defeat of the Veneti.

15. Dēiectīs, ut dīximus, antemnīs, cum singulās **bīnae** ac ternae nāvēs circumsteterant, mīlitēs summā vī trānscendere in hostium nāvēs contendēbant. Quod postquam barbarī fierī animadvertērunt, expūgnātīs complūribus

nāvibus, cum eī reī nūllum reperīrētur auxilium, fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Ac iam conversīs in eam partem nāvibus, quō ventus ferēbat, tanta subitō malacia ac **tranquillitās exstitit**, ut sē ex locō movēre nōn possent. Quae quidem rēs ad negōtium cōnficiendum māximē fuit opportūna; nam singulās nostrī **cōnsectātī** expūgnāvērunt, ut perpaucae ex omnī numerō noctis interventū ad terram pervenīrent, cum ab hōrā ferē quārtā usque ad sōlis occāsum pūgnārētur.

They surrender and are severely punished.

16. Quō proeliō bellum Venetōrum tōtīusque ōrae maritimae cōnfectum est. Nam cum omnis iuventūs, omnēs etiam graviōris aetātis, in quibus aliquid cōnsilī aut dīgnitātis fuit, eō convēnerant, tum, nāvium quod ubīque fuerat, in ūnum locum coēgerant; quibus āmissīs reliquī neque, quō sē reciperent, neque, quem ad modum oppida dēfenderent, habēbant. Itaque sē suaque omnia Caesarī dēdidērunt. In quōs eō gravius Caesar vindicandum statuit, quō dīligentius in reliquum tempus ā barbarīs iūs lēgātōrum cōnservārētur. Itaque omnī senātū necātō reliquōs sub corōnā vēndidit.

SABINUS AMONG THE VENELLI, 17–19.

The Venelli declare War. Sabinus proceeds cautiously.

17. Dum haec in Venetīs geruntur, Q. Titūrius Sabīnus cum eīs cōpiīs, quās ā Caesare accēperat, in fīnēs Venellōrum pervēnit. Hīs praeerat Viridovīx ac sum-

mam imperī tenēbat eārum omnium cīvitātum, quae dēfēcerant, ex quibus exercitum māgnāsque cōpiās coēgerat; atque hīs paucīs diēbus Aulercī Eburovīcēs Lexoviīque senātū suō interfectō, quod **auctōrēs** bellī esse nōlēbant, portās clausērunt sēque cum Viridovīce coniūnxērunt; māgnaque praetereā multitūdō undique ex Galliā perditōrum hominum latrōnumque convēnerat, et quōs spēs praedandī studiumque bellandī ab agrī **cultūrā** et cotīdiānō labōre **sēvocābat**.

Sabīnus idōneō omnibus rēbus locō castrīs sēsē tenēbat, cum Viridovīx contrā eum duōrum mīlium spatiō cōnsēdisset cotīdiēque prōductīs cōpiīs pūgnandī potestātem faceret, ut iam nōn sōlum hostibus in **contemptiōnem** Sabīnus venīret, sed etiam nostrōrum mīlitum vōcibus nōn nihil carperētur; tantamque opīniōnem timōris praebuit, ut iam ad vāllum castrōrum hostēs accēdere audērent. Id eā dē causā faciēbat, quod cum tantā multitūdine hostium, praesertim eō absente, quī summam imperī tenēret, nisi aequō locō aut opportūnitāte aliquā datā lēgātō dīmicandum nōn exīstimābat.

The enemy are induced to attack the Roman camp.

18. Hāc cōnfīrmātā opīniōne timōris idōneum quendam hominem et callidum dēlēgit, Gallum, ex eīs, quōs auxilī causā sēcum habēbat. Huic māgnīs praemiīs **pollicitātiōnibus**que persuādet, utī ad hostēs trānseat, et, quid fierī velit, ēdocet. Quī ubi prō perfugā ad eōs vēnit, timōrem Rōmānōrum prōpōnit, quibus angustiīs ipse Caesar ā Venetīs premātur, docet, neque longius abesse, quīn

proximā nocte Sabīnus **clam** ex castrīs exercitum ēdūcat et ad Caesarem auxilī ferendī causā proficīscātur. Quod ubi audītum est, conclāmant omnēs, **occāsiōnem** negōtī **bene** gerendī āmittendam nōn esse; ad castra īrī oportēre.

Multae rēs ad hōc cōnsilium Gallōs hortābantur; superiōrum diērum Sabīnī **cūnctātiō**, perfugae cōnfīrmātiō, inopia cibāriōrum, cui reī parum dīligenter ab eīs erat prōvīsum, spēs Veneticī bellī, et quod ferē libenter hominēs id, quod volunt, crēdunt. Hīs rēbus adductī nōn prius Viridovīcem reliquōsque ducēs ex conciliō dīmittunt quam ab eīs sit concessum, arma utī capiant et ad castra contendant. Quā rē concessā laetī, ut explōrātā victōriā, sarmentīs virgultīsque collēctīs, quibus fossās Rōmānōrum compleant, ad castra pergunt.

The Romans make a sortie and defeat them. They submit to Sabinus.

19. Locus erat castrōrum ēditus et paulātim ab **imō** acclīvis circiter passūs mīlle. Hūc māgnō cursū contendērunt, ut quam minimum spatī ad sē colligendōs armandōsque Rōmānīs darētur, exanimātīque pervēnērunt. Sabīnus suōs hortātus cupientibus sīgnum dat. Impedītīs hostibus propter ea, quae ferēbant, onera, subitō duābus portīs ēruptiōnem fierī iubet. Factum est opportūnitāte locī, hostium īnscientiā ac dēfatīgātiōne, virtūte mīlitum et superiōrum pūgnārum exercitātiōne, ut nē prīmum quidem nostrōrum impetum ferrent ac statim terga verterent. Quōs integrīs vīribus mīlitēs nostrī cōnsecūtī māgnum numerum eōrum occīdērunt; reliquōs

equitēs cōnsectātī paucōs, quī ex fugā ēvāserant, relīquērunt. Sīc ūnō tempore et dē **nāvālī** pūgnā Sabīnus et dē Sabīnī victōriā Caesar est certior factus, cīvitātēsque omnēs sē statim Titūriō dēdidērunt. Nam ut ad bella suscipienda Gallōrum **alacer** ac prōmptus est animus, sīc **mollis** ac minimē resistēns ad calamitātēs ferendās mēns eōrum est.

CRASSUS IN AQUITANIA, 20–27.

Crassus undertakes the conquest of Aquitania.

20. Eōdem ferē tempore P. Crassus, cum in Aquītāniam pervēnisset, quae pars, ut ante dictum est, et regiōnum lātitūdine et multitūdine hominum ex tertiā parte Galliae est **aestimanda**, cum intellegeret, in eīs locīs sibi bellum gerendum, ubi paucīs ante annīs L. Valerius Praecōnīnus lēgātus exercitū pulsō interfectus esset atque unde L. Mānlius prōcōnsul impedīmentīs āmissīs profūgisset, nōn **mediocrem** sibi dīligentiam adhibendam intellegēbat. Itaque rē frūmentāriā prōvīsā, auxiliīs equitātūque comparātō, multīs praetereā virīs fortibus Tolōsā et Carcasōne et Narbōne, quae sunt cīvitātēs Galliae prōvinciae fīnitimae hīs regiōnibus, nōminātim **ēvocātīs**, in Sotiātium fīnēs exercitum intrōdūxit. Cūius adventū cōgnitō Sotiātēs māgnīs cōpiīs coāctīs equitātūque, quō plūrimum valēbant, in itinere agmen nostrum adortī prīmum equestre proelium commīsērunt, deinde, equitātū suō pulsō atque īnsequentibus nostrīs, subitō pedestrēs cōpiās, quās in **convalle** in īnsidiīs conlocāverant, ostendērunt. Hī nostrōs disiectōs adortī proelium renovārunt.

Defeat and Surrender of the Sotiates.

21. Pūgnātum est diū atque ācriter, cum Sotiātēs superiōribus victōriīs frētī in suā virtūte tōtīus Aquītāniae salūtem positam putārent, nostrī autem, quid sine imperātōre et sine reliquīs legiōnibus adulēscentulō duce efficere possent, perspicī cuperent; tandem cōnfectī vulneribus hostēs terga vertērunt. Quōrum māgnō numerō interfectō Crassus ex itinere oppidum Sotiātium oppūgnāre coepit. Quibus fortiter resistentibus vīneās turrēsque ēgit. Illī aliās ēruptiōne temptātā, aliās cunīculīs ad aggerem vīneāsque āctīs, — cūius reī sunt longē perītissimī Aquītānī, prop툳tereā quod multīs locīs apud eōs aerāriae sectūraeque sunt, — ubi dīligentiā nostrōrum nihil hīs rēbus **prōficī** posse intellēxērunt, lēgātōs ad Crassum mittunt, sēque in dēditiōnem ut recipiat, petunt. Quā rē impetrātā, arma trādere iussī faciunt.



VINEA.

Sortie of Adiatunnus.

22. Atque in eam rem omnium nostrōrum **intentīs** animīs, aliā ex parte oppidī Adiatunnus, quī summam imperī tenēbat, cum DC **dēvōtīs**, quōs illī soldūriōs appellant, quōrum haec est condiciō, ut omnibus in vītā commodīs ūnā cum eīs fruantur, quōrum sē amīcitiae dēdiderint, sī quid hīs per vim accidat, aut eundem cāsum

ūnā ferant aut sibi mortem cōnscīscant; neque adhūc hominum memoriā repertus est quisquam, quī eō interfectō, cūius sē amīcitiae dēvōvisset, mortem recūsāret—cum hīs Adiatunnus ēruptiōnem facere cōnātus, clāmōre ab eā parte mūnītiōnis sublātō, cum ad arma mīlitēs concurrissent vehementerque ibi pūgnātum esset, repulsus in oppidum tamen, utī eādem dēditiōnis condiciōne ūterētur, ā Crassō impetrāvit.

The Aquitani summon aid from Spain. They adopt Roman military methods. Crassus determines to force a battle.

23. Armīs obsidibusque acceptīs Crassus in fīnēs Vocātium et Tarusātium profectus est. Tum vērō barbarī commōtī, quod oppidum et nātūrā locī et manū mūnītum paucīs diēbus, quibus eō ventum erat, expūgnātum cōgnōverant, lēgātōs quōque versus dīmittere, coniūrāre, obsidēs inter sē dare, cōpiās parāre coepērunt. Mittuntur etiam ad eās cīvitātēs lēgātī, quae sunt citeriōris Hispāniae fīnitimae Aquītāniae; inde auxilia ducēsque arcessuntur. Quōrum adventū māgnā cum auctōritāte et māgnā cum hominum multitūdine bellum gerere cōnantur. Ducēs vērō eī dēliguntur, quī ūnā cum Q. Sertōriō omnēs annōs fuerant summamque scientiam reī mīlitāris habēre exīstimābantur. Hī cōnsuētūdine populī Rōmānī loca capere, castra mūnīre, commeātibus nostrōs interclūdere īnstituunt.

Quod ubi Crassus animadvertit, suās cōpiās propter exiguitātem nōn facile dīdūcī, hostem et vagārī et viās **obsidēre** et castrīs satis praesidī relinquere, ob eam causam minus commodē frūmentum commeātumque sibi

supportārī, in diēs hostium numerum augērī, nōn **cūnctandum** exīstimāvit, quīn pūgnā dēcertāret. Hāc rē ad cōnsilium dēlātā, ubi omnēs idem sentīre intellēxit, posterum diem pūgnae cōnstituit.

The Aquitani try to avoid a decisive battle for the present.

24. Prīmā lūce prōductīs omnibus cōpiīs, duplicī aciē īnstitūtā, auxiliīs in mediam aciem coniectīs, quid hostēs cōnsilī caperent, exspectābat. Illī, etsī propter multitūdinem et veterem bellī glōriam paucitātemque nostrōrum sē tūtō dīmicātūrōs exīstimābant, tamen tūtius esse arbitrābantur obsessīs viīs, commeātū interclūsō, sine vulnere victōriā potīrī, et sī propter inopiam reī frūmentāriae Rōmānī sēsē recipere coepissent, impedītōs in agmine et sub sarcinīs **infīrmiōrēs** animō adorīrī cōgitābant. Hōc cōnsiliō probātō ab ducibus, prōductīs Rōmānōrum cōpiīs, sēsē castrīs tenēbant. Hāc rē perspectā Crassus, cum suā cūnctātiōne atque opīniōne timōris hostēs nostrōs mīlitēs alacriōrēs ad pūgnandum effēcissent atque omnium vōcēs audīrentur, exspectārī diūtius nōn oportēre, quīn ad castra īrētur, cohortātus suōs omnibus cupientibus ad hostium castra contendit.

Crassus attacks their camp.

25. Ibi cum aliī fossās complērent, aliī multīs tēlīs coniectīs dēfēnsōrēs vāllō mūnītiōnibusque dēpellerent auxiliārēsque, quibus ad pūgnam nōn multum Crassus cōnfīdēbat, lapidibus tēlīsque subministrandīs et ad aggerem **caespitibus** comportandīs speciem atque opīniōnem pūgnantium praebērent, cum item ab hostibus cōnstanter

ac nōn **timidē** pūgnārētur tēlaque ex locō superiōre missa nōn frūstrā acciderent, equitēs **circumitīs** hostium castrīs Crassō renūntiāvērunt, nōn eādem esse dīligentiā ab decumānā portā castra mūnīta facilemque aditum habēre.

The Roman cavalry effects an entrance at the rear of the camp. The Aquitani are routed.

26. Crassus equitum praefectōs cohortātus, ut māgnīs praemiīs pollicitātiōnibusque suōs excitārent, quid fierī vellet, ostendit. Illī, ut erat imperātum, dēvectīs eīs cohortibus, quae praesidiō castrīs relictae intrītae ab labōre erant, et longiōre itinere circumductīs, nē ex hostium castrīs cōnspicī possent, omnium oculīs mentibusque ad pūgnam intentīs, celeriter ad eās, quās dīximus, mūnītiōnēs pervēnērunt atque hīs prōrutīs prius in hostium castrīs cōnstitērunt quam plānē ab hīs vidērī aut, quid reī gererētur, cōgnōscī posset. Tum vērō, clāmōre ab eā parte audītō, nostrī redintegrātīs vīribus, quod plērumque in spē victōriae accidere cōnsuēvit, ācrius impūgnāre coepērunt. Hostēs undique circumventī, dēspērātīs omnibus rēbus, sē per mūnītiōnēs dēicere et fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Quōs equitātus apertissimīs campīs cōnsectātus, ex mīlium L numerō, quae ex Aquītāniā Cantabrīsque convēnisse cōnstābat, vix quārtā parte relictā, multā nocte sē in castra recēpit.

Most of the Aquitanian states submit to Crassus.

27. Hāc audītā pūgnā māxima pars Aquītāniae sēsē Crassō dēdidit obsidēsque ultrō mīsit; quō in numerō

fuērunt Tarbellī, Bigerriōnēs, Ptianiī, Vocātēs, Tarusātēs, Elusātēs, Gatēs, Auscī, Garumnī, Sibusātēs, Cocosātēs; paucae **ultimae** nātiōnēs annī tempore cōnfīsae, quod hiems **suberat,** id facere neglēxērunt.

THE MORINI AND MENAPII, 28-29.

Caesar leads an expedition against the Morini and Menapii.

28. Eōdem ferē tempore Caesar, etsī prope exācta iam aestās erat, tamen, quod omnī Galliā pācātā Morinī Menapiīque supererant, quī in armīs essent neque ad eum umquam lēgātōs dē pāce mīsissent, arbitrātus id bellum celeriter cōnficī posse, eō exercitum dūxit; quī longē aliā ratiōne ac reliquī Gallī bellum gerere coepērunt. Nam quod intellegēbant māximās nātiōnēs, quae proeliō contendissent, pulsās superātāsque esse, **continentēs**que silvās ac palūdēs habēbant, eō sē suaque omnia contulērunt. Ad quārum initium silvārum cum Caesar pervēnisset castraque mūnīre īnstituisset, neque hostis interim vīsus esset, dispersīs in opere nostrīs, subitō ex omnibus partibus silvae ēvolāvērunt et in nostrōs impetum fēcērunt. Nostrī celeriter arma cēpērunt eōsque in silvās repulērunt et, complūribus interfectīs, longius impedītiōribus locīs secūtī paucōs ex suīs dēperdidērunt.

The enemy avoid a decisive battle. Caesar is compelled to abandon the expedition. The Roman army goes into winter quarters.

29. Reliquīs **deinceps** diēbus Caesar silvās **caedere** īnstituit, et nē quis inermibus **imprūdentibus**que mīlitibus ab latere impetus fierī posset, omnem eam **māteriam,** quae

erat caesa, conversam ad hostem conlocābat et prō vāllō ad utrumque latus exstruēbat. Incrēdibilī celeritāte māgnō spatiō paucīs diēbus cōnfectō, cum iam **pecus** atque extrēma impedīmenta ā nostrīs tenērentur, ipsī dēnsiōrēs silvās peterent, ēius modī sunt tempestātēs cōnsecūtae, utī opus necessāriō intermitterētur, et continuātiōne imbrium diūtius sub pellibus mīlitēs continērī nōn possent. Itaque vāstātīs omnibus eōrum agrīs, vīcīs aedificiīsque incēnsīs, Caesar exercitum redūxit et in Aulercīs Lexoviīsque, reliquīs item cīvitātibus, quae proximē bellum fēcerant, in hībernīs conlocāvit.



CALIGA.

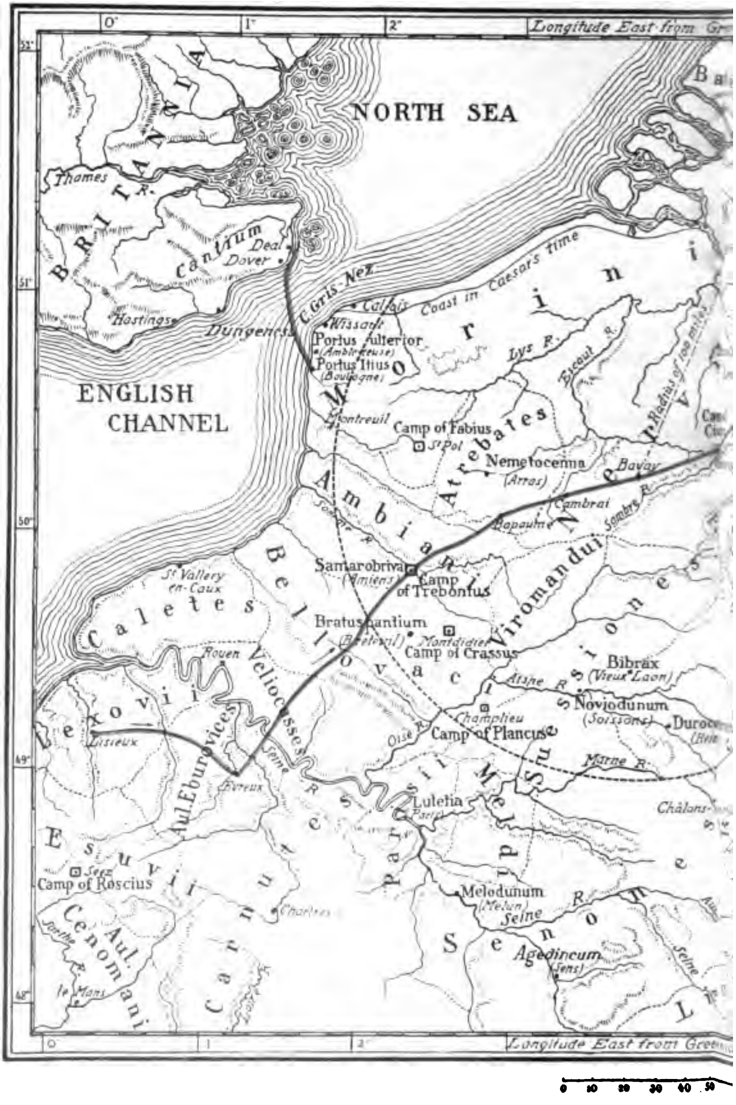
LIBER QUARTUS.

THE USIPETES AND TENCTERI, 1–15.

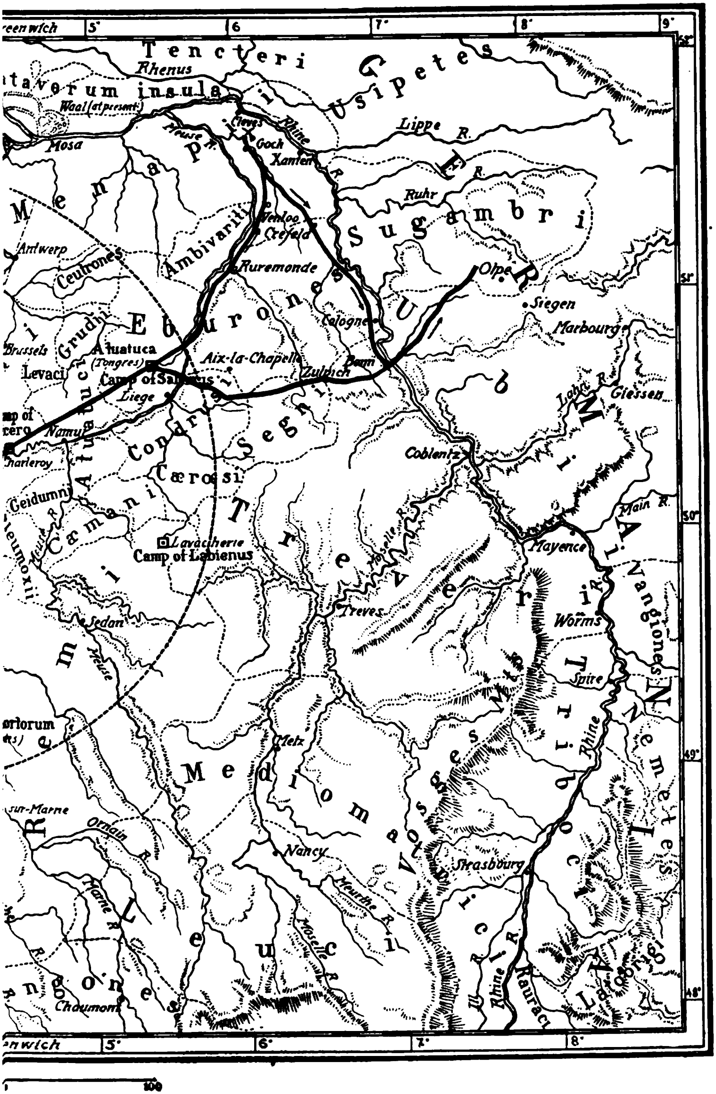
Germans in Gaul. Description of the Suebi.

1. Eā, quae secūta est, hieme, quī fuit annus Cn. Pompēiō, M. Crassō cōnsulibus, Usipetēs Germānī et item Tencterī māgnā cum multitūdine hominum flūmen Rhēnum trānsiērunt, nōn longē ā marī, quō Rhēnus īnfluit. Causa trānseundī fuit, quod ab Suēbīs complūrēs annōs exagitātī bellō premēbantur et agrī cultūrā prohibēbantur.

Suēbōrum gēns est longē māxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum omnium. Hī centum pāgōs habēre dīcuntur, ex quibus quotannīs singula mīlia armātōrum bellandī causā ex fīnibus ēdūcunt. Reliquī, quī domī mānsērunt, sē atque illōs alunt; hī rūrsus in vicem annō post in armīs sunt, illī domī remanent. Sīc neque agrī cultūra nec ratiō atque ūsus bellī intermittitur. Sed prīvātī ac sēparātī agrī apud eōs nihil est, neque longius annō remanēre ūnō in locō **colendī** causā licet. Neque multum frūmentō, sed māximam partem **lacte** atque pecore **vīvunt**, multumque sunt in vēnātiōnibus; quae rēs et cibī genere et cotīdiānā exercitātiōne et lībertāte vītae, quod ā puerīs nūllō officiō aut disciplīnā **adsuēfactī** nihil omnīnō contrā voluntātem faciunt, et vīrēs alit et immānī corporum māgnitūdine hominēs efficit. Atque in eam sē cōnsuētūdinem addūxērunt, ut locīs frīgidissimīs neque vestītūs praeter pellēs



CAMPAIGNS OF 55



ASSUUM

55 and 54 B.C.

habērent quicquam, quārum propter exiguitātem māgna est corporis pars aperta, et lavārentur in flūminibus.

Their skill as horsemen. Their oppression of the Ubii.

2. Mercātōribus est aditus magis eō, ut, quae bellō cēperint, quibus vēndant, habeant, quam quō ūllam rem ad sē importārī **dēsīderent**. Quīn etiam iūmentīs, quibus māximē Gallī dēlectantur quaeque impēnsō parant pretiō, Germānī importātīs nōn ūtuntur, sed quae sunt apud eōs nāta, parva atque dēfōrmia, haec cotīdiānā exercitātiōne, summī ut sint labōris, efficiunt. Equestribus proeliīs saepe ex equīs **dēsiliunt** ac pedibus proeliantur, equōsque eōdem remanēre **vestigiō** adsuēfēcērunt, ad quōs sē celeriter, cum ūsus est, recipiunt; neque eōrum mōribus turpius quicquam aut inertius habētur quam ephippiīs ūtī. Itaque ad quemvīs numerum ephippiātōrum equitum quamvīs paucī adīre audent. Vīnum omnīnō ad sē importārī nōn patiuntur, quod eā rē ad labōrem ferendum remollēscere hominēs atque effēminārī arbitrantur.

3. Pūblicē māximam putant esse laudem, quam lātissimē ā suīs fīnibus vacāre agrōs; hāc rē sīgnificārī, māgnum numerum cīvitātum suam vim sustinēre nōn posse. Itaque ūnā ex parte ā Suēbīs circiter mīlia passuum c agrī vacāre dīcuntur. Ad alteram partem succēdunt Ubiī, quōrum fuit cīvitās ampla atque flōrēns, ut est captus Germānōrum; eī paulō, quamquam sunt ēiusdem generis, sunt cēterīs **hūmāniōrēs**, propterea quod Rhēnum attingunt multumque ad eōs mercātōrēs **ventitant**, et ipsī propter propinquitātem Gallicīs sunt mōribus adsuēfactī. Hōs cum Suēbī multīs saepe bellīs

expertī propter amplitūdinem **gravitātem**que cīvitātis fīnibus expellere nōn potuissent, tamen vectīgālēs sibi fēcērunt ac multō **humiliōrēs** īnfīrmiōrēsque redēgērunt.

The Usipetes and Tencteri invade the country of the Menapii.

4. In eādem causā fuērunt Usipetēs et Tencterī, quōs suprā dīximus; quī complūrēs annōs Suēbōrum vim sustinuērunt, ad extrēmum tamen agrīs expulsī et multīs locīs Germāniae triennium vagātī ad Rhēnum pervēnērunt, quās regiōnēs Menapiī incolēbant. Hī ad utramque rīpam flūminis agrōs, aedificia vīcōsque habēbant; sed tantae multitūdinis adventū perterritī ex eīs aedificiīs, quae trāns flūmen habuerant, **dēmigrāverant** et cis Rhēnum dispositīs praesidiīs Germānōs trānsīre prohibēbant. Illī omnia expertī, cum neque vī contendere propter inopiam nāvium neque clam trānsīre propter custōdiās Menapiōrum possent, revertī sē in suās sēdēs regiōnēsque simulāvērunt, et trīduī viam prōgressī rūrsus revertērunt, atque omnī hōc itinere ūnā nocte equitātū cōnfectō īnsciōs inopīnantēsque Menapiōs oppressērunt, quī dē Germānōrum discessū per explōrātōrēs certiōrēs factī sine **metū** trāns Rhēnum in suōs vīcōs **remigrāverant**. Hīs interfectīs nāvibusque eōrum occupātīs, priusquam ea pars Menapiōrum, quae citrā Rhēnum erat, certior fieret, flūmen trānsiērunt atque omnibus eōrum aedificiīs occupātīs reliquam partem hiemis sē eōrum cōpiīs aluērunt.

Curiosity and temerity of the Gauls.

5. Hīs dē rēbus Caesar certior factus et **īnfirmitātem** Gallōrum veritus, quod sunt in cōnsiliīs capiendīs mōbilēs

et novīs plērumque rēbus student, nihil hīs committendum exīstimāvit. Est enim hōc Gallicae cōnsuētūdinis, utī et viātōrēs etiam invītōs cōnsistere cōgant et, quid quisque eōrum dē quāque rē audierit aut cōgnōverit, quaerant, et mercātōrēs in oppidīs vulgus circumsistat, quibusque ex regiōnibus veniant quāsque ibi rēs cōgnōverint, **prōnūntiāre** cōgat. Hīs rēbus atque audītiōnibus permōtī dē summīs saepe rēbus cōnsilia ineunt, quōrum eōs in vestīgiō paenitēre **necesse** est, cum **incertīs** rūmōribus serviant et plērīque ad voluntātem eōrum ficta respondeant.

Certain Gallic states invite the Germans to advance farther in Gaul. Caesar resolves to resist the encroachments of the Germans.

6. Quā cōnsuētūdine cōgnitā Caesar, nē graviōrī bellō occurreret, mātūrius, quam cōnsuērat, ad exercitum proficīscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, ea, quae fore suspicātus erat, facta cōgnōvit: missās lēgātiōnēs ab nōn nūllīs cīvitātibus ad Germānōs invītātōsque eōs, utī ab Rhēnō discēderent; omnia, quae postulāssent, ab sē fore parāta. Quā spē adductī Germānī lātius iam vagābantur et in fīnēs Eburōnum et Condrūsōrum, quī sūnt Trēverōrum clientēs, pervēnerant. Prīncipibus Galliae ēvocātīs Caesar ea, quae cōgnōverat, dissimulanda sibi exīstimāvit, eōrumque animīs permulsīs et cōnfīrmātīs equitātūque imperātō bellum cum Germānīs gerere cōnstituit.

He advances against them and is met by envoys.

7. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā equitibusque dēlēctīs iter in ea loca facere coepit, quibus in locīs esse Germānōs

audiēbat. Ā quibus cum paucōrum diērum iter abesset, lēgātī ab eīs vēnērunt, quōrum haec fuit ōrātiō: Germānōs neque priōrēs populō Rōmānō bellum īnferre neque tamen recūsāre, sī lacessantur, quīn armīs contendant, quod Germānōrum cōnsuētūdō sit ā māiōribus trādita, quīcumque bellum īnferant, resistere neque dēprecārī. Haec tamen dīcere; vēnisse invītōs, **ēiectōs** domō; sī suam grātiam Rōmānī velint, posse eīs ūtilēs esse amīcōs; vel sibi agrōs attribuant vel patiantur eōs tenēre, quōs armīs possēderint; sēsē ūnīs Suēbīs concēdere, quibus nē diī quidem immortālēs parēs esse possint; reliquum quidem in terrīs esse nēminem, quem nōn superāre possint.

Caesar orders the Germans from Gaul, offering them lands in the country of the Ubii. They seek to gain time, in the hope of reinforcements.

8. Ad haec Caesar, quae vīsum est, respondit; sed exitus fuit ōrātiōnis: sibi nūllam cum eīs amīcitiam esse posse, sī in Galliā remanērent; neque vērum esse, quī suōs fīnēs **tuērī** nōn potuerint, aliēnōs occupāre; neque ūllōs in Galliā vacāre agrōs, quī darī tantae praesertim multitūdinī sine iniūriā possint; sed licēre, sī velint, in Ubiōrum fīnibus cōnsīdere, quōrum sint lēgātī apud sē et dē Suēbōrum iniūriīs querantur et ā sē auxilium petant; hōc sē Ubiīs imperātūrum.

9. Lēgātī haec sē ad suōs relātūrōs dīxērunt et rē dēlīberātā post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversūrōs; intereā nē propius sē castra movēret, petiērunt. Nē id quidem Caesar ab sē impetrārī posse dīxit. Cōgnōverat

enim, māgnam partem ēquitātūs ab eīs aliquot diēbus ante praedandī **frūmentandī**que causā ad Ambivaritōs trāns Mosam missam; hōs exspectārī equitēs atque ēius reī causā moram interpōnī arbitrābātur.

Course of the rivers Meuse and Rhine.

10. Mosa prōfluit ex monte Vosegō, quī est in fīnibus Lingonum, et parte quādam ex Rhēnō receptā, quae appellātur Vacalus, īnsulam efficit Batāvōrum neque longius inde mīlibus passuum LXXX in Ōceanum īnfluit. Rhēnus autem oritur ex Lepontiīs, quī Alpēs incolunt, et longō spatiō per fīnēs Nantuātium, Helvētiōrum, Sēquanōrum, Mediomatricum, Tribocōrum, Trēverōrum citātus fertur et, ubi Ōceanō adpropinquāvit, in plūrēs diffluit partēs multīs ingentibusque īnsulīs effectīs, quārum pars māgna ā ferīs barbarīsque nātiōnibus incolitur,—ex quibus sunt, quī piscibus atque ōvīs avium vīvere exīstimantur,—multīsque capitibus in Ōceanum īnfluit.

Caesar again receives the German envoys, and arranges for another conference.

11. Caesar cum ab hoste nōn amplius passuum XII mīlibus abesset, ut erat cōnstitūtum, ad eum lēgātī revertuntur; quī in itinere congressī māgnopere, nē longius prōgrederētur, ōrābant. Cum id nōn impetrāssent, petēbant, utī ad eōs equitēs, quī agmen antecessissent, praemitteret eōsque pūgnā prohibēret, sibique ut potestātem faceret in Ubiōs lēgātōs mittendī; quōrum sī prīncipēs ac senātus sibi iūre iūrandō fidem fēcisset, eā condiciōne,

quae ā Caesare ferrētur, sē ūsūrōs ostendēbant; ad hās rēs cōnficiendās sibi trīduī spatium daret.

Haec omnia Caesar eōdem **illō** pertinēre arbitrābātur, ut trīduī morā interpositā equitēs eōrum, quī abessent, reverterentur; tamen sēsē nōn longius mīlibus passuum IIII aquātiōnis causā prōcessūrum eō diē dīxit; hūc posterō diē quam **frequentissimī** convenīrent, ut dē eōrum postulātīs cōgnōsceret. Interim ad praefectōs, quī cum omnī equitātū antecesserant, mittit, quī nūntiārent, nē hostēs proeliō lacesserent et, sī ipsī lacesserentur, sustinērent, **quoad** ipse cum exercitū propius accessisset.

The German cavalry treacherously attacks the Roman cavalry. Bravery of two brothers, Aquitanians, in Caesar's cavalry.

12. At hostēs, ubi prīmum nostrōs equitēs cōnspexērunt, quōrum erat V mīlium numerus, cum ipsī nōn amplius DCCC equitēs habērent, quod eī, quī frūmentandī causā ierant trāns Mosam, nōndum redierant, nihil timentibus nostrīs, quod lēgātī eōrum paulō ante ā Caesare discesserant atque is diēs **indūtiīs** erat ab hīs petītus, impetū factō celeriter nostrōs perturbāvērunt; rūrsus hīs resistentibus, cōnsuētūdine suā ad pedēs dēsiluērunt subfossīsque equīs complūribusque nostrīs dēiectīs reliquōs in fugam coniēcērunt atque ita perterritōs ēgērunt, ut nōn prius fugā dēsisterent quam in cōnspectum agminis nostrī vēnissent.

In eō proeliō ex equitibus nostrīs interficiuntur IIII et LXX, in hīs vir fortissimus Pīsō Aquītānus, amplissimō genere nātus, cūius avus in cīvitāte suā rēgnum obtinuerat, amīcus ā senātū nostrō appellātus. Hīc cum frātrī inter-

clūsō ab hostibus auxilium ferret, illum ex perīculō ēripuit, ipse equō vulnerātō dēiectus, quoad potuit, fortissimē restitit; cum circumventus, multīs vulneribus acceptīs, cecidisset atque id frāter, quī iam proeliō ex-



EQUITES.

cesserat, procul animadvertisset, incitātō equō sē hostibus obtulit atque interfectus est.

Caesar ends negotiations, and prepares for battle.

13. Hōc factō proeliō Caesar neque iam sibi lēgātōs audiendōs neque condiciōnēs accipiendās arbitrābātur ab

eīs, quī per dolum atque īnsidiās petītā pāce ultrō bellum intulissent; exspectāre vērō, dum hostium cōpiae augērentur equitātusque reverterētur, summae dēmentiae esse iūdicābat, et cōgnitā Gallōrum īnfīrmitāte, quantum iam apud eōs hostēs ūnō proeliō auctōritātis essent cōnsecūtī, sentiēbat; quibus ad cōnsilia capienda nihil spatī dandum exīstimābat.

Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus et cōnsiliō cum lēgātīs et quaestōre **commūnicātō**, nē quem diem pūgnae praetermitteret, opportūnissima rēs accidit, quod postrīdiē ēius diēī **māne** eādem et simulātiōne et **perfidiā** ūsī Germānī frequentēs, omnibus prīncipibus māiōribusque nātū adhibitīs, ad eum in castra vēnērunt, simul, ut dīcēbātur, pūrgandī suī causā, quod, contrā atque esset dictum et ipsī petīssent, proelium prīdiē commīsissent, simul ut, sī quid pōssent, dē indūtiīs fallendō impetrārent. Quōs sibi Caesar oblātōs gāvīsus, illōs retinērī iussit; ipse omnēs cōpiās castrīs ēdūxit equitātumque, quod recentī proeliō perterritum esse exīstimābat, agmen subsequī iussit.

The Germans are thrown into confusion by Caesar's unexpected attack on their camp.

14. Aciē triplicī īnstitūtā et celeriter VIII mīlium itinere cōnfectō, prius ad hostium castra pervēnit quam, quid agerētur, Germānī sentīre possent. Quī omnibus rēbus subitō perterritī, et celeritāte adventūs nostrī et discessū suōrum, neque cōnsilī habendī neque arma capiendī spatiō datō, perturbantur, cōpiās**ne** adversus hostem dūcere an castra dēfendere an fugā salūtem petere praestāret. Quōrum timor cum fremitū et con-

cursū sīgnificārētur, mīlitēs nostrī prīstinī diēī perfidiā incitātī in castra **inrūpērunt**. Quō locō quī celeriter arma capere potuērunt, paulisper nostrīs restitērunt atque inter carrōs impedīmentaque proelium commīsērunt; at reliqua multitūdō puerōrum mulierumque—nam cum omnibus suīs domō excesserant Rhēnumque trānsierant—passim fugere coepit; ad quōs cōnsectandōs Caesar equitātum mīsit.

They flee and are cut to pieces.

15. Germānī post tergum clāmōre audītō, cum suōs interficī vidērent, armīs **abiectīs** sīgnīsque mīlitāribus relictīs sē ex castrīs ēiēcērunt, et cum ad cōnfluentem Mosae et Rhēnī pervēnissent, reliquā fugā dēspērātā, māgnō numerō interfectō, reliquī sē in flūmen praecipitāvērunt atque ibi timōre, lassitūdine, vī flūminis oppressī periērunt. Nostrī ad ūnum omnēs incolumēs, perpaucīs vulnerātīs, ex tantī bellī timōre, cum hostium numerus capitum ccccxxx mīlium fuisset, sē in castra recēpērunt. Caesar eīs, quōs in castrīs retinuerat, discēdendī potestātem fēcit. Illī supplicia cruciātūsque Gallōrum veritī, quōrum agrōs vexāverant, remanēre sē apud eum velle dīxērunt. Hīs Caesar lībertātem concessit.

CAMPAIGN IN GERMANY, 16-19.

Caesar recounts his reasons for a campaign in Germany.

16. Germānicō bellō cōnfectō, multīs dē causīs Caesar statuit sibi Rhēnum esse trānseundum; quārum illa fuit

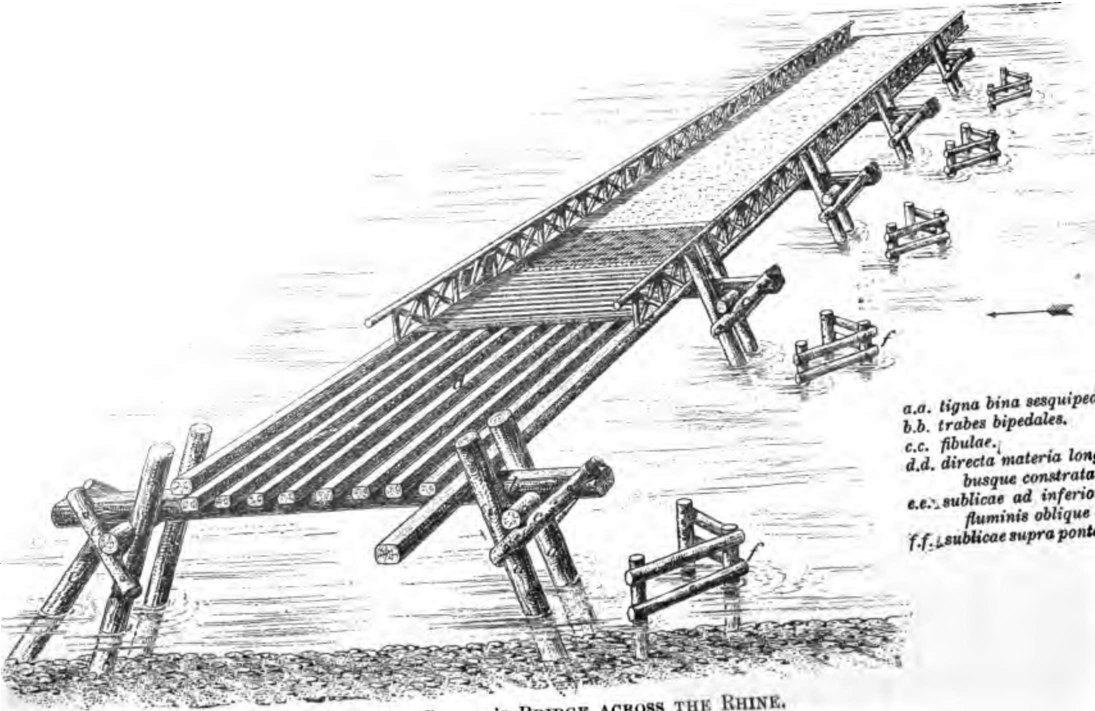
iūstissima, quod, cum vidēret Germānōs tam facile impellī, ut in Galliam venīrent, suīs quoque rēbus eōs timēre voluit, cum intellegerent et posse et audēre populī Rōmānī exercitum Rhēnum trānsīre.

Accessit etiam, quod illa pars equitātūs Usipetum et Tencterōrum, quam suprā commemorāvī praedandī frūmentandīque causā Mosam trānsīsse neque proeliō interfuisse, post fugam suōrum sē trāns Rhēnum in fīnēs Sugambrōrum recēperat sēque cum hīs coniūnxerat. Ad quōs cum Caesar nūntiōs mīsisset, quī postulārent, eōs, quī sibi Galliaeque bellum intulissent, sibi dēderent, respondērunt: populī Rōmānī imperium Rhēnum fīnīre; sī sē invītō Germānōs in Galliam trānsīre nōn aequum exīstimāret, cūr suī quicquam esse imperī aut potestātis trāns Rhēnum postulāret?

Ubiī autem, quī ūnī ex Trānsrhēnānīs ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīserant, amīcitiam fēcerant, obsidēs dederant, māgnopere ōrābant, ut sibi auxilium ferret, quod graviter ab Suēbīs premerentur; vel, sī id facere **occupātiōnibus** reī pūblicae prohibērētur, exercitum modo Rhēnum trānsportāret; id sibi ad auxilium spemque reliquī temporis satis futūrum. Tantum esse nōmen atque opīniōnem ēius exercitūs, Ariovistō pulsō et hōc novissimō proeliō factō, etiam ad ultimās Germānōrum nātiōnēs, utī opīniōne et amīcitiā populī Rōmānī tūtī esse possent. Nāvium māgnam cōpiam ad trānsportandum exercitum pollicēbantur.

He constructs a bridge across the Rhine.

17. Caesar hīs dē causīs, quās commemorāvī, Rhēnum trānsīre dēcrēverat; sed nāvibus trānsīre neque satis



a.a. *tigna bina sesquipedalia.*
b.b. *trabes bipedales.*
c.c. *fibulae.*
d.d. *directa materia longuriis cratibusque constrata.*
e.e. *sublicae ad inferiorem partem fluminis oblique actae.*
f.f. *sublicae supra pontem immissae.*

CAESAR'S BRIDGE ACROSS THE RHINE.

tūtum esse arbitrābātur, neque suae neque populī Rōmānī dīgnitātis esse statuēbat. Itaque, etsī summa difficultās faciendī pontis prōpōnēbātur propter lātitūdinem, rapiditātem altitūdinemque flūminis, tamen id sibi contendendum aut aliter nōn trādūcendum exercitum exīstimābat.

Ratiōnem pontis hanc īnstituit. **Tigna** bīna sēsquipedālia paulum ab īmō praeacūta, dīmēnsa ad altitūdinem flūminis, intervāllō pedum duōrum inter sē iungēbat. Haec cum māchinātiōnibus **immissa** in flūmen **dēfīxerat** festūcīsque adēgerat, nōn **sublicae** modō dērēctē ad perpendiculum, sed prōnē ac fastīgātē, ut secundum nātūram flūminis prōcumberent, eīs item contrāria duo ad eundem modum iūncta, intervāllō pedum quadrāgēnum ab īnferiōre parte contrā vim atque impetum flūminis conversa statuēbat. Haec utraque īnsuper bipedālibus trabibus immissīs, quantum eōrum tīgnōrum iūnctūra distābat, bīnīs utrimque fībulīs ab extrēmā parte distinēbantur; quibus disclūsīs atque in contrāriam partem revīnctīs, tanta erat operis fīrmitūdō atque ea rērum nātūra, ut, quō māior vīs **aquae** sē incitāvisset, hōc artius **inligāta** tenērentur. Haec dērēctā māteriā iniectā contexēbantur ac longuriīs **crātibus**que cōnsternēbantur; ac nihilō sētius sublicae et ad īnferiōrem partem flūminis oblīquē agēbantur, quae prō ariete subiectae et cum omnī opere coniūnctae vim flūminis exciperent, et aliae item suprā pontem mediocrī spatiō, ut, sī arborum truncī sīve nāvēs dēiciendī operis causā essent ā barbarīs immissae, hīs dēfēnsōribus eārum rērum vīs minuerētur neu pontī nocērent.

After a short campaign Caesar returns to Gaul.

18. Diēbus x, quibus māteria coepta erat comportārī, omnī opere effectō, exercitus trādūcitur. Caesar ad utramque partem pontis fīrmō praesidiō relictō in fīnēs Sugambrōrum contendit. Interim ā complūribus cīvitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt; quibus pācem atque amīcitiam petentibus līberāliter respondet obsidēsque ad sē addūcī iubet. At Sugambrī ex eō tempore, quō pōns īnstituī coeptus est, fugā comparātā hortantibus eīs, quōs ex Tencterīs atque Usipetibus apud sē habēbant, fīnibus suīs excesserant suaque omnia exportāverant sēque in sōlitūdinem ac silvās abdiderant.

19. Caesar paucōs diēs in eōrum fīnibus morātus, omnibus vīcīs aedificiīsque incēnsīs frūmentīsque **succīsīs**, sē in fīnēs Ubiōrum recēpit atque hīs auxilium suum pollicitus, sī ā Suēbīs premerentur, haec ab eīs cōgnōvit: Suēbōs, posteāquam per explōrātōrēs pontem fierī comperissent, mōre suō conciliō habitō nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīsisse, utī dē oppidīs dēmigrārent, līberōs, uxōrēs suaque omnia in silvīs dēpōnerent atque omnēs, quī arma ferre possent, ūnum in locum convenīrent. Hunc esse dēlēctum medium ferē regiōnum eārum, quās Suēbī obtinērent; hīc Rōmānōrum adventum exspectāre atque ibīdem dēcertāre cōnstituisse.

Quod ubi Caesar comperit, omnibus eīs rēbus cōnfectīs, quārum rērum causā trādūcere exercitum cōnstituerat, ut Germānīs metum iniceret, ut Sugambrōs ulcīscerētur, ut Ubiōs **obsidiōne līberāret**, diēbus omnīnō XVIII trāns Rhēnum cōnsūmptīs, satis et ad laudem et ad ūtilitātem prōfectum arbitrātus, sē in Galliam recēpit pontemque rescidit.

FIRST CAMPAIGN IN BRITAIN, 20-36.

Objects of the campaign.

20. **Exiguā** parte aestātis reliquā Caesar, etsī in hīs locīs, quod omnis Gallia ad septentriōnēs vergit, mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficīscī contendit, quod omnibus ferē Gallicīs bellīs hostibus nostrīs inde subministrāta auxilia intellegēbat et, sī tempus annī ad bellum gerendum dēficeret, tamen māgnō sibi ūsuī fore arbitrābātur, sī modo īnsulam adīsset, genus hominum perspexisset, loca, portūs, aditūs cōgnōvisset; quae omnia ferē Gallīs erant **incōgnita**. Neque enim temerē praeter mercātōrēs illō adit quisquam, neque hīs ipsīs quicquam praeter ōram maritimam atque eās regiōnēs, quae sunt contrā Galliās, **nōtum** est. Itaque vocātīs ad sē undique mercātōribus, neque quanta esset īnsulae māgnitūdō, neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent, neque quem ūsum bellī habērent aut quibus īnstitūtīs ūterentur, neque quī essent ad māiōrem nāvium multitūdinem idōneī portūs, reperīre poterat.

Mission of Volusenus. Arrival of envoys from Britain.

21. Ad haec cōgnōscenda, priusquam perīculum faceret, idōneum esse arbitrātus C. Volusēnum cum nāvī longā praemittit. Huic mandat, ut explōrātīs omnibus rēbus ad sē quam prīmum revertātur. Ipse cum omnibus cōpiīs in Morinōs proficīscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam **trāiectus**. Hūc nāvēs undique ex fīnitimīs regiōnibus et, quam superiōre aestāte ad Veneticum bellum fēcerat, classem iubet convenīre.

Interim cōnsiliō ēius cōgnitō et per mercātōrēs perlātō ad Britannōs, ā complūribus īnsulae cīvitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt, quī polliceantur obsidēs dare atque imperiō populī Rōmānī obtemperāre. Quibus audītīs, līberāliter pollicitus hortātusque, ut in eā sententiā permanērent, eōs domum remittit et cum eīs ūnā Commium, quem ipse Atrebātibus superātīs rēgem ibi cōnstituerat, cūius et virtūtem et cōnsilium probābat et quem sibi fidēlem esse arbitrābātur, cūiusque auctōritās in hīs regiōnibus māgnī habēbātur, mittit. Huic imperat, quās possit, adeat cīvitātēs hortēturque, ut populī Rōmānī fidem sequantur, sēque celeriter eō ventūrum nūntiet. Volusēnus perspectīs regiōnibus, quantum eī facultātis darī potuit, quī nāvī ēgredī ac sē barbarīs committere nōn audēret, quīntō diē ad Caesarem revertitur, quaeque ibi perspexisset, renūntiat.

Submission of the Morini. The Roman fleet assembles.

22. Dum in hīs locīs Caesar nāvium parandārum causā morātur, ex māgnā parte Morinōrum ad eum lēgātī vēnērunt, quī sē dē superiōris temporis cōnsiliō excūsārent, quod hominēs barbarī et nostrae cōnsuētūdinis imperītī bellum populō Rōmānō fēcissent, sēque ea, quae imperāsset, factūrōs pollicērentur. Hōc sibi Caesar satis opportūnē accidisse arbitrātus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere volēbat neque bellī gerendī propter annī tempus facultātem habēbat neque hās tantulārum rērum occupātiōnēs Britanniae antepōnendās iūdicābat, māgnum eīs numerum obsidum imperat. Quibus adductīs eōs in fidem recipit.

Nāvibus circiter LXXX **onerāriīs** coāctīs, quot satis esse ad duās trānsportandās legiōnēs exīstimābat, quod praetereā nāvium longārum habēbat, quaestōrī, lēgātīs praefectīsque distribuit. Hūc accēdēbant XVIII onerāriae nāvēs, quae ex eō locō ā mīlibus passuum VIII ventō tenēbantur, quōminus in eundem portum venīre possent; hās equitibus distribuit. Reliquum exercitum Titūriō Sabīnō et Aurunculēiō Cottae lēgātīs in Menapiōs atque in eōs pāgōs Morinōrum, ā quibus ad eum lēgātī nōn vēnerant, dūcendum dedit. Sulpicium Rūfum lēgātum cum eō praesidiō, quod satis esse arbitrābātur, portum tenēre iussit.

The fleet sets sail and reaches the British coast.

23. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus, nactus idōneam ad nāvigandum tempestātem tertiā ferē vigiliā **solvit** equitēsque in ulteriōrem portum prōgredī et nāvēs **cōnscendere** et sē sequī iussit. Ā quibus cum paulō tardius esset administrātum, ipse hōrā diēī circiter quārtā cum prīmīs nāvibus Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus **expositās** hostium cōpiās armātās cōnspexit. Cūius locī haec erat nātūra atque ita montibus **angustē** mare continēbātur, utī ex locīs superiōribus in **lītus** tēlum adigī posset. Hunc ad ēgrediendum nēquāquam idōneum locum arbitrātus, dum reliquae nāvēs eō convenīrent, ad hōram nōnam in ancorīs exspectāvit.

Interim lēgātīs tribūnīsque mīlitum convocātīs et, quae ex Volusēnō cōgnōvisset, et, quae fierī vellet, ostendit monuitque, ut reī mīlitāris ratiō, māximē ut maritimae rēs postulārent, ut quae celerem atque īnstabilem **mōtum** habērent, ad nūtum et ad tempus omnēs rēs ab eīs admi-

nistrārentur. Hīs dīmissīs et ventum et aestum ūnō tempore nactus secundum, datō sīgnō et sublātīs ancorīs circiter mīlia passuum VII ab eō locō prōgressus, apertō ac plānō lītore nāvēs cōnstituit.

The Britons attack the Roman troops as they attempt to land from the transports.

24. At barbarī cōnsiliō Rōmānōrum cōgnitō, praemissō equitātū et **essedāriīs**, quō plērumque genere in proeliīs ūtī cōnsuērunt, reliquīs cōpiīs subsecūtī nostrōs nāvibus ēgredī prohibēbant. Erat ob hās causās summa difficultās, quod nāvēs propter māgnitūdinem nisi in altō



BALLISTA.



CATAPULTA.

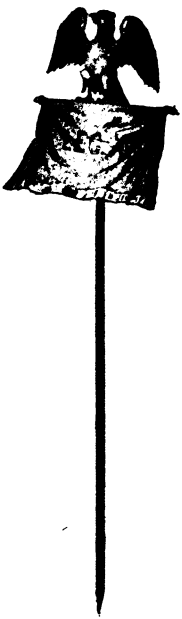
cōnstituī nōn poterant, mīlitibus autem, īgnōtīs locīs, impedītīs manibus, māgnō et gravī onere armōrum pressīs simul et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum et in flūctibus cōnsistendum et cum hostibus erat pūgnandum, cum illī aut ex **āridō** aut paulum in aquam prōgressī, omnibus membrīs expedītīs, nōtissimīs locīs, audacter tēla cōicerent et equōs

īnsuēfactōs incitārent. Quibus rēbus nostrī perterritī atque hūius omnīnō generis pūgnae imperītī nōn eādem alacritāte ac studiō, quō in pedestribus ūtī proeliīs cōnsuērant, ūtēbantur.

The war galleys are sent to their aid.

25. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs longās, quārum et speciēs erat barbarīs inūsitātior et mōtus ad ūsum expedītior, paulum removērī ab onerāriīs nāvibus et rēmīs incitārī et ad latus apertum hostium cōnstituī atque inde **fundīs**, sagittīs, tormentīs hostēs prōpellī ac submovērī iussit; quae rēs māgnō ūsuī nostrīs fuit. Nam et nāvium figūrā et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsitātō genere tormentōrum permōtī barbarī cōnstitērunt ac paulum etiam pedem rettulērunt.

Atque nostrīs mīlitibus cūnctantibus, māximē propter altitūdinem maris, quī decimae legiōnis **aquilam** ferēbat, obtestātus deōs, ut ea rēs legiōnī fēlīciter ēvenīret, "dēsilīte," **inquit**, "commīlitōnēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prōdere; ego **certē** meum reī pūblicae atque imperātōrī officium praestiterō." Hōc cum vōce māgnā dīxisset, sē ex nāvī prōiēcit atque in hostēs aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostrī cohortātī inter sē, nē tantum dēdecus admitterētur, ūni-



AQUILA.

versī ex nāvī dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex proximīs nāvibus cum cōnspexissent, subsecūtī hostibus adpropinquāvērunt.

After a stubborn contest a landing is effected.

26. Pūgnātum est ab utrīsque ācriter. Nostrī tamen, quod neque ōrdinēs servāre neque fīrmiter īnsistere neque sīgna subsequī poterant atque alius aliā ex nāvī, quibuscumque sīgnīs occurrerat, sē adgregābat, māgnopere perturbābantur; hostēs vērō, nōtīs omnibus vadīs, ubi ex lītore aliquōs singulārēs ex nāvī ēgredientēs cōnspexerant, incitātīs equīs impedītōs adoriēbantur, plūrēs paucōs circumsistēbant, aliī ab latere apertō in ūniversōs tēla cōiciēbant.

Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphās longārum nāvium, item speculātōria nāvigia mīlitibus complērī iussit et, quōs labōrantēs cōnspexerat, hīs subsidia submittēbat. Nostrī, simul in āridō cōnstitērunt, suīs omnibus cōnsecūtīs, in hostēs impetum fēcērunt atque eōs in fugam dedērunt; neque longius prōsequī potuērunt, quod equitēs cursum tenēre atque īnsulam capere nōn potuerant. Hōc ūnum ad prīstinam fortūnam Caesarī dēfuit.

The Britons sue for peace. Caesar demands hostages.

27. Hostēs proeliō superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce mīsērunt; obsidēs datūrōs, quaeque imperāsset, factūrōs sēsē pollicitī sunt. Ūnā cum hīs lēgātīs Commius Atrebās vēnit, quem suprā dēmōnstrāveram ā Caesare in Bri-

tanniam praemissum. Hunc illī ē nāvī ēgressum, cum ad eōs ōrātōris modō Caesaris mandāta dēferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula coniēcerant; tum proeliō factō remīsērunt, et in petendā pāce ēius reī culpam in multitūdinem contulērunt et, propter **imprūdentiam** ut īgnōscerētur, petīvērunt.

Caesar questus, quod, cum ultrō in continentem lēgātīs missīs pācem ab sē petīssent, bellum sine causā intulissent, īgnōscere imprūdentiae dīxit obsidēsque imperāvit; quōrum illī partem statim dedērunt, partem ex longinquiōribus locīs arcessītam paucīs diēbus sēsē datūrōs dīxērunt. Intereā suōs remigrāre in agrōs iussērunt, prīncipēsque undique convenīre et sē cīvitātēsque suās Caesarī commendāre coepērunt.

The cavalry transports are scattered by a severe storm. The rest of the fleet is much damaged by storm and tide.

28. Hīs rēbus pāce cōnfīrmātā, post diem quārtum quam est in Britanniam ventum, nāvēs XVIII, dē quibus suprā dēmōnstrātum est, quae equitēs sustulerant, ex superiōre portū **lēnī** ventō solvērunt. Quae cum adpropinquārent Britanniae et ex castrīs vidērentur, tanta tempestās subitō coorta est, ut nūlla eārum cursum tenēre posset, sed aliae eōdem, unde erant profectae, referrentur, aliae ad īnferiōrem partem īnsulae, quae est propius sōlis occāsum, māgnō suō cum perīculō dēicerentur; quae tamen ancorīs iactīs cum flūctibus complērentur, necessāriō adversā nocte in altum **prōvectae** continentem petiērunt.

29. Eādem nocte accidit, ut esset lūna plēna, quī diēs maritimōs aestūs māximōs in Ōceanō efficere cōnsuēvit, nostrīsque id erat incōgnitum. Ita ūnō tempore et longās nāvēs, quibus Caesar exercitum trānsportandum cūrāverat, quāsque in āridum subdūxerat, aestus complēbat, et onerāriās, quae ad ancorās erant dēligātae, tempestās adflīctābat, neque ūlla nostrīs facultās aut administrandī aut auxiliandī dabātur. Complūribus nāvibus frāctīs, reliquae cum essent, fūnibus, ancorīs reliquīsque armāmentīs āmissīs, ad nāvigandum inūtilēs, māgna, id quod necesse erat accidere, tōtīus exercitūs perturbātiō facta est. Neque enim nāvēs erant aliae, quibus reportārī possent, et omnia deerant, quae ad reficiendās nāvēs erant ūsuī, et, quod omnibus cōnstābat hiemārī in Galliā oportēre, frūmentum in hīs locīs in hiemem prōvīsum nōn erat.

The Britons plan to renew hostilities. Caesar repairs his fleet.

30. Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs, prīncipēs Britanniae, quī post proelium ad Caesarem convēnerant, inter sē conlocūtī, cum et equitēs et nāvēs et frūmentum Rōmānīs deesse intellegerent et paucitātem mīlitum ex castrōrum exiguitāte cōgnōscerent, quae hōc erant etiam angustiōra, quod sine impedīmentīs Caesar legiōnēs trānsportāverat, optimum factū esse dūxērunt, rebelliōne factā frūmentō commeātūque nostrōs prohibēre et rem in hiemem prōdūcere, quod, hīs superātīs aut reditū interclūsīs, nēminem posteā bellī īnferendī causā in Britanniam trānsitūrum cōnfīdēbant. Itaque rūrsus coniūrātiōne factā paulātim

ex castrīs discēdere et suōs clam ex agrīs dēdūcere coepērunt.

31. At Caesar, etsī nōndum eōrum cōnsilia cōgnōverat, tamen et ex ēventū nāvium suārum et ex eō, quod obsidēs dare intermīserant, fore id, quod accidit, suspicābātur. Itaque ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia comparābat. Nam et frūmentum ex agrīs cotīdiē in castra cōnferēbat et, quae gravissimē **adflīctae** erant nāvēs, eārum māteriā atque **aere** ad reliquās reficiendās ūtēbātur et, quae ad eās rēs erant ūsuī, ex continentī comparārī iubēbat. Itaque, cum summō studiō ā mīlitibus administrārētur, XII nāvibus āmissīs, reliquīs ut nāvigārī satis commodē posset, effēcit.

The seventh legion is attacked.

32. Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex cōnsuētūdine ūnā frūmentātum missā, quae appellābātur septima, neque ūllā ad id tempus bellī suspīciōne interpositā, cum pars hominum in agrīs remanēret, pars etiam in castra ventitāret, eī, quī prō portīs castrōrum in statiōne erant, Caesarī nūntiāvērunt, pulverem māiōrem, quam cōnsuētūdō ferret, in eā parte vidērī, quam in partem legiō iter fēcisset. Caesar—id quod erat—suspicātus, aliquid novī ā barbarīs initum cōnsilī, cohortēs, quae in statiōnibus erant, sēcum in eam partem proficīscī, ex reliquīs duās in statiōnem succēdere, reliquās armārī et **cōnfestim** sēsē subsequī iussit.

Cum paulō longius ā castrīs prōcessisset, suōs ab hostibus premī atque aegrē sustinēre et cōnfertā legiōne ex omnibus partibus tēla cōicī animadvertit. Nam quod,

omnī ex reliquīs partibus dēmessō frūmentō, pars ūna erat reliqua, suspicātī hostēs, hūc nostrōs esse ventūrōs, noctū in silvīs dēlituerant; tum dispersōs dēpositīs armīs in metendō occupātōs subitō adortī, paucīs interfectīs reliquōs incertīs ōrdinibus perturbāverant, simul equitātū atque **essedīs** circumdederant.

The British chariots in battle. Caesar withdraws his troops from battle.

33. Genus hōc est ex essedīs pūgnae. Prīmō per omnēs partēs perequitant et tēla cōiciunt atque ipsō terrōre equōrum et strepitū rotārum ōrdinēs plērumque perturbant, et cum sē inter equitum turmās īnsinuāvērunt, ex essedīs dēsiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurīgae interim paulātim ex proeliō excēdunt atque ita **currūs** conlocant, ut, sī illī ā multitūdine hostium premantur, expedītum ad suōs receptum habeant. Ita mōbilitātem equitum, stabilitātem peditum in proeliīs praestant, ac tantum ūsū cotīdiānō et exercitātiōne efficiunt, utī in dēclīvī ac praecipitī locō incitātōs equōs sustinēre et brevī moderārī ac flectere et per tēmōnem percurrere et in iugō īnsistere et sē inde in currūs citissimē recipere cōnsuērint.

34. Quibus rēbus perturbātīs nostrīs novitāte pūgnae tempore opportūnissimō Caesar auxilium tulit; namque ēius adventū hostēs cōnstitērunt, nostrī sē ex timōre recēpērunt. Quō factō ad lacessendum hostem et committendum proelium aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātus, suō sē locō continuit et brevī tempore intermissō in castra legiōnēs redūxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostrīs omnibus occupātīs, quī erant in agrīs reliquī, discessērunt.

The Britons collect larger forces and march to attack the Roman camp. They are defeated.

Secūtae sunt continuōs complūrēs diēs tempestātēs, quae et nostrōs in castrīs continērent et hostem ā pūgnā prohibērent. Interim barbarī nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīserunt paucitātemque nostrōrum mīlitum suīs praedicāvērunt et, quanta **praedae** faciendae atque in perpetuum suī līberandī facultās darētur, sī Rōmānōs castrīs expulīssent, dēmōnstrāvērunt. Hīs rēbus celeriter māgnā multitūdine **peditātūs** equitātūsque coāctā, ad castra vēnērunt.

35. Caesar, etsī idem, quod superiōribus diēbus acciderat, fore vidēbat, ut, sī essent hostēs pulsī, celeritāte perīculum **effugerent**, tamen nactus equitēs circiter xxx, quōs Commius Atrebās, dē quō ante dictum est, sēcum trānsportāverat, legiōnēs in aciē prō castrīs cōnstituit. Commissō proeliō diūtius nostrōrum mīlitum impetum hostēs ferre nōn potuērunt ac terga vertērunt. Quōs tantō spatiō secūtī, quantum cursū et vīribus efficere potuērunt, complūrēs ex eīs occīdērunt, deinde, omnibus longē lātēque aedificiīs incēnsīs, sē in castra recēpērunt.

The number of hostages required of them is doubled. Caesar returns to Gaul.

36. Eōdem diē lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem dē pāce vēnērunt. Hīs Caesar numerum obsidum, quem ante imperāverat, duplicāvit eōsque in continentem addūcī iussit, quod propinquā diē **aequinoctiī** īnfīrmīs nāvibus hiemī nāvigātiōnem subiciendam nōn exīstimābat. Ipse idōneam tempestātem nactus paulō post mediam

noctem nāvēs solvit; quae omnēs incolumēs ad continentem pervēnērunt; sed ex eīs onerāriae duae eōsdem portūs, quōs reliquae, capere nōn potuērunt et paulō īnfrā dēlātae sunt.

THE MORINI AND MENAPII, 37–38.

A detachment of troops, attacked by the Morini, is rescued by the cavalry.

37. Quibus ex nāvibus cum essent expositī mīlitēs circiter ccc atque in castra contenderent, Morinī, quōs Caesar in Britanniam proficīscēns pācātōs relīquerat, spē praedae adductī, prīmō nōn ita māgnō suōrum numerō circumstetērunt ac, sī sēsē interficī nōllent, arma pōnere iussērunt. Cum illī **orbe** factō sēsē dēfenderent, celeriter ad clāmōrem hominum circiter mīlia vi convēnērunt. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar omnem ex castrīs equitātum suīs auxiliō mīsit. Interim nostrī mīlitēs impetum hostium sustinuērunt atque amplius hōrīs iiii fortissimē pūgnāvērunt et paucīs vulneribus acceptīs complūrēs ex hīs occīdērunt. Posteā vērō quam equitātus noster in cōnspectum vēnit, hostēs abiectīs armīs terga vertērunt māgnusque eōrum numerus est occīsus.

Labienus leads an expedition against the Morini. The legions go into winter quarters among the Belgae.

38. Caesar posterō diē T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum eīs legiōnibus, quās ex Britanniā redūxerat, in Morinōs, quī rebelliōnem fēcerant, mīsit. Quī cum propter **siccitātēs** palūdum, quō sē reciperent, nōn habērent, quō perfugiō superiōre annō erant ūsī, omnēs ferē in potestātem Labi-

ēnī vēnērunt. At Q. Titūrius et L. Cotta lēgātī, quī in Menapiōrum fīnēs legiōnēs dūxerant, omnibus eōrum agrīs vāstātīs, frūmentīs succīsīs, aedificiīs incēnsīs, quod Menapiī sē omnēs in dēnsissimās silvās abdiderant, sē ad Caesarem recēpērunt.

Caesar in Belgīs omnium legiōnum hīberna cōnstituit. Eō duae omnīnō cīvitātēs ex Britanniā obsidēs mīsērunt, reliquae neglēxērunt. Hīs rēbus gestīs, ex litterīs Caesaris diērum xx supplicātiō ā senātū dēcrēta est.



HELMET WITH CREST.

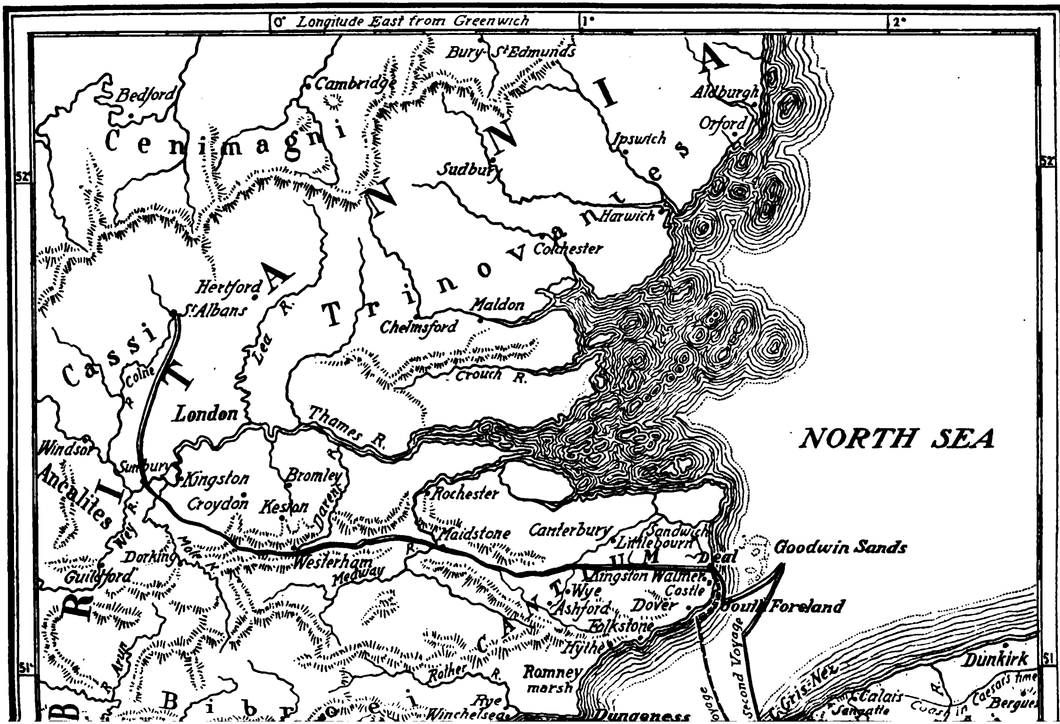
LIBER QUINTUS.

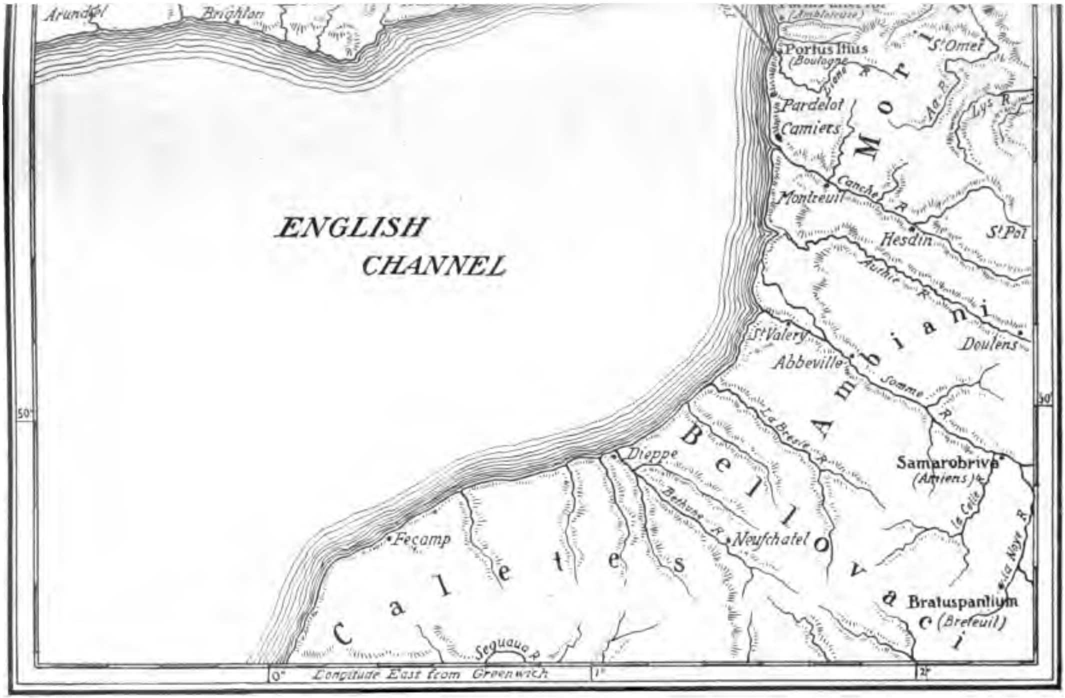
SECOND CAMPAIGN IN BRITAIN, 1–23.

Caesar orders the construction of a larger fleet. He visits Illyricum.

1. L. Domitiō, Ap. Claudiō cōnsulibus, discēdēns ab hībernīs Caesar in Ītaliam, ut quotannīs facere cōnsuērat, lēgātīs imperat, quōs legiōnibus praefēcerat, utī, quam plūrimās possint, hieme nāvēs aedificandās veterēsque reficiendās cūrent. Eārum modum fōrmamque dēmōnstrat. Ad celeritātem onerandī subductiōnisque paulō facit humiliōrēs, quam quibus in nostrō marī ūtī cōnsuēvimus, atque id eō magis, quod propter crēbrās commūtātiōnēs aestuum minus māgnōs ibi flūctūs fierī cōgnōverat, ad onera ac multitūdinem iūmentōrum trānsportandam paulō lātiōrēs, quam quibus in reliquīs ūtimur maribus. Hās omnēs āctuāriās imperat fierī, quam ad rem multum **humilitās** adiuvat. Ea, quae sunt ūsuī ad armandās nāvēs, ex Hispāniā adportārī iubet.

Ipse, conventibus Galliae citeriōris **perāctīs**, in Īllyricum proficīscitur, quod ā Pīrūstīs fīnitimam partem prōvinciae **incursiōnibus** vāstārī audiēbat. Eō cum vēnisset, cīvitātibus mīlitēs imperat certumque in locum convenīre iubet. Quā rē nūntiātā Pīrūstae lēgātōs ad eum mittunt, quī doceant, nihil eārum rērum pūblicō factum cōnsiliō, sēsēque parātōs esse dēmōnstrent omnibus ratiōnibus dē iniū-


0° Longitude East from Greenwich
1°
2°
52°
51°
NORTH SEA
Goodwin Sands
South Foreland
Second Voyage
Dunkirk
Calais
Sangatte
Gris Nez
Bergues
Caesar's time
Dungeness
Bury St Edmunds
Cambridge
Bedford
Cenimagni
Aldburgh
Orford
Ipswich
Sudbury
Harwich
Colchester
Maldon
Chelmsford
Trinovantes
Hertford
St Albans
Lea R.
Cassi
Colne
London
Thames R.
Crouch R.
Windsor
Sunbury
Kingston
Croydon
Bromley
Keston
Darent
Ancalites
Wey R.
Dorking
Guildford
Mole R.
Westerham
Medway
Rochester
Maidstone
Canterbury
Littlebourn
Sandwich
Deal
Kingston Walmer
Castle
Wye
Ashford
Dover
Folkstone
Hythe
Romney marsh
Rother R.
Rye
Winchelsea
Arun R.
Bibroci
Cantium
Britannia



10 5 0 10 20 30 40

MILIA PASSUUM

CAMPAIGNS IN BRITAIN 55 and 54 B.C.

rīs satisfacere. Perceptā ōrātiōne eōrum Caesar obsidēs imperat eōsque ad certam diem addūcī iubet; nisi ita fēcerint, sēsē bellō cīvitātem persecūtūrum dēmōnstrat. Eīs ad diem adductīs, ut imperāverat, arbitrōs inter cīvitātēs dat, quī lītem aestiment poenamque cōnstituant.

Caesar rejoins his army and finds the new fleet ready.

2. Hīs cōnfectīs rēbus conventibusque perāctīs, in citeriōrem Galliam revertitur atque inde ad exercitum proficīscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, circumitīs omnibus hībernīs, singulārī mīlitum studiō in summā omnium rērum inopiā circiter DC ēius generis, cūius suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, nāvēs et longās XXVIII invenit īnstrūctās neque multum abesse ab eō, quīn paucīs diēbus dēdūcī possint. **Conlaudātīs** mīlitibus atque eīs, quī negōtiō praefuerant, quid fierī velit, ostendit atque omnēs ad portum Itium convenīre iubet, quō ex portū commodissimum in Britanniam trāiectum esse cōgnōverat, circiter mīlium passuum XXX ā continentī; huic reī, quod satis esse vīsum est mīlitum, relinquit. Ipse cum legiōnibus expedītīs IIII et equitibus DCCC in fīnēs Trēverōrum proficīscitur, quod hī neque ad concilia veniēbant neque imperiō pārēbant, Germānōsque Trānsrhēnānōs sollicitāre dīcēbantur.

Dissensions among the Treveri. Rivalry of Cingetorix and Indutiomarus.

3. Haec cīvitās longē plūrimum tōtīus Galliae equitātū valet māgnāsque habet cōpiās peditum, Rhēnumque, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, tangit. In eā cīvitāte duo dē prīncipātū inter sē contendēbant, Indūtiomārus et Cin-

getorīx; ex quibus alter, simul atque dē Caesaris legiōnumque adventū cōgnitum est, ad eum vēnit, sē suōsque omnēs in officiō futūrōs neque ab amīcitiā populī Rōmānī dēfectūrōs cōnfīrmāvit, quaeque in Trēverīs gererentur, ostendit.

At Indūtiomārus equitātum peditātumque cōgere eīsque, quī per aetātem in armīs esse nōn poterant, in silvam Arduennam abditīs, quae ingentī māgnitūdine per mediōs fīnēs Trēverōrum ā flūmine Rhēnō ad initium Rēmōrum pertinet, bellum parāre īnstituit; sed posteāquam nōn nūllī prīncipēs ex eā cīvitāte et auctōritāte Cingetorīgis adductī et adventū nostrī exercitūs perterritī ad Caesarem vēnērunt et dē suīs prīvātīs rēbus ab eō petere coepērunt, quoniam cīvitātī cōnsulere nōn possent, veritus, nē ab omnibus dēsererētur, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittit: sēsē idcircō ab suīs discēdere atque ad eum venīre nōluisse, quō facilius cīvitātem in officiō continēret, nē omnis nōbilitātis discessū plēbs propter imprūdentiam **lāberētur**; itaque cīvitātem in suā potestāte esse, sēque, sī Caesar permitteret, ad eum in castra ventūrum et suās cīvitātisque fortūnās ēius fideī permissūrum.

Caesar favors Cingetorix.

4. Caesar, etsī intellegēbat, quā dē causā ea dīcerentur, quaeque eum rēs ab īnstitūtō cōnsiliō dēterrēret, tamen, nē aestātem in Trēverīs cōnsūmere cōgerētur omnibus rēbus ad Britannicum bellum comparātīs, Indūtiomārum ad sē cum cc obsidibus venīre iussit. Hīs adductīs, in eīs fīliō propinquīsque ēius omnibus, quōs nōminātim ēvocāverat, cōnsōlātus Indūtiomārum hortātusque est,

utī in officiō manēret; nihilō tamen sētius, prīncipibus Trēverōrum ad sē convocātīs, hōs singillātim Cingetorīgī conciliāvit, quod cum meritō ēius ab sē fierī intellegēbat, tum māgnī interesse arbitrābātur ēius auctōritātem inter suōs quam plūrimum valēre, cūius tam ēgregiam in sē voluntātem perspexisset. Id factum graviter tulit Indūtiomārus, suam grātiam inter suōs minuī, et, quī iam ante inimīcō in nōs animō fuisset, multō gravius hōc dolōre exārsit.

The army assembles for a second expedition to Britain.

5. Hīs rēbus cōnstitūtīs Caesar ad portum Itium cum legiōnibus pervenit. Ibi cōgnōscit, LX nāvēs, quae in Meldīs factae erant, tempestāte rēiectās cursum tenēre nōn potuisse atque eōdem, unde erant profectae, revertisse; reliquās parātās ad nāvigandum atque omnibus rēbus īnstrūctās invenit. Eōdem equitātus tōtīus Galliae convenit, numerō mīlia IIII, prīncipēsque ex omnibus cīvitātibus; ex quibus perpaucōs, quōrum in sē fidem perspexerat, relinquere in Galliā, reliquōs obsidum locō sēcum dūcere dēcrēverat, quod, cum ipse abesset, mōtum Galliae verēbātur.

Dumnorix, the Haeduan, refuses to accompany the expedition.

6. Erat ūnā cum cēterīs Dumnorīx Haeduus, dē quō ante ā nōbīs dictum est. Hunc sēcum habēre in prīmīs cōnstituerat, quod eum cupidum rērum novārum, cupidum imperī, māgnī animī, māgnae inter Gallōs auctōritātis cōgnōverat. Accēdēbat hūc, quod in conciliō Haeduōrum Dumnorīx dīxerat, sibi ā Caesare rēgnum

cīvitātis dēferrī; quod dictum Haeduī graviter ferēbant, neque recūsandī aut dēprecandī causā lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittere audēbant. Id factum ex suīs hospitibus Caesar cōgnōverat.

Ille omnibus prīmō precibus petere contendit, ut in Galliā relinquerētur, partim, quod īnsuētus nāvigandī mare timēret, partim, quod religiōnibus impedīrī sēsē dīceret. Posteāquam id obstinātē sibi negārī vīdit, omnī spē impetrandī adēmptā, prīncipēs Galliae sollicitāre, sēvocāre singulōs hortārīque coepit, utī in continentī remanērent; metū **territāre**: nōn sine causā fierī, ut Gallia omnī nōbilitāte spoliārētur; id esse cōnsilium Caesaris, ut, quōs in cōnspectū Galliae interficere verērētur, hōs omnēs in Britanniam trāductōs necāret; fidem reliquīs interpōnere, iūs iūrandum poscere, ut, quod esse ex ūsū Galliae intellēxissent, commūnī cōnsiliō administrārent. Haec ā complūribus ad Caesarem dēferēbantur.

He escapes, but is pursued and killed.

7. Quā rē cōgnitā Caesar, quod tantum cīvitātī Haeduae dīgnitātis tribuēbat, coërcendum atque dēterrendum, quibuscumque rēbus posset, Dumnorīgem statuēbat; quod longius ēius āmentiam prōgredī vidēbat, prōspiciendum, nē quid sibi ac reī pūblicae nocēre posset. Itaque diēs circiter xxv in eō locō commorātus, quod chōrus ventus nāvigātiōnem impediēbat, quī māgnam partem omnis temporis in hīs locīs flāre cōnsuēvit, dabat operam, ut in officiō Dumnorīgem continēret, nihilō tamen sētius omnia ēius cōnsilia cōgnōsceret; tandem idōneam nactus tempestātem mīlitēs equitēsque cōnscendere nāvēs iubet.

At omnium impedītīs animīs, Dumnorīx cum equitibus Haeduōrum ā castrīs īnsciente Caesare domum discēdere coepit. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar, intermissā profectiōne atque omnibus rēbus postpositīs, māgnam partem equitātūs ad eum īnsequendum mittit retrahīque imperat; sī vim faciat neque pāreat, interficī iubet, nihil hunc sē absente prō sānō factūrum arbitrātus, quī praesentis imperium neglēxisset. Ille autem revocātus resistere ac sē manū dēfendere suōrumque fidem implōrāre coepit, saepe **clāmitāns**, līberum sē līberaeque esse cīvitātis. Illī, ut erat imperātum, circumsistunt hominem atque interficiunt; at equitēs Haeduī ad Caesarem omnēs revertuntur.

Labienus is left in command in Gaul. The passage to Britain.

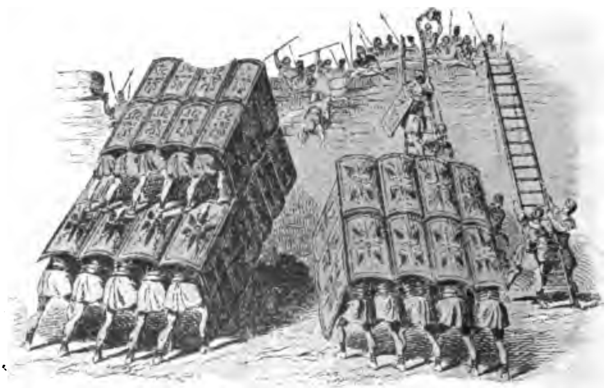
8. Hīs rēbus gestīs, Labiēnō in continentī cum III legiōnibus et equitum mīlibus duōbus relictō, ut portūs tuērētur et reī frūmentāriae prōvidēret, quaeque in Galliā gererentur, cōgnōsceret cōnsiliumque prō tempore et prō rē caperet, ipse cum V legiōnibus et parī numerō equitum, quem in continentī relinquēbat, ad sōlis occāsum nāvēs solvit. Et lēnī Āfricō prōvectus, mediā circiter nocte ventō intermissō, cursum nōn tenuit et longius dēlātus aestū ortā lūce sub sinistrā Britanniam relictam cōnspexit. Tum rūrsus aestūs commūtātiōnem secūtus rēmīs contendit, ut eam partem īnsulae caperet, quā optimum esse ēgressum superiōre aestāte cōgnōverat. Quā in rē admodum fuit mīlitum virtūs laudanda, quī vectōriīs gravibusque nāvigiīs nōn intermissō rēmigandī labōre longārum nāvium cursum adaequārunt.

Accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus nāvibus merīdi-

ūnō ferē tempore, neque in eō locō hostis est vīsus; sed, ut posteā Caesar ex captīvīs cōgnōvit, cum māgnae manūs eō convēnissent, multitūdine nāvium perterritae, quae cum annōtinīs prīvātīsque, quās suī quisque commodī causā fēcerat, amplius DCCC ūnō erant vīsae tempore, ā lītore discesserant ac sē in superiōra loca abdiderant.

The landing. Caesar attacks and defeats the enemy.

9. Caesar, expositō exercitū et locō castrīs idōneō captō, ubi ex captīvīs cōgnōvit, quō in locō hostium cōpiae cōnsēdissent, cohortibus X ad mare relictīs et equitibus CCC, quī praesidiō nāvibus essent, dē tertiā vigiliā ad hostēs contendit, eō minus veritus nāvibus, quod in lītore mollī atque apertō dēligātās ad ancorās relinquēbat. Eī praesidiō nāvibusque Q. Ātrium praefēcit. Ipse noctū prōgressus mīlia passuum circiter XII hostium cōpiās cōnspicātus est.



TESTUDO.

Illī equitātū atque essedīs ad flūmen prōgressī ex locō superiōre nostrōs prohibēre et proelium committere coepērunt. Repulsī ab equitātū sē in silvās abdidērunt, locum nactī ēgregiē et nātūrā et opere mūnītum, quem domesticī bellī, ut vidēbātur, causā iam ante praeparāverant; nam crēbrīs arboribus succīsīs omnēs introitūs erant praeclūsī. Ipsī ex silvīs rārī prōpūgnābant nostrōsque intrā mūnītiōnēs ingredī prohibēbant. At mīlitēs legiōnis septimae testūdine factā et aggere ad mūnītiōnēs adiectō locum cēpērunt eōsque ex silvīs expulērunt, paucīs vulneribus acceptīs. Sed eōs fugientēs longius Caesar prōsequī vetuit, et quod locī nātūram īgnōrābat, et quod, māgnā parte diēī cōnsūmptā, mūnītiōnī castrōrum tempus relinquī volēbat.

The fleet is damaged by a storm.

10. Postrīdiē ēius diēī māne tripertītō mīlitēs equitēsque in expedītiōnem mīsit, ut eōs, quī fūgerant, persequerentur. Hīs aliquantum itineris prōgressīs, cum iam extrēmī essent in prōspectū, equitēs ā Q. Ātriō ad Caesarem vēnērunt, quī nūntiārent, superiōre nocte māximā coortā tempestāte prope omnēs nāvēs adflīctās atque in lītus ēiectās esse, quod neque ancorae fūnēsque sustinērent neque nautae gubernātōrēsque vim tempestātis patī possent; itaque ex eō concursū nāvium māgnum esse incommodum acceptum.

11. Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs Caesar legiōnēs equitātumque revocārī atque in itinere resistere iubet, ipse ad nāvēs revertitur; eadem ferē, quae ex nūntiīs cōgnōverat, cōram perspicit, sīc ut āmissīs circiter XL nāvibus reliquae

tamen reficī posse māgnō negōtiō vidērentur. Itaque ex legiōnibus fabrōs dēligit et ex continentī aliōs arcessī iubet; Labiēnō **scrībit**, ut, quam plūrimās possit, eīs legiōnibus, quae sint apud eum, nāvēs īnstituat. Ipse, etsī rēs erat multae operae ac labōris, tamen commodissimum esse statuit, omnēs nāvēs subdūcī et cum castrīs ūnā mūnītiōne coniungī. In hīs rēbus circiter diēs x cōnsūmit, nē nocturnīs quidem temporibus ad labōrem mīlitum intermissīs.

The Britons unite forces under one leader.

Subductīs nāvibus castrīsque ēgregiē mūnītīs, eāsdem cōpiās, quās ante, praesidiō nāvibus relinquit, ipse eōdem, unde redierat, proficīscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, māiōrēs iam undique in eum locum cōpiae Britannōrum convēnerant, summā imperī bellīque administrandī commūnī cōnsiliō permissā Cassivellaunō, cūius fīnēs ā maritimīs cīvitātibus flūmen dīvidit, quod appellātur Tamesis, ā marī circiter mīlia passuum LXXX. Huic superiōre tempore cum reliquīs cīvitātibus continentia bella intercesserant; sed nostrō adventū permōtī Britannī hunc tōtī bellō imperiōque praefēcerant.

Origin of the Britons. Resources of the country.

12. Britanniae pars interior ab eīs incolitur, quōs nātōs in īnsulā ipsā memoriā prōditum dīcunt, maritima pars ab eīs, quī praedae ac bellī īnferendī causā ex Belgiō trānsiērunt — quī omnēs ferē īsdem nōminibus cīvitātum appellantur, quibus ortī ex cīvitātibus eō pervēnērunt —

et bellō inlātō ibi remānsērunt atque agrōs colere coepērunt. Hominum est īnfīnīta multitūdō, crēberrimaque aedificia ferē Gallicīs cōnsimilia, pecoris māgnus numerus. Ūtuntur aut aere aut **nummō** aureō aut tāleīs ferreīs ad certum pondus exāminātīs prō nummō. Nāscitur ibi plumbum album in mediterrāneīs regiōnibus, in maritimīs ferrum, sed ēius exigua est cōpia; aere ūtuntur importātō. Māteria cūiusque generis ut in Galliā est praeter fāgum atque abietem. Leporem et gallīnam et ānserem gustāre fās nōn putant; haec tamen alunt animī voluptātisque causā. Loca sunt temperātiōra quam in Galliā, remissiōribus frīgoribus.

Shape and extent of the island.

13. Īnsula nātūrā triquetra, cūius ūnum latus est contrā Galliam. Hūius lateris alter **angulus**, quī est ad Cantium, quō ferē omnēs ex Galliā nāvēs adpelluntur, ad orientem sōlem, īnferior ad merīdiem spectat. Hōc latus tenet circiter mīlia passuum D.

Alterum vergit ad Hispāniam atque occidentem sōlem; quā ex parte est Hibernia īnsula, dīmidiō minor, ut exīstimātur, quam Britannia, sed parī spatiō trānsmissūs atque ex Galliā est in Britanniam. In hōc mediō cursū est īnsula, quae appellātur Mona; complūrēs praetereā minōrēs obiectae īnsulae exīstimantur, dē quibus īnsulīs nōn nūllī scrīpsērunt diēs continuōs XXX sub brūmam esse noctem. Nōs nihil dē eō percontātiōnibus reperiēbāmus, nisi certīs ex aquā mēnsūrīs breviōrēs esse quam in continentī noctēs vidēbāmus. Hūius est longitūdō lateris, ut fert illōrum opīniō, DCC mīlium.

Tertium est contrā septentriōnēs, cui partī nūlla est obiecta terra; sed ēius angulus alter māximē ad Germāniam spectat. Hōc mīlium passuum DCCC in longitūdinem esse exīstimātur. Ita omnis īnsula est in circuitū vīciēs centum mīlium passuum.

Character and customs of the inhabitants.

14. Ex hīs omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī, quī Cantium incolunt, quae regiō est maritima omnis, neque multum ā Gallicā differunt cōnsuētūdine. Interiōrēs plērīque frūmenta nōn serunt, sed lacte et carne vīvunt pellibusque sunt vestītī. Omnēs vērō sē Britannī vitrō īnficiunt, quod caeruleum efficit colōrem, atque hōc horribiliōrēs sunt in pūgnā aspectū; capillōque sunt prōmissō atque omnī parte corporis rāsā praeter caput et lābrum superius. Uxōrēs habent dēnī duodēnīque inter sē commūnēs et māximē frātrēs cum frātribus parentēsque cum līberīs; sed, quī sunt ex eīs nātī, eōrum habentur līberī, quō prīmum virgō quaeque dēducta est.

Baffling character of British tactics.

15. Equitēs hostium essedāriīque ācriter proeliō cum equitātū nostrō in itinere cōnflīxērunt, ita tamen, ut nostrī omnibus partibus superiōrēs fuerint atque eōs in silvās collēsque compulerint; sed complūribus interfectīs, cupidius īnsecūtī nōn nūllōs ex suīs āmīsērunt. At illī intermissō spatiō, imprūdentibus nostrīs atque occupātīs in mūnītiōne castrōrum, subitō sē ex silvīs ēiēcērunt impetūque in eōs factō, quī erant in statiōne prō castrīs conlocātī, ācriter pūgnāvērunt, duābusque missīs subsidiō

cohortibus ā Caesare, atque hīs prīmīs legiōnum duārum, cum eae perexiguō intermissō locī spatiō inter sē cōnstitissent, novō genere pūgnae perterritīs nostrīs per mediōs audācissimē perrūpērunt sēque inde incolumēs recēpērunt. Eō diē Q. Laberius Dūrus, tribūnus mīlitum, interficitur. Illī plūribus submissīs cohortibus repelluntur.

16. Tōtō hōc in genere pūgnae, cum sub oculīs omnium ac prō castrīs dīmicārētur, intellēctum est, nostrōs propter gravitātem armōrum, quod neque īnsequī cēdentēs possent neque ab sīgnīs discēdere audērent, minus aptōs esse ad hūius generis hostem, equitēs autem māgnō cum perīculō proeliō dīmicāre, proptereā quod illī etiam **cōnsultō** plērumque cēderent et, cum paulum ab legiōnibus nostrōs remōvissent, ex essedīs dēsilīrent et pedibus disparī proeliō contenderent. Equestris autem proelī ratiō et cēdentibus et īnsequentibus pār atque idem perīculum īnferēbat. Accēdēbat hūc, ut numquam cōnfertī, sed rārī māgnīsque intervāllīs proeliārentur statiōnēsque dispositās habērent, atque aliōs aliī deinceps exciperent integrīque et recentēs dēfatīgātīs succēderent.

The Britons are defeated. Their forces break up.

17. Posterō diē procul ā castrīs hostēs in collibus cōnstitērunt rārīque sē ostendere et lēnius quam prīdiē nostrōs equitēs proeliō lacessere coepērunt. Sed merīdiē, cum Caesar pābulandī causā III legiōnēs atque omnem equitātum cum C. Trebōniō lēgātō mīsisset, repente ex omnibus partibus ad pābulātōrēs **advolāvērunt**, sīc utī ab sīgnīs legiōnibusque nōn absisterent. Nostrī ācriter in eōs impetū factō reppulērunt neque fīnem sequendī fēcē-

runt, quoad subsidiō cōnfīsī equitēs, cum post sē legiōnēs vidērent, praecipitēs hostēs ēgērunt, māgnōque eōrum numerō interfectō neque suī colligendī neque cōnsistendī aut ex essedīs dēsiliendī facultātem dedērunt. Ex hāc fugā prōtinus, quae undique convēnerant, auxilia discessērunt, neque post id tempus umquam summīs nōbīscum cōpiīs hostēs contendērunt.

Caesar crosses the Thames. Tactics of Cassivellaunus.

18. Caesar cōgnitō cōnsiliō eōrum ad flūmen Tamesim in fīnēs Cassivellaunī exercitum dūxit; quod flūmen ūnō omnīnō locō pedibus, atque hōc aegrē, trānsīrī potest. Eō cum vēnisset, animadvertit, ad alteram flūminis rīpam māgnās esse cōpiās hostium īnstrūctās. Rīpa autem erat acūtīs **sudibus** praefīxīsque mūnīta, ēiusdemque generis sub aquā dēfīxae sudēs flūmine **tegēbantur**. Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs ā captīvīs perfugīsque, Caesar praemissō equitātū cōnfestim legiōnēs subsequī iussit. Sed eā celeritāte atque eō impetū mīlitēs iērunt, cum capite sōlō ex aquā exstārent, ut hostēs impetum legiōnum atque equitum sustinēre nōn possent rīpāsque dīmitterent ac sē fugae mandārent.

19. Cassivellaunus, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, omnī dēpositā spē contentiōnis, dīmissīs ampliōribus cōpiīs, mīlibus circiter IIII essedāriōrum relictīs, itinera nostra servābat paulumque ex viā excēdēbat locīsque impedītīs ac silvestribus sēsē occultābat atque eīs regiōnibus, quibus nōs iter factūrōs cōgnōverat, pecora atque hominēs ex agrīs in silvās compellēbat et, cum equitātus noster līberius praedandī vāstandīque causā sē in agrōs effunde-

ret, omnibus viīs sēmitīsque essedāriōs ex silvīs ēmittēbat et māgnō cum perīculō nostrōrum equitum cum hīs cōnflīgēbat atque hōc metū lātius vagārī prohibēbat. Relinquēbātur, ut neque longius ab agmine legiōnum discēdī Caesar paterētur, et tantum agrīs vāstandīs incendiīsque faciendīs hostibus nocērētur, quantum in labōre atque itinere legiōnāriī mīlitēs efficere poterant.

Certain tribes submit to Caesar.

20. Interim Trinovantēs, prope fīrmissima eārum regiōnum cīvitās, ex quā Mandubracius adulēscēns Caesaris fidem secūtus ad eum in continentem Galliam vēnerat,—cūius pater in eā cīvitāte rēgnum obtinuerat interfectusque erat ā Cassivellaunō, ipse fugā mortem vītāverat,—lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt pollicenturque, sēsē eī dēditūrōs atque imperāta factūrōs; petunt, ut Mandubracium ab iniūriā Cassivellaunī dēfendat atque in cīvitātem mittat, quī praesit imperiumque obtineat. Hīs Caesar imperat obsidēs XL frūmentumque exercituī Mandubraciumque ad eōs mittit. Illī imperāta celeriter fēcērunt, obsidēs ad numerum frūmentumque mīsērunt.

21. Trinovantibus dēfēnsīs atque ab omnī mīlitum iniūriā prohibitīs, Cēnimāgnī, Segontiācī, Ancalitēs, Bibrocī, Cassī lēgātiōnibus missīs sēsē Caesarī dēdunt. Ab hīs cōgnōscit, nōn longē ex eō locō oppidum Cassivellaunī abesse silvīs palūdibusque mūnītum, quō satis māgnus hominum pecorisque numerus convēnerit. Oppidum autem Britannī vocant, cum silvās impedītās vāllō atque fossā mūniērunt, quō incursiōnis hostium vītandae causā convenīre cōnsuērunt. Eō proficīscitur cum legiōnibus;

locum reperit ēgregiē nātūrā atque opere mūnītum; tamen hunc duābus ex partibus oppūgnāre contendit. Hostēs paulisper morātī mīlitum nostrōrum impetum nōn tulērunt sēsēque aliā ex parte oppidī ēiēcērunt. Māgnus ibi numerus pecoris repertus multīque in fugā sunt comprehēnsī atque interfectī.

Attack on the Roman naval camp. Caesar returns to Gaul.

22. Dum haec in hīs locīs geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad Cantium, quod esse ad mare suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, quibus regiōnibus IIII rēgēs praeerant, Cingetorīx, Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segovax, nūntiōs mittit atque hīs imperat, utī coāctīs omnibus cōpiīs castra nāvālia dē imprōvīsō adoriantur atque oppūgnent. Hī cum ad castra vēnissent, nostrī ēruptiōne factā multīs eōrum interfectīs, captō etiam nōbilī duce Lugotorīge, suōs incolumēs redūxērunt. Cassivellaunus, hōc proeliō nūntiātō, tot dētrīmentīs acceptīs, vāstātīs fīnibus, māximē etiam permōtus dēfectiōne cīvitātum, lēgātōs per Atrebātem Commium dē dēditiōne ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar, cum cōnstituisset hiemāre in continentī propter repentīnōs Galliae mōtūs, neque multum aestātis superesset, atque id facile extrahī posse intellegeret, obsidēs imperat et, quid in annōs singulōs vectīgālis populō Rōmānō Britannia penderet, cōnstituit; interdīcit atque imperat Cassivellaunō, nē Mandubraciō neu Trinovantibus noceat.

23. Obsidibus acceptīs exercitum redūcit ad mare, nāvēs invenit refectās. Hīs dēductīs, quod et captīvōrum māgnum numerum habēbat et nōn nūllae tempestāte dēperierant nāvēs, duōbus commeātibus exercitum reportāre



Roman Legionary Soldier.
(From Tuell and Fowler.)

īnstituit. Ac sīc accidit, utī ex tantō nāvium numerō tot nāvigātiōnibus neque hōc neque superiōre annō ūlla omnīnō nāvis, quae mīlitēs portāret, dēsīderārētur, at ex eīs, quae inānēs ex continentī ad eum remitterentur, priōris commeātūs expositīs mīlitibus, et quās posteā Labiēnus faciendās cūrāverat numerō LX, perpaucae locum caperent, reliquae ferē omnēs rēicerentur. Quās cum aliquamdiū Caesar frūstrā exspectāsset, nē annī tempore ā nāvigātiōne exclūderētur, quod aequinoctium suberat, necessāriō angustius mīlitēs conlocāvit ac, summā tranquillitāte cōnsecūtā, secundā initā cum solvisset vigiliā, prīmā lūce terram attigit omnēsque incolumēs nāvēs perdūxit.

ASSIGNMENT OF WINTER QUARTERS, 24–25.

The legions are distributed in winter quarters. Murder of Tasgetius, king of the Carnutes.

24. Subductīs nāvibus conciliōque Gallōrum Samarobrīvae perāctō, quod eō annō frūmentum in Galliā propter siccitātēs angustius prōvēnerat, coāctus est aliter ac superiōribus annīs exercitum in hībernīs conlocāre legiōnēsque in plūrēs cīvitātēs distribuere. Ex quibus ūnam in Morinōs dūcendam C. Fabiō lēgātō dedit, alteram in Nerviōs Q. Cicerōnī, tertiam in Esuviōs L. Rōsciō, quārtam in Rēmīs cum T. Labiēnō in cōnfīniō Trēverōrum hiemāre iussit, trēs in Bellovacīs conlocāvit; hīs M. Crassum et L. Munātium Plancum et C. Trebōnium lēgātōs praefēcit. Ūnam legiōnem, quam proximē trāns Padum cōnscrīpserat, et cohortēs v in Eburōnēs, quōrum pars māxima est inter Mosam ac Rhēnum, quī sub imperiō Ambiorīgis

et Catuvolcī erant, mīsit. Hīs mīlitibus Q. Titūrium Sabīnum et L. Aurunculēium Cottam lēgātōs praeesse iussit. Ad hunc modum distribūtīs legiōnibus facillimē inopiae reī frūmentāriae sēsē medērī posse exīstimāvit. Atque hārum tamen omnium legiōnum hīberna praeter eam, quam L. Rōsciō in pācātissimam et quiētissimam partem dūcendam dederat, mīlibus passuum c continēbantur. Ipse intereā, quoad legiōnēs conlocātās mūnītaque hīberna cōgnōvisset, in Galliā morārī cōnstituit.

25. Erat in Carnutibus summō locō nātus Tasgetius, cūius māiōrēs in suā cīvitāte rēgnum obtinuerant. Huic Caesar prō ēius virtūte atque in sē benevolentiā, quod in omnibus bellīs singulārī ēius operā fuerat ūsus, māiōrum locum restituerat. Tertium iam hunc annum rēgnantem inimīcī palam multīs ex cīvitāte auctōribus interfēcērunt. Dēfertur ea rēs ad Caesarem. Ille veritus, quod ad plūrēs pertinēbat, nē cīvitās eōrum impulsū dēficeret, L. Plancum cum legiōne ex Belgiō celeriter in Carnutēs proficīscī iubet ibique hiemāre, quōrumque operā cōgnōverit Tasgetium interfectum, hōs comprehēnsōs ad sē mittere. Interim ab omnibus, lēgātīs quaestōreque, quibus legiōnēs trādiderat, certior factus est, in hīberna perventum locumque hībernīs esse mūnītum.

DEFEAT OF SABINUS AND COTTA, 26–37.

Attack of the Eburones on the winter camp of Sabinus and Cotta. Conference with the Gauls.

26. Diēbus circiter xv, quibus in hīberna ventum est, initium repentīnī tumultūs ac dēfectiōnis ortum est ab

Ambiorīge et Catuvolcō; quī cum ad fīnēs rēgnī suī Sabīnō Cottaeque praestō fuissent frūmentumque in hīberna comportāvissent, Indūtiomārī Trēverī nūntiīs impulsī suōs **concitāvērunt** subitōque oppressīs līgnātōribus māgnā manū ad castra oppūgnanda vēnērunt. Cum celeriter nostrī arma cēpissent vāllumque ascendissent atque ūnā ex parte Hispānīs equitibus ēmissīs equestrī proeliō superiōrēs fuissent, dēspērātā rē hostēs suōs ab oppūgnātiōne redūxērunt. Tum suō mōre conclāmāvērunt, utī aliquī ex nostrīs ad conloquium prōdīret: habēre sēsē, quae dē rē commūnī dīcere vellent, quibus rēbus **contrōversiās** minuī posse spērārent.

27. Mittitur ad eōs conloquendī causā C. Arpinēius, eques Rōmānus, familiāris Q. Titūrī, et Q. Iūnius ex Hispāniā quīdam, quī iam ante missū Caesaris ad Ambiorīgem ventitāre cōnsuērat. Apud quōs Ambiorīx ad hunc modum locūtus est:

Speech of Ambiorix. The Romans are urged to abandon their camp, and are treacherously promised protection.

Sēsē prō Caesaris in sē beneficiīs plūrimum eī cōnfitērī dēbēre, quod ēius operā stīpendiō līberātus esset, quod Atuatucīs, fīnitimīs suīs, pendere cōnsuēsset, quodque eī et fīlius et frātris fīlius ā Caesare remissī essent, quōs Atuatucī obsidum numerō missōs apud sē in servitūte et catēnīs tenuissent; neque id, quod fēcerit dē oppūgnātiōne castrōrum, aut iūdiciō aut voluntāte suā fēcisse, sed coāctū cīvitātis, suaque esse ēius modī imperia, ut nōn minus habēret iūris in sē multitūdō quam ipse in multitūdinem.

Cīvitātī porrō hanc fuisse bellī causam, quod repentīnae

Gallōrum coniūrātiōnī resistere nōn potuerit. Id sē facile ex humilitāte suā probāre posse, quod nōn adeō sit imperītus rērum, ut suīs cōpiīs populum Rōmānum superārī posse cōnfīdat. Sed esse Galliae commūne cōnsilium; omnibus hībernīs Caesaris oppūgnandīs hunc esse dictum diem, nē qua legiō alterī legiōnī subsidiō venīre posset. Nōn facile Gallōs Gallīs negāre potuisse, praesertim cum dē recuperandā commūnī lībertāte cōnsilium initum vidērētur.

Quibus quoniam prō pietāte satisfēcerit, habēre nunc sē ratiōnem officī prō beneficiīs Caesaris; monēre, ōrāre Titūrium prō hospitiō, ut suae ac mīlitum salūtī cōnsulat. Māgnam manum Germānōrum conductam Rhēnum trānsīsse; hanc adfore bīduō. Ipsōrum esse cōnsilium, velintne, prius quam fīnitimī sentiant, ēductōs ex hībernīs mīlitēs aut ad Cicerōnem aut ad Labiēnum dēdūcere, quōrum alter mīlia passuum circiter L, alter paulō amplius ab eīs absit. Illud sē pollicērī et iūre iūrandō cōnfīrmāre, tūtum sē iter per suōs fīnēs datūrum. Quod cum faciat, et cīvitātī sēsē cōnsulere, quod hībernīs levētur, et Caesarī prō ēius meritīs grātiam referre. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā discēdit Ambiorīx.

Sabinus and Cotta disagree. Cotta is opposed to the abandonment of the camp.

28. Arpinēius et Iūnius, quae audierant, ad lēgātōs dēferunt. Illī repentīnā rē perturbātī, etsī ab hoste ea dīcēbantur, tamen nōn neglegenda exīstimābant, māximēque hāc rē permovēbantur, quod cīvitātem īgnōbilem atque humilem Eburōnum suā sponte populō Rōmānō

bellum facere ausam vix erat crēdendum. Itaque ad cōnsilium rem dēferunt, māgnaque inter eōs exsistit contrōversia.

L. Aurunculēius complūrēsque tribūnī mīlitum et prīmōrum ōrdinum centuriōnēs nihil temerē agendum neque ex hībernīs iniussū Caesaris discēdendum exīstimābant; quantāsvīs cōpiās etiam Germānōrum sustinērī posse mūnītīs hībernīs docēbant; rem esse testimōniō, quod prīmum hostium impetum multīs ultrō vulneribus inlātīs fortissimē sustinuerint; rē frūmentāriā nōn premī; intereā et ex proximīs hībernīs et ā Caesare conventūra subsidia; **postrēmō**, quid esse levius aut turpius quam auctōre hoste dē summīs rēbus capere cōnsilium?

Sabinus favors acceptance of the offer of the Gauls.

29. Contrā ea Titūrius sērō factūrōs clāmitābat, cum māiōrēs manūs hostium adiūnctīs Germānīs convēnissent, aut cum aliquid calamitātis in proximīs hībernīs esset acceptum. Brevem cōnsulendī esse occāsiōnem. Caesarem sē arbitrārī profectum in Ītaliam; neque aliter Carnutēs interficiundī Tasgetī cōnsilium fuisse captūrōs, neque Eburōnēs, sī ille adesset, tantā contemptiōne nostrī ad castra ventūrōs. Sēsē nōn hostem auctōrem, sed rem spectāre; subesse Rhēnum; māgnō esse Germānīs dolōrī Ariovistī mortem et superiōrēs nostrās victōriās; ārdēre Galliam tot contumēliīs acceptīs sub populī Rōmānī imperium redāctam, superiōre glōriā reī mīlitāris exstīnctā.

Postrēmō, quis hōc sibi persuādēret, sine certā spē Ambiorīgem ad ēius modī cōnsilium dēscendisse? Suam sententiam in utramque partem esse tūtam: sī nihil

esset dūrius, nūllō cum perīculō ad proximam legiōnem perventūrōs; sī Gallia omnis cum Germānīs cōnsentīret, ūnam esse in celeritāte positam salūtem. Cottae quidem atque eōrum, quī dissentīrent, cōnsilium quem habēre exitum? In quō sī nōn praesēns perīculum, at certē longinquā obsidiōne famēs esset timenda.

After a long dispute Sabinus's view prevails.

30. Hāc in utramque partem **disputātiōne** habitā, cum ā Cottā prīmīsque ōrdinibus ācriter resisterētur, "vincite," inquit, "sī ita vultis," Sabīnus, et id clāriōre vōce, ut māgna pars mīlitum exaudīret; "neque is sum," inquit, "quī gravissimē ex **vōbīs** mortis perīculō terrear. Hī sapient; sī gravius quid acciderit, abs tē ratiōnem reposcent; quī, sī per tē liceat, perendinō diē cum proximīs hībernīs coniūnctī commūnem cum reliquīs bellī cāsum sustineant, nōn rēiectī et relēgātī longē ā cēterīs aut ferrō aut fame **intereant**."

31. Cōnsurgitur ex cōnsiliō; comprehendunt utrumque et ōrant, nē suā dissēnsiōne et pertināciā rem in summum perīculum dēdūcant; facilem esse rem, seu maneant, seu proficīscantur, sī modo ūnum omnēs sentiant ac probent; contrā in dissēnsiōne nūllam sē salūtem perspicere. Rēs disputātiōne ad mediam noctem perdūcitur. Tandem dat Cotta permōtus manūs; superat sententia Sabīnī. Prōnūntiātur, prīmā lūce itūrōs.

Cōnsūmitur vigiliīs reliqua pars noctis, cum sua quisque mīles circumspiceret, quid sēcum portāre posset, quid ex īnstrūmentō hībernōrum relinquere cōgerētur. Omnia excōgitantur, quārē nec sine perīculō maneātur et lan-

guōre mīlitum et vigiliīs perīculum augeātur. Prīmā lūce sīc ex castrīs proficīscuntur, ut quibus esset persuāsum, nōn ab hoste, sed ab homine amīcissimō cōnsilium datum, longissimō agmine māximīsque impedīmentīs.

The Romans are led into an ambuscade.

32. At hostēs, posteāquam ex nocturnō fremitū vigiliīsque dē profectiōne eōrum sēnsērunt, conlocātīs īnsidiīs bipertītō in silvīs opportūnō atque occultō locō ā mīlibus passuum circiter duōbus, Rōmānōrum adventum exspectābant, et cum sē māior pars agminis in māgnam convallem dēmīsisset, ex utrāque parte ēius vallis subitō sē ostendērunt, novissimōsque premere et prīmōs prohibēre ascēnsū atque inīquissimō nostrīs locō proelium committere coepērunt.

33. Tum dēmum Titūrius, quī nihil ante prōvīdisset, trepidāre et **concursāre** cohortēsque dispōnere, haec tamen ipsa timidē atque ut eum omnia dēficere vidērentur; quod plērumque eīs accidere cōnsuēvit, quī in ipsō negōtiō cōnsilium capere cōguntur. At Cotta, quī cōgitāsset, haec posse in itinere accidere, atque ob eam causam profectiōnis auctor nōn fuisset, nūllā in rē commūnī salūtī deerat et in appellandīs cohortandīsque mīlitibus imperātōris et in pūgnā mīlitis officia praestābat.

Cum propter longitūdinem agminis nōn facile per sē omnia obīre et, quid quōque locō faciendum esset, prōvidēre possent, iussērunt prōnūntiārī, ut impedīmenta relinquerent atque in orbem cōnsisterent. Quod cōnsilium, etsī in ēius modī cāsū reprehendendum nōn est, tamen incommodē cecidit; nam et nostrīs mīlitibus spem

minuit et hostēs ad pūgnam alacriōrēs effēcit, quod nōn sine summō timōre et dēspērātiōne id factum vidēbātur. Praetereā accidit, quod fierī necesse erat, ut vulgō mīlitēs ab sīgnīs discēderent, quaeque quisque eōrum cārissima habēret, ab impedīmentīs petere atque arripere properāret, clāmōre et flētū omnia complērentur.

The Gauls tire them out by dilatory tactics.

34. At barbarīs cōnsilium nōn dēfuit. Nam ducēs eōrum tōtā aciē prōnūntiārī iussērunt, nē quis ab locō discēderet; illōrum esse praedam atque illīs reservārī, quaecumque Rōmānī relīquissent; proinde omnia in victōriā posita exīstimārent. Erant et virtūte et studiō pūgnandī parēs nostrī; tametsī ab duce et ā fortūnā dēserēbantur, tamen omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnēbant, et quotiēns quaeque cohors prōcurrerat, ab eā parte māgnus numerus hostium cadēbat. Quā rē animadversā Ambiorīx prōnūntiārī iubet, ut procul tēla cōiciant neu propius accēdant et, quam in partem Rōmānī impetum fēcerint, cēdant — levitāte armōrum et cotīdiānā exercitātiōne nihil eīs nocērī posse, — rūrsus sē ad sīgna recipientēs īnsequantur.

35. Quō praeceptō ab eīs dīligentissimē observātō, cum quaepiam cohors ex orbe excesserat atque impetum fēcerat, hostēs vēlōcissimē refugiēbant. Interim eam partem nūdārī necesse erat et ab latere apertō tēla recipere. Rūrsus, cum in eum locum, unde erant prōgressī, revertī coeperant, et ab eīs, quī cesserant, et ab eīs, quī proximī **steterant**, circumveniēbantur; sīn autem locum tenēre vellent, nec virtūtī locus relinquēbātur neque ab tantā

multitūdine coniecta tēla cōnfertī vītāre poterant. Tamen tot incommodīs cōnflīctātī, multīs vulneribus acceptīs resistēbant et magnā parte diēī cōnsūmptā, cum ā prīmā lūce ad hōram octāvam pūgnārētur, nihil, quod ipsīs esset indīgnum, committēbant. Tum T. Balventiō, quī superiōre annō prīmum pīlum dūxerat, virō fortī et māgnae auctōritātis, utrumque femur trāgulā **trāicitur**; Q. Lūcānius, ēiusdem ōrdinis, fortissimē pūgnāns, dum circumventō fīliō **subvenit**, interficitur; L. Cotta lēgātus omnēs cohortēs ōrdinēsque adhortāns in adversum ōs fundā vulnerātur.



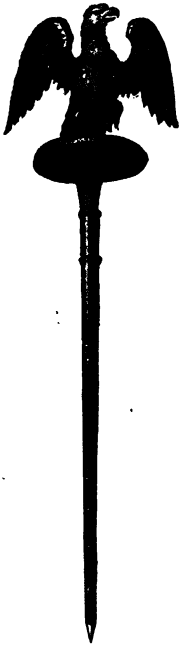
FUNDA.

Sabinus is treacherously slain. Fate of the remainder.

36. Hīs rēbus permōtus Q. Titūrius, cum procul Ambiorīgem suōs cohortantem cōnspexisset, interpretem suum Cn. Pompēium ad eum mittit rogātum, ut sibi mīlitibusque **parcat**. Ille appellātus respondet: sī velit sēcum conloquī, licēre; spērāre ā multitūdine impetrārī posse, quod ad mīlitum salūtem pertineat; ipsī vērō nihil nocitum īrī, inque eam rem sē suam fidem interpōnere. Ille cum Cottā sauciō commūnicat, sī videātur, pūgnā ut excēdant et cum Ambiorīge ūnā conloquantur; spērāre sē, ab eō dē suā ac mīlitum salūte impetrārī posse. Cotta sē ad armātum hostem itūrum negat atque in eō persevērat.

37. Sabīnus, quōs in praesentiā tribūnōs mīlitum circum sē habēbat, et prīmōrum ōrdinum centuriōnēs sē sequī iubet, et cum propius Ambiorīgem accessisset,

iussus arma abicere imperātum facit suīsque, ut idem faciant, imperat. Interim, dum dē condiciōnibus inter sē agunt longiorque cōnsultō ab Ambiorīge īnstituitur sermō, paulātim circumventus interficitur.



AQUILA.

Tum vērō suō mōre victōriam conclāmant atque ululātum tollunt impetūque in nostrōs factō ōrdinēs perturbant. Ibi L. Cotta pūgnāns interficitur cum māximā parte mīlitum. Reliquī sē in castra recipiunt, unde erant ēgressī. Ex quibus L. Petrosidius aquilifer, cum māgnā multitūdine hostium premerētur, aquilam intrā vāllum prōicit; ipse prō castrīs fortissimē pūgnāns occīditur. Illī aegrē ad noctem oppūgnātiōnem sustinent; nocte ad ūnum omnēs dēspērātā salūte sē ipsī interficiunt. Paucī ex proeliō ēlāpsī incertīs itineribus per silvās ad T. Labiēnum lēgātum in hīberna perveniunt atque eum dē rēbus gestīs certiōrem faciunt.

SIEGE OF CICERO'S CAMP, 38–53.

The Gauls attack the winter camp of Quintus Cicero.

38. Hāc victōriā sublātus Ambiorīx statim cum equitātū in Atuatucōs, quī erant ēius rēgnō fīnitimī, proficīscitur, neque noctem neque diem intermittit, pedi-

tātumque sē subsequī iubet. Rē dēmōnstrātā Atuatucīsque concitātīs posterō diē in Nerviōs pervenit hortāturque, nē suī in perpetuum līberandī atque ulcīscendī Rōmānōs prō eīs, quās accēperint, iniūriīs occāsiōnem dīmittant. Interfectōs esse lēgātōs duōs māgnamque partem exercitūs interīsse dēmōnstrat; nihil esse negōtī, subitō oppressam legiōnem, quae cum Cicerōne hiemet, interficī; sē ad eam rem profitētur adiūtōrem. Facile hāc ōrātiōne Nerviīs persuādet.

39. Itaque cōnfestim dīmissīs nūntiīs ad Ceutronēs, Grudiōs, Levācōs, Pleumoxiōs, Geidumnōs, quī omnēs sub eōrum imperiō sunt, quam māximās possunt manūs cōgunt, et dē imprōvīsō ad Cicerōnis hīberna advolant, nōndum ad eum fāmā dē Titūrī morte perlātā. Huic quoque accidit, quod fuit necesse, ut nōn nūllī mīlitēs, quī līgnātiōnis mūnītiōnisque causā in silvās discessissent, repentīnō equitum adventū interciperentur. Hīs circumventīs māgnā manū Eburōnēs, Nerviī, Atuatucī atque hōrum omnium sociī et clientēs legiōnem oppūgnāre incipiunt. Nostrī celeriter ad arma concurrunt, vāllum cōnscendunt. Aegrē is diēs sustentātur, quod omnem spem hostēs in celeritāte pōnēbant atque hanc adeptī victōriam in perpetuum sē fore victōrēs cōnfīdēbant.

40. Mittuntur ad Caesarem cōnfestim ā Cicerōne litterae, māgnīs prōpositīs praemiīs, sī pertulissent; obsessīs omnibus viīs, missī intercipiuntur. Noctū ex māteriā, quam mūnītiōnis causā comportāverant, turrēs admodum cxx excitantur incrēdibilī celeritāte; quae deesse operī vidēbantur, perficiuntur. Hostēs posterō diē multō māiō-

ribus coāctīs cōpiīs castra oppūgnant, fossam complent. A nostrīs eādem ratiōne, quā prīdiē, resistitur.

Hōc idem reliquīs deinceps fit diēbus. Nūlla pars nocturnī temporis ad labōrem intermittitur; nōn aegrīs, nōn vulnerātis facultās **quiētis** datur. Quaecumque ad proximī diēī oppūgnātiōnem opus sunt, noctū comparantur; multae praeustae sudēs, māgnus mūrālium pīlōrum numerus īnstituitur; turrēs contabulantur, pinnae lōrīcaeque ex crātibus attexuntur. Ipse Cicerō, cum tenuissimā valētūdine esset, nē nocturnum quidem sibi tempus ad quiētem relinquēbat, ut ultrō mīlitum concursū ac vōcibus sibi parcere cōgerētur.

The Gauls try in vain to lure Cicero from his camp.

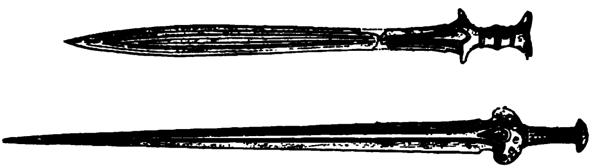
41. Tum ducēs prīncipēsque Nerviōrum, quī aliquem sermōnis aditum causamque amīcitiae cum Cicerōne habēbant, conloquī sēsē velle dīcunt. Factā potestāte, eadem, quae Ambiorīx cum Titūriō ēgerat, commemorant: omnem esse in armīs Galliam, Germānōs Rhēnum trānsīsse, Caesaris reliquōrumque hīberna oppūgnārī. Addunt etiam de Sabīnī morte; Ambiorīgem ostentant fideī faciundae causā. Errāre eōs dīcunt, sī quicquam ab eīs praesidī spērent, quī suīs rēbus diffīdant; sēsē tamen hōc esse in Cicerōnem populumque Rōmānum animō, ut nihil nisi hīberna recūsent atque hanc inveterāscere cōnsuētūdinem nōlint; licēre illīs per sē incolumibus ex hībernīs discēdere et, quāscumque in partēs velint, sine metū proficīscī.

Cicerō ad haec ūnum modo respondet: nōn esse cōnsuētūdinem populī Rōmānī, accipere ab hoste armātō

condiciōnem; sī ab armīs discēdere velint, sē adiūtōre ūtantur lēgātōsque ad Caesarem mittant; spērāre sē prō ēius iūstitiā, quae petierint, impetrātūrōs.

Desperate siege of the camp.

42. Ab hāc spē repulsī Nerviī vāllō pedum x et fossā pedum xv hīberna cingunt. Haec et superiōrum annōrum cōnsuētūdine ā nōbīs cōgnōverant et, quōsdam dē exercitū nactī captīvōs, ab hīs docēbantur; sed nūllā



Gallic Swords.

ferramentōrum cōpiā, quae essent ad hunc ūsum idōnea, gladiīs caespitēs circumcīdere, manibus sagulīsque terram exhaurīre cōgēbantur. Quā quidem ex rē hominum multitūdō cōgnōscī potuit; nam minus hōrīs tribus mīlium passuum III in circuitū mūnītiōnem perfēcērunt. Reliquīs diēbus turrēs ad altitūdinem vāllī, falcēs testūdinēsque, quās īdem captīvī docuerant, parāre ac facere coepērunt.

43. Septimō oppūgnātiōnis diē māximō coortō ventō, ferventēs fūsilēs ex argillā glandēs fundīs et fervefacta iacula in casās, quae mōre Gallicō strāmentīs erant tēctae, iacere coepērunt. Hae celeriter īgnem comprehendērunt et ventī māgnitūdine in omnem locum castrōrum dis-

tulērunt. Hostēs māximō clāmōre, sīcutī partā iam atque explōrātā victōriā, turrēs testūdinēsque agere et scālīs vāllum ascendere coepērunt. At tanta mīlitum virtūs atque ea praesentia animī fuit, ut, cum undique **flammā** torrērentur māximāque tēlōrum multitūdine premerentur suaque omnia impedīmenta atque omnēs fortūnās cōnflagrāre intellegerent, nōn modo dēmigrandī causā dē vāllō dēcēderet nēmō, sed paene nē respiceret quidem quisquam, ac tum omnēs ācerrimē fortissimēque pūgnārent.



Turris.

Hīc diēs nostrīs longē gravissimus fuit, sed tamen hunc habuit ēventum, ut eō diē māximus numerus hostium vulnerārētur atque interficerētur, ut sē sub ipsō vāllō cōnstīpāverant recessumque prīmīs ultimī nōn dabant. Paulum quidem intermissā flammā et quōdam locō turrī adāctā et contingente vāllum, tertiae cohortis centuriōnēs ex eō, quō stābant, locō recessērunt suōsque omnēs remōvērunt, nūtū vōcibusque hostēs, sī introīre vellent, vocāre coepērunt; quōrum prōgredī ausus est nēmō. Tum ex omnī parte lapidibus coniectīs dēturbātī turrisque succēnsa est.

Rival exploits of two centurions.

44. Erant in eā legiōne fortissimī virī, centuriōnēs, quī iam prīmīs ōrdinibus adpropinquārent, T. Pullō et L. Vo-

rēnus. Hī perpetuās inter sē contrōversiās habēbant, uter alterī **anteferrētur**, omnibusque annīs dē locō summīs simultātibus contendēbant. Ex hīs Pullō, cum ācerrimē ad mūnītiōnēs pūgnārētur, "quid dubitās," inquit, "Vorēne? aut quem locum tuae probandae virtūtis exspectās? Hīc diēs dē nostrīs contrōversiīs iūdicābit." Haec cum dīxisset, prōcēdit extrā mūnītiōnēs, quaeque pars hostium cōnfertissima est vīsa, inrumpit. Nē Vorēnus quidem sēsē tum vāllō continet, sed omnium veritus exīstimātiōnem subsequitur.

Mediocrī spatiō relictō Pullō pīlum in hostēs immittit atque ūnum ex multitūdine prōcurrentem trāicit; quō percussō et exanimātō, hunc scūtīs prōtegunt hostēs, in illum ūniversī tēla cōiciunt neque dant prōgrediendī facultātem. Trānsfīgitur scūtum Pullōnī et **verūtum** in balteō dēfīgitur. Āvertit hīc cāsus vāgīnam et gladium ēdūcere cōnantī dextram morātur manum, impedītumque hostēs circumsistunt. Succurrit inimīcus illī Vorēnus et labōrantī subvenit. Ad hunc sē cōnfestim ā Pullōne omnis multitūdō convertit; illum verūtō trānsfīxum arbitrantur. Gladiō comminus rem gerit Vorēnus atque ūnō interfectō reliquōs paulum prōpellit; dum cupidius instat, in locum dēiectus īnferiōrem concidit. Huic rūrsus circumventō subsidium fert Pullō, atque ambō incolumēs, complūribus interfectīs, summā cum laude sēsē intrā mūnītiōnēs recipiunt.

Sīc fortūna in contentiōne et certāmine utrumque versāvit, ut alter alterī inimīcus auxiliō salūtīque esset neque dīiūdicārī posset, uter utrī virtūte anteferendus vidērētur.

Cicero communicates with Caesar.

45. Quantō erat in diēs gravior atque asperior oppūgnātiō, et māximē quod, māgnā parte mīlitum cōnfectā vulneribus, rēs ad paucitātem dēfēnsōrum pervēnerat, tantō crēbriōrēs litterae nūntiīque ad Caesarem mittēbantur; quōrum pars **dēprehēnsa** in cōnspectū nostrōrum mīlitum cum cruciātū necābātur. Erat ūnus intus Nervius, nōmine Verticō, locō nātus honestō, quī ā prīmā obsidiōne ad Cicerōnem perfūgerat suamque eī fidem praestiterat. Hīc servō spē lībertātis māgnīsque persuādet praemiīs, ut litterās ad Caesarem dēferat. Hās ille in iaculō inligātās effert, et Gallus inter Gallōs sine ūllā suspīciōne versātus ad Caesarem pervenit. Ab eō dē perīculīs Cicerōnis legiōnisque cōgnōscitur.

46. Caesar acceptīs litterīs hōrā circiter undecimā diēī statim nūntium in Bellovacōs ad M. Crassum mittit, cūius hīberna aberant ab eō mīlia passuum xxv; iubet mediā nocte legiōnem proficīscī celeriterque ad sē venīre. Exit cum nūntiō Crassus. Alterum ad C. Fabium lēgātum mittit, ut in Atrebātium fīnēs legiōnem addūcat, quā sibi iter faciendum sciēbat. Scrībit Labiēnō, sī reī pūblicae commodō facere possit, cum legiōne ad fīnēs Nerviōrum veniat. Reliquam partem exercitūs, quod paulō aberat longius, nōn putat exspectandam; equitēs circiter cccc ex proximīs hībernīs cōgit.

Caesar goes to his rescue.

47. Hōrā circiter tertiā ab antecursōribus dē Crassī adventū certior factus, eō diē mīlia passuum xx prōgreditur.

Crassum Samarobrīvae praeficit legiōnemque eī attribuit, quod ibi impedīmenta exercitūs, obsidēs cīvitātum, litterās pūblicās frūmentumque omne, quod eō tolerandae hiemis causā dēvexerat, relinquēbat. Fabius, ut imperātum erat, nōn ita multum morātus, in itinere cum legiōne occurrit. Labiēnus interitū Sabīnī et caede cohortium cōgnitā, cum omnēs ad eum Trēverōrum cōpiae vēnissent, veritus, nē, sī ex hībernīs fugae similem profectiōnem fēcisset, hostium impetum sustinēre nōn posset, praesertim quōs recentī victōriā efferrī scīret, litterās Caesarī remittit, quantō cum perīculō legiōnem ex hībernīs ēductūrus esset; rem gestam in Eburōnibus **perscrībit**; docet, omnēs equitātūs peditātūsque cōpiās Trēverōrum III mīlia passuum longē ab suīs castrīs cōnsēdisse.

48. Caesar cōnsiliō ēius probātō, etsī opīniōne trium legiōnum dēiectus ad duās reciderat, tamen ūnum commūnī salūtī auxilium in celeritāte pōnēbat. Vēnit māgnīs itineribus in Nerviōrum fīnēs. Ibi ex captīvīs cōgnōscit, quae apud Cicerōnem gerantur quantōque in perīculō rēs sit. Tum cuidam ex equitibus Gallīs māgnīs praemiīs persuādet, utī ad Cicerōnem **epistulam** dēferat. Hanc Graecīs cōnscrīptam litterīs mittit, nē interceptā epistulā nostra ab hostibus cōnsilia cōgnōscantur. Sī adīre nōn possit, monet, ut trāgulam cum epistulā ad āmentum dēligātā intrā mūnītiōnēs castrōrum abiciat. In litterīs scrībit, sē cum legiōnibus profectum celeriter adfore; hortātur, ut prīstinam virtūtem retineat.

Gallus perīculum veritus, ut erat praeceptum, trāgulam mittit. Haec cāsū ad turrim adhaesit, neque ā nostrīs bīduō animadversa tertiō diē ā quōdam mīlite cōnspicitur,

dēmpta ad Cicerōnem dēfertur. Ille perlēctam in conventū mīlitum recitat māximāque omnēs **laetitiā** adficit. Tum fūmī incendiōrum procul vidēbantur; quae rēs omnem dubitātiōnem adventūs legiōnum expulit.

The Gauls raise the siege and hasten to intercept Caesar. Caesar is warned by Cicero.

49. Gallī rē cōgnitā per explōrātōrēs obsidiōnem relinquunt, ad Caesarem omnibus cōpiīs contendunt. Haec erant armāta circiter mīlia LX. Cicerō datā facultāte Gallum ab eōdem Verticōne, quem suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, repetit, quī litterās ad Caesarem dēferat. Hunc admonet, iter cautē dīligenterque faciat. Perscrībit in litterīs, hostēs ab sē discessisse omnemque ad eum multitūdinem convertisse. Quibus litterīs circiter mediā nocte Caesar adlātīs suōs facit certiōrēs eōsque ad dīmicandum animō cōnfīrmat.

Posterō diē lūce prīmā movet castra et circiter mīlia passuum IIII prōgressus trāns vallem et **rīvum** multitūdinem hostium cōnspicātur. Erat māgnī perīculī rēs, tantulīs cōpiīs inīquō locō dīmicāre; tum, quoniam obsidiōne līberātum Cicerōnem sciēbat, aequō animō remittendum dē celeritāte exīstimābat; cōnsīdit et, quam aequissimō potest locō, castra commūnit atque haec, etsī erant exigua per sē, vix hominum mīlium VII, praesertim nūllīs cum impedīmentīs, tamen angustiīs viārum, quam māximē potest, contrahit, eō cōnsiliō, ut in summam contemptiōnem hostibus veniat. Interim speculātōribus in omnēs partēs dīmissīs explōrat, quō commodissimē itinere vallem trānsīre possit.

The enemy are deceived by Caesar's pretence of fear.

50. Eō diē parvulīs equestribus proeliīs ad aquam factīs utrīque sēsē suō locō continent: Gallī, quod ampliōrēs cōpiās, quae nōndum convēnerant, exspectābant, Caesar, sī forte timōris simulātiōne hostēs in suum locum ēlicere posset, ut citrā vallem prō castrīs proeliō contenderet; sī id efficere nōn posset, ut explōrātīs itineribus minōre cum perīculō vallem rīvumque trānsīret. Prīmā lūce hostium equitātus ad castra accēdit proeliumque cum nostrīs equitibus committit. Caesar cōnsultō equitēs cēdere sēque in castra recipere iubet, simul ex omnibus partibus castra altiōre vāllō mūnīrī portāsque **obstruī** atque in hīs administrandīs rēbus quam māximē concursārī et cum simulātiōne agī timōris iubet.

They attack his camp and are repulsed with heavy losses.

51. Quibus omnibus rēbus hostēs invītātī cōpiās trādūcunt aciemque inīquō locō cōnstituunt; nostrīs vērō etiam dē vāllō dēductīs, propius accēdunt et tēla intrā mūnītiōnem ex omnibus partibus cōiciunt praecōnibusque circummissīs prōnūntiārī iubent, seu quis Gallus seu Rōmānus velit ante hōram tertiam ad sē trānsīre, sine perīculō licēre; post id tempus nōn fore potestātem. Ac sīc nostrōs contempsērunt, ut, obstrūctīs in speciem portīs singulīs ōrdinibus caespitum, quod eā non posse intrōrumpere vidēbantur, aliī vāllum manū scindere, aliī fossās complēre inciperent. Tum Caesar omnibus portīs ēruptiōne factā equitātūque ēmissō celeriter hostēs in fugam dat, sīc utī omnīnō pūgnandī causā resisteret nēmō, māgnumque ex eīs numerum occīdit atque omnēs armīs exuit.

Caesar joins Cicero. He decides to spend the winter with the army.

52. Longius prōsequī veritus, quod silvae palūdēsque intercēdēbant neque etiam parvulō dētrīmentō illōrum locum relinquī vidēbat, omnibus suīs incolumibus eōdem diē ad Cicerōnem pervēnit. Īnstitūtās turrēs, testūdinēs mūnītiōnēsque hostium admīrātur; prōductā legiōne cōgnōscit nōn decimum quemque esse reliquum mīlitem sine vulnere; ex hīs omnibus iūdicat rēbus, quantō cum perīculō et quantā virtūte rēs sint administrātae. Cicerōnem prō ēius meritō legiōnemque conlaudat; centuriōnēs singillātim tribūnōsque mīlitum appellat, quōrum ēgregiam fuisse virtūtem testimōniō Cicerōnis cōgnōverat. Dē cāsū Sabīnī et Cottae certius ex captīvīs cōgnōscit.

Posterō diē cōntiōne habitā rem gestam prōpōnit, mīlitēs cōnsōlātur et cōnfīrmat; quod dētrīmentum culpā et temeritāte lēgātī sit acceptum, hōc aequiōre animō ferundum docet, quod beneficiō deōrum immortālium et virtūte eōrum expiātō incommodō neque hostibus diūtina laetitia neque ipsīs longior dolor relinquātur.

53. Interim ad Labiēnum per Rēmōs incrēdibilī celeritāte dē victōriā Caesaris fāma perfertur, ut, cum ab hībernīs Cicerōnis mīlia passuum abesset circiter LX eōque post hōram nōnam diēī Caesar pervēnisset, ante mediam noctem ad portās castrōrum clāmor orerētur, quō clāmōre sīgnificātiō victōriae grātulātiōque ab Rēmīs Labiēnō fieret. Hāc fāmā ad Trēverōs perlātā, Indūtiomārus, quī posterō diē castra Labiēnī oppūgnāre dēcrēverat, noctū profugit cōpiāsque omnēs in Trēverōs redūcit.

Caesar Fabium cum suā legiōne remittit in hīberna, ipse cum III legiōnibus circum Samarobrīvam trīnīs

hībernīs hiemāre cōnstituit, et quod tantī mōtūs Galliae exstiterant, tōtam hiemem ipse ad exercitum manēre dēcrēvit. Nam, illō incommodō dē Sabīnī morte perlātō, omnēs ferē Galliae cīvitātēs dē bellō cōnsultābant, nūntiōs lēgātiōnēsque in omnēs partēs dīmittēbant et, quid reliquī cōnsilī caperent atque unde initium bellī fieret, explōrābant nocturnaque in locīs dēsertīs concilia habēbant. Neque ūllum ferē tōtīus hiemis tempus sine sollicitūdine Caesaris intercessit, quīn aliquem dē cōnsiliīs ac mōtū Gallōrum nūntium acciperet.

In hīs ab L. Rōsciō, quem legiōnī tertiae decimae praefēcerat, certior factus est, māgnās Gallōrum cōpiās eārum cīvitātum, quae Aremoricae appellantur, oppūgnandī suī causā convēnisse neque longius mīlibus passuum VIII ab hībernīs suīs āfuisse, sed nūntiō adlātō dē victōriā Caesaris discessisse, adeō ut fugae similis discessus vidērētur.

REVOLT OF THE SENONES AND TREVERI, 54-58.

The Senones expel the king appointed over them by Caesar.

54. At Caesar, prīncipibus cūiusque cīvitātis ad sē ēvocātīs, aliōs territandō, cum sē scīre, quae fierent, dēnūntiāret, aliōs cohortandō, māgnam partem Galliae in officiō tenuit. Tamen Senonēs, quae est cīvitās in prīmīs fīrma et māgnae inter Gallōs auctōritātis, Cavarīnum, quem Caesar apud eōs rēgem cōnstituerat, cūius frāter Moritasgus adventū in Galliam Caesaris cūiusque maiōrēs rēgnum obtinuerant, interficere pūblicō cōnsiliō cōnātī, cum ille praesēnsisset ac profūgisset, usque ad fīnēs īn-

secūtī rēgnō domōque expulērunt, et missīs ad Caesarem satisfaciendī causā lēgātīs, cum is omnem ad sē senātum venīre iussisset, dictō audientēs nōn fuērunt.

Ac tantum apud hominēs barbarōs valuit, esse aliquōs repertōs prīncipēs bellī īnferendī, tantamque omnibus voluntātum commūtātiōnem attulit, ut praeter Haeduōs et Rēmōs, quōs praecipuō semper honōre Caesar habuit, alterōs prō vetere ac perpetuā ergā populum Rōmānum fidē, alterōs prō recentibus Gallicī bellī officiīs, nūlla ferē cīvitās fuerit nōn suspecta nōbīs. Idque adeō haud sciō mīrandumne sit, cum complūribus aliīs dē causīs, tum māximē, quod, quī virtūte bellī omnibus gentibus praeferēbantur, tantum sē ēius opīniōnis dēperdidisse, ut populī Rōmānī imperia perferrent, gravissimē dolēbant.

Indutiomarus, of the Treveri, leads a revolt.

55. Trēverī vērō atque Indūtiomārus tōtīus hiemis nūllum tempus intermīsērunt, quīn trāns Rhēnum lēgātōs mitterent, cīvitātēs sollicitārent, pecūniās pollicērentur, māgnā parte exercitūs nostrī interfectā multō minōrem superesse dīcerent partem. Neque tamen ūllī cīvitātī Germānōrum persuādērī potuit, ut Rhēnum trānsīret, cum sē bis expertōs dīcerent, Ariovistī bellō et Tencterōrum trānsitū; nōn esse amplius fortūnam temptātūrōs. Hāc spē lāpsus Indūtiomārus nihilō minus cōpiās cōgere, exercēre, ā fīnitimīs equōs parāre, exulēs damnātōsque tōtā Galliā māgnīs praemiīs ad sē adlicere coepit. Ac tantam sibi iam hīs rēbus in Galliā auctōritātem comparāverat, ut undique ad eum lēgātiōnēs concurrerent, grātiam atque amīcitiam pūblicē prīvātimque peterent.

56. Ubi intellēxit, ultrō ad sē venīrī, alterā ex parte Senonēs Carnutēsque cōnscientiā facinoris īnstīgārī, alterā Nerviōs Atuatucōsque bellum Rōmānīs parāre, neque sibi voluntāriōrum cōpiās dēfore, sī ex fīnibus suīs prōgredī coepisset, armātum concilium indīcit. Hōc mōre Gallōrum est initium bellī; quō lēge commūnī omnēs pūberēs armātī convenīre cōguntur; quī ex eīs novissimus venit, in cōnspectū multitūdinis omnibus cruciātibus adfectus necātur.

In eō conciliō Cingetorīgem, alterius prīncipem factiōnis, generum suum, quem suprā dēmōnstrāvimus Caesaris secūtum fidem ab eō nōn discessisse, hostem iūdicat bonaque ēius pūblicat. Hīs rēbus cōnfectīs in conciliō prōnūntiat, arcessītum sē ā Senonibus et Carnutibus aliīsque complūribus Galliae cīvitātibus; hūc itūrum per fīnēs Rēmōrum eōrumque agrōs populātūrum ac, priusquam id faciat, castra Labiēnī oppūgnātūrum.

He attacks Labienus's camp, but is defeated and killed.

57. Quae fierī velit, praecipit. Labiēnus, cum et locī nātūrā et manū mūnītissimīs castrīs sēsē tenēret, dē suō ac legiōnis perīculō nihil timēbat, nē quam occāsiōnem reī bene gerendae dīmitteret, cōgitābat. Itaque ā Cingetorīge atque ēius propinquīs ōrātiōne Indūtiomārī cōgnitā, quam in conciliō habuerat, nūntiōs mittit ad fīnitimās cīvitātēs equitēsque undique ēvocat; hīs certam diem conveniendī dīcit. Interim prope cotīdiē cum omnī equitātū Indūtiomārus sub castrīs ēius vagābātur, aliās ut situm castrōrum cōgnōsceret, aliās conloquendī aut territandī causā; equitēs plērumque omnēs tēla intrā vāllum

cōiciēbant. Labiēnus suōs intrā mūnītiōnem continēbat timōrisque opīniōnem, quibuscumque poterat rēbus, augēbat.

58. Cum māiōre in diēs contemptiōne Indūtiomārus ad castra accēderet, nocte ūnā intrōmissīs equitibus omnium fīnitimārum cīvitātum, quōs arcessendōs cūrāverat, tantā dīligentiā omnēs suōs custōdiīs intrā castra continuit, ut nūllā ratiōne ea rēs ēnūntiārī aut ad Trēverōs perferrī posset. Interim ex cōnsuētūdine cotīdiānā Indūtiomārus ad castra accēdit atque ibi māgnam partem diēī cōnsūmit; equitēs tēla cōiciunt et māgnā cum contumēliā verbōrum nostrōs ad pūgnam ēvocant. Nūllō ab nostrīs datō respōnsō, ubi vīsum est, sub vesperum dispersī ac dissipātī discēdunt.

Subitō Labiēnus duābus portīs omnem equitātum ēmittit; praecipit atque interdīcit, perterritīs hostibus atque in fugam coniectīs — quod fore, sīcut accidit, vidēbat — ūnum omnēs petant Indūtiomārum, neu quis quem prius vulneret quam illum interfectum vīderit, quod morā reliquōrum spatium nactum illum effugere nōlēbat; māgna prōpōnit eīs, quī occīderint, praemia; submittit cohortēs equitibus subsidiō. Comprobat hominis cōnsilium fortūna, et cum ūnum omnēs peterent, in ipsō flūminis vadō dēprehēnsus Indūtiomārus interficitur, caputque ēius refertur in castra; redeuntēs equitēs, quōs possunt, cōnsectantur atque occīdunt. Hāc rē cōgnitā omnēs Eburōnum et Nerviōrum, quae convēnerant, cōpiae discēdunt, paulōque habuit post id factum Caesar quiētiōrem Galliam.

NOTES.



Caius Julius Caesar, Museo Nazionale, Naples.

BOOK I.

Introduction.

War with the Helvetii. — While Caesar was still in Rome, early in 58, preparing to depart for his provinces, news came that a powerful Gallic tribe, the Helvetii, was about to start upon a westward migration. Of this movement, which the Helvetii had set on foot in 61, the Romans had probably received some information before. That the Helvetii were restless, at least, had been known for some time. Two years previously, in 60, they were reported in arms and making raids into the Transalpine province. The alarm felt in Rome at that time prompted the sending of an embassy to prevent other Gallic tribes from supporting them.

The Helvetii quite likely were being harassed by the Germans, of whom more in another connection. At all events, they felt cramped in their present country, a part of modern Switzerland, and had determined to remove to western Gaul. The leader in the movement was the powerful chieftain Orgetorix, to whose direction were confided the preparations for departure. Orgetorix betrayed his trust by intriguing with two other Gallic chieftains to gain supreme power in their respective states. His trial and death did not deter the Helvetii from proceeding with their plan. In the early spring of 58 they were ready for the march, having decided upon a route that led through the Roman province. Two other and smaller tribes had cast in their lot with them. The news of the danger threatening

the province brought Caesar on a hurried journey to Geneva. His refusal to grant right of way through the province forced the Helvetii to adopt the only other route readily available, through the Pas de l'Écluse and the country of the Sequani. Caesar, however, had no intention of permitting their migration without a struggle. In western Gaul they would still be dangerous neighbors to the province, while the country they were leaving was certain to be occupied by the Germans. The slow progress of the Helvetian host enabled Caesar to muster sufficient forces to follow them as they advanced up the valley of the Saône, and finally to rout them in a desperate battle late in June. The survivors were sent back to their former home.

So far as we know, Caesar had received no explicit instructions from the Roman senate with reference to the Helvetii. His policy was dictated by regard for the interests of the province and by the necessity of securing the frontier. The possibility of further German aggressions was, in all probability, the danger that seemed to Caesar most pressing and the problem with which he was expecting immediately to concern himself upon assuming his provincial command. It was with these Germans that he now came in conflict.

War with Ariovistus. — Two leagues of Gallic tribes (Introd. 65) had long been at strife for various causes, one led by the Haedui, the other by the Sequani, the former having at one time been the stronger. The weaker Sequani, however, had recourse to an alliance with German mercenaries from beyond the Rhine, and repeatedly defeated the Haedui in battle. The Haeduan Diviciacus finally visited Rome, probably in 61, in a vain attempt to secure help for his people as friends and allies of Rome (Introd. 68). The senate issued a conventional decree directing any governor of Gaul to protect Rome's allies. Shortly after, in 61 or 60, the disastrous battle of Magetobriga completed the humiliation of the Haedui. Upon Caesar's arrival Haeduan hostages were in the hands of the Sequani and Germans, the latter exacting a yearly tribute in addition. But the condition of the Sequani was even more deplorable than

that of the vanquished Haedui. The Germans, attracted by the superiority of the Gallic land, had determined to remain in Gaul. Under their redoubtable leader, Ariovistus, their numbers had already increased from fifteen thousand to one hundred and twenty thousand. One third of the Sequanian country was now in their possession and a second third demanded. The Sequani had ample reason to repent their rash alliance. Indeed, it is quite possible that they joined forces with the Haedui at Magetobriga against the Germans.

After the defeat of the Helvetii, which occurred in Haeduan territory, the Gallic tribes which had felt or feared German oppression appealed to Caesar for protection. In the relation of friendship between the Romans and the Haedui, and in the injuries to the latter at the hands of the Germans, Caesar found a ready pretext for entering into communication with Ariovistus. His professed purpose was to free the Haedui from subjection to the Sequani and Germans, and to exact assurance of no further German encroachments in Gaul. Of Ariovistus and his ambitions Caesar was doubtless more or less informed before coming to Gaul. In his own consulship, and apparently with his approval, the senate had conferred upon Ariovistus the title of "king and friend," which did not mean that Caesar would necessarily treat him as such a year later. Caesar's march to meet the German host, the amusing panic in his own army, the masterly speech in which he restored courage, the fruitless negotiations between the resolute Roman and the no less resolute German, the hard-fought battle in the valley of the Rhine, form one of the most interesting episodes of the Gallic war. By the overwhelming victory of the Roman army the Germans were driven from this region of Gaul; and that, it is not hard to believe, was Caesar's purpose from the outset.

At the conclusion of the campaign Caesar established his legions in winter quarters among the Sequani. He himself went to his Cisalpine province for the winter, in order to attend to administrative duties.

BOOK I.

WAR WITH THE HELVETII, 1–29.

Page 1. **C. Juli Caesaris**: for the names, *praenomen, nomen,* and *cognomen,* see A. 108 (80); G. p. 493; H. 354; H-B. 678. For the genitive in *i* see A. 49, b (40, b); B. 25, 1; G. 33, R. 1; H. 83, 6; H-B. 71, 2.

CHAPTER 1, Line 1. **Gallia omnis**: *Gaul as a whole. Gallia* is also frequently used of some one of the divisions of Gaul. The context usually makes the meaning clear. **est dīvīsa**: *is divided.* Perfect participles may be employed as predicate adjectives. **quārum**: *of these,* gen. of the whole, the so-called partitive genitive. The relative pronoun when introducing an independent sentence should be translated by a personal or demonstrative pronoun. **ūnam**: sc. *partem* (also with *aliam* and *tertiam*).

2. **incolunt**: *is inhabited.* The Latin emphasis and order are often preserved best by translating an active verb in the passive. **quī**: for *eī quī, those who.* The antecedent of a relative pronoun may be omitted if readily understood from the context. **ipsōrum linguā**: *in their own language;* lit. *in the language of themselves.*

3–5. **nostrā**: sc. *linguā.* **linguā, īnstitūtīs, lēgibus**: *in language,* etc.; for the case see [1] A. 418 (253); B. 226; G. 397;

[1] Grammars: A. = Allen and Greenough's *New Latin Grammar,* 1903, numerals in parentheses referring to the edition of 1894; B. = Bennett's *Latin Grammar;* G. = Gildersleeve's *Latin Grammar;* H. = Harkness's *Complete Latin Grammar* and Harkness's *Short Latin Grammar;* H-B. = *Latin Grammar,* Hale and Buck. References to the Introduction (Introd.) are to the numbered sections, unless otherwise indicated.

H. 480, 3; H-B. 441. **inter sē**: *from one another*, reciprocal use of *sē;* how lit.? **Gallōs . . . dīvidit**: *the Gauls are separated;* see note on *incolunt*, 2, above. **Gallōs**: equivalent to *Celtās*. **dīvidit**: singular verb, the Marne and Seine being regarded as a single boundary.

6. **Hōrum**: gen. of the whole; cf. *quārum*, 1, above. **propterea quod**: differs from *quod*, used alone, no more than English *for the reason that* differs from *because*.

7. **cultū**: *manner of life*. **hūmānitāte**: *civilization*. Translate the two together, *civilized life*. **prōvinciae**: the Transalpine province; see Introd. 68.

8–9. **minimēque . . . commeant atque . . . important**: the second reason. **minimē saepe**; *very seldom*. **mercātōrēs**: especially from the Greek city of Massilia. **ea, quae**: *those things which;* i.e. luxuries, wine in particular. **ad . . . pertinent**: *tend to weaken character*. **effēminandōs**: for the gerundive construction see A. 503, 506 (296, 300); B. 338, 3, 339, 2; G. 427, 432; H. 628; H-B. 612, III.

10. **proximīque sunt**, etc.: the third reason, the main point lying in *quibuscum . . . gerunt*. **Germānīs**: for the dat. depending on *proximī* see A. 384 (234, a); B. 192, 1; G. 359; H. 434, 2; H-B. 362, III. **quibuscum**: for *cum* enclitic see A. 150, d (104, e); B. 142, 4; G. 413, R. 1; H. 182, 2; H-B. 418, a.

11–12. **Quā dē causā**: *for this reason*. For translation of *Quā* see note on *quārum*, 1, above. **dē**: a monosyllabic preposition often stands between a noun and a modifier in agreement with it. **virtūte**: abl. of specification, like (second) *linguā*, 3, above.

13–15. **proeliīs**: *in battles*. **cum . . . prohibent . . . aut . . . gerunt**: *when they either keep out the Germans*, etc., or translate by a participial construction, *either keeping out the Germans*, etc. **fīnibus**: for the case see A. 401 (243, a); B. 214, 2; G. 390, 2; H. 464, 1; H-B. 408, 2. **suīs** and **ipsī** refer to the Helvetii, **eōs** and **eōrum** to the Germans.

16. **Eōrum**: (*of them*) instead of *Galliae*, the people being

put for the country, as often. **quam . . . dictum est**: *which the Gauls occupy (as) has been said.* The infinitive clause stands as subject of *dictum est.* **Gallōs**: i.e. *Celtās.*

17–18. **Garumnā**: abl. of means. **ab**: *on the side of*, a not infrequent use of *ā* and *ab*, to indicate the standpoint.

Page 2. 1. **vergit ad septentriōnēs**: *trends towards the north*, perhaps with reference to the course of the rivers in general.

2. **Belgae**: the people instead of the country; cf. *Eōrum*, **1**, 16. **extrēmīs**: *farthest*, from the standpoint of the province or of Rome. **Galliae**: i.e. Celtic Gaul.

3. **spectant in**: cf. *vergit ad*, 1, above. The course of the main rivers is northeast.

6. **est ad**: *is near, lies next to.*

Explain the construction (page 1) of **partēs, ūnam** 1, **Celtae, Gallī** 3, **sē, Aquītānīs** 4, **prōvinciae** 7, **eōs** 8, **Rhēnum** 10, **bellum, causā** 11, (second) **fīnibus** 14; (page 2) **Galliae** 2, **Ōceanī** 6. Give the principal parts (page 1) of **est** 1, **differunt** 4, **dīvidit** 5, **gerunt** 11, **contendunt** 13, **dictum est** 16.

9. CHAPTER 2. **M. Messālā et M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus**: *in the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso*, i.e. 61 B.C. For the case see A. 419, a (255, a); B. 227, 1; G. 409, 410; H. 489; H-B. 421, 1. The Roman chief magistrates were two consuls, elected annually, and holding office jointly. Their names in the ablative absolute with *cōnsulibus* are regularly employed to indicate Roman years. In such phrases *et* is usually omitted. **rēgnī**: objective genitive after *cupiditāte.*

10–11. **nōbilitātis**: see Introd. 63. **cīvitātī**: (*his*) *state*, for (*his*) *countrymen*, hence the plural verb *exīrent.* For the case see A. 367 (227); B. 187, II, a; G. 346; H. 426, 2; H-B. 362, I. **ut dē . . . exīrent**: *to leave;* for the mood see A. 563 (331); B. 295, 1; G. 546; H. 565; H-B. 502, 3. **cōpiīs**: *forces, population*, including women and children.

12–13. **perfacile esse . . . potīrī**: verbs of saying and

the like are often to be inferred from the context; (*saying*) *that it was very easy to gain supremacy over all Gaul, since they surpassed all in valor.* **potīrī**: subject of *esse*. In direct discourse, *perfacile est, cum . . . praestētis, . . . potīrī.* **praestārent**: subjv. with *cum* causal. **omnibus**: for the dat. governed by *praestārent* see A. 370 (228); B. 187, III, 1; G. 347; H. 429; H-B. 376. **imperiō**: for the abl. with *potīrī* see A. 410 (249); B. 218, 1; G. 407; H. 477, I; H-B. 429.

14–15. **Id . . . persuāsit**: *he persuaded them (to) this (course of action) the more easily.* *Id* refers to the plan of emigration. For the acc. with *persuāsit* see A. 227, f (369); B. 176, 2, a; G. 332; H. 404, 1; H-B 364, 4. **hōc**: abl. of cause, explained by the causal clause, *quod*, etc. **nātūrā**: abl. of cause. **ūnā ex parte**: *on one side; ex*, like *ab*, **1**, 18, indicating the standpoint.

16. **quī**: the relative here and in 19 takes the name of the river as antecedent; usually *flūmen* is the antecedent in such combinations.

17–18. **alterā**: *second.* *Ūnus* and *alter* frequently have ordinal meanings, especially when followed by *tertius*. **tertiā**: sc. *ex parte.*

20–21. **Hīs rēbus fīēbat, ut**: *from these facts it resulted that,* etc.; *rēbus* is an abl. of cause; for the force of *fīēbat* and the following imperfects see A. 470 (277); B. 260, 1; G. 231; H. 534; H-B. 468, 2. **ut . . . possent**: subject of *fīēbat*, A. 569, 1 (332, a); B. 297, 2; G. 553, 3; H. 571, I; H-B. 521, 3, a. **fīnitimīs**: like *omnibus*, 12, above, dat. after a compound, *inferre;* here the verb is transitive and governs a direct object also, *bellum.* **quā ex parte**: *from this fact, for this reason.*

22. **hominēs**: (*as they were*) *people.* **bellandī cupidī**: *fond of making war;* for the gen. *bellandī* see A. 349, a (218, a); B. 204, 1; G. 374, 5; H. 451, 1; H-B. 354.

23–26. **Prō multitūdine hominum**: *in proportion to their population.* In chapter 29 the migrating host is given as 263,000. **glōriā bellī atque fortitūdinis**: *renown for bravery in war.* The English idiom leads us to expect *bellicae fortitūdinis*, noun and adjective instead of coördinate nouns. For the hendiadys

see A. 640 (385); B. 374, 4; G. 698; H. 753, 3, N. 1; H-B. 631, 5 **sē habēre arbitrābantur**: *thought that they had.* **quī . . . patēbant**: as the clause is not part of the indirect discourse, but a statement of fact added by the author, the mood is indicative. **mīlia**: for the case see A. 425 (257); B. 181; G. 335; H. 417; H-B. 387, I. **passuum**: the plural of *mīlle* is a substantive and is regularly followed by a genitive.

Construction of **Helvētiōs** 8, **cupiditāte, nōbilitātis** 10, **cōpiīs** 11, **virtūte** 12, **eīs** 14, **flūmine** 15, **dolōre** 22, **multitūdine** 23. Principal parts of **fēcit** 10, **persuāsit, exīrent** 11, **potīrī** 13, **flēbat** 20, **īnferre, possent** 21. Compare **minus, lātē** 20, **facile** 21.

Page 3. 2–3. CHAPTER 3. **ea, quae . . . . comparāre**: *to make those preparations which*, explained in detail by the following infinitives. **ad proficīscendum**: *to departure,* or *to the journey;* for the gerund see A. 506 (300); B. 338, 3; G. 425; H. 628; H-B. 612, III. **pertinērent**: subjunctive due to informal indirect discourse, A. 591, 1 (341, d); B. 323; G. 628; H. 649, I; H-B. 535, 1, a. **quam māximum numerum**: *the largest number possible;* for the superlative with *quam* see A. 291, c (93, b); B. 240, 3; G. 303; H. 159, 2; H-B. 241, 4.

4–5. **ut . . . suppeteret**: *in order to have on hand;* for the mood see A. 531, 1 (317, 1); B. 282; G. 545, 1; H. 568; H-B. 502, 2.

6. **Ad . . . cōnficiendās**: *to complete these preparations,* gerundive construction, like *ad effēminandōs animōs,* **1**, 9. **rēs**: should be translated definitely, according to the context, here *preparations.*

7. **sibi**: *for them.* **dūxērunt**: *deemed, considered,* as a verb of thinking governs indirect discourse, *biennium . . . esse.* **in**: *for.*

8. **cōnfīrmant**: the historical present, A. 469 (276, d); B. 259, 3; G. 229; H. 532, 3; H-B. 491, 1.

10. **sibi suscipit**: *takes upon himself, undertakes.* **cīvitātēs.**

i.e. the neighboring Gallic tribes. **persuādet**: this historical present, as often, is followed by a past tense in the dependent clause, *occupāret*, 14, although the present subjunctive might have been employed.

12. **rēgnum**: see Introd. 62. **annōs**: for the case see A. 423 (256, 2); B. 181, 1; G. 336; H. 417; H-B. 387, II.

13–14. **senātū**: abl. of the agent. **amīcus**: predicate nominative after *appellātus erat.* The title of "friend" was sometimes conferred by the Roman senate on foreign princes for friendly services or to secure their allegiance. **ut . . . occupāret**: *to seize.* **habuerit**: subjunctive by attraction to the mood of *occupāret*; or we may read with the manuscripts *habuerat*, indicative in an independent statement of the author's, like *obtinuerat* and *appellātus erat*, above.

15. **Dumnorīgī**: dat. governed by *persuādet*, 17. **Dīviciācī**: an influential leader among the Haedui and a member of the priestly order of druids. He was at the head of the faction friendly to Rome. Some years before he had visited Rome in a vain attempt to secure aid against the Germans and Sequani. **quī**: refers to *Dumnorīgī.* **tempore**: abl. of time when.

16–17. **māximē plēbī acceptus**: *a special favorite with the common people.* **plēbī**: for the dat. dependent on *acceptus* see A. 384 (234); B. 192, 1; G. 359; H. 434, 2; H-B. 362, I. **eī**: dat. of indirect object.

19. **Perfacile factū**: *very easy; factū, to do*, may be omitted in translation; for the supine see A. 510 (303); B. 340, 2; G. 436; H. 635, 1; H-B. 619, 1. **illīs**: dat. of indirect object after *probat.* **perficere**: subject of *esse.*

20. **obtentūrus esset**: *expected to gain, intended to gain;* subjunctive in a subordinate clause in indirect discourse. The periphrastic is employed to report a past intention.

21–22. **nōn esse dubium, quīn . . . possent**: *there was no doubt (he said), that the Helvetii were the most powerful (people) of all Gaul.* For the subjunctive with *quīn* see A. 558, a (319, d); B. 298; G. 555, 2; H. 595, 1; H-B. 521, 3, b. **plūrimum**: acc. expressing degree with *possent*, see A. 390, c (238, b); B.

176, 3, a; G. 334; H. 416, 2; H-B. 387, III. **illīs**: dat. of indirect object. **conciliātūrum**: sc. *esse*, often omitted in the future active and perfect passive infinitives.

23–24. **inter sē dant**: *they exchange.* For the reciprocal use of *sē* cf. **1**, 4. **fidem et iūs iūrandum**: *an oath-bound pledge*, another instance of hendiadys. **rēgnō occupātō**: *by seizing supreme power*, or *if they should seize*, etc.; lit. *the supreme power having been seized*, abl. absolute, A. 420, 4 (255, 4); B. 227, 2, b; G. 409, 593, 2; H. 489, 1; H-B. 421, 6. **per**: with the accusative expresses indirect agency.

25–26. **Galliae**: the genitive, instead of the ablative, is sometimes governed by *potior.* **sēsē . . . posse spērant**: *hope to be able.*

Construction of **sēmentēs** 4, **frūmentī** 5, **lēge** 8, **dux** 9, **Casticō, fīliō** 11, **frātrī** 15, **Perfacile** 19, **cōpiīs, exercitū** 22, **sēsē** 25. Principal parts of **cōnficiendās** 6, **dēligitur** 9, **suscipit** 10, **dat** 18. Compare **māximum** 3, **plūrimum** 21.

Page 4. 1. CHAPTER 4. **Ea rēs**: *this plan, this plot.* **per indicium**: abstract for concrete, equivalent to *per indicēs, by informers.* **Mōribus suīs**: *in accordance with their custom;* for the case see A. 418, a (253, N.); B. 220, 3; G. 397; H. 475, 3; H-B. 414.

2. **ex vinculīs**: *in chains;* lit. ? **coēgērunt**: like its English equivalent, *compel, cōgō* may govern an infinitive clause, here *Orgetorīgem . . . dīcere.* In the sense of *bring together*, 6, it governs an accusative alone.

3. **damnātum . . . oportēbat, ut īgnī cremārētur**: *if convicted, punishment by burning must befall him;* lit. *the punishment that he be burned must befall (him) convicted. damnātum* limits *eum* to be supplied as object of *sequī.* For the participle equivalent to a conditional clause see A. 496 (292); B. 337, 2, b; G. 667; H. 638, 2; H-B. 604, 3. **poenam**: subject of *sequī* and forming with it an infinitive clause, subject of the impersonal *oportēbat.* **ut . . . cremārētur**: substantive clause in apposition with *poenam*, A. 561, a (329, 2); B. 297, 3; G. 557;

H. 564, III; H-B. 502, 3, a, N. 1. Further mention of this form of punishment is made in Bk. VI, 16, 19, and Bk. VII, 4.

4. **Diē . . . dictiōnis**: *on the day set for pleading his case.* **causae**: objective genitive after *dictiōnis.*

5. **familiam**: *household,* especially those retainers whose condition was one of virtual slavery. See Introd. 63. **ad**: *about,* an adverb modifying *decem.* **mīlia**: acc., in apposition with *familiam.*

6. **clientēs, obaerātōs**: for their status see Introd. 63.

7–9. **per eōs**: *through them;* not necessarily by actual violence, but by the fear their large numbers inspired. **nē dīceret**: a clause of purpose, to be translated freely with *sē ēripuit, avoided standing trial.* **cum . . . cōnārētur**: for mood and tense see A. 546 (325); B. 288, 1, B; G. 585; H. 600, II, 1; H-B. 524.

11–12. **neque abest suspīciō . . . quīn**: *and the suspicion is not lacking . . . that,* etc., an instance of litotes, and so equivalent to *there is a strong suspicion. neque abest suspīciō* is akin in meaning to *nōn esse dubium,* **3**, 21; see note there for the *quīn* clause. Observe *neque,* meaning *and not,* and *ut, as,* a frequent meaning with an indicative following. The emphasis in *ipse* is sufficiently preserved in the English *suicide.*

Construction of **Helvētiīs** 1, **īgnī** 3, **Diē** 4, **hominum** 5, **quōrum** 6, **rem** 8, **armīs** 9, **sibi** 12. Principal parts of **coēgērunt** 2, **sequī, oportēbat** 3, **cōnstitūtā** 4, **mortuus est** 10, **cōnscīverit** 12.

13. CHAPTER 5. **nihilō**: abl. of degree of difference; with *minus, nevertheless;* lit. *less by nothing.*

14. **ut ē . . . exeant**: (*viz.*) *to leave,* a substantive clause in apposition with *id.*

15. **Ubi iam**: *when at length.* In narration *ubi* is most frequently followed by the perfect indicative. **parātōs**: predicate adjective, *sē* being the subject of *esse.* **oppida**: towns with natural or artificial fortifications.

16. **numerō**: *in number,* abl. of specification. **ad**: *about,* an adverb as in 5, above. **vīcōs**: unprotected villages.

17. **prīvāta aedificia**: isolated dwellings in the country.

18–19. **praeter quod**: *except what*, equivalent to *praeter id quod.* **portātūrī erant**: *they intended to take.* **ut . . . parātiōrēs . . . essent**: *in order to be better prepared*, a clause of purpose. **domum**: acc. after the idea of motion in *reditiōnis*, A. 427, 2 (258, b); B. 182, 1, b; G. 337; H. 419, 1; H-B. 450, b. **spē ablātā**: abl. absolute, *by removing the hope.*

20–21. **trium mēnsium**: *to last three months, a three months' supply of*, gen. of measure, A. 345, b (215, b); B. 203, 2; G. 365, 2; H. 440, 3; H-B. 355. **quemque . . . efferre**: for the construction after *iubent* see A. 563, a (331, a); B. 331, II; G. 423, 2, N. 6; H. 565, 3; H-B. 587. **domō**: for the case see A. 427, 1 (258, a); B. 229, 1, b; G. 390, 2; H. 462, 4; H-B. 451, a.

23–24. **utī . . . ūsī . . . exustīs . . . proficīscantur**: lit. *having adopted the same plan, their towns having been burned, to set out along with them*, but translated best by three infinitives, *to adopt . . . to burn . . . and to set out.* **cōnsiliō**: for the abl. with *ūtor* see A. 410 (249); B. 218, 1; G. 407; H. 477; H-B. 429. **eīs**: referring to the Helvetii, used instead of the reflexive *sē* to avoid applying *suīs* and *sē*, in close proximity, to different persons.

24–26. **Bōiōsque . . . receptōs . . . adscīscunt**: *and they admit to their numbers and ally with themselves the Boii.* *receptōs* is equivalent to a finite verb coördinate with *adscīscunt;* cf. *damnātum*, 3, above, equivalent to a conditional clause. **oppūgnārant**: contracted from *oppūgnāverant.*

Construction of **ēius, mortem, id** 13, **reditiōnis, perīcula subeunda** 19, **sibi** 20, **fīnitimīs** 22. Principal parts of **incendunt** 17, **sublātā, subeunda** 19, **efferre, iubent** 21, **ūsī** 23, **proficīscantur** 24, **receptōs** 26.

Page 5. 1–2. CHAPTER 6. **Erant**: *there were*, a common meaning of the verb *sum* standing at the beginning of a sentence. **omnīnō itinera duo**: *only two routes*, i.e. for migration westward. **itineribus**: omit in translation. In Latin an antecedent may be repeated in the relative clause. The

ablative is employed to express the way by which. **quibus . . . possent**: a clause of characteristic, A. 535, a (320, a); B. 283, 1, 2; G. 631, 2; H. 591, 5; H-B. 521, 1. **per Sēquanōs**: *through* (*the country of*) *the Sequani.* **angustum**: the narrowest point is at the Pas de l'Écluse.

3–5. **vix quā . . . dūcerentur**: *where carts could hardly be hauled one at a time.* For the mood see references on *possent*, 2, above, but H-B. 517, 2. The normal order, *quā vix*, is reversed to emphasize *vix*. *quā* is an adverb. **ut . . . possent**: *so that*, etc., for the mood see A. 537, 1 (319, 1); B. 284, 1; G. 552, 1; H. 570; H-B. 521, 2. **prohibēre**: sc. *eōs* as object.

6. **multō**: adverb, in origin the abl. neuter of *multus* expressing degree of difference.

7. **Allobrogum**: the Allobroges as far back as 121 B.C. had submitted to Roman domination. A deputation came to Rome in 63 asking for a redress of certain grievances. Failing of their object, the tribe rose in revolt in 62, but was subdued by the propraetor C. Pomptinus.

8–9. **nōn nūllīs locīs**: *in several places;* for the abl. without a preposition see A. 429, 1 (258, f); B. 228, 1, b; G. 385, N. 1; H. 485, 2; H-B. 436. **vadō trānsītur**: *is forded, can be forded;* the abl. is one of means.

11. **fīnibus**: dat. after *proximum.*

13. **bonō animō**: *in a friendly mood*, in the predicate after *vidērentur.* For the case see A. 415 (251); B. 224, 1; G. 400; H. 473, 2; H-B. 443. **in**: *towards.* **vidērentur**: subjunctive in a subordinate clause in indirect discourse.

14–15. **ut . . . paterentur**: *to allow*, substantive clause, object of *persuāsūrōs* and *coāctūrōs.* An infinitive clause is the normal construction in Caesar after *cōgō, compel* (cf. **4**, 2); the *ut* clause here is due to *persuāsūrōs.* **suōs**: refers to the Allobroges, **eōs** to the Helvetii. See note on *eīs*, **4**, 24. **eōs īre**: infinitive clause, the usual construction in Caesar after *patior, allow, permit.* **omnibus . . . comparātīs**: abl. absolute, *having made all preparations for departure*, or *when they had made*, etc.

16. **quā . . . omnēs conveniant**: *on which all are to assemble*

(omit *diē* in translation). For the mood see A. 531, 2 (317, 2); B. 282, 2; G. 630; H. 590; H-B. 502, 2.

17–18. **diēs**: observe the change of gender from *diē*, and see A. 97, a (73); B. 53; G. 64; H. 135; H-B. 101. **a. d. V. Kal. Apr.**, i.e. *ante diem quīntum Kalendās Aprīlēs*, March 28th by the pre-Julian calendar, March 24th by the Julian. For Roman dates see A. 631, 424, g (376, 259, e); B. 371, 5, d; G. p. 491; H. 754, III, 2; H-B. 664, 667. **L. Pīsōne, A. Gabīniō cōnsulibus**; i.e. in 58 B.C.

Construction of **domō** 1, **Helvētiōrum, quī** 7, **Genava** 11. Compare **difficile** 2, **expedītius** 6, **Extrēmum** 10, **bonō** 13. Explain the tense of **Erant** 1, **possent** 2, **impendēbat** 4, **pācātī erant, fluit** 8, **exīstimābant** 14, **dīcunt** 16. Principal parts of **fluit** 8, **vidērentur** 13, **paterentur** 15, **conveniant** 16.

19. CHAPTER 7. **Caesarī**: dat. of indirect object. The word belongs grammatically with the subordinate *cum* clause, but is the source of a subject for *mātūrat*. In such a combination of functions a noun is frequently put first in the sentence. **id**: *it*, explained by *eōs . . . cōnārī*. **cum . . . nūntiātum esset**: for mood and tense see note on *cōnārētur*, 4, 9.

20. **ab urbe**: *from (the vicinity of) the city*, "the city" being Rome. As a proconsul invested with military authority Caesar could not remain within the city limits. **proficīscī**: infinitive, complementary to *mātūrat*.

21. **quam . . . itineribus**: *by the most rapid travel possible; potest*, though unnecessary, is used to reënforce *quam* with the superlative. According to Plutarch the journey was accomplished in eight days. **Galliam ulteriōrem**: i.e. the Transalpine province.

22–23. **ad**: with town names after verbs of motion *ad* means *into the vicinity of*, after verbs of rest *in the vicinity of*. **Prōvinciae . . . imperat**: *calls upon the whole province for*, etc. For the dat. with *imperō* see A. 369 (227, f); B. 187, II, a; G. 346; H. 424; H-B. 364, 4. The usual construction after *imperō* is a dative and an objective clause introduced by *ut* or *nē;* the clause is here replaced by a noun, *numerum*.

24–25. **legiō ūna**: the 10th legion, which became Caesar's favorite. **quī erat ad Genavam**: *at Geneva.* Latin frequently employs a relative clause where English uses an adjective phrase.

Page 6. 1–2. **lēgātōs . . . mittunt**: the Helvetian emigrants as a whole had not yet assembled at the Rhone. **nōbilissimōs**: a substantive. **cūius lēgātiōnis**: *an embassy of which.* An appositional antecedent regularly stands in the relative clause, taking the case of the relative.

4–5. **quī dīcerent**: *to say,* a relative clause of purpose. **sibi esse in animō**: *that they had it in mind, that they intended.* For the case of *sibi* see A. 373 (231); B. 190; G. 349; H. 430; H-B. 374. **facere**: subject of *esse.*

6. **nūllum**: placed last in the sentence for emphasis. **rogāre**: sc. *sē* as subject. The accusative subject of an infinitive is sometimes omitted, if readily understood from the context. **ut . . . sibi liceat**: *that they be permitted to do so;* for the mood see A. 563 (331); B. 295, 1; G. 546; H. 565; H-B. 530, 2. *sibi* is dat. after *liceat,* of which *facere* is the subject. **voluntāte**: *with his approval;* for the case see A. 418, a (253, N.); B. 221; G. 397; H. 473, 3; H-B. 414, a.

7–8. **Caesar**: in thought the common subject of *tenēbat* and *putābat,* and so placed first. **L. Cassium . . . occīsum exercitumque . . . missum**: indirect discourse after *memoriā tenēbat.* This defeat occurred in 107 B.C., at the time of the invasion of the Cimbri, with whom part of the Helvetii allied themselves.

9. **iugum**: *yoke,* two upright spears, with a third spear fixed crosswise, under which the defeated army marched in token of submission. **concēdendum (esse) nōn putābat**: *thought permission should not be given.* The infinitive is impersonal. **neque**: *and not;* take the negative with *exīstimābat.*

10–11. **inimīcō animō**: *unfriendly disposed,* abl. of quality, like *animō,* **5**, 13. **datā facultāte**: *if given the opportunity,* abl. absolute; lit.? **itineris faciundī**: *of marching;* for the gerundive construction see A. 503, 504 (297, 298); B. 339, 1; G. 427, 428; H. 626, 1; H-B. 612, 1.

12–13. **dum mīlitēs . . . convenīrent**: *until the soldiers . . . should assemble;* for the mood and tense see A. 553 (328); B. 293, III, 2; G. 572; H. 603, II, 2; H-B. 507, 5. **diem**: *time.*

14–15. **sī quid vellent, . . . reverterentur**: *if they wanted anything, let them return,* equivalent to *sī quid vultis, . . . revertiminī,* in direct discourse. For the subjunctive, *reverterentur,* see A. 588 (339); B. 316; G. 652; H. 642; H-B. 538. **ad**: *by,* or *about.* **Īd. Aprīl.**: *April 13th.*

Construction of **eōs 5**, 19, **facere** 20, **itineribus** 21, **pontem** 24, **rescindī** 25; **certiōrēs 6**, 1, **maleficiō** 4, **habērent** 5, **posset** 12, **lēgātīs** 13. Principal parts of **pervenit 5**, 22, **rescindī** 25; **occīsum, pulsum 6**, 8, **concēdendum** 9, **intercēdere** 12, **respondit** 13, **sūmptūrum, vellent** 14, **reverterentur** 15.

16. Chapter 8. **legiōne, mīlitibus**: abl. of means.

20–21. **mūrum**: merely an earthen rampart. In all probability this was not a continuous fortification, for the southern bank of the Rhone was in most places precipitous enough to constitute a natural barrier. At the few points where the slope of the bank was gradual, the upper part of the slope was cut down, and a trench was excavated at the foot of the cutting. Colonel Stoffel estimated the total length of the works at these few places to be about 5000 meters. The *castella* were probably earthen redoubts, located, presumably, in proximity to the various sections of the rampart. The *præsidia* were detachments of troops, stationed doubtless in the *castella.* **pedum**: gen. of measure; cf. *mēnsium,* **4**, 20. **dispōnit, commūnit**: the omission of a conjunction, *et* here, between coördinate verbs is called asyndeton. **castella commūnit**: *establishes strong redoubts.*

22–23. **quō facilius . . . prohibēre posset**: *that he might be able to stop them the more easily;* for the use of *quō* and the mood see A. 531, 2, a (317, b); B. 282, 1, a; G. 545, 2; H. 568, 7; H-B. 502, 2, b. **sī . . . cōnārentur**: *if they should attempt,* a condition future to the past verb *posset,* upon which it depends. **sē invītō**: *against his wish,* abl. absolute.

Page 7. 2. **negat**: *says not*, the negative to be taken with *posse*. **mōre et exemplō**: *in accordance with the custom and precedent*.

4–5. **prohibitūrum**: sc. *sē* and *eōs* as subject and object respectively. **eā spē dēiectī**: *disappointed in this hope; spē* is abl. of separation. **nāvibus iūnctīs**, etc.: abl. absolute, with accessory idea of means. Apparently bridges of boats are meant by the first phrase.

6. **aliī**: another *aliī*, which we should expect before *nāvibus*, may be supplied in translation, *disappointed in this hope, some of the Helvetii . . . others*, etc.

7–9. **sī . . . possent, cōnātī**: *having tried* (*to see*) *if they could;* for the mood see A. 576, a (334, f); B. 300, 3; G. 460, 1 b; H. 649, II, 3; H-B. 582, 2, a. **operis mūnītiōne**: *by the protecting intrenchment*. **cōnātū**: abl. of separation.

Construction of **mīlia 6**, 19, **opere** 21; **sē**, **mōre 7**, 2, **posse**, **ūllī** 3, **cōnentur** 4, **vadīs** 6. Principal parts of **īnfluit 6**, 18, **dispōnit** 21; **vēnit 7**, 1, **ostendit** 4, **iūnctīs** 5, **dēstitērunt** 9.

Page 8. 1–3. CHAPTER 9. **Relinquēbātur**: *there was left, there remained*. **ūna**: *one only, only the*. **per Sēquanōs**: an adjective phrase limiting *via*. **Sēquanīs invītīs**: translate as *sē invītō*, **6**, 22, or as a condition. **angustiās**: i.e. at the Pas de l'Écluse. **cum . . . possent**: *since*, etc.; for the mood see A. 549 (326); B. 286, 2; G. 586; H. 598; H-B. 526.

4. **eō dēprecātōre**: *by his intercession*, abl. absolute; lit.? **impetrārent**: *gain their request* or *object*. The verb is here used absolutely, i.e. without an object.

5. **grātiā, largītiōne**: may be regarded as abl. of means or cause.

6. **plūrimum**: acc. of degree with *poterat*. **Helvētiīs**: for the case depending on *amīcus* see A. 384 (234, a); B. 192, 1; G. 359; H. 434, 2; H-B. 362, II.

7. **fīliam . . . dūxerat**: for the fact cf. **3**, 17–18.

8–9. **novīs rēbus**: *revolution*. For the case see A. 367 (227); B. 187, II, a; G. 346; H, 426; H-B. 362, II. **quam plūrimās**:

as many as possible. **habēre obstrictās**: *to have under obligations*, slightly different from *obstringere* in that the phrase emphasizes the continuance of the relation.

10–14. **rem**: *task, mission.* **ā Sēquanīs impetrat, ut . . . patiantur**: *induces the Sequani to permit;* lit.? **obsidēs utī . . . dent, perficit**: *brings about an exchange of hostages.* For the objective clauses, *ut . . . patiantur* and *utī . . . dent*, see A. 568 (332): B. 297, 1; G. 553, 1; H. 571, 3; H-B. 521, 3, a. **Sēquanī, Helvētiī**: sc. *obsidēs dant.* **nē . . . prohibeant, ut . . . trānseant**: purposes of the exchange of hostages.

Construction of **Sēquanīs** 1, **angustiās, Hīs** 2, **impetrārent** 4, **dūxerat** 7, **cupiditāte, rēgnī** 8, **īre** 11, **itinere** 12. Principal parts of **Relinquēbātur** 1, **studēbat** 8, **obstrictās, volēbat** 9, **patiantur** 11.

14. CHAPTER 10. **Helvētiīs esse in animō**: *the Helvetii intend.* For case of *Helvētiīs* see note on *sibi*, **6**, 4. The subject of *esse* is *facere*, 16.

16–17. **quae cīvitās**: *a state which.* For the position of the relative see note on *cūius lēgātiōnis*, **6**, 2. **absunt, est**: indicative, because the clauses in which these verbs stand are not part of the indirect discourse, but are inserted by the narrator.

17–20. **Id sī fieret**: *if this should happen.* **māgnō . . . futūrum** (*esse*), **ut . . . habēret**: *it would be very dangerous to the province for it to have.* **prōvinciae**: genitive, but best translated as above. For *ut . . . habēret* (lit. *that it should have*), substantive clause subject of *futūrum* (*esse*), see A. 569, a (332, a, 288, f); B. 297, 2, 270, 3, a; G. 553, 3; H. 571, 1, 619, 2; H-B. 521, 3, a, 472, c. **locīs**: dat. after *fīnitimōs, as neighbors (to)*. The western districts of the Transalpine province are meant. **patentibus**: *exposed*, i.e. without a barrier of mountains or other natural protection. **mūnītiōnī**: for the dat. with *praeficit* see A. 370, a (228, N. 1); B. 187, III, 2; G. 347, 3; H. 429, 1; H-B. 376, a.

21. **T. Labiēnum**: Caesar's ablest and most trusted lieutenant in the Gallic war. In the Civil war he espoused the cause

of Pompey and the senate. He was killed at the battle of Munda.

22–23. **Ītaliam**: i.e. the Cisalpine province. **duās legiōnēs**: the 11th and 12th. **trēs**: the 7th, 8th, and 9th. **circum**: winter quarters were usually established in the vicinity of, not in, a town. **Aquilēiam**: founded in 182 B.C., strongly fortified and garrisoned to resist Gauls and Illyrians.

24–25. **quā proximum iter . . . erat**: *by the shortest route.* See map, Campaign of 58. The route is not absolutely certain. **quīnque**: these, with the 10th legion left to guard the Rhone, would give Caesar perhaps 25,000 men. He had also 4000 Gallic cavalry.

Page 9. 3. **Complūribus**: with *proeliīs.* **hīs pulsīs**: abl. absolute. **ab Ocelō**: *from the vicinity of Ocelum,* A. 428, a (258, a, N. 1); B. 229, 2; H. 462, 3; H-B. 453, 1.

6. **in Segusiāvōs**: Caesar's camp was pitched probably on the heights of Sathonay, where Labienus doubtless joined him with the 10th legion. Two months may have been required for the trip to and from Italy and the recruiting of the new legions. It was now, therefore, about June 7th of the Julian calendar, which will be followed for dates in these notes.

Construction of **Caesarī, esse 8,** 14, **perīculō** 18, **populī** 19, **Aquilēiam** 23, **legiōnibus, īre** 25; **prōvinciae 9,** 5, **prīmī** 8. Principal parts of **intellegēbat 8,** 17, **praeficit** 21, **cōnscrībit** 23.

9–10. CHAPTER 11. **Helvētiī . . . in Haeduōrum fīnēs pervēnerant**: the unwieldy column of emigrants could move but slowly, and had gone only so far in their westward journey during the two months of Cæsar's absence.

11. **Haeduī**: among the first Gallic peoples to form an alliance with the Romans, about 123 B.C. See Introd. 68. **cum**: causal, *since.* **sē suaque**: *themselves and their property.*

13–16. **rogātum**: *to beg;* for the use of the supine see A. 509 (302); B. 340, 1, a; G. 435, N. 3; H. 633; H-B. 618, a. **ita sē . . . dē . . . meritōs esse**: *their deserts as regards the Roman*

people had always been such, indirect discourse after the verb of saying implied in *rogātum*. **ut . . . nōn dēbuerint**: *that their fields ought not to have been laid waste*, etc., a negative clause of result. For tense of *dēbuerint* see A. 485, c (287, c); B. 268, 6; G. 513; H. 550; H-B. 478, 582, 3, a.

18–19. **Caesarem certiōrem faciunt**: *inform Caesar* (lit. ?); a phrase of frequent occurrence, followed by indirect discourse or by *dē* with the ablative. **dēpopulātīs**: perfect participles of deponent verbs are sometimes used as passives. **nōn facile . . . prohibēre**: translate freely, *found it difficult to keep off*.

22. **sibi . . . nihil esse reliquī**: *they had nothing left. sibi* is dat. of possession. For the gen. *reliquī* dependent on *nihil* see A. 346, a, 1 (216, a, 1); B. 201, 1; G. 369; H. 440, 5; H-B. 346, a.

23–25. **nōn exspectandum sibi statuit**: *decided that he must not wait. exspectandum* (*esse*) is impersonal; for the case of *sibi* see A. 374, a (232); B. 189, 1; G. 355; H. 431; H-B. 373, 1. **dum . . . pervenīrent**: *until they should arrive;* for the mood see A. 553 (328); B. 293, III, 2; G. 572; H. 603, II, 2; H-B. 507, 5.

Construction of **tempore** 17, **certiōrem** 18, **hostium** 19, **solum** 22. Principal parts of **trādūxerant** 10, **dēfendere** 12, **dēbuerint** 16, **recipiunt** 21.

Page 10. 1. Chapter 12. **per**: *through*, the territories of the two peoples being regarded loosely as one tract.

2. **incrēdibilī lēnitāte**: abl. of quality, limiting *flūmen*.

3. **in utram partem fluat**: an indirect question.

4. **ratibus, lintribus**: abl. of means. **iūnctīs**: with *lintribus* only. **trānsībant**: *were crossing.*

5–6. **partēs . . . flūmen trādūxisse**: *had led three fourths of their forces across this river;* for the two accusatives see A. 395, N. 1 (239, 2, b); B. 179, 1; G. 331, R. 1; H. 413; H-B. 386.

7. **citrā**: i.e. on the east side. **Ararim**: for the acc. ending see A. 74, d, 75, a, 1 (55, d, 56, a, 1); B. 38, 1; G. 57, R. 1;

H. 102, 3, N.; H-B. 88, 1. **reliquam**: equivalent to *relictam*. **dē tertiā vigiliā**: *in the course of the third watch*, i.e. after midnight. *dē*, lit. *out of*, in such expressions indicates that the watch has begun. For the divisions of the night see Introd. 30.

Page 11. 1. **quae . . . trānsierat**: the attack on the Tigurini occurred probably from ten to twelve miles north of Caesar's camp.

3. **mandārunt**: contracted from *mandāvērunt*. **in**: *in*, lit. *into*, followed by the accusative because of the idea of motion in *abdidērunt*.

5. **dīvīsa est**: *is divided*, as in **1**, 1.

6–7. **cum**: *when*. **memoriā**: abl. of time when. **L. Cassium**: cf. **6**, 7–8, and note.

8. **sīve cāsū sīve cōnsiliō**: *by chance or by the intention*. The ablative of certain nouns in very common use is used to express manner without a preposition.

9–10. **quae pars . . . ea**: *that part which*; for the position of the antecedent see A. 307, b, N. (200, b, N.); B. 251, 4, a; G. 616, 1; H. 399, 3; H-B. 284, 6. **populō Rōmānō**: *on the Roman people*, dat. of indirect object after *intulerat*. **prīnceps persolvit**: *was the first to pay, first paid*; for use of the adjective with adverbial force see A. 290 (191); B. 241, 2; G. 325, 6; H. 497, 3; H-B. 243.

11–13. **Quā**: not *which*. **ēius**: *his*. **L. Pīsōnis**: consul in this year, 58, father of Caesar's third wife, Calpurnia. **avum**: object of *interfēcerant*.

Construction of **oculīs, possit 10**, 3, **Helvētiōs, trādūxisse** 6, **reliquam** 7, **profectus** 8, **fugae 11**, 3, **Tigurīnus** 4, **domō, exīsset** 6. Principal parts of **adgressus, concīdit 11**, 2, **abdidērunt** 4, **interfēcerat** 7, **ultus est** 12.

15. CHAPTER 13. **Hōc proeliō factō**; *after this battle*, which occurred about June 10th. **ut**: may be removed from its normal position at the head of its clause, in order to emphasize some word or phrase, here *reliquās cōpiās*.

16. **pontem . . . cūrat**: *he causes a bridge to be built over the*

Arar; possibly a pontoon bridge is meant. **faciendum**: for the gerundive after *cūrō* and the like see A. 500, 4 (294, d); B. 337, 8, b, 2; G. 430; H. 622; H-B. 612, III.

18–19. **id**: object of *fēcisse*, is explained by the appositive clause, *ut . . . trānsīrent*, A. 561, a, 568 (329, 332); B. 297, 3; G. 557; H. 571, 4; H-B. 521, 3, a, N. Translate with the clause as object, *knew that he had accomplished the passage of the river in one day, a thing which they*, etc. **diēbus vīgintī**: *in twenty days*, abl. of the time within which, or in the course of which.

21. **bellō**: abl. of time when. As Cassius's defeat occurred in 107, Divico must have been an old man in 58.

22. **sī pācem**, etc.: Divico's speech stands in indirect discourse. Review the principles in the grammar, A. 580 ff.; (336 ff.); B. 314 ff.; G. 650 ff.; H. 642 ff.; H-B. 589, 534 ff.

23–24. **faceret**: *would make;* direct, *will make.* **cōnstituisset**: *should have established;* direct, *you shall have established* (second person, Divico addressing Caesar in person).

Page 12. 1. **sīn . . . persevērāret**: *but if he persisted in;* direct, *but if you persist in*, etc. **reminīscerētur**: *let him remember;* direct, *remember* (imperative).

2. **incommodī, virtūtis**: for the construction with verbs of remembering see A. 350, c (219); B. 206, 2; G. 376; H. 454; H-B. 350.

3. **Quod . . . adortus esset**: *as to the fact that he* (*you*) *attacked*, etc., or *as to his* (*your*) *unexpected attack on one division;* for the use of *quod* see A. 572, a (333, a); B. 299, 2; G. 525, 2; H. 588, II, 3, N.; H-B. 552, 2.

5–7. **nē . . . tribueret**: *let him not give*, etc.; direct, *don't give any great credit to your own valor. tribueret* is used absolutely. **ipsōs**: i.e. the Helvetii, used instead of *sē* to avoid applying *suae* and *sē* to different persons. **ut . . . contenderent**, etc.: clauses of result; *ut* is to be understood after *quam.*

8–10. **dolō, īnsidiīs**: the abl. without *in* is used with *nītor*, *rely upon.* **nē committeret, ut is locus . . . nōmen cape-**

ret: *let him not cause*, etc.; direct, *don't cause the place . . . to take its name*. The *ut* clause is a substantive clause of result, object of *committeret*. **ubi cōnstitissent**: *where they should make their* (*we shall make our*) *stand*.

Construction of **proeliō 11**, 15, **adventū** 17. What would be the mood in direct discourse of **posset 11**, 16, **intellegerent** 19; **possent 12**, 5? Principal parts of **cōnsequī 11**, 16, **commōtī** 18, **ēgit** 22; **adortus esset 12**, 3.

12. Chapter 14. **Hīs**: sc. *lēgātīs*. Caesar's reply is also in indirect discourse. Direct, *I feel less hesitation because I am aware of the facts which you (envoys) have related, and I am the more incensed the less these things happened according to the deserts of the Roman people*, etc. **eō**: abl. of cause, expl. by *quod* causal. **dubitātiōnis**: gen. of the whole after *minus*.

14. **eō, quō**: *the . . . the*, correlatives, abl. of degree of difference; lit. *by that much . . . by how much*. **ferre**: sc. *sē* as subject.

15. **quī sī**: *if they*, i.e. the Roman people. **sī alicūius**: *if some; sī cūius* would mean *if any*. **iniūriae**: for the gen. depending on *cōnscius* see A. 349, a (218, a); B. 204, 1; G. 374; H. 451, 1; H-B. 354.

16. **fuisset**: the same mood and tense would stand in direct discourse, in a past condition contrary to fact. **fuisse**: in direct discourse we should have *fuit*, indicative, because the possibility of being on their guard was a fact irrespective of the condition. Caesar might have said *would have been on their guard*, for which the subjunctive, *cāvisset*, would have been employed. **eō**: *by the fact*, explained by the substantive appositive clause, *quod . . . putāret, that*, etc.

17-18. **commissum** (*esse*), **timendum** (*esse*): impersonals, *did not know they had done anything, did not think they ought to fear*. **quārē timēret**: *on account of which they should fear*, a relative clause with the subjunctive expressing propriety. **Quod sī**: *but if, now if*; for the case and force of *quod* see A. 397, a (240, b); B. 185, 2; G. 610, r. 2; H. 510, 9; H-B. 385, a, n.

19. **contumēliae**: gen. after a verb of forgetting; cf. *incommodī* after *reminīscerētur*, 2, above. **vellet**: direct, *vellem*, in a present condition contrary to fact. The conclusion, **posse**, 22, represents direct *possum*, A. 586 (338); B. 315, 2; G. 651, R. 1; H. 642, 2; H-B. 591, a. **num**: introducing an indirect question, is equivalent to *-ne*.

20–21. **iniūriārum**: depends on *memoriam*, 22. **quod**, etc.: *that*, etc., substantive appositive clauses explaining *iniūriārum*. **iter . . . per vim temptāssent**: *had tried to force their way*.

22–24. **Quod . . . admīrārentur**: *that they boasted . . . and were surprised*, substantive clauses, subjects of *pertinēre*. **victōriā**: abl. of cause. **tam diū sē . . . intulisse**: *at having inflicted*, etc.; lit. *that they had inflicted*, depending on *admīrārentur*. **eōdem pertinēre**: *pointed in the same direction*, hinting apparently at their approaching punishment in accordance with divine will; cf. the following lines.

26–28. **Cōnsuēsse**: (contracted from *cōnsuēvisse*); direct, *cōnsuērunt* (lit. *have become accustomed*), *are wont*, to which *concēdere*, 28, is complementary. Other verbs showing the same force of the perfect are *nōvī*, *I know*, *meminī*, *I remember*, *ōdī*, *I hate*. **quō . . . doleant**: a clause of purpose; see references on **6**, 22. In this sentence the tenses are all primary, the author having chosen to shift the point of view to the present in the statement of a general truth. **hīs**: refers to *quōs* and *hominēs*. **secundiōrēs rēs**: *unusual prosperity*. When the standard of comparison is omitted the Latin comparative may be translated by *too*, *rather more than usual*, or by some equivalent; so *diūturniōrem*, *unusually long*.

Page 13. 1. **sint**: for the mood see A. 549 (326); B. 309, 3; G. 587; H. 598; H-B. 526. **dentur**: direct, *dabuntur*.

2. **factūrōs** (*esse*): a subject is to be understood from *eīs*, 1. **Haeduīs** (and **Allobrogibus**): dat. of indirect object after *satisfaciant*, *make reparation to*.

5. **factūrum** (*esse*): direct, *faciam*, future indicative.

7. **utī . . . cōnsuērint**: a clause of result. **nōn**: take closely with *dare*.

8. **ēius reī . . . esse testem**: referring to the fact that the survivors of Cassius's army had been compelled to give hostages to the Helvetii.

Construction of **eō invītō 12**, 20, **sē** 23, **intulisse** 24, **hīs** 27, **ipsīs, sociīs 13**, 3. Subject of **fuisse 12**, 16. Principal parts of **timēret 12**, 18, **oblīvīscī** 19, **Cōnsuēsse** 25, **doleant** 26, **polliceantur 13**, 2, **satisfaciant** 4, **īnstitūtōs** 6, **discessit** 9.

10. CHAPTER 15. **castra . . . movent**: as the mountains prevented a direct march west for so large a number, the Helvetii followed the valley of the Saône for some distance, then turned northwest.

13. **coāctum habēbat**: *had collected;* for the perfect participle with *habeō* see A. 497, b (292, c); B. 337, 7; G. 238; H. 431, 3; H-B. 605, 5, a. **quī videant**: *to see*, a relative clause of purpose; *quī* is plural from the implied plural in the collective antecedent, *equitātum*. **quās in partēs**: *in what direction*, etc., an indirect question, hence the subjunctive.

14-15. **Quī**: *they, these.* **cupidius**: *too eagerly.* For the comparative with the standard unexpressed see note on *secundiōrēs*, **12**, 27. **locō**: for the locative abl. without a preposition see A. 429, 1 (258, f, 1); B. 228, 1, b, 385, N. 1; H. 485, 2; H-B. 436.

16. **paucī . . . cadunt**: in Chapter 18 we are told that the remainder fled through the treachery of their leader, Dumnorix. **dē nostrīs**: *of our men;* for the partitive expression see A. 346, c (216, c); B. 201, 1, a; G. 372, R. 2; H. 444; H-B. 346, e.

17. **equitibus**: abl. of means.

19. **novissimō agmine**: *from their rear line.* **proeliō**, *in battle.*

20-22. **satis habēbat . . . prohibēre**: *deemed it sufficient to prevent.* **rapīnīs, pābulātiōnibus populātiōnibusque**: abl. of separation; the plural of abstract nouns is frequently

employed in the sense of *acts of so and so.* **diēs . . . quīndecim**: June 13–27.

24. **nōn amplius . . . interesset**: *there was an interval of not more than five or six miles each day.* The distributives *quīnīs* and *sēnīs* are used with reference to successive days. For *mīlibus* governed by *amplius* see A. 406 (247); B. 217, 1; G. 296; H. 471; H-B. 416, d.

Construction of **diē** 10, **proeliō, sublātī** 16, **diēs** 22, **interesset** 24. Principal parts of **īnsecūtī** 14, **cadunt** 16, **prōpulerant** 18, **lacessere, coepērunt** 19. Compare **cupidius** 14, **audācius** 18.

Page 14. 1–2. CHAPTER 16. **Haeduōs frūmentum . . . . flāgitāre**: *kept importuning the Haedui for the grain which* (as he reminded them) *they had promised in the name of the state.* For the two accusatives, *Haeduōs, frūmentum*, see A. 396, N. (239, c); B. 178, 1, a; G. 339; H. 411, 2; H-B. 393. For *flāgitāre*, historical infinitive with subject nominative, see A. 463 (275); B. 335; G. 647; H. 610; H-B. 595. **essent pollicitī**: Caesar the author reports informally the words of Caesar the general, hence the subjunctive, A. 592, 1, 3 (341, b, d); B. 323; G. 508, 3; H. 649, I; H-B. 535, a. **frīgora**: *the cold seasons, the cold climate*, the plural marking the cold as a general characteristic. To a Roman the climate would seem cold in comparison with that of Italy. The climate has probably become milder since Caesar's time.

4. **posita**: predicate adjective. **frūmenta**: the plural is used of *standing grain, crops.*

5. **nē . . . quidem**: this phrase regularly emphasizes the enclosed word. Scanty forage was doubtless due, partly, to the large number of animals belonging to the Helvetii.

6. **frūmentō**: abl. governed by *ūtī*, 7. **flūmine**: *up the river*, abl. of the way by which. **nāvibus**: *in boats*, abl. of means.

8–9. **Diem ex diē dūcere**: *put him off day after day. Diem* is acc. of duration of time, *dūcere* and *dīcere* are historical

infinitives. **cōnferrī, comportārī, adesse**: sc. *frūmentum* as subject.

10–11. **diūtius**: *too long.* **quō . . . oportēret**: *when it would be necessary to issue grain to his soldiers.* **mētīrī**: subject of the impersonal *oportēret.* For the distribution of grain see Introd. 22.

12. **cōpiam**: equivalent to *numerum.*

13. **in hīs**: *among them.* **summō magistrātuī praeerat**: *held the highest office.* For the dat. governed by *praeerat* see A. 370 (228); B. 187, III; G. 347; H. 429; H-B. 376.

14. **quem**: the grammatical antecedent is *magistrātuī*, the logical antecedent the officer himself. **vergobretum**: a Celtic word meaning *judgment dealer.* Caesar tells us in the seventh book that the vergobret was not allowed to leave the state during his term of office. **annuus**: *annually*, adjective translated as adverb; cf. *prīnceps*, **11**, 10.

15. **in suōs**: *over his people.*

16–20. **quod . . . nōn sublevētur**: the reason given by Caesar the general, hence the subjunctive; cf. *essent pollicitī*, 2, above. **possit**: sc. *frūmentum* as subject. For the mood see A. 593 (342); B. 324, 1; G. 663, 1; H. 652; H-B. 539. **propinquīs hostibus**: abl. absolute. **māgnā ex parte**: *to a great extent, largely.* **sit dēstitūtus**: the subjv. again in a reported reason, like *sublevētur.*

Construction of **pābulī** 5, **cōnferrī** 9, **mīlitibus** 11, **Dīviciācō, Liscō** 13, **vergobretum, annuus** 14, **tempore** 17, **suscēperit** 19, **sit dēstitūtus** 20. Principal parts of **posita** 4, **āverterant, nōlēbat** 8, **cōnferrī** 9, **mētīrī** 11, **emī** 16, **queritur** 20.

22. Chapter 17. **quod**: antecedent unexpressed; so in English, *set forth what he had before kept silent about.* Observe the verb *taceō* used transitively. **esse nōn nūllōs**: indirect discourse; direct, *there are some whose prestige . . . is very great, who have more authority. . . . These men . . . are hindering the people,* etc. There were two factions among the Haedui, one led by Diviciacus, friendly to the Romans, the other led by Dum-

norix, national and patriotic, and desirous of shaking off allegiance to Rome. The leaders of the patriotic party are here referred to in the words *nōn nūllōs*.

23–24. **plūrimum, plūs**: acc. of degree. **prīvātim**: translate as if *prīvātī*, (*though only*) *private citizens*.

Page 15. 1–3. **nē . . . cōnferant**: *from collecting;* dependent on *dēterrēre*, A. 558, b (331, e); B. 295, 3; G. 548; H. 566; H-B. 502, 3, b. **praestāre**: *it is better* (*they say*); the subject is the infinitive *perferre*, 4. Liscus here summarizes (lines 2–6) the arguments of the anti-Roman agitators. **iam nōn**: *no longer*. **possint**: sc. *Haeduī* as subject.

4–6. **neque dubitāre dēbēre**: sc. as subject *sē* (referring to the agitators), *they have no reason to doubt* (*they say*). **quīn . . . sint ēreptūrī**: *that they* (i.e. the Romans) *will take away*, or *intend to take away*. For the mood see A. 558, a (319, d); B. 298; G. 555, 2; H. 595, 1; H-B. 521, 3, b. The periphrastic subjunctive is generally used after *nōn dubitō quīn* to avoid any ambiguity as to the future meaning. **superāverint**: perfect subjunctive, *shall have vanquished*. **Haeduīs**: *from the Haedui;* for the case see A. 381 (229); B. 188, 2, d; G. 347, 5; H. 429, 2; H-B. 371. **ūnā cum**: *along with*, or *as well as from*. **quaeque**: equivalent to *et ea quae*.

8–10. **Quīn etiam**: with corrective force, *nay in fact; and more than that; and not only that, but*. **quod ēnūntiārit**: *as to the fact that he has reported*, or *in reporting;* for the use of *quod* see note on *Quod . . . adortus esset*, **12**, 3. **coāctus**: *compelled*, i.e. *under stress of circumstances*. **quantō . . . fēcerit**: an indirect question.

Construction of **magistrātūs 14**, 24; **īsdem 15**, 6, **hostibus** 7, **perīculō, fēcerit** 10. The number of **cōnferant 15**, 2. Principal parts of **tacuerat, prōpōnit 14**, 22, **valeat** 23; **dēterrēre 15**, 1, **perferre** 4, **coërcērī** 8.

13. Chapter 18. **plūribus praesentibus**: *in the presence of many*, abl. absolute.

14–15. **dīmittit, retinet**: sc. *sed* to connect these verbs.

The omission of an adversative conjunction is called adversative asyndeton. **sōlō**: sc. *eō* or *Liscō*.

17–18. **esse vēra**: *that (these statements) are true*, referring to the speech of Liscus. **ipsum esse Dumnorīgem**: *that it is in fact Dumnorix.* **summā audāciā**: *(a man) of the utmost boldness*, abl. of quality; cf. *lēnitāte*, **10**, 2.

19. **rērum novārum**: objective gen. after *cupidum*.

20–22. **portōria**: import duties, and river and bridge tolls. **vectīgālia**: other taxes, on the produce of the country. **pretiō**: abl. of price. **redēmpta habēre**: *has held the contract for.* The combination of a perfect participle with *habeō* emphasizes the continued state of affairs; cf. *coāctum habēbat*, **13**, 13. The Haedui seem to have employed the same method of collecting taxes as the Romans. The contract for collection was let to the highest bidder, who was bound to pay a fixed sum into the state treasury, making what he could out of the transaction. **contrā**: *against him*, adverb.

23. **ad largiendum**: an adjective phrase is frequently placed between a noun and an adjective, here *facultātēs . . . māgnās*.

25. **neque**: *and not.* **domī**: *at home*, locative, A. 427, 3 (258, d); B. 232, 2; G. 411, 2; H. 484, 2; H-B. 449, a.

Page 16. 1. **hūius potentiae causā**: *for the sake of this power*; in this meaning *causā* regularly follows its dependent genitive.

3. **uxōrem**: for the fact cf. **3**, 17–18. **sorōrem ex mātre**: *half-sister.*

4. **nūptum**: the supine; translate with *conlocāsse*, *has given in marriage.* **in aliās cīvitātēs**: *(to men) in other states.*

5–6. **Helvētiīs**: for the dative with *favēre* and *cupere* see A. 367 (227); B. 187, II, a; G. 346; H. 426, 4, N.; H-B. 362, II. **suō nōmine**: *on his own account.*

9–10. **summam in spem . . . venīre**: *is coming to have the highest hopes.* **imperiō**: *under the domination*, abl. of attendant circumstances.

11. **eā, quam habeat, grātiā**: *his present influence.* A limit-

ing clause, here *quam habeat*, may separate a noun and adjective; cf. the similar position of *ad largiendum*, **15**, 23.

12–13. **in quaerendō**: *upon inquiry*, gerund. **quod . . . esset factum**: *in regard to the disastrous cavalry battle of a few days before*, lit. *as to the fact that*, etc.

15. **auxiliō Caesarī**: *to Caesar's assistance;* for the two datives see A. 382, 1 (233, a); B. 191, 2, b; G. 356; H. 433; H-B. 360, b.

Construction of **annōs 15**, 20, **redēmpta** 21, **largiendum** 23, **sūmptū** 24; **hominī 16**, 1, **obtinendī** 9, **diēbus** 13, **equitātuī** 15. Principal parts of **sentiēbat 15**, 13, **Quaerit** 15, **reperit** 17, **redēmpta** 21, **licente, audeat** 22, **auxisse** 23, **alere** 25; **cupere 16**, 4, **ōdisse** 5, **dēminūta** 7, **restitūtus** 8. Compare **līberius 15**, 16.

18–19. CHAPTER 19. **cum**: causal. **quod**: *that*, etc., explaining *rēs*, *facts*.

20–21. **obsidēs . . . dandōs cūrāsset**: *had effected an exchange of hostages;* for the gerundive with *cūrō*, see note on *pontem . . . faciendum cūrat*, **11**, 16. **iniussū suō et cīvitātis**: *without his order and that of the state*, ablative of accordance.

22. **īnscientibus ipsīs**: *without their knowledge*, abl. absolute.

23. **satis esse causae**: *there was sufficient reason; causae* is gen. of the whole.

24. **quārē . . . animadverteret**: *why he should punish*, relative clause with subjunctive expressing propriety; cf. *quārē timēret*, **12**, 17.

25. **animadvertere**: *to (do so)*. The Latin idiom differs from the English in repeating the verb.

Page 17. 1. **Hīs**: dat. governed by *repūgnābat*, a verb of resisting. **ūnum**: *one consideration*, explained by the *quod* clause, *that*, etc.

2–3. Observe how the limiting phrases, **in populum Rōmānum** and **in sē**, separate noun and adjective.

4–5. **cōgnōverat**: *knew*, lit. *had come to know*, pluperfect equivalent to English imperfect; cf. *Cōnsuēsse*, **12**, 25 and

note. **nē . . . offenderet, verēbātur**: *was afraid he would offend;* for the construction after a verb of fearing see A. 564 (331, f); B. 296, 2; G. 550, 2; H. 567; H-B. 502, 4. **Dīviciācī animum**: we should say simply *Diviciacus.* **priusquam . . . cōnārētur**: *before he should attempt anything,* or *before attempting anything;* for the mood and tense see A. 551, b (327); B. 292, 1, a; G. 577; H. 605, II; H-B. 507, 4, a.

8. **prōvinciae**: i.e. the Transalpine province. **cui**: *in whom.* **omnium rērum**: *in all matters,* equivalent to an adjective, *implicit.*

9–11. **simul . . . et**: *at the same time . . . and,* almost the same as *et . . . et.* **quae . . . sint dicta** and **quae quisque . . . dīxerit** are indirect questions. **ipsō**: i.e. Diviciacus.

12–14. **ut . . . vel ipse iubeat**: *that . . . he* (*be permitted*) *either* (*to*) *pass judgment himself on Dumnorix after hearing his case or* (*to*) *order the state to; ipse* refers to Caesar.

Construction of **cīvitātem 16**, 24; **ēius, suppliciō 17**, 4, **sint dicta** 11, **ēius** 13. The clause **ut . . . iubeat 17**, 12–14. Tense of **repūgnābat 17**, 1, **verēbātur** 5, **iubet** 6. Principal parts of **cōgnitīs 16**, 18, **animadverteret** 24; **verēbātur 17**, 5, **conloquitur** 9, **Petit** 12.

16. CHAPTER 20. **nēquid gravius . . . statueret**: *not to decide upon anything too severe.*

17. **scīre sē**: *he knew* (*he said*). **ex eō**: *from that fact, therefrom.*

18–20. **dolōris**: gen. of the whole depending on *plūs.* **ipse**: Diviciacus. **ille**: (*while*) *he,* asyndeton. **crēvisset**: the subject is Dumnorix, *sē* referring to Diviciacus.

22–23. **ūterētur**: an infinitive might have been employed, A. 583, b (336, b); B. 314, 4; G. 635; H. 643, 1; H-B. 535, 1, b. **frāternō**: equivalent to *frātris,* objective genitive. **exīstimātiōne vulgī**: *public opinion.* **Quod sī**: *but if,* here almost *for if.*

24. **ā Caesare**: *at Caesar's hands.* **accidisset**: for a future perf. indic. or perf. subjv. of direct discourse, *shall befall,* or *should befall.* **eum locum**: *such a position.*

25–27. **nōn suā voluntāte**: *without his approval,* abl. of accordance. **quā ex rē futūrum** (*esse*), **utī**: *the result of this would be that,* etc.; for the periphrasis with *futūrum esse* see A. 569, a (288, f); B. 270, 3, a; G. 248; H. 619, 2; H-B. 472, c.

Page 18. 1. **plūribus verbīs**: *in quite a lengthy speech.* Caesar's report of it is condensed.

2. **rogat, fīnem . . . faciat**: *begs him to end his entreaties;* for the clause without *ut* see A. 565, a (331, f, R.); B. 295, 8; G. 546, R. 2; H. 565, 4; H-B. 502, 3, a, footnote 2.

3–5. **tantī**: *of so much value, so great,* a predicate genitive; for the case see A. 417 (252, a); B. 203, 3; H. 448, 1; H-B. 356, 1. **utī . . . condōnet**: a clause of result; translate the verb as *pardon* with *iniūriam, forego* with *dolōrem.* **ēius voluntātī ac precibus**: *in answer to his wish and entreaties.* Caesar's regard for Diviciacus may well have been genuine, but a more urgent reason for leniency was the possibility of alienating the Haedui by dealing severely with so popular a character as Dumnorix, a thing to be avoided in the present crisis.

5–6. **vocat, adhibet**: asyndeton, sc. *et.* **quae . . . reprehendat**: an indirect question.

7–8. **ut . . . vītet**: *to avoid.* **praeterita**: *the past.*

9. **Dīviciācō frātrī**: *in deference to his brother Diviciacus,* dat. of reference.

Construction of **grātiā 17**, 18, **plūrimum, domī, minimum** 19, **opibus, minuendam** 21, **eī** 24; **verbīs 18**, 1, **ōrandī** 2, **agat, loquātur, possit**, 10; the clauses **nē quid . . . statueret 17**, 16; **ut . . . vītet 18**, 8. Principal parts of **scīre 17**, 17, **crēvisset** 20; **flēns 18**, 1, **prēndit** 2, **reprehendat** 6, **loquātur** 10.

CHAPTER 21. Caesar now resumes the narrative of Chapter 15, interrupted by his account of the interview with the Haeduan chiefs.

Page 19. 1–2. **in circuitū**: *on all sides.* **quī cōgnōscerent, mīsit**: *sent* (*men*) *to find out,* a relative clause of purpose.

3–4. **esse**: sc. *ascēnsum* or *eum* as subject. **lēgātum prō praetōre**: *lieutenant with authority of general; general* is the earlier meaning of *praetor*. In its developed and usual meaning it was the title of Roman magistrates invested with judicial functions. **eīs ducibus**: *those men as guides.*

6. **quid suī cōnsilī sit**: *what his plan is; cōnsilī* is gen. of the whole depending on *quid*. Apparently Labienus was to ascend the mountain at the foot of which the enemy were encamped, and to attack by a front and flank movement, while Caesar, after marching up the valley, attacked from the rear.

8–10. **reī mīlitāris perītissimus**: *very skilled in the art of war;* for the genitive see A. 349, a (218, a); B. 204, 1; G. 374; H. 451, 1; H-B. 354. **L. Sullae**: Lucius Cornelius Sulla, who, after a successful military career, was dictator in the years 81–78. See Introd., page x. **in**: sc. *exercitū*. **M. Crassī**: the triumvir, who conducted the war against Spartacus, 72–71.

Construction of **mīlia 18**, 12; **cōgnōscerent 19**, 2, **ducibus** 4, **sit** 6, **itinere, quō** 7, **perītissimus** 9. Principal parts of **cōnsēdisse 18**, 12; **mīsit 19**, 2, **ascendere** 5, **ierant** 7.

12. CHAPTER 22. **cum**· the temporal clauses extend through *cōgnitus esset*, 15. **summus mōns**: *the top of the mountain;* for the adjective denoting a part see A. 293 (193); B. 241, 1; G. 291, R. 2; H, 497, 4; H-B. 244.

13. **ipse**: Caesar.

14–15. **passibus**: abl. of comparison. Notice the asyndeton, **tenērētur, abesset.** Point out two other instances in this paragraph. **neque . . . aut . . . aut**: *and neither . . . nor.*

16. **equō admissō**: *with horse at full speed*, abl. absolute.

18. **īnsīgnibus**: ornamental devices on shields and helmets.

20–21. **ut erat**, etc.: *just as he had been ordered by Caesar not to bring on a battle*, or *in accordance with Caesar's orders, not to,* etc. *eī* is dat. of indirect object depending on the impersonal *praeceptum erat*, of which the *nē* clause is subject. **ipsīus**: i.e. Caesar's. **nisi . . . vīsae essent**: part of Caesar's instructions, hence the subjv. of a subordinate clause in indirect

discourse for a future perf. indic. of the direct, *don't bring on a battle unless you shall see.*

22. **ut . . . fieret**: a clause of purpose.

24. **Multō diē**: abl. of time when, *when the day was well advanced;* i.e. relatively speaking, for it was probably in the forenoon.

26–27. **quod nōn vīdisset, prō vīsō sibi renūntiāvisse**: *had reported to him as (having) seen what he had not seen; vīsō* is the neuter perf. participle used as a substantive. **quō cōnsuērat intervāllō**: *at the usual interval,* equivalent to *eō intervāllō, quō cōnsuērat.*

29. **castra pōnit**: probably near modern Toulon-sur-Arroux.

Construction of **lūce, Labiēnō, tenērētur** 12, **comperit** 14, **quem** 16, **occupārī** 17, **castra** 21, **proeliō** 23, **mīlia** 28. Tense of **cōnsuērat** 27. Principal parts of **comperit** 14, **accurrit** 16, **īnstruit** 19, **praeceptum** 20, **fieret** 22.

Page 20. 1. CHAPTER 23. **Postrīdiē ēius diēī**: probably June 29th.

2. **cum . . . oportēret**: *when* (= *before*) *it would be necessary to issue grain to his army.*

4–5. **reī frūmentāriae . . . exīstimāvit**: *thought he must provide for supplies; prōspiciendum esse* is impersonal.

6. **Bibracte**: for the case see A. 427, 2 (258, b); B. 182, 1, a; G. 337; H. 418; H-B. 450.

8. **quod**, etc.: reasons of the Helvetii reported by Caesar, therefore the subjunctives, A. 540 (321); B. 286, 1; G. 541; H. 588, II; H-B. 535, 2, a.

10. **superiōribus locīs occupātīs**: *though having taken position on higher ground,* a move which would ordinarily indicate intention to join battle. It did in this case, but the Helvetii were ignorant of Considius's mistake.

11. **eō, quod**: *for the reason that.* **rē**: abl. of separation. **posse**: sc. *Rōmānōs.*

12–13. **ā**: *in, on;* translate *nostrōs* and *ā novissimō agmine* together, *our rear line.*

Construction of **supererat** 1, **exercituī**, **mētīrī** 2, **oppidō** 3, **mīlibus** 4, **īre** 6, **eō** 9, **locīs occupātīs** 10. Principal parts of **prōspiciendum** 5, **contendit** 6, **discēdere** 9, **interclūdī**, **cōnfīderent** 11, **conversō** 12.

14. CHAPTER 24. **id**: object of the phrase *animum advertit* used as equivalent to *animadvertit*.

15. **proximum collem**: the site of the battle has been fixed with certainty by Colonel Stoffel's investigations. **quī sustinērent**: *to withstand*. The Helvetii had not yet attacked in sufficient force to prevent the Romans from retracing their steps to the hill of Armecy. Here the legions were arrayed and an intrenchment was begun, while the cavalry tried to hold the enemy in check.

16. **in colle mediō**: *half-way up the hill*; for the adjective denoting a part see note on *summus mōns*, **19**, 12.

17. **legiōnum quattuor veterānārum**: (*consisting*) *of the four veteran legions*, the 7th, 8th, 9th, and 10th.

18–19. **duās**: the 11th and the 12th. **proximē**: for the fact cf. **8**, 22–23.

20. **tōtum montem**: if Caesar really wrote these words, they would seem to refer to the slope of the hill above the triple line, i.e. they are practically equivalent to the *summum iugum* of 18. **sarcinās**: nothing is said of the heavy baggage. It may have gone on to Bibracte with a small escort.

21–22. **eum . . . mūnīrī**: this intrenchment, the location of which has been revealed by excavations, is marked *C* in the plan. **superiōre aciē**: not part of the triple line, but consisting of the two new legions and the auxiliaries. **cōnstiterant**: *were stationed*, lit. *had taken position*; the pluperfect with the force of an imperfect; we have found *cōnsuēverat* and *cōgnōverat* in the same tense usage.

23. **ipsī**: the Helvetian fighting men.

24–25. **cōnfertissimā aciē**: abl. of means, or of manner. **phalange**: a compact mass of men, those in the first rank presenting a solid barrier of shields held vertically in front, while those behind held their shields horizontally overhead.

Construction of **advertit** 14, **sustinēret** 15. Compare **proximē** 19. Principal parts of **īnstrūxit** 17, **complērī** 20, **cōnferrī** 21, **mūnīrī** 22, **rēiectō** 24, **successērunt** 25.

Page 21. 1. Chapter 25. **suō**: sc. *equō remōtō.* **omnium**: i.e. of the mounted officers, but not of the cavalry.

2–3. **ut . . . tolleret**: a clause of purpose. **aequātō . . . perīculō**: *by equalizing the danger*, abl. absolute. **cohortātus**: for the general's exhortation to his troops see Introd. 33.

5. **gladiīs dēstrictīs**: the usual hand-to-hand encounter, following the javelin volleys. See Introd. 33.

6. **Gallīs māgnō ad pūgnam erat impedīmentō**: *it was a great hindrance to the Gauls in fighting;* for the two datives cf. *auxiliō Caesarī*, **16**, 15, and see A. 382, 1 (233, a); B. 191, 2, a; G. 356; H. 433, 2; H-B. 360, b.

7–9. **quod . . . poterant**: *that*, etc., substantive clause, subject of *erat*, 6. **plūribus eōrum scūtīs**: *their shields in many instances.* **trānsfīxīs et colligātīs**: in the phalanx the shields overlapped, so that one javelin might pierce and bind together two shields. **cum**: *when*, with incidental suggestion of repeated occurrences, *whenever.* **ferrum**: *the iron head.* See Introd. 19. **sinistrā impedītā**: the left arm carried the shield.

10–11. **ut . . . praeoptārent**: a clause of result. **nūdō corpore**: *with body unprotected*, abl. of manner.

14–15. **Captō**: *when they had gained.* **Bōiī et Tulingī**: these tribal contingents seem to have been late in reaching the scene of battle. Possibly they had formed the van of the migrating column and now had to march past the wagons to get into battle. As they were the last to arrive Caesar describes them as a "rear guard."

16. **novissimīs praesidiō erant**: *formed a rear guard;* for the two datives cf. *Gallīs impedīmentō*, 6, above. **ex itinere**: (*straight*) *from the march, immediately.*

17. **ab latere apertō**: *on the unprotected flank*, i.e. the right.

20. **conversa sīgna bipertītō intulērunt**: *faced about and advanced in two divisions*, lit. *carried forward their turned stand-*

ards; the perf. participle *conversa* replaces an indicative coördinate with *intulērunt.* In reality only the third line "faced about."

21. **victīs ac submōtīs**: *the beaten and dislodged* (*Helvetii*), participles as substantives, in the dative after a verb of resisting. **venientēs**: *those advancing,* i.e. the Boii and Tulingi.

Construction of **manū** 10, **passūs** 13, **mīlibus** 15. Mood of **īnflexisset** 8, **ēmittere** 10, **pūgnāre** 11, **sustinēret** 22. Comment on the order of **multī ut** 9–10. Principal parts of **perfrēgērunt** 4, **disiectā** 5, **trānsfīxīs** 7, **īnflexisset** 8, **referre** 12, **claudēbant** 16, **circumvenīre** 17, **victīs, submōtīs, resisteret** 21.

23. CHAPTER 26. **ancipitī proeliō . . . pūgnātum est**: *a battle with double front was fought, long and fierce; proeliō* is an abl. of manner, *pūgnātum est* impersonal passive of an intransitive verb.

25. **alterī**: *one division,* the Helvetii; **alterī**, *the other,* the Boii and Tulingi. **ut coeperant**: cf. 13, above. **sē recēpērunt,** and **sē contulērunt, 22,** 1, are both used of an orderly retreat, further noticed in the following sentence, *Nam,* etc.

Page 22. 1–2. **hōc tōtō proeliō**: *throughout this battle,* abl. of time, the idea of duration lying chiefly in the adjective *tōtō.* **hōrā septimā**: the day between sunrise and sunset was divided into twelve hours, the seventh beginning at noon. **cum . . . pūgnātum sit**: *although the fighting lasted;* observe the mood with *cum* concessive.

3–4. **āversum**: *in flight,* lit. *turned away.* **Ad multam noctem**: *till late at night;* cf. *multō diē,* **19,** 24. **etiam**: in a temporal sense, *still.*

5. **prō vāllō**: *as a rampart.* **ē locō superiōre**: the Gauls seem to have mounted the carts and wagons.

6. **venientēs**: *as they came up.* **cōiciēbant**: *would hurl, kept hurling,* imperfect of repeated action.

8. **impedīmentīs, castrīs**: for the abl. with *potior* see A. 410 (249); B. 218, 1; G. 407; H. 477, I; H-B. 429.

10. **ūnus ē fīliīs**: for the partitive expression see A. 346, c (216, c); B. 201, 1, a; G. 372, 2; H. 444, 1; H-B. 346, e. **captus**: agrees with *ūnus*, the nearer subject.

12. **partem**: acc. of duration of time.

13. **diē quārtō**: July 2d. The Romans regularly reckoned in the day from which the count began. The exact route and stopping-place of the Helvetii cannot be determined. The map is after Napoleon.

16. **Lingonas**: for the form see A. 81, 5, 82 (63, f, 64); B. 47, 3; G. 66, 4; A. 109, 5; H-B. 95.

17. **nē . . . iuvārent**, (*commanding the Lingones*) *not to assist them;* the idea of command resides in *litterās mīsit.* **quī sī iūvissent**: (*saying that*) *if they did assist them*, representing a future perf. indic. of direct discourse.

18. **sē eōdem locō . . . habitūrum**: *he would consider them in the same position as the Helvetii*, i.e. as enemies. **trīduō intermissō** : *after an interval of three days.*

Construction of **possent 21**, 24; **venientēs 22**, 6, **nocte** 12, **diē** 13, **trīduum** 15, **locō** 18. Subject of **pūgnātum sit** 2. Order of **Diū cum** 8. Principal parts of **obiēcerant** 5, **iuvārent** 17.

22–24. CHAPTER 27. **suppliciterque locūtī flentēs**; *in suppliant tones and with tears.* **eōs**; i.e. the main body, not the *lēgātī.* **iussisset**: Caesar is the subject.

25–26. **quī . . . perfūgissent**: *who* (*he said*) *had fled*, subjv. in informal indirect discourse.

Page 23. 1. **Dum ea coquīruntur**: *while these were being hunted up;* for mood and tense with *dum* see A. 556 (276, e); B. 293, I; G. 229, R; H. 604, 1; H-B. 559. A neuter pronoun, *ea* here, may be employed referring to antecedents of different gender, if some of them are inanimate things.

2–3. **mīlia . . . perterritī**: the participle is masculine according to sense, A. 286, b (187, d); B. 235, B, 2, c; G. 211, b; H. 389, 2; H-B. 325. **nē . . . adficerentur**: *that they would be visited;* for the construction after a verb of fearing see A. 564 (331, f);

B. 296, 2; G. 550, 2; H. 567, 4; H-B. 502, 4. **armīs trāditīs**: *if they should deliver up their arms.*

4–6. **quod . . . exīstimārent**: the reason of the Helvetii as reported by Cæsar, and so the subjv. of informal indirect discourse. **occultārī**: *be concealed,* not the fact of flight, but the route taken and their destination. **omnīnō īgnōrārī**: *be altogether overlooked.* **prīmā nocte**: *early at night,* the adjective denoting a part; cf. *colle mediō,* **20,** 16.

Construction of **convēnissent 22,** 22, **eōs** 23, **essent, exspectāre** 24, **pāgī**; **Verbigenus 23,** 2. Principal parts of **prōiēcissent 22,** 22, **pāruērunt** 24, **perfūgissent, poposcit** 26; **conquīruntur 23,** 1, **trāditīs** 3, **ēgressī** 7.

9–11. CHAPTER 28. **Quod**: *this.* **quōrum . . . hīs**: relative clauses frequently precede demonstrative antecedents. English reverses this order; *hīs* is dat. of indirect object after *imperāvit,* the *ut* clause being the direct object, A. 563 (331); B. 295, 1; G. 546; H. 565; H-B. 502, 3, a. **sī . . . vellent**: *if they wished,* part of Caesar's message, hence the subjv. of informal indirect discourse. **sibi**: *in his eyes;* for the case see A. 376 (235); B. 188, 2, c; G. 352; H. 425, 4; H-B. 370. **reductōs**: *(them) when they were brought back,* object of *habuit.* **in hostium numerō habuit**: euphemistic for *put to death.*

14. **Helvētiōs,** etc.: the Rauraci are not accounted for in this list; a subsequent notice of them makes it probable that they were sent back to their old home.

16. **quō famem tolerārent**: *with which to relieve hunger,* or *with which they could relieve hunger:* the subjunctive is variously explained, but is best taken as potential, A. 531 (317); B. 282, 2; H. 591; H-B. 517, 2.

17. **facerent**: *furnish.* **ipsōs**: i.e. the Helvetii, etc.

19. **eā māximē ratiōne, quod**: *especially for the reason that.*

22. **fīnitimī**: *neighbors (to),* governing the dative following.

23–25. **Bōiōs . . . concessit**: *at the request of the Haedui Caesar granted them permission to establish the Boii in their country, because the Boii were known to be (people) of unusual valor. Bōiōs* is the object of *conlocārent; petentibus Haeduīs* is dat. of

indirect object after *concessit*, or abl. absolute; the clause *ut . . . conlocārent* is best taken as object of *concessit*, possibly of *petentibus*. To strengthen the friendly Haedui would redound to the advantage of the Romans. The arrangement was doubtless agreeable to the Boii, as they had no settled home when they joined the Helvetii.

26–27. **parem . . . atque ipsī erant**: *the same . . . as they themselves enjoyed* (lit. *were*); words of likeness and equality are often followed by *atque*, *as*. This bestowal of equal rights was probably made at Caesar's dictation and subsequent to the rebellion of 52, in which the Boii remained faithful, on the whole, to the Romans.

Construction of **pūrgātī** 10, **domī**, **quō** 16, **eīs**, **facerent** 17, **ratiōne** 19, **incolunt** 21, **virtūte** 24. Principal parts of **resciit** 9, **conquīrerent** 10, **iussit** 15, **restituere** 18, **nōluit** 19, **incolunt** 21, **dedērunt** 25.

Page 24. 1. Chapter 29. **tabulae**: possibly the same kind of waxed writing tablets as used by the Romans. **litterīs Graecīs**: i.e. in the Gallic language, but written with the Greek alphabet, which had become familiar to the southern Gauls through commercial relations with the Greek city Massilia.

3–4. **nōminātim**: *in detail*. **quī numerus . . . exīsset**: an indirect question depending on *ratiō*. **quī . . . possent**: a clause of characteristic, therefore the subjunctive.

5–6. **rērum**: *items*. **capitum**: *persons, souls*. **mīlium**: predicate genitive.

8–9. **ex hīs**, etc.: *of these* (*there were*) *about* 92,000 *who could bear arms; hīs* is not antecedent of *quī;* the relative clause is characterizing. **ad**: adverb, *about;* also in 9. **fuērunt**: adapted in number to the predicate noun *mīlia*, A. 316, b (204, b); B. 254, 4; G. 211, R. 1, Excep. c; H. 390; H-B. 332.

Construction of **litterīs** 1, **domō** 3, **exīsset** 4, **mīlia** 9, **domum**, **cēnsū** 10. Principal parts of **repertae** 1, **cōnfectae**, **relātae** 2, **rediērunt** 10.

WAR WITH ARIOVISTUS, 30–54.

13. CHAPTER 30. **Galliae** : probably Celtic Gaul only.

14. **grātulātum** : *to offer congratulations*, the supine.

15. **intellegere sēsē**: *they knew* (*they said*), indirect discourse.

16. **Helvētiōrum iniūriīs populī Rōmānī**: *injuries inflicted by the Helvetii on the Roman people*, subjective and objective genitives.

17. **ex ūsū** : *to the advantage.*

18–20. **eō cōnsiliō . . . utī . . . īnferrent**: *with the design of making war;* the purpose clause explains *cōnsiliō.* **flōrentissimīs rēbus** : abl. absolute, *though enjoying the greatest prosperity*, and therefore under no necessity of changing their abode.

21. **domiciliō** : *for a home;* for the case see A. 382, 2 (233, b); B. 191, 1; G. 356; H, 433, 3; H-B. 361. **ēx māgnā cōpiā** : *from the wide extent of country.*

22. **iūdicāssent**: *should judge*, for a future perf. indic. of direct discourse.

23. **stīpendiāriās** : in the predicate.

Page 25. 1–2. **utī sibi . . . indīcere . . . licēret**: *that they be permitted to call*, substantive clause, object of *petiērunt:* for the construction of *sibi* and *indīcere* see A. 565, N. 2 (331, i, N. 3); B. 327, 1; G. 346, R. 2, 422; H. 615; H-B. 362, 585. **tōtīus Galliae**: probably only the Celtic tribes of central Gaul are meant. **Caesaris voluntāte**: *with Caesar's sanction.* Theoretically he had no authority to forbid or sanction a council, but the Gauls wished him to understand they were not forming a league against him.

5–6. **nē quis ēnūntiāret**: *that no one should report* (*the result of their deliberations*); substantive clause, object of *sānxērunt.* **inter sē sānxērunt**: *bound one another.* **nisi quibus** : *except* (*those*) *to whom.* **mandātum esset**: *the duty should be intrusted*, impersonal passive.

7. CHAPTER 31. **dīmissō** : the dismissal only is mentioned, the assembling to be inferred.

8. **fuerant**: sc. *ad Caesarem.*

10. **Caesarī ad pedēs**: *at Caesar's feet;* for the dat. see A. 377 (235, a); B. 188, 1, N.; G. 350, 1; H. 425, 4, N.; H-B. 368.

11. **id**: (*for*) *this*, acc., object of *contendere* and *labōrāre*, and explained by the appositive *nē* clause, *that what they should say should not be reported*, and by the *utī* clause.

15. **Galliae tōtīus**: Celtic Gaul, and probably only the central and eastern portions.

17. **Arvernōs**: these people had suffered a severe defeat at the hands of the Romans in 121 B.C. See Introd. 68. In Caesar's time the Sequani seem to have been the real leaders of the second faction mentioned.

18. **contenderent**: *had contended; multōs annōs* has the same effect as *iam diū* or *iam dūdum* with the present and imperfect, A. 471, b (277, b); B. 260, 4; G. 234; H. 535, 1; H-B. 485. **factum esse**: *it had come about*, with *utī . . . arcesserentur* as subject.

19. **mercēde**: *for pay.*

21–23. **hominēs ferī ac barbarī**: *being a savage and barbarous people.* **trāductōs**: sc. *esse.* **nunc esse . . . numerum**: *now the number in Gaul was about* 120,000.

Page 26. 1. **clientēs**: see Introd. 63.

3. **omnem nōbilitātem**, etc.: the picture is overdrawn, as we know from facts stated later.

4. **quī**: equivalent to *cum eī, although they;* sc. as antecedent *eōs*, subject of *coāctōs esse.*

5. **virtūte**: abl. of cause. **hospitiō**: a formal relation of friendship between individuals in different nations, or, as here, between two nations, mutually guaranteeing honorable treatment and certain privileges.

6–7. **ante**: adverb. **dare**: infinitive complementary to *coāctōs esse;* in the active *cōgō* governs an infinitive clause.

8. **sēsē . . . repetītūrōs**: *that they would neither demand back*, etc., explaining the oath, *iūre iūrandō.*

10. **quōminus . . . essent**: *to be*, etc., depending on *recūsā-*

tūrōs, A. 558, b (319, c); B. 295, 3; G. 549; H. 568, 8; H-B. 502, 3, b. **illōrum**: the Sequani.

11–12. **Ūnum**: *the only man.* **quī . . . potuerit**: a clause of characteristic.

14. **postulātum**: the supine. For the mission of Diviciacus see Introduction to Bk. I, page 164.

16–17. **pēius . . . accidisse**: *a worse fate had befallen.* **victōribus**: *the victorious*, a noun equivalent to an adjective. Observe the chiastic arrangement of *victōribus Sēquanīs . . . Haeduīs victīs*, adjective + noun, noun + adjective. **Germānōrum**: probably the Suebi only. **tertiam partem**: now upper Alsace.

20. **alterā parte tertiā**: *a second third.*

22–23. **quibus . . . parārentur**: a relative clause of purpose. **Futūrum esse . . . utī**: *the result would be that;* for the periphrasis with *futūrum esse* see A. 569, a (288, f); B. 270, 3, a; G. 248; H. 619, 2; H-B. 472, c. **paucīs annīs**: abl. of time within which.

25–27. **cōnferendum**: *to be compared.* **Gallicum**: sc. *agrum;* the Gallic land and mode of life was better than the German. English reverses the Latin order by putting last the thing preferred. **hanc**: of what is near the speaker, equivalent to *Gallicam.* **illā**: i.e. *Germānōrum.*

Page 27. 1. **ut**: with temporal meaning; translate with *vīcerit, having once defeated.* For vivid effect the narrative is given a present standpoint through the remainder of the chapter, as the presents and perfects show. **Gallōrum**: the reference seems to be to the Haedui and their allies, though it has been suggested that the Sequani, having repented their rashness in invoking the aid of the Germans, had finally joined forces with the Haedui against Ariovistus.

2. **quod proelium**: *a battle which:* the appositional antecedent in the relative clause, as usual. **Magetobrigam**: its exact location is not known. The battle was fought in 61 or 60.

3. **superbē et crūdēliter imperāre**: *is making arrogant and cruel demands.* **nōbilissimī cūiusque**: *of all those of highest rank; quisque, each,* is frequently employed with a superlative to indicate a class.

4. **exempla cruciātūsque**: *cruelties of every sort,* hendiadys. **in eōs . . . ēdere**: *visits upon them.*

5. **ad nūtum aut ad voluntātem**: *at his (beck and) nod or to suit his wish.*

8. **quid auxilī**: *some help; auxilī* is gen. of the whole.

9–10. **omnibus Gallīs idem esse faciendum**: *all the Gauls must do the same;* for the dat., *Gallīs,* see A. 374, a (232, N.); B. 189, 1; G. 355; H. 431; H-B. 373, 1. **ut . . . ēmigrent,** etc.: i.e. *leave home,* an appositive clause explaining *idem.*

13–15. **quīn . . . sūmat**: *that he will exact;* for the use of *quīn* see A. 558, a (319, d); B. 298; G. 555, 2; H. 595, 1; H-B. 507, 2, b.

17–18. **dēterrēre . . . nē . . . trādūcātur**: *prevent a larger horde from being brought across;* the *nē* clause is substantive, object of a verb of hindering. **Rhēnum**: acc. after the *trāns* in *trādūcātur,* A. 395, N. 2 (236, 2, b, N. 2); B. 179, 1; G. 331, R. 1; H. 413; H-B. 386, a.

22. CHAPTER 32. **ūnōs**: *alone.* **nihil**: *none.*

23. **trīstēs**: *dejectedly,* adj. where English employs an adverb.

24. **quae causa esset**: an indirect question, felt as dependent both upon *mīrātus* and *quaesiit.*

25–26. **respondēre, permanēre**: historical infinitives. **saepius**: *repeatedly.*

Page 28. 1. **neque**: *and not, but not.* **vōcem**: *expression, utterance.*

2. **īdem**: *again, as before,* A. 298, b (195, e); B. 248, 1; G. 310; H. 508, 3; H-B. 270, a. **hōc miseriōrem**: *the more wretched.*

5–6. **-que**: *but.* **velut sī cōram adesset**: *as if he were present;* imperfect for the present subjv., *adsit,* of direct discourse, A. 524 (312); B. 307, 1; G. 602; H. 584; H-B. 504, 3, a. **reliquīs**: sc. *Gallīs.*

7–9. **tamen**: *at any rate, at least.* **Sēquanīs vērō . . . essent perferendī**: *while the Sequani must endure,* dative of agent, like *Gallīs*, **27**, 9.

11. CHAPTER 33. **sibi eam cūrae futūram esse**; *the matter should receive his attention*; for the two datives see A. 382, 1 (233, a); B. 191, 2, a; G. 356; H. 433, 2; H-B. 360, b.

12. **beneficiō suō**: i.e. the bestowal of the title *rēx atque amīcus* the year before. Cf. **29**, 22 and note.

13. **iniūriīs**: the genitive is used more frequently than the dative with *fīnem facere.*

15–16. **ea**: *these facts,* i.e. what he had heard from Diviciacus. **multae rēs eum hortābantur, quārē . . . putāret**: *there were many urgent reasons for thinking,* lit. *many things urged him, on account of which he thought; putāret* is subjv. in a clause of characteristic; *sibi* is dative of agent. **in prīmīs**: *especially,* lit. *among the first,* or *most important, things.*

17. **quod**, etc.: *that,* or *because,* etc., explaining *rēs*, which is further explained by 23 ff. **cōnsanguineōs**: both the Haedui and Arverni appear to have claimed kinship with the Romans, the Arverni, at least, by Trojan descent.

20. **quod**: (*a state of affairs*) *which,* or *and this state of affairs;* a neuter relative is often employed referring to the facts of a preceding sentence. **in tantō imperiō**: *considering the extended sway.*

23. **Paulātim autem Germānōs cōnsuēscere**, etc.: *for the Germans gradually to grow accustomed to cross the Rhine,* etc., infinitive clauses, subject of *esse* understood, *perīculōsum* being a predicate adjective.

25–27. **sibi . . . temperātūrōs . . . quīn . . . exīrent**: *would refrain from proceeding.* For *sibi* governed by *temperātūrōs* see A. 367 (227); B. 187, II, a; G. 346; H. 426, 4, N.; H-B. 362. For the *quīn* clause see A. 558 (319, d); B. 298; G. 555, 1; H. 595, 2; H-B. 502, 3, b. **occupāvissent**: *should (have) overrun, had overrun,* the pluperfect representing a future perfect from a past point of view. **ut**: *just as.* **Cimbrī, Teutonī**: tribes from northern Germany who wandered south in the latter

part of the second century B.C. After committing widespread depredations in Gaul they were finally crushed by the Romans, the Teutoni near Aquae Sextiae in 102, the Cimbri in northern Italy in 101.

Page 29. 1. **fēcissent**: *had done*, subjv. by attraction.

3. **Rhodanus**: (*only*) *the Rhone*. **quibus rēbus**: lit. *things which*, i.e. *the situation*, or *the threatened danger*. The dative is governed by the compound verb *occurrendum*, impersonal, *provision must be made against*.

5. **nōn**: limits *vidērētur*; but translate with *ferendus*, *unbearable*.

7–9. CHAPTER 34. **placuit eī**: *he decided*, lit. *it pleased him*, with *ut . . . mitteret*, *to send*, as subject. **quī . . . postulārent**: a relative clause of purpose. **medium utrīusque**: *midway between the two*. Ariovistus was probably on the west bank of the Rhine assembling his army.

10. **rē pūblicā**: *matters of state*. **summīs utrīusque rēbus**: *matters of the greatest importance to both*.

11–14. **sī quid**, etc.: *if he had need of anything from Caesar, he would have come to him*, indirect discourse; direct, *sī quid mihi . . . esset, ad eum vēnissem*. **ipsī**: dative of possession; an instance of the reflexive use of *ipse*. **opus**: *need*, may take an ablative, or, as here, may stand in the predicate with the thing needed in the nominative as subject, *quid*. For the condition and conclusion see A. 517, a, 589, b, 1, 2 (308, a, 337, b, 1, 2); B. 304, 1, 2, 321, A. 2, a, B; G. 597, R. 1, 656, 1, 2; H. 579, 1, 647; H-B. 581, b. **velit**: for the direct *vult*, *wants*, the subjv. being due merely to the indirect discourse. *Volō* may govern two accusatives, *quid* and *sē*, here, if the thing desired is expressed by a neuter pronoun; translate, *if Caesar wanted anything of him*.

17–18. **quid . . . Caesarī . . . negōtī esset**: *what business Caesar had*, an indirect question, after *vidērī mīrum*, *it seemed strange*. **suā Galliā**: *his* (*part of*) *Gaul*.

21–22. CHAPTER 35. **suō**: *on his part*, i.e. Caesar's. **ad-**

fectus: (*though*) *treated.* **cum . . . appellātus esset**: *in having been entitled*, lit. *since he had been entitled*, explaining *beneficiō*. The bestowal of the title, possibly on Caesar's motion, had in reality been only in the interest of temporary peace, not as a mark of esteem for Ariovistus.

23–25. **hanc sibi . . . grātiam referret, ut . . . gravārētur . . . putāret**: *made him . . . this requital, that*, etc., or *requited him . . . by refusing and by thinking*, etc.; the *ut* clause explains *grātiam*. **Neque . . . discendum sibi et cōgnōscendum**: *that he was not under obligations to learn of and investigate a matter of mutual interest.*

Page 30. 1–2. **nē . . . trādūceret**: *that he should not lead across;* this and the following clauses explain *haec*, **29**, 25.

4. **voluntāte ēius**: *with his sanction.*

5. **illīs licēret**: unnecessary to the sense; translate as if we had *permitteret . . . ut redderent, permit the Sequani to restore.* **nēve lacesseret**: *and that he should not attack; nēve, and not,* corresponds to *nē*, while *neque, and not,* corresponds to *nōn.* **iniūriā**: *unjustly, without cause,* abl. of manner.

7. **ita fēcisset**: *should do so, should act thus,* for a future perf. indic. of direct discourse. **sibi, populō**: dat. of possession.

8. **nōn impetrāret**: *should not obtain his wishes,* for a future indic. of direct discourse; the subject has shifted to Caesar.

9. **sēsē**: subject of *neglēctūrum*, 13, but repeated in 12 because of the long intervening clause. **M. Messālā, M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus**: i.e. in 61 B.C.

11. **quod . . . posset**: *so far as he could do so;* for the restrictive clause see A. 535, d (320, d); B. 283, 5; G. 627, R. 1; H. 591, 3; H-B. 521, 1, f. **commodō reī pūblicae**: *with advantage to the state; commodō* is an abl. of attendant circumstances. The decree referred to (see Introduction to Bk. I, page 164) had thus far been of no help to the Haedui, but merely a formal expression of sympathy. "Upon Caesar's arrival a change took place," as the author remarks in Bk. VI.

14–16. CHAPTER 36. **ut, quī vīcissent, eīs . . . imperārent**:

that those who have conquered shall rule those, etc., a substantive clause, subject of *esse*. Observe the past tenses; in English, statements of general principles usually stand in the present, even if dependent on a past tense in the main sentence. **quī**: equivalent to *eī quī*. **quem ad modum**: *in such manner as, just as; quem* is a relative. **victīs**: *the vanquished*, a participle used as a substantive. **ad**: *according to*.

18–19. **quem ad modum . . . ūterētur**: *how they were to use their rights; quem* is here an interrogative; the question is an indirect deliberative, A. 575, b (334, b); B. 300, 2; G. 467; H. 642, 3; H-B. 503. **oportēre**: this verb, remember, is impersonal, though translated with a personal subject, *he*; the grammatical subject is the infinitive clause, *sē . . . impedīrī*.

21. **sibi**: dat. after *stīpendiāriōs, tributary* (*to*).

23–24. **Māgnam**: in emphatic position, *great was the wrong*. **quī . . . dēteriōra faceret**: *in impairing*, lit. *since he*, etc., *quī* being equivalent to *cum is*; the clause explains *iniūriam*; cf. the *cum* clause, **29**, 21–22. Observe *suō* and *sibi* referring to different persons; *sibi, his*, dat. of reference, for a possessive adjective or a genitive; cf. *Caesarī*, **25**, 10.

25. **neque**: *but not*, a connective, and also a correlative to the second *neque*.

26. **sī in eō manērent, quod convēnisset**: *if they stood by their agreement*.

Page 31. 1. **longē . . . nōmen . . . āfutūrum**: *the title of brothers of the Roman people would be far from* (*helping*) *them*. **eīs**: dat. of reference. **frāternum**: equivalent to *frātrum*, which might have been employed.

2–3. **Quod . . . dēnūntiāret**: *as to Caesar's threatening him*; for this use of *quod* see A. 572, a (333, a); B. 299, 2; G. 525, 2; H. 588, 3, N.; H-B. 552, 2. **sibi, sēcum**: Ariovistus. **sē**: Caesar.

4–6. **congrederētur**: *let him advance*, imperfect subjunctive for present of direct discourse; *vellet* stands for a future indicative. **quid . . . virtūte possent**: *the prowess of*, lit. *what strength*

they had in valor, an indirect question. **invictī**: *unconquered*, implying *invincible*. **annōs quattuordecim**: not to be understood literally, but with reference to their lack of a fixed home.

7–8. CHAPTER 37. **eōdem tempore . . . et**: *at the same time that;* in Latin the two sentences are coördinate. **questum**: *to complain*, the supine.

9–11. **quod . . . populārentur**: the reason for complaint given by the Haedui, as the mood shows. **trānsportātī essent**: subjv. by attraction. **datīs**: *by giving*. **Trēverī**: sc. *nūntiāvērunt* or a supine, *nūntiātum*.

12. **pāgōs centum Suēbōrum**: it is not clear whether Caesar took this to mean the migration of a whole people or merely the invasion of an army; cf. Bk. IV, Chapter 1.

15. **mātūrandum sibi**: *he must act quickly; sibi* is dat. of agent. **nē**: *for fear that.*

17. **sēsē coniūnxisset**: *should unite;* the subjv. (in the perf.) might be used also in direct discourse, by attraction. **minus . . . posset**: *resistance could less easily be offered; resistī* is the impersonal passive of an intransitive verb.

19. **contendit**: Caesar started from some point in the country of the Lingones, whither he had pursued the Helvetii.

20. CHAPTER 38. **trīduī**: gen. of quality or measure. **viam prōcessisset**: for the cognate acc. see A. 390 (238); B. 176, 4, a; G. 333, 2; H. 409; H-B. 396, 1.

22. **quod**: referring to a masculine antecedent, but neuter by attraction to the predicate noun, *oppidum*. **est**: indicative in a statement of the author's made in passing.

24. **Id nē accideret**: subject of *praecavendum* (*esse*), *that that should not happen, diligent precautions must be taken by him.*

Page 32. 2. **ūsuī**: *of service*, dat. of the purpose or end. **idemque**: *and also, then too;* cf. *idem*, **28**, 2, and note.

3. **ad dūcendum bellum**: *for a prolonged war.*

5–6. **ut**: *as if.* **pedum**: predicate gen. of quality or measure; *amplius* is here an adverb, with no effect on the case, A. 407, c (247, c); B. 217, 3; G. 296, R. 4; H. 471, 4; H-B. 416, d.

7. **intermittit**: *leaves a gap.* **altitūdine**: abl. of quality.

8. **rādīcēs, rīpae**: object and subject respectively of *contingant.*

9. **Hunc**: sc. *montem.* **mūrus circumdatus**: *an encircling wall.* **arcem**: predicate accusative. This hill is the citadel of modern Besançon.

10. **nocturnīs**: put first for emphasis, *by night as well as by day.*

Page 33. 1–2. CHAPTER 39. **Dum morātur**: *while delaying;* see note on *Dum . . . cōnferuntur,* **23**, 1. **ad Vesontiōnem**: *near Vesontio.* **commeātūs**: *(other) supplies.* **ex**: *from, as a result of.* **vōcibus**: *statements.*

3–4. **māgnitūdine, virtūte, exercitātiōne**: abl. of quality, in the predicate after *esse.*

6. **cum hīs congressōs**: *having encountered them.*

8. **nōn**: take closely with *mediocriter, in no slight degree.*

10–11. **Hīc**: sc. *timor.* **tribūnīs, praefectīs, reliquīs**: see Introd. 8, 13, and 16.

13–15. **alius aliā causā inlātā**: *one adducing one reason, another another,* or *each adducing a different reason;* for the use of *alius aliā* see A. 315, c (203, c); B. 253, 2; G. 221, R. 1; H. 516, 1; H-B. 265. **quam . . . necessāriam esse dīceret**: *which he said made it necessary for him to leave;* for the mood of *dīceret* see A. 592, 3, N. (341, d, R.); B. 323; H. 649, I; H-B. 535, a. **petēbat**: *would beg,* imperfect of repeated action; cf. the following imperfects.

18. **fingere**: *compose, control,* lit. *mold.*

22. **tōtīs castrīs**: *throughout the camp;* for the locative abl. without a preposition see A. 429, 2 (258, f, 2); B. 228, 1, b; G. 388; H. 485, 2; H-B. 436, a.

25. **in castrīs**: *in a soldier's life.*

26. **centuriōnēs**: see Introd. 15. **quīque**: equivalent to *et eī quī.*

27. **Quī ex hīs**: *those of them who.*

29. **angustiās**: referring probably to the narrow valley of the Doubs, which Caesar finally avoided.

Page 34. 1–2. **rem frūmentāriam, ut . . . posset, timēre**: *had fears for the supply of grain, that it could not*, etc.; *rem* would naturally stand in the *ut* clause as subject, but is made the object of *timēre* in order to maintain the construction of the preceding accusatives. For *ut . . . posset*, dependent on a verb of fearing, see A. 564 (331, f); B. 296, 2; G. 550, 2; H. 567, 4; H-B. 502, 4.

4. **iussisset**: *should order;* for a future perf. indic. of direct discourse; the *cum* clause limits *fore* and *lātūrōs*. **dictō audientēs**: *obedient*, lit. *listening to his word.*

7. CHAPTER 40. **omnium ōrdinum**: usually only centurions of the first rank were admitted to a council of war. See Introd. 15.

8–10. **prīmum**: no formal *secondly* follows, but a *finally, dēnique*, 27. **quod . . . putārent**: the reason given by Caesar, the general. **sibi quaerendum . . . putārent**: *thought it their business to inquire or consider.*

11–12. **cūr . . . iūdicāret**: *why should any one suppose?* for the mood see A. 586 (338); B. 315, 3; G, 651, R. 2; H. 642, 3; H-B. 513, 1. In direct discourse, *iūdicet.*

13–15. **Sibi quidem persuādērī**: *he, for his part, was persuaded.* Intransitive verbs governing the dative are used impersonally in the passive. *Persuādeō*, like English *persuade*, equiv. to *convince of a fact*, may govern indirect discourse, *eum . . . repudiātūrum.* **cōgnitīs**: *when he should learn.*

16–18. **Quod sī**: *but if.* **quid . . . verērentur, . . . cūr . . . dēspērārent**: *what, pray, should they fear, or why should they despair?* See note on *iūdicāret*, 12. **suā**: *their own.* **ipsīus**: *his; ipse* is necessarily employed as a reflexive, when two reflexives are required referring to different persons.

19–21. **perīculum**: *trial, test.* **memoriā**: *in the time*, abl. of time when. **cum**: *when*, equivalent to *and upon this occasion*, amplified by the abl. absolute, *Cimbrīs . . . pulsīs*, *viz. the defeat of the Cimbri and Teutoni by Marius.* **exercitus . . . meritus** (*esse*) **vidēbātur**: *the army evidently deserved*, lit. *was seen to have deserved.*

22–23. **servīlī tumultū**: the slave revolt under Spartacus, 73–71; these slaves consisted largely of German and Gallic captives. They would know more or less of Roman military science. **quōs tamen**: *who, however*, or *and yet they;* the relative refers to an antecedent, *servōrum*, implied in *servīlī*. **sublevārent**: translate as a passive. **aliquid**: acc. of degree, *somewhat*.

24. **posse**: for the infinitive in a relative clause in indirect discourse see A. 583, b (336, c); B. 314, 4; G. 635; H. 643, 1; H-B. 535, 1, b. **habēret**: *has;* for the tense in the statement of a general principle cf. *ut . . . imperārent*, **30**, 14–16, and note. **bonī**: gen. of the-whole depending on *quantum*.

25–26. **inermēs**: *though unarmed*. The slaves were but poorly armed at first. **hōs**: antecedent of *quōs*. **victōrēs**: several consular armies were defeated by Spartacus before Crassus crushed the rebellion.

Page 35. 1–2. **congressī**: a participle, to be translated coördinate with *superārint, had repeatedly encountered and defeated*. **parēs**: *a match for*, i.e. in the recent campaign.

3–4. **Sī quōs . . . commovēret**: *if any were alarmed*. **proelium**: the battle of Magetobriga, cf. **27**, 2.

6. **castrīs**: *in camp*. The abl. of the place where is frequently used without a preposition in connection with *teneō* and *contineō*.

7–9. **suī potestātem**: *a chance to attack him*. **dēspērantēs dispersōs**: limiting *eōs* to be understood as object of *adortum* and *vīcisse*. **ratiōne et cōnsiliō**: *by well-considered strategy*.

9–10. **Cui ratiōnī . . . hāc**: *by that plan for which;* for the position of the antecedent see A. 307, b, N. (200, b, N.); B. 251, 4, a; G. 616; H. 399, 3; H-B. 284, 5, 6. **ipsum**: Ariovistus.

12–14. **Quī**: equivalent to *eōs quī*. **in reī frūmentāriae simulātiōnem**: *to a feigned alarm about supplies*. **cum**: *inasmuch as*. **officiō**: (*performance of*) *duty*.

15. **Haec sibi esse cūrae**: *these were matters for him to attend to;* lit.? Explain the datives.

19–20. **Quod . . . dīcantur**: *as to the statement that they would not obey*, etc.; for *Quod* see note on *Quod . . . dēnūntiāret*, **31**, 2. Observe that *dīcantur* is personal, A. 582 (330, b, 1); B. 332, c; G. 528, 1; H. 611, 1, N. 1; H-B. 590, 1. Cf. *meritus (esse) vidēbātur*, **34**, 21. **nihil**: *not at all*, acc. of degree; cf. *aliquid*, **34**, 22.

21–24. **quibuscumque**: dat. governed by *dictō audiēns*, equivalent to a verb of obeying; another dative, *eīs*, is understood, depending on *dēfuisse*. Translate freely, *whenever an army does not obey its commander*, (*it means*) *either* (*that*) *in view of some reverse fortune* (*is seen to have*) *deserted him*, *or* (*that*) *in the discovery of some wrongdoing* (*of his*) *avarice has been proved* (*against him*). "Good luck," "good fortune," to the Roman mind, was a special gift of the gods. Sulla surnamed himself Felix. **avāritiam**: *greed*, suggesting *dishonesty*, referring probably to misappropriation of funds intended for the support of an army. **innocentiam**: *integrity*, contrasted with *avāritiam*. **perpetuā vītā**: *throughout his life*. **fēlīcitātem**: contrasted with *fortūnam dēfuisse*.

25. **quod**: equivalent to *id quod*. **conlātūrus fuisset**: *had intended to defer*.

Page 36. 1. **utrum pudor . . . an timor plūs valēret**: a double indirect question.

4. **praetōriam cohortem**: *a general's bodyguard* was regularly composed of troops chosen for preëminent bravery and ability. **legiōnī**: dat. depending on *indulserat* and *cōnfīdēbat*, which belong to the list of verbs, *persuade*, *command*, *obey*, etc.

9. CHAPTER 41. **prīnceps**: *first*, adjective where English employs an adverb.

10–11. **quod . . . fēcisset**: *because he had expressed*, subjv. in a quoted reason.

12–14. **cum tribūnīs . . . ēgērunt, utī Caesarī satisfacerent**: *commissioned the tribunes . . . to apologize to Caesar*.

15–16. **dē summā bellī iūdicium**: *the decision as to the conduct of the war*. **suum, imperātōris**: predicate adjective

and predicate genitive, *nor had they thought the decision . . . was theirs, but their commander's.*

17–20. **itinere exquīsītō per Dīviciācum, . . . ut . . . dūceret**: translate freely, *having, with the help of Diviciacus, determined upon a route which led the army,* etc.; *exquīrō,* lit. *inquire about, ascertain; ut . . . dūceret* is lit. a clause of result, *so that he led.* **eī**: *in him,* dat. after *fidem habēbat;* cf. *legiōnī cōnfīdēbat,* 4–5. **mīlium**: gen. of measure; sc. *passuum.* **amplius**: adverb, with no effect on the construction; cf. **32**, 6. **locīs apertīs**: *along open ground;* for the abl. without a preposition see A. 429, a (258, g); B. 218, 9; H. 476; H-B. 436, a, N. This detour to the northeast, which was made to avoid the narrow and wooded valley of the Doubs, was merely part of the seven days' march. Caesar entered the valley of the Rhine by the pass of Belfort and pitched camp probably between the sites of Ostheim and Gemar.

21–22. **Septimō diē**: Caesar probably left Vesontio about August 23d. **cum iter nōn intermitteret**: *after an uninterrupted march.* **Ariovistī**: Ariovistus was encamped possibly between the sites of Dorlisheim and Rosheim.

25. CHAPTER 42. **quod**: object of *postulāsset,* with *id* as antecedent; translate freely, *Caesar's previous demand for a conference might be granted so far as he was concerned.*

Page 37. 1. **accessisset**: Caesar is the subject.

4. **petentī**: sc. *Caesarī,* dat. of indirect object; translate, *when Caesar requested it.*

5. **māgnam in spem veniēbat**: *he began to have high hopes.* **tantīs**: *great* (not *so great*), the regular translation of *tantus* when coupled with a possessive or a demonstrative.

6–7. **fore, utī dēsisteret**: *that he would abandon;* for the periphrasis see note on *Futūrum esse . . . utī,* **26**, 23. **pertināciā**: abl. of separation.

10. **nē**: *that,* after a verb of fearing; see note on *ut . . . posset,* **34**, 2. **per īnsidiās**: equivalent to an adverb, *treacherously.*

11–12. **uterque . . . venīret**: *let each of them come*, for direct *uterque nostrum veniat*. **nōn**: limits *ventūrum*; but translate with *aliā ratiōne*, *on no other terms*.

13. **interpositā causā**: abl. absolute, *by the intervention of any pretext*.

14. **neque**: *and (yet) not*. Possibly Caesar feared collusion between his Gallic cavalry and Ariovistus. The cavalry numbered 4000 at the beginning of the campaign.

15. **esse**: the subject is *impōnere*, hence the neuter predicate adjective, *commodissimum*.

16. **equitibus**: *from the horsemen*; for the case after *dētractīs* see A. 381 (229); B. 188, 2, d; G. 347, 5; H. 429, 2; H-B. 371. **eō**: for *in equōs*.

18. **sī quid opus factō esset**: *if there should be any need of action*. *quid* is acc. of degree, lit. *to any extent*. For *factō* governed by *opus* see A. 497, a (243, e, N.); B. 218, 2, c; G. 406; H. 477, III; H-B. 430, 2, b.

19. **Quod cum fieret**: *while this was being done*.

22. **ad equum rescrībere**: the point of the witticism lies in the double meaning, *was transferring them to the knights*, *was transferring them to the cavalry*. The *equitēs*, knights, formed an honorable and wealthy class in Rome. In earlier times they were identical with the *equitēs*, cavalry. In Caesar's time the cavalry was composed entirely of foreigners.

23. CHAPTER 43. **tumulus terrēnus**: *an earthen knoll*, identified by Colonel Stoffel with the Tertre de Plettig. The adjective *terrēnus* contrasts the character of the eminence with the rocky mountains not far distant.

25. **ut erat dictum**: *as had been agreed*.

26. **equīs**: *on horseback*, abl. of means.

Page 38. 1–2. **passibus, intervāllō**: abls. of degree of difference.

5. **Ubi eō ventum est**: *when they arrived there*; *ventum est* is an intransitive verb used impersonally in the passive.

6. **quod**: *that*, etc., explaining *beneficia*. **appellātus**

esset: subjv. of informal indirect discourse; the same verb is to be understood with *amīcus*.

7. **mūnera**: cf. the gifts sent to King Masinissa, a golden crown, a golden libation bowl, a curule chair, an ivory sceptre, and embroidered robes (Liv. XXX, 15).

8. **quam rem**: *this tribute.* **docēbat**: *he tried to show.*

9. **illum**: *he (however).* **cum**: *although.*

10–11. **aditum**: *opportunity*, lit. (*right of*) *access;* Ariovistus had not before been on such terms with Rome as to afford him any avenue of approach to the senate's favors. **suā**: i.e. Caesar's.

13–15. **quam veterēs**, etc.: indirect questions. **ipsīs . . . intercēderent**: *existed between themselves* (i.e. the Romans) *and the Haedui; ipsīs* is dative, lit. *for themselves.* **quae . . . quotiēns quamque honōrifica**: *what, how frequent, and how honorable.* **in eōs**: *in regard to them.*

16. **ut**: *how*, introducing an indirect question.

18. **adpetīssent**: subjv. in virtual indirect discourse, its clause depending on an indirect question; pluperfect for perfect indic. of direct discourse. **hanc**: explained by the appositive clause, *ut . . . vellet, to desire;* for *hanc* instead of *hōc* see A. 296, a (195, d); B. 246, 5; G. 211, R. 5; H. 396, 2; H-B. 326, 1.

19. **suī nihil**: *nothing of their own, nothing of what they had; suī* is a neuter substantive.

20–22. **grātiā**, etc.: *in influence*, etc., abls. of specification. **quod . . . attulissent**: (*as to*) *what they had brought*, etc., i.e. (*as to*) *what they had possessed before becoming friends of the Roman people*, viz. independence and leadership. **id . . . quis patī posset**: *who could suffer that to be wrested from them?* **eīs**: dat. of separation; cf. *equitibus*, **37**, 16. **posset**: for direct *possit;* for the mood see A. 587 (338, a); B. 315, 3; G. 651, R. 2; H. 642, 3; H-B. 503.

24. **nē . . . īnferret**, etc.: *that he should not make war, that he should return the hostages*, etc., explaining *eadem*. The form of the clause is the same as if directly the object of *Postulāvit*.

26. **at**: *yet at least.*

Page 39. 1–2. CHAPTER 44. **pauca**: *briefly.* **multa**: *at length.*

5. **habēre**: sc. *sē* as subject. **ipsīs**: i.e. the Gauls.

7. **cōnsuērint**: *are accustomed.*

9. **omnēs Galliae cīvitātēs**: i.e. the Haedui and allies.

10. **castra habuisse**: *had encamped, had engaged in hostilities.* **ūnō proeliō**: the battle of Magetobriga, cf. **27**, 2.

11–12. **experīrī**: used absolutely; for English *try it.* **velint**: for the sake of vividness present and perfect subjunctives are employed in the subordinate clauses through the greater part of this chapter, though the narrative begins with secondary tenses, *respondit, praedicāvit*, 1–2. **dēcertāre**: complementary infinitive, depending on *parātum.* Observe the force of *dē* in *dēcertāre, fight it out.*

13. **dē . . . recūsāre**: *object to, refuse to pay;* the infinitive is subject of *esse.*

15–16. **sibi ōrnāmentō . . . nōn dētrīmentō**: *a (source of) honor and protection to him, not of loss*, a dat. of the person along with a dat. of the purpose or end. **petīsse**: sc. *eam* as object.

20. **Quod . . . trādūcat**: *as to his bringing across.*

21. **suī mūniendī causā**: *to protect himself;* for the construction with *suī* see A. 504, c (298, a); B. 339, 5; G. 428, R. 1; H. 626, 3; H-B. 614.

22–23. **quod . . . dēfenderit**: a substantive clause, subject of *esse; dēfenderit* in the sense of *ward off*, with *bellum* as object, may be translated *act on the defensive.* **nisi rogātus**: *without being asked.*

24. **populum Rōmānum**: sc. *vēnisse; populus Rōmānus vēnerit* (or *vēnisset*) might have been expected, but the construction is attracted to that of *sē . . . vēnisse.*

26. **Quid sibi vellet**: *what did he* (Caesar) *mean?* lit. *wish for himself.* Observe the imperfect, the standpoint now shifting to the past.

Page 40. 1–4. **hanc Galliam**: *this (part of) Gaul.* **illam**: sc. *Galliam.* **nostram**: sc. *prōvinciam.* **Ut ipsī concēdī**

nōn oportēret: *just as there ought to be no yielding to him.* The infinitive is an impersonal passive, subject of *oportēret.* **quod . . . interpellārēmus**: *in disturbing him,* lit. *because we,* etc.

5. **Quod . . . dīceret**: *as for Caesar's statement.*

6–7. **imperītum rērum**: *unacquainted with the facts;* for the gen. see A. 349, a (218, a); B. 204, 1; G. 374; H. 451, 1; H-B. 354. **bellō proximō**: in 62–61 B.C.

9. **Haeduī**: the word is repeated unnecessarily.

11–12. **Dēbēre**: *ought,* in a logical sense, i.e. *was justified, had reason.* **simulātā . . . amīcitiā**: *though feigning friendship.* Observe the position of **Caesarem**, grammatical subject of *habēre,* but also the logical subject of the action in *simulātā.* **quem exercitum**: *the army which;* an example of an antecedent standing in the relative clause only, with no demonstrative in the antecedent clause. **suī opprimendī**: see note on *suī mūniendī,* **39**, 21.

13. **Quī nisi**: *unless he.*

15–17. **multīs**: Caesar's political enemies in Rome are meant. **grātum**: an adjective as a substantive, *something pleasing.* **id compertum habēre**: *had learned this;* for the perfect participle with *habeō* see A. 497, b (292, c); B. 337, 7; G. 238; H. 431, 3; H-B. 605, 5, a.

21–22. **quaecumque bella**: see note on *quem exercitum,* 11–12. **et . . . cōnfectūrum**: *by carrying to completion,* explaining *praemiō.* **ēius**: *on his part,* i.e. Caesar's.

23–24. CHAPTER 45. **in eam sententiam**: *to the effect,* or *purport;* translate with *quārē, in explanation of why.* **posset**: subjv. in an indirect question.

Page 41. 1–3. **patī, utī . . . dēsereret**: *allow him to abandon, that he abandon; patī* may govern an *ut* clause, instead of the usual infinitive clause, when negatived and with a thing as subject. **esse Ariovistī**: *belonged to Ariovistus.* **Bellō**: in 121 B.C., see Introd. 68.

4–5. **quibus**: dat. depending on *īgnōvisset,* A. 367 (227); B. 187, II, a; G. 346; H. 426, 2; H-B. 362. The real reason for

leaving these peoples free was their great distance from Rome and their inaccessibility.

6–7. **antīquissimum quodque tempus**: *priority of conquest*, lit. *each earliest date* (*of conquest*); alluding to Ariovistus's claim, **39**, 23–24.

9–10. **quam**: equiv. to *cum eam;* translate, *since, though defeated in war,* (*the senate*) *had been willing for it to enjoy its own laws.*

11. CHAPTER 46. **Dum . . . geruntur**: for the mood and tense with *dum* see A. 556 (276, e); B. 293, I; G. 229, R.; H. 604, 1; H-B. 559.

12. **propius tumulum**: for the acc. see A. 432, a (261, a); B. 141, 3; G. 359, N. 1; H. 420, 5; H-B. 380, b.

15. **nē quod omnīnō tēlum . . . rēicerent**: *not to hurl a single missile in return.*

16–19. **etsī . . . vidēbat**: *although he saw;* for the mood see A. 527, c (313, c); B. 309, 2; G. 604; H. 585; H-B. 582, 8. **committendum nōn putābat, ut,** etc.: *thought he ought not to make it possible for the enemy to say, if they were defeated,* etc.; the *ut* clause is subject of *committendum* (*esse*); *pulsīs hostibus* is an abl. absolute. **per fidem**: lit. *through a pledge;* may be translated, *treacherously.*

20–22. **quā arrogantiā ūsus**: equivalent to *quam arroganter, how insolently.* **omnī Galliā Rōmānīs interdīxisset**: *had denied the Romans rights in any part of Gaul; Galliā,* abl. of separation; *Rōmānīs,* dat. of the person, the regular case after *interdīcō, forbid.* **ut**: *how,* introducing an indirect question.

Page 42. 2. **exercituī**: dat. of indirect object after the compound *iniectum est, was infused in.*

4. CHAPTER 47. **agī coeptae essent**: for the passive of *coepī* see A. 205, a (143, a); B. 133, 1; G. 423, N. 3; H. 299, 1; H-B. 199, 2. **neque**: *and not,* or *but not.*

5–6. **utī . . . cōnstitueret**: *let him again set a day;* felt as an objective clause depending on a verb of requesting understood from the preceding sentence. **minus**: here, as frequently, a practical equivalent for *nōn.*

7–9. **Conloquendī**: in emphatic position. **causa vīsa nōn est**: *there seemed to be no reason.* **retinērī quīn . . . cōicerent**: *be restrained from hurling;* for the use of *quīn* see A. 558 (319, d); B. 295, 3, a; G. 555, 1; H. 595, 2; H-B. 502, 3, b.

12–13. **Procillum**: object of *mittere*, 18, which is the subject of *vīsum est.* **virtūte, humānitāte**: abl. of quality.

14–15. **Flaccō**: governor of the Transalpine province in 83. **cīvitāte dōnātus erat**: *had been presented with citizenship.* Roman citizenship was sometimes bestowed on a provincial subject as a mark of honor for some service rendered. The recipient commonly adopted, as in this case, the nomen and praenomen of his benefactor, retaining his former name, *Caburus* here, as a cognomen.

16–18. **quā multā . . . ūtēbātur**: *which Ariovistus now spoke readily;* observe the adjective *multā* instead of an adverb. **in eō**: *in his case.* **Germānīs esset**: *the Germans had.* The subjv. *esset* is due to the informal indirect discourse introduced by *vīsum est.* Presumably Ariovistus would feel more kindly towards a Gaul than towards a Roman. A Gaul, too, would not be so valuable to retain as a hostage.

22–24. **quid venīrent**: for the direct *quid venītis?* **an speculandī causā**: *was it to play the spy?* for the use of *an* see A. 335, b (211, b); B. 162, 4, a; G. 457, 1; H. 380, 3; H-B. 234. **Cōnantēs . . . prohibuit**: *when they tried to speak he stopped them.*

Page 43. 3. Chapter 48. **praeter castra**: that Caesar did nothing to prevent this movement was due probably to the fact that Ariovistus moved along the lower slopes of the mountains, where he could not be attacked readily.

4–6. **eō cōnsiliō, utī . . . interclūderet**: *with the design of cutting off;* as in **24**, 18, *cōnsiliō* anticipates, and is explained by, a clause of purpose. **supportārētur**: subjv. by attraction.

7–9. **aciem īnstrūctam habuit**: *kept his line of battle in array.* See plan, 1st position. **sī vellet**: the verb in a condition future

to a past verb (*habuit*) regularly stands in the subjv., imperf. or pluperf. **eī ut . . . nōn deesset**: *that he might not lack*, a clause of purpose, *nōn* being taken closely with *deesset*. Observe the dat. with *deesset*, lit. *be lacking to him*, and cf. the dative of possession, *Germānīs*, **42**, 17, used with *esset*.

10–11. **exercitum**: here used of the infantry alone. **continuit, contendit**: adversative asyndeton, *but*.

12. **quō**: *in which*.

13–14. **totidem numerō**: *the same number of*, lit. *in number*, abl. of specification. **cōpiā**: equivalent to *multitūdine*. **singulī singulōs**: with *singulī* sc. *equitēs*, with *singulōs* sc. *peditēs*; translate, *one for each horseman*.

15–17. **hīs**: sc. *peditibus*. Observe the imperfects of repeated or customary action, **versābantur**, *would engage*, etc.; also the pluperfect **dēciderat**, *had fallen*. **hī**: the infantry. **dūrius**: *unusually serious*. **graviōre**: *unusually severe*.

18–19. **sī quō**, etc.: *if it was necessary to advance to some point farther than usual or to withdraw with unusual speed; erat prōdeundum* and (*erat*) *recipiendum* are impersonal. **sublevātī**: *supported by, holding on*. In the campaign of 52 Caesar himself employed some of these German cavalrymen with their attendant infantry. The Gauls are reported as employing the same tactics in 52. In the Civil War Caesar also made use of similar tactics with his own men.

21–23. CHAPTER 49. **nē . . . prohibērētur**: purpose of *dēlēgit* and *mūnīre iussit*. **locō**: an antecedent repeated in the relative clause, and to be omitted in translation.

Page 44. 2. **castra**: the smaller camp; see the plan.

4. **expedīta**: limits *mīlia*, but to be translated with *hominum*.

5–6. **quae . . . terrērent**: *to terrify*; *cōpiae* (to be omitted in translation) is the appositional antecedent incorporated as usual in the relative clause, with the relative *quae* attracted to agree with it in gender. **mūnītiōne**: here used of *the work of constructing camp*.

11. CHAPTER 50. **īnstitūtō suō**: *according to his practice, as usual.*

13. **aciem**: see plan, 2d position.

17–18. **Āoriter . . . pūgnātum est**: *the battle, waged fiercely by both sides, lasted till evening; pūgnātum est* is an impersonal passive.

21–22. **quam ob rem**: *why*, lit. *on account of what thing*, introducing an indirect question. **proeliō dēcertāret**: *fight a decisive battle.*

23–25. **quod . . . esset**: *that it was the custom*, explaining *causam.* **ut . . . dēclārārent**: *for the matrons to make known*, explaining *cōnsuētūdō*. The lots were rods inscribed with runes. Tacitus (*Germania*, 10) assigns to the priests the interpreting of lots in regard to public matters. The practice may have varied among different tribes. The same historian tells us that the Germans attributed to their women in general a certain prophetic power. **vāticinātiōnibus**: perhaps prophecies from observing the flight and cries of birds, and the eddies of rivers, as related by Tacitus and Plutarch. **utrum . . . necne**: *whether . . . or not*, a double indirect question. **ex ūsū**: *expedient, advantageous.*

26–27. **nōn esse fās**: *it was not decreed, it was not the will of the gods.* **sī . . . contendissent**: *if they should fight*, for future perf. indic. of direct discourse. **proeliō**: the context suggests *a general* or *decisive battle.* **novam lūnam**: Sept. 18th. A superstitious regard for the phases of the moon is common among barbarian peoples. Tacitus (*Germania*, 11) says that the German popular assemblies were held either at the new or full moon.

Page 45. 1–2. CHAPTER 51. **Postrīdiē**: the battle was fought presumably about Sept. 14th. **praesidiō utrīsque castrīs**: *to guard both camps*, two datives, of the purpose and the thing served. **quod . . . vīsum est relīquit**: *left what seemed a sufficient (force).*

4–5. **minus . . . prō hostium numerō valēbat**: *was not so*

strong . . . as the enemy, lit. *in comparison with the number of the enemy.*

10. **raedīs, carrīs**: abl. of means.

11. **Eō**: for *in raedās et carrōs.*

12-13. **proficīscentēs**: *as they went*, limiting *mīlitēs.* **nē**: *not to.*

15-17. Chapter 52. **singulīs**, etc.: five legions were commanded each by a legatus, a sixth by the quaestor. See Introd. 12, 14. **testēs**: *as witnesses.* **ā dextrō cornū**: *on the right wing*, i.e. of the Roman line. **eam partem**: i.e. the German left wing.

19-21. **Ita**: limits *ācriter.* **sīgnō datō**: *when the command was given.* **itaque**: equivalent to *et ita*, *ita* limiting *repente* and *celeriter.* **spatium cōiciendī**: *time to hurl.* See Introd. 33. **pīla**: object of the gerund *cōiciendī*; what is the usual construction? **Rēiectīs**: *throwing aside.*

22. **comminus gladiīs pūgnātum est**: *they engaged at close quarters with swords.*

23. **ex**: *according to.* **phalange**: see note on *phalange*, **20**, 24. Each tribe may have formed a separate phalanx; in that case the plural should be read in **46**, 1.

Page 46. 1-2. **phalanga**: acc. singular, A. 81, 3 (63, f); B. 47, 1; G. 66, 3; H. 109, 3; H-B. 95. **vulnerārent**: *inflicted wounds*, used absolutely.

5. **P. Crassus**: son of the triumvir, Marcus Crassus. He was killed by the Parthians in 53 at the battle of Carrhae. **expedītior**: *more free to act*, the cavalry not yet having joined battle.

7. **tertiam aciem**: the third line constituted a reserve force. See Introd. 33. **labōrantibus nostrīs subsidiō**: *to the support of our hard-pressed men.*

10-12. Chapter 53. **prius quam . . . pervēnērunt**: for the mood see A. 551, a (327); B. 291, 2; G. 576; H. 605, I; H-B. 561. **vīribus cōnfīsī**: *relying on their strength*; for the case with *confīsus* see A. 431 (254, b); B. 219, 1; G. 401, n. 6; H. 476, 3; H-B. 437. **mīlia quīnque**: the text is probably

incorrect, as the Rhine was about fifteen miles distant. Possibly the Germans fled down the valley of the Ill, as indicated on the campaign map.

14–15. **Ariovistus**: his death is mentioned in Bk. V. How soon after this battle it occurred is not known. **eā**: *in it*, abl. of means. **reliquōs omnēs**: 80,000 fell in the battle and rout, according to Plutarch and Appian.

16–20. **Duae uxōrēs**: polygamy among the Germans was confined to the chiefs, according to Tacitus. **nātiōne**: *by birth*, abl. of specification. **dūxerat**: *had brought;* in 18, *had married*. **duae fīliae**: sc. *fuērunt*.

Page 47. 1–3. **Procillus**: cf. **42**, 12. **trīnīs**: *triple*, distributive numeral, because *catēnae* is usually employed in the plural, A. 137, b (95, b); B. 81, 4, b; G. 97, 3; H. 164, 3; H-B. 247, a. **in ipsum Caesarem incidit**: *fell into Caesar's own hands*. **quidem**: emphasizes the word immediately preceding, *and that was a circumstance which*.

7–8. **ēius calamitāte**: *by disaster to him*. **neque dē . . . quicquam fortūna dēminuerat**: *and because fortune had not subtracted anything from*, or *had not diminished*. **grātulātiōne**: in a reflexive sense, *self-congratulation*, *rejoicing*.

9–10. **ter sortibus cōnsultum**: *three times the lots had been consulted; sortibus*, abl. of means; *cōnsultum (esse)*, impersonal. Three was a sacred number in connection with the interpretation of lots among the Germans. **utrum**, etc.: *whether he should be burned at once or be reserved for another time*, double deliberative question, indirect, A. 575, b (338, a); B. 315, 3; G. 265, 651, R. 2; H. 559, 4, 642, 3; H-B. 503. **sortium beneficiō**: *thanks to the lots*.

15. Chapter 54. **Ubiī**: from Bk. IV we learn that the Ubii and Suebi were enemies of long standing. **Rhēnum**: acc. after *proximī;* cf. *propius tumulum*, **41**, 12.

18–19. **mātūrius paulō**: the latter part of September, or early in October. **in Sēquanōs**: the troops were probably quartered at Vesontio for the winter.

20. **ad conventūs agendōs**: *to hold court.* The governorship of a province combined both executive and judicial functions. Caesar probably left judicial duties in the Transalpine province to some subordinate, reserving Cisalpine Gaul for himself. Here he could more easily keep in touch with friends and with political affairs in Rome.



Scutum.

BOOK II.

INTRODUCTION.

War with the Belgae. — Whether Caesar had fully determined upon the conquest of Gaul before leaving Rome, we do not know. At all events the quartering of his army outside the province at the close of the first year's campaigns, and among a people not at war with Rome, made it clear that the project of conquest was now at least, if it had not been before, a well-defined purpose. In consequence, the Belgae of the north, alive to the meaning of the past year's events, formed a defensive league during the winter of 58–57, and prepared to resist any inroads upon their part of the Gallic land.

Caesar, informed of the situation by his trusted lieutenant, Labienus, enlisted two new legions in his Cisalpine province, bringing the total up to eight. With these legions he marched north in the summer of 57, friendly tribes meanwhile reporting the concentration of the Belgic forces. At Caesar's approach one Belgic tribe, the Remi, seized the opportunity to ingratiate themselves with the conqueror, and were thereafter as friends and allies accorded by Caesar a position of importance in the north second only to that of the Haedui in central Gaul.

The Haeduan allies were now sent to ravage the country of the Bellovaci, the most influential Belgic tribe, while Caesar entrenched his army on the north bank of the river Aisne and awaited the vast host of the Belgae. Unsuccessful in an attack on Bibrax, stronghold of the Remi, the Belgae proceeded against Caesar. Minor engagements followed, but without bringing on a decisive battle. The Belgae, learning of the movement of the Haedui, and being hard pressed for supplies,

disbanded their forces, each tribal contingent returning to the defense of its own territory. Caesar availed himself of the obvious advantage thus offered and forced the surrender of one tribe after another in rapid succession. He then marched against the Nervii and their allies. Their sudden attack upon the Roman army, while busy at the work of constructing a camp, tested to the utmost the self-reliance, discipline, and courage of the individual soldier, and resulted in a battle the most desperate of the war thus far. In the end victory fell to the Romans. The Nervii, completely crushed for the present, sent envoys to offer their submission.

Upon hearing of this victory the Atuatuci, who were on their way to reënforce the Nervii, returned home and rallied in their chief town, a place possessed of strong natural fortifications and accessible only on one side by a narrow approach. Caesar hemmed them in by lines of circumvallation and constructed a siege mole along the narrow slope. Dismayed by this method of attack and in particular by the approach of the tower, the townspeople sued for peace. Part of their arms, however, they concealed at the time of surrender, and in the dead of night essayed an attack on the Roman works. They were repulsed with heavy loss and on the following day 53,000 were sold into slavery.

Close of the Campaign. — Publius Crassus, meanwhile, with one legion had brought about the submission of certain maritime tribes of northwestern Gaul.

Before leaving for Italy Caesar distributed his legions in winter quarters in such a way as to guard the newly conquered territory, and especially that of the maritime peoples, whose submission could as yet be hardly more than half-hearted. In honor of Caesar's victories the Roman senate voted a thanksgiving of fifteen days.

BOOK II.

WAR WITH THE BELGAE, 1–33.

Page 48. 1. CHAPTER 1. **esset**: for mood and tense see A. 546 (325); B. 288, B; G. 585; H. 600, II; H-B. 524. **ita utī**: *just as.* **suprā**: see **47**, 20.

2. **dēmōnstrāvimus**: the "editorial we" of Caesar the author. **adferēbantur**: imperfect of repeated occurrences, *reached him from time to time, kept coming to him;* so also *fīēbat*, 3.

3. **litterīs**: most frequently singular in meaning, *a letter*, but here plural, *despatches.* **Labiēnī**: Labienus was in charge of winter quarters; see **47**, 19. **Belgās . . . coniūrāre**, etc.: *that the Belgae were forming a league*, indirect discourse, A. 580 (336); B. 314; G. 650; H. 642, 643; H-B. 534.

4. **quam**: *who* (subject of *esse*), used instead of *quōs*, being attracted to agreement with the predicate noun, *partem*, A. 306 (199); B. 250, 3; G. 614, R. 3, b; H. 396, 2; H-B. 326, 1. **dīxerāmus**: indicative in an explanatory remark of the author's; the perfect might have been employed, as in 2, above.

5. **inter sē dare**: *were exchanging; sē* is here and often used as a reciprocal pronoun.

6–7. **Coniūrandī**: gen. of the gerund depending on *causās.* **hās**: *these, as follows*, explained by the *quod* clauses, *because*, or *that*, etc. **verērentur**: subjv. in a subordinate clause in indirect discourse. **nē**: *that;* for the construction after a verb of fearing see A. 564 (331, f); B. 296, 2; G. 550, 2; H. 567; H-B. 502, 4, a. **omnī pācātā Galliā**; abl. absolute with conditional force, *if all Gaul should be subdued*, A. 420, 4 (255, d, 4); B. 227, 2, b; G. 410; H. 489, 1; H-B. 421, 6. Celtic Gaul is meant.

8–9. **partim** (sc. *ab eīs*) **quī**: *partly by those who*, or *some of*

whom. **ut . . . ita**: correlatives, *just as . . . so.* Beginning with *partim quī* the indirect discourse is dropped, what follows being stated as on the authority of the writer.

10–11. **exercitum . . . inveterāscere**: an infinitive clause depending on *molestē ferēbant, resented it, that;* cf. *Germānōs versārī*, 9, depending on *nōluerant, had been unwilling for.* **partim quī**: *while others.* **mōbilitāte et levitāte**: abls. of cause. Caesar more than once remarks upon the instability of the Gallic character.

12. **imperiīs**: for the dative after *studēbant* see A. 367 (227); B. 187, II, a; G. 346, R. 2; H. 426, 1; H-B. 462, II. **ab nōn nūllīs**: sc. *sollicitābantur.* Here appears a fourth reason for the Gallic unrest, the personal ambition of powerful chiefs, certain to be thwarted under Roman dominion.

13–14. **ad condūcendōs hominēs**: *for hiring men*, gerundive construction. For the fact compare the case of Dumnorix, **15**, 24–25. **occupābantur**: conative imperfect; translate active, *the more powerful . . . were trying to gain.*

15. **quī**: *and they.* **eam rem**: referring to the acquiring of royal power. **imperiō nostrō**: *under our sovereignty*, abl. of attendant circumstances, A. 423 (256); B. 221; G. 399; H. 477, 3; H-B. 422, I.

Explain the construction of **litterīs** 3, **Gallīs** 8, **occupābantur** 14. Give the principal parts of **adferēbantur** 2, **fīēbat** 3, **verērentur** 6, **nōluerant** 9, **inveterāscere** 10, **studēbant** 12, **cōnsequī** 15.

17–18. CHAPTER 2. **duās legiōnēs**: the 13th and 14th. Six legions were already quartered among the Sequani; see **47**, 18–19. **initā aestāte**: *at the beginning of summer*, abl. absolute. *aestās* is probably used to include the time between the spring and autumn equinoxes.

Page 49. 1. **quī dēdūceret**: *to lead*, relative clause of purpose, A. 531, 2 (317, 2); B. 282, 2; G. 630; H. 590; H-B. 502, 2. *Pedium* is the antecedent of *quī*.

2. **cum prīmum**: *as soon as*, usually takes the indicative.

3–5. **Dat**: historical present. **negōtium**: *the duty*, explained by the appositive clause, *utī . . . cōgnōscant*, etc., *of finding out . . . and informing him.* **Belgīs**: dat. after *fīnitimī*, A. 384 (234, a); B. 192, 1, a; G. 359; H. 434, 2; H-B. 362, III. **gerantur**: subjv. by attraction, A. 593 (342); B. 324, 1; G. 663, 1; H. 652; H-B. 539.

8. **dubitandum** (*esse*) **nōn quīn . . . proficīscerētur**: *he ought not to hesitate to proceed against them; dubitandum* is impersonal. For the *quīn* clause see A. 558, a, N. 2 (332, g, N. 2); B. 298, b; G. 555, R. 3; H. 595, 1; H-B. 502, 3, b.

9. **Rē prōvīsā**: abl. absolute, *after providing for supplies.* **diēbus**: abl. of time within which, in the course of which.

Construction of **Senonibus** 3, **erant** 4, **manūs** 6. Principal parts of **initā 48**, 18; **inciperet 49**, 3, **gerantur**, **cōgnōscant** 5, **cōgī** 7, **proficīscerētur** 8.

11. CHAPTER 3. **celerius omnium opīniōne**: *sooner than any one expected;* for the case of *opīniōne* see A. 406 (247); B. 217, 1; G. 398; H. 471; H-B. 416.

12–13. **vēnisset**: for mood and tense see references on *esset*, **48**, 1. **Rēmī**: these people had been more or less under the dominion of the Suessiones. **proximī ex Belgīs**: *the nearest of the Belgae.* **Galliae**: dative after *proximī;* see references on *Belgīs*, 4, above. **prīmōs**: *leading men.*

14. **quī dīcerent**: a relative clause of purpose. **sē**: object of *permittere;* another *sē* is to be understood as subject; its repetition would have seemed awkward. For the principles of indirect discourse see references on *Belgās . . . coniūrāre*, **48**, 3. **sua omnia**: *all their possessions*, the possessive adjective in the neuter plural as a substantive.

15. **neque**: *and not*, serves as a connective, and as a correlative with the following *neque.*

17. **coniūrāsse**: for the contracted form see A. 181, a (128, a, 1); B. 116, 1; G. 131, 1; H. 238; H-B. 163, 1. **-que**: may be translated *and*, or *but.* **dare**: infinitive, complementary to *parātōs*, *ready to give*, etc.

18. **oppidīs**: *in their towns.*

19. **Germānōs**: see **50**, 29-30.

21-25. **ut . . . dēterrēre potuerint, quīn . . . cōnsentīrent**: *that they have not been able to deter even the Suessiones from uniting with them.* *potuerint* is subjv. in a clause of result. For the *quīn* clause see A. 558 (332, g); B. 295, 3, a; G. 555, 1; H. 595, 2; H-B. 502, 3, b. **iūre, lēgibus**: for the abl. with *ūtor* see A. 410 (249); B. 218, 1; G. 407; H. 477, I; H-B. 429. Before *ūnum* a conjunction is to be supplied, *and.* The omission of a conjunction is called asyndeton.

Observe that the tenses in 15-25, though dependent on a past, *dīcerent*, are given a present standpoint, as the present subjunctives show, for vivid effect. *cōnsentīrent*, however, is imperfect depending on *potuerint*, which represents a present perfect of a direct statement. The present perfect may be followed in a dependent clause either by a present or an imperfect subjv., as the act is seen in connection with the present or the past.

Construction of **prīmōs** 13, **frūmentō** 18, **incolant** 20, **ūtantur** 23. Principal parts of **cōnsēnsisse** 16, **iuvāre** 19, **incolant, coniūnxisse** 20, **ūtantur**, 23.

27. CHAPTER 4. **essent, possent**: for the mood see A. 574 (334); B. 300, 1; G. 467; H. 649, II; H-B. 537, b. **quid**: acc. expressing degree, with *possent, how strong they were;* see A. 390, c (238, b); B. 176, 3; G. 334; H. 409, 1; H-B. 387, III.

Page 50. 1. **plērōsque Belgās**, etc., to the end of the chapter, indirect discourse. **ortōs ā Germānīs**: for the abl. see A. 403, a, N. 1 (244, a, R.); B. 215, 2; G. 395; H. 469, 1; H-B. 413, b. Possibly the Belgae had some admixture of German blood, but the statement here made was based rather upon the fact that the ancestors of the Belgae had come from the country east of the Rhine, which was true also of the ancestors of the Celtae. **Rhēnum**: for the case governed by *trāns* in *trāductōs* see A. 395, N. 2 (239, 2, b, N. 2); B. 179, 1, 3; G. 331, R. 1.; H. 413; H-B. 386, a.

4-5. **quī . . . prohibuerint**: the clause is characterizing and would therefore retain the subjv. in direct discourse; A.

535, b (320, b); B. 283, 1, 2; G. 631, 2; H. 591, 5; H-B. 521, 1. **memoriā**: *in the time*, abl. of time. **omnī Galliā vexātā**: *when*, etc., abl. absolute. **Teutonōs, Cimbrōs**: see note on *Cimbrī Teutonīque*, **28**, 27. **ingredī**: *from invading*; an infinitive with or without an accusative is the regular construction employed by Caesar after *prohibeō*.

6–8. **quā ex rē fierī, utī**, etc.: *the result of this was, that*, etc.; the *uti* clause is a substantive clause of result, subject of *fierī*; see A. 569, 1 (332, a, 1); B. 297, 2; G. 553, 3; H. 571, 1; H-B. 521, 3, a. **memoriā**: abl. of cause.

9. **omnia sē habēre explōrāta**: *they had complete information*; differs from *explōrāvisse* in marking the continued result. A. 497, b (292, c); B. 337, 7; G. 238; H. 640, 2; H-B. 605, 5, a.

11. **quisque**: *each* (*Belgic representative*).

12. **pollicitus sit**: subjv. in an indirect question. For the sequence of tenses in this and the following finite verbs see note on **49**, 21–25, second paragraph.

13–14. **Plūrimum**: acc. of degree with *valēre, were the foremost*; cf. *quid* with *possent*, **49**, 27. **virtūte, auctōritāte, numerō**: *in valor*, etc., abls. of specification.

15. **armāta, ēlēcta**: limit *mīlia*, equivalent to *armātōrum, ēlēctōrum*. **pollicitōs**: sc. *esse*.

20. **cum . . . tum**: *not only . . . but also*.

21. **Britanniae**: probably only the southern coast is meant.

22–23. **ad hunc**: *upon him*, after *dēferrī*. **omnium voluntāte**: *by general consent*; for the abl. see A. 418, a (253, N.); B. 220, 3; G. 408; H. 475, 3; H-B. 414, a.

24–25. **numerō**: *in number*, abl. of specification. **Nerviōs**: sc. *pollicērī*, also with the following accusative tribal names. **ipsōs**: the Belgae.

30. **Germānī**: see **49**, 19. If "German" is used in the sense now attached to it, it is nevertheless quite probable that the tribes here mentioned had intermingled with the Gallic population. At all events they were able to make the Gallic cause their own. **appellantur**: indicative in a remark inserted by the author; cf. *dīxerāmus*, **48**, 4. **arbitrārī**: sc. as subject

sē, referring to the Reman envoys. **Condrūsōs**, etc.: subjects of *posse cōnficere* to be supplied.

Construction of **quaereret 49**, 26; **sibi 50**, 7, **propinquitātibus** 10, **cōgnōverint** 13, **sibi** 16, **nōmine** 29. Principal parts of **expulisse** 3, **ingredī** 5, **possidēre** 18, **dēferrī** 23.

Page 51. 1. Chapter 5. **līberāliter**: translate as if an adjective, with *ōrātiōne*.

2-4. **senātum convenīre, līberōs addūcī**: infinitive clauses, the regular construction after *iubeō*. *Senātus* is of course a Latin term applied to a Gallic deliberative body. **Quae omnia**: *all these commands*. **ad diem**: *punctually*. **Ipse**: Caesar. **Dīviciācum**: see note on *Dīviciācī*, **3**, 15.

5-7. **quantō opere . . . intersit**: indirect question, *how much it is to the interest of the state*, with *manūs . . . distinērī*, *that the forces of the enemy be divided*, infinitive clause as subject of *intersit*. **reī pūblicae, salūtis**: for the case with *intersit* see A. 355 (222); B. 210, 211, 1; G. 381; H. 449, 1, 2; H-B. 345. The Roman commonwealth is meant, while *commūnis* refers to Romans and Haedui. **nē . . . cōnflīgendum sit**: *in order that it may not be necessary to fight*, a clause of purpose, with impersonal use of the second periphrastic.

8-9. **Id fierī posse**: *this* (*Caesar shows him*) *can be done.* **intrōdūxerint, coeperint**: perfect subjunctives for future perfect indicatives of direct discourse.

11. **ūnum locum**: doubtless some point north of the Aisne.

12-15. **coāctās ad sē venīre**: *had assembled and were coming;* the perfect participle replaces an infinitive coördinate with *venīre*. **neque**: *and not*, the negative to be taken with *longē*. **ab eīs explōrātōribus**: after *cōgnōvit*. **flūmen**: acc. governed by the *trāns* in *trādūcere*, while *exercitum* is the direct object. Cf. *Rhēnum*, **50**, 1, where the direct object has become subject of the passive. **quod**: agreeing with *flūmen* in gender. Sometimes the name of the river is the antecedent in such combinations. **ibi**: at modern Berry-au-Bac, north of the river. Remains of the entrenchments here described have

been found by excavation. **Quae rēs**: *this move*, or *position.* **rēs**, *thing,* should be translated definitely according to the context.

17–19: **post eum quae erant**: *the country behind him; ea* is to be understood as antecedent of *quae* and object of *reddēbat.* **tūta**: in the predicate. **commeātūs . . . ut . . . portārī possent, efficiēbat**: *made it possible for supplies to be brought.* For the substantive *ut* clause see A. 568 (332); B. 297, 1; G. 553, 1; H. 571, 3; H-B. 521, 3, a. Observe the displacement of *ut* from its normal position at the head of its clause, in order to emphasize *commeātūs.* **In**: *over, across.*

20. **ibi**: i.e. at the north end of the bridge. **in alterā parte**: at the south end, the site of the *castellum* mentioned in **54**, 15.

22–23. **pedum**: limits *vāllō;* for the genitive see A. 345, b (215, b); B. 203, 2; G. 365, 2; H. 440, 3; H-B. 355. **duodēvīgintī pedum**: sc. *in lātitūdinem.* The dimensions of a ditch are to be understood of the width unless otherwise specified. The depth may have been nine or ten feet.

Construction of **obsidēs, hīs** 3, **intersit** 6, **mandātīs** 10, **vīdit** 12, **mīserat** 13, **rīpīs** 16, **erant** 17. Principal parts of **prōsecūtus** 1, **distinērī, cōnflīgendum sit** 7, **intrōdūxerint** 9, **posuit** 15, **reddēbat** 17, **relinquit** 21.

24. Chapter 6. **nōmine**: *by name*, abl. of specification.

25. **ex itinere**: *in the course of their march*, i.e. against Caesar. **impetū**: abl. of manner, A. 412 (248); B. 220, 1; G. 399; H. 473, 3; H-B. 445, 3.

26. **sustentātum est**: *they held out, the defence was maintained,* impersonal passive.

Page 52. 1. **eadem atque**: *the same as; atque* following words of likeness and equality is to be rendered *as*, after words of difference, *than.* **haec**: *as follows.*

2–3. **circumiectā multitūdine**: abl. absolute, but translate the participle as coördinate with *coeptī sunt.* The latter is to be translated *have begun;* for the passive see A. 205, a (143, a);

B. 133, 1; G. 423, N. 3; H. 299, 1; H-B. 199, 2. **moenibus**: dat. governed by *circumiectā*, A. 370 (228); B. 187, III; G. 347; H. 429, 2; H-B. 376. **dēfēnsōribus**: abl. of separation.

4. **testūdine**: see Introd. 34 for the Roman *testūdō*. The Gallic formation was doubtless the same.

5. **Quod**: *a thing which, this plan*, a frequent use of the neuter relative referring to an act or state of affairs expressed by a preceding sentence. **tum**: *on this occasion.* **cum**: *when*, or *since*.

6–7. **cōicerent**: plural because of the individuals implied in the collective *multitūdō*. **in mūrō**, etc.: *it was impossible for any one to maintain his position on the wall*, lit. *to no one was there the power*, etc. **nūllī**: for the case see A. 373 (231); B. 190; G. 349; H. 430; H-B. 374. **cōnsistendī**: lit. *of standing*, objective gen. after *potestās*.

8. **summā nōbilitāte**: (*a man*) *of the highest rank*, abl. of quality, A. 415 (251); B. 224; G. 400; H. 473, 2; H-B. 443. **suōs**: *his people.*

9. **oppidō**: dat. of indirect object governed by the compound *praeerat;* see references on *moenibus*, 2, above. **lēgātī**: *as envoys*, predicate nominative.

10–11. **nūntiōs mittit**: *sends messengers* (*to say*), followed by indirect discourse, *nisi*, etc. **submittātur**: represents a future indic. of direct discourse. **sustinēre**: *hold out*, the verb being used absolutely, i.e. without an object.

Construction of **mīlia 51**, 25, **Gallōrum 52**, 1, **testūdine** 4, **cōicerent** 6, **oppūgnandī, fēcisset** 7, **sibi** 11. Principal parts of **circumiectā** 2, **iacī** 3, **subruunt** 5, **cōnsistendī** 6, **submittātur, sustinēre** 11.

12. CHAPTER 7. **dē mediā nocte**: *after midnight.* **ducibus**: *as guides.* **ūsus**: *employing.* The perfect participle of *ūtor* and some other deponents may be employed with present force.

13. **Crētas**: for the form see A. 81, 5 (63, f); B. 47, 3; G. 66, 4; H. 109, 5; H-B. 95.

14. **subsidiō oppidānīs**: *to the aid of the townspeople;* for

the two datives see A. 382, 1 (233, a); B. 191, 2; G. 356; H. 433; H-B. 360, b.

15–17. **quōrum adventū**: *at their arrival,* the abl. of time with accessory idea of cause. **Rēmīs . . . studium . . . accessit**: *the Remi were inspired with eagerness.* **hostibus . . . spēs . . . discessit**: *the enemy lost hope;* for the dative see A. 381 (229); B. 188, 2, d; G. 352; H. 427; H-B. 371. **potiundī oppidī**: gerundive construction. **morātī**: limiting *hostēs* to be supplied as subject of *contendērunt* and *posuērunt.*

19–20. **quō**: adv., equivalent to *ad quae.* **incēnsīs**: translate active, in coördination with the preceding participles. **omnibus cōpiīs**: *with all their forces;* observe that *cum* is not used, A. 413, a (248, a, N.); B. 222, 1; G. 392, R. 1; H. 474, 2, N.; H-B. 420. **ā**: *away.* **mīlibus**: may be abl. of degree of difference with *ā*, or abl. of comparison after *minus.* In 22 *mīlibus* is abl. after the comparative *amplius.* See A. 414, 406, c (250, 247, c); B. 223, 217, 3; G. 403, 296, 4; H. 479, 3, 471, 4; H-B. 424, 416, d.

21. **quae castra**: *this camp.* **ut**: *as.*

Construction of **īsdem** 12, **nūntiī** 13, **Rēmīs** 15, **vīcīs** 18, **potuerant** 19, **fūmō, īgnibus, sīgnificābātur** 22. Principal parts of **accessit** 16, **incēnsīs** 19, **patēbant** 23.

25. CHAPTER 8. **opīniōnem virtūtis**: *reputation for valor.* **proeliō**: abl. of separation.

Page 53. 1–2. **quid hostis virtūte posset et quid nostrī audērent**: *what the valor of the enemy and what the daring of our men,* indirect questions. *quid* is acc. of degree, *virtūte* abl. of specification. **perīclitābātur**: *tried to find,* imperfect of repeated action.

3–4. **locō . . . idōneō**: abl. absolute, *as the ground was naturally favorable and adapted.* **prō castrīs**: *in front of the camp;* referring to the ridge southwest of the camp. **ad aciem īnstruendam**: *for drawing up a line of battle,* gerundive construction; see A. 506 (300); B. 339, 2; G. 432; H. 628; H-B. 612, III.

5–8. **paululum ēditus**: about eighty feet. **tantum . . .**

patēbat: *in front extended just as far (in width)*, **quantum locī**, *as the space which;* translate freely as though *locī* (gen. of the whole) limited *tantum*, *afforded just the amount of space in front which his line of battle in array could cover.* *tantum* is acc. of degree or extent, *quantum* is the object of *occupāre*, *adversus* limits *collis*. **ex utrāque parte**: *on both sides*, i.e. northwest and southeast. **lateris dēiectūs**: *lateral declivities.* **in fronte**; i.e. along the ridge to the southwest.

9–10. **ab utrōque latere**: *on each side*, i.e. to the northwest and southeast, Caesar meaning by *the hill* the highest part of the ridge, occupied by his camp. **passuum**: for the gen. of quality or measure see references on *pedum*, **51**, 22.

11. **ad extrēmās fossās**: *at the ends of the ditches;* for the use of the adjective *extrēmās* see A. 293 (193); B. 241, 1; G. 291, R. 2; H. 497, 4; H-B. 244.

12–14. **tormenta**: Introd. 29. **nē . . . possent**: a clause of purpose. **īnstrūxisset**: *should draw up;* for the mood see A. 593 (342); B. 324, 1; G. 663, 1; H. 652, 1; H-B. 508, 509. **quod . . . poterant**: equivalent to *because of their superior numbers.* *poterant* is indicative in an explanatory reason given parenthetically by the writer. **multitūdine**: abl. of specification. **ab lateribus**: *on the flanks, by a flanking movement.* **pūgnantēs suōs**: *his men while they fought, his men in battle.* **duābus**: the 13th and 14th.

Page 54. 2. **sī quō opus esset**: sc. *eās dūcī*, *if it should be necessary for them to be led anywhere, if they should be needed anywhere.* For the mood of *esset* see references on *īnstrūxisset*, **53**, 12. **subsidiō**: dat. of purpose, *as reënforcements.*

4. **ēductās īnstrūxērunt**: *led out and drew up.* For the participle translated coördinately with the verb see A. 496, N. 2 (292, R.); B. 337, 5; G. 664, R. 1; H. 639; H-B. 604, 1.

Construction of **proeliīs 53**, 1, **posset** 2, **nostrōs**, **īnferiōrēs** 3, **patēbat** 6, **poterat** 7, **Hōc** 14; **possent 54**, 2. Principal parts of **audērent 53**, 2, **intellēxit** 3, **redībat** 9, **īnstrūxisset** 12; **relictīs 54**, 1.

5. CHAPTER 9. **Palūs**: i.e. the marshy ground along the brook Miette.

6. **Hanc sī nostrī trānsīrent, hostēs exspectābant**: *the enemy were waiting, in case our men should cross this*, almost equivalent to *were waiting to see if our men would cross*, A. 576, a (334, f); B. 300, 3; G. 460, 1, b; H. 649, II, 3; H-B. 582, 2.

7. **sī . . . fieret**: *in case they should begin to cross.* **impedītōs**: sc. *illōs*.

9. **contendēbātur**: impersonal, *a cavalry battle was going on.*

10–11. **secundiōre proeliō**: *the cavalry battle proving more favorable to our troops*, abl. absolute.

12–13. **quod**, etc.: *which, (as) has been shown, was back of our camp; quod* is subject of *esse*, while the infinitive clause as a whole is subject of *dēmōnstrātum est.*

15. **eō cōnsiliō**: *with the design*, explained by the clauses of purpose, *ut . . . expūgnārent*, etc., *that they should storm*, or *of storming*, etc. **sī possent**: *if they should be able;* for the mood (also of *potuissent* below) see references on *īnstrūxisset*, **53**, 12. **praeerat**: not attracted to the subjv. because the clause contains an explanatory statement of the author's. **cui**: for the dat. governed by the compound verb, *praeerat*, cf. *oppidō*, **52**, 9.

17–18. **minus**: equivalent to *nōn*. **potuissent**: *should be able*, lit. *should have been able.* Observe here and in many other instances that Latin is fond of emphasizing the completion of a future action much more than English. **quī**: the Remi. **māgnō nōbīs ūsuī**: *of great service to us;* for the two datives see references on *subsidiō oppidānīs*, **52**, 14. **gerendum**: for the gerundive construction see note on *īnstruendam*, **53**, 4. **erant**: for mood see note on *praeerat*, 15, above. **commeātū**: abl. of separation.

Construction of **illīs, trānseundī, fieret** 7, **adgrederentur** 8, **vadīs** 13. Principal parts of **adgrederentur** 8, **repertīs** 14, **interscinderent** 16, **gerendum** 18.

20–23. CHAPTER 10. **certior factus**: *having been informed*, i.e. of the movement of the enemy. **levis armātūrae**: *light-*

armed; for the case see A. 345 (215); B. 203; G. 365; H. 440, 3; H-B. 355. **ponte**: abl. expressing the way by which. **trādūcit**: i.e. to the south side of the river. **pūgnātum est**: impersonal, with *Ācriter, a fierce battle was fought.*

24–27. **per**: *over.* **reliquōs cōnantēs**; *when the rest tried, reliquōs* being object of *reppulērunt.* **trānsierant**: *had crossed,* i.e. before the light-armed troops came up. **equitātū**: abl. of means. **circumventōs interfēcērunt**: *surrounded and killed.* For the participle see references on *ēductās*, 4, above.

Page 55. 1–3. **dē**: *of,* after *spem.* **oppidō**: Bibrax. **spem sē fefelisse**: *that they had been mistaken in their hope,* lit. *hope had deceived them.* **neque**: *and not,* the negative to be taken with *prōgredī.* **inīquiōrem**: *less advantageous,* than their present position. **causā**: for the case and the position of the word see A. 404, c (245, c); B. 198, 1; G. 373; H. 475, 2; H-B. 444, d.

4. **rēs frūmentāria**: the Gauls did not have the well-organized commissariat of the Romans. They engaged in raids rather than campaigns.

5–7. **optimum esse**: *that it was best,* with *quemque revertī, for each to return,* as subject of *esse.* The infinitive clause depends on *cōnstituērunt* in the sense of *decide (upon a fact)*; in the sense of *decide (upon a course of action)* the same verb is followed by *convenīrent, that they should assemble,* A. 580, d (332, h); B. 295, 4, 8; G. 546, R. 1, 2; H. 565; H-B. 502, 3, a. **domum**: A. 427, 2 (258, 2, b); B. 182, 1, b; G. 337; H. 419, 1; H-B. 450, b. **quōrum**: the antecedent is *eōs.* **intrōdūxissent**: the subjv. is due to the virtual indirect discourse of the passage. It represents a fut. perf. indic. in the direct statement of the Belgae. Observe the relative clause preceding the antecedent, *eōs.*

8–9. **ut . . . dēcertārent . . . ūterentur**: for the mood see A. 531, 1 (317, 1); B. 282, 1; G. 545; H. 568; H-B. 502, 2.

10–11. **cum**: *along with.* **ratiō**: explained by the *quod* clause, *that,* or *because,* etc. **fīnibus**: dat. after *adpropinquāre;* cf. the dative governed by adjectives of nearness.

Page 56. 1–3. **Hīs persuādērī**, etc.: *these* (the Bellovaci) *could not be persuaded to remain longer and refrain from going* (lit. *not to go*) *to the aid of their people* (lit. *take aid to*). *Persuādeō* in the active governs a dative of the person and an objective clause. In the passive *persuādeō* becomes impersonal, the dative and the clause being retained. See A. 372 (230); B. 187, II, a, b; G. 346, R. 1; H. 426, 2, 3; H-B. 364, 2.

Construction of **expūgnandō 55**, 1, **fefellisse** 2, **optimum** 5, **dēfendendōs** 7, **cōpiīs** 9; **cōgnōverint 56**, 1, **suīs** 2. Principal parts of **reppulērunt 54**, 26; **fefelisse 55**, 2, **dēficere** 4, **revertī** 6; **cōgnōverant**, **56**, 1.

4–5. CHAPTER 11. **strepitū**, **tumultū**, **ōrdine**, **imperiō**: ablatives of manner. **castrīs**: the abl. of separation with or without a preposition may be employed with verbs of literal separation containing a preposition.

6. **cum . . . peteret**: a causal or temporal clause, but well rendered by a participial construction, *each one seeking*.

7–8. **fēcērunt, ut . . . vidērētur**: *they made their departure seem;* for the objective clause see A. 568 (332); B. 297, 1; G. 553, 1; H. 571, 3; H-B. 521, 3, a. **fugae**: dat. with *cōnsimilis*, A. 384 (234, a); B. 192, 1; G. 359; H. 434, 1, a; H-B. 362.

9. **veritus**: *fearing*, perf. participle with present force; cf. *ūsus*, **52**, 12. **discēderent**: subjv. in an indirect question.

10. **exercitum**: occasionally, as here, equivalent to *peditēs*. **castrīs**: *in camp.* The abl. of the place where is frequently used without a preposition in connection with *teneō* and *contineō*.

11–12. **rē**: *the fact* (*of their withdrawal*). **quī . . . morārētur**: *to delay*, relative clause of purpose.

13. **Hīs**: plural because referring to the collective noun, *equitātum;* dat. of indirect object governed by the compound *praefēcit*.

16. **mīlia**: for the acc. see A. 425 (257); B. 181, 1; G. 335; H. 417; H-B. 387, 1.

17–18. **fugientium**: *as they fled.* **cum**: causal. **ab extrēmō agmine**: (*those*) *in the rear.* **ad quōs ventum erat**: *whom* (*our troops*) *had overtaken*, the verb being used impersonally.

20. **priōrēs**: (*while*) *those in front.* Observe the adversative asyndeton, omission of an adversative conjunction. **quod . . . vidērentur neque . . . continērentur**: a reason attributed to the fugitives and reported by the writer, hence the subjv., A. 540 (321); B. 286, 1; G. 541; H. 588, II; H-B. 555, a.

22–23. **perturbātīs ōrdinibus**: *with ranks thrown into utter confusion.*

24. **tantam . . . quantum fuit diēī spatium**: *as great . . . as the time permitted*, lit. *as was the space of the day.*

Construction of **rē, vigiliā** 4, **sibi, domum** 6, **perspexerat** 10, **lūce** 11, **lēgātum** 14, **subsequī** 15, **cōnsisterent** 18. Principal parts of **peteret** 6, **veritus** 9, **perspexerat** 10, **subsequī** 15, **concīdērunt** 17, **cōnsisterent** 18.

Page 57. 1–2. CHAPTER 12. **priusquam sē hostēs . . . reciperent**: *before the enemy should* (or *could*) *recover*; for the mood see A. 551, b (327); B. 292, 1, b; G. 577; H. 605, I, II; H-B. 507, 4, b.

3. **Rēmīs**; for the dat. with *proximī* see references on *fugae*, **56**, 7.

4. **Noviodūnum**: a Celtic name meaning *New town.* **ex itinere**: (*immediately*) *from the march, at once*, i.e. without establishing the usual siege works. See Introd. 34.

7. **paucīs dēfendentibus**: *though the defenders were few*, abl. absolute with adversative force.

8. **vīneās**: see Introd. 35. **quaeque**: equivalent to *et ea quae.* **ad oppūgnandum**: gerund, *for an attack.* **ūsuī**: *of service*, dat. of purpose or end.

9. **Interim**: Caesar's forced march, assault on the town, and beginning of preparations for a siege seem to have taken place in one day. **ex fugā**: *after their flight.*

11–15. **vīneīs āctīs**: translate this and the following abls. absolute by temporal clauses, *when*, etc. **māgnitūdine, celeritāte**: abls. of cause or means with *permōtī.* **petentibus Rēmīs, ut cōnservārentur**: *as the Remi begged that they* (the Suessiones) *be spared.* For the *ut* clause, object of *petentibus*,

see A. 563 (331); B. 295, 1; G. 546; H. 565; H-B. 530, 2. The clause may be taken as object of *impetrant*.

Construction of **Noviodūnum** 4, **audiēbat** 5, **erant** 9, **nocte** 10. Tense of **mittunt** 14, **impetrant** 15. Principal parts of **reciperent** 2, **dēfendentibus** 7, **āctīs**, **iactō** 11.

16. CHAPTER 13. **obsidibus**: *as hostages.* **prīmīs**: *the leading men.* **atque**: *and in particular.*

19. **in Bellovacōs**: *into the country of the Bellovaci.* **Quī cum**: *when they.* **sua omnia**: as in **49**, 14, *all their possessions.*

20–21. **contulissent, abesset**: observe the force of the tenses, *had gathered, was distant.*

22. **māiōrēs nātū**: *older men, elders.* *nātū* is an abl. of specification, A. 418 (253); B. 226, 1; G. 397; H. 480, 1; H-B. 441.

23–24. **vōce**: *by their cries.* They did not speak Latin. **sēsē . . . venīre**: *that they placed themselves under his protection and authority;* cf. **49**, 14–15, for a similar expression. **neque**: *and not.*

25–27. **accessisset, pōneret**: *had drawn near, was pitching.* **ex mūrō**: *on* (lit. *from*) *the wall.* **suō mōre**: *according to their custom*, abl. of accordance, A. 418, a (253, N.); B. 220, 3; G. 397; H. 475, 3; H-B. 414.

Construction of **contulissent** 20, **mīlia, abesset** 21, **sēsē** 23, **contendere** 25, **manibus** 27. Principal parts of **trāditīs** 18, **contulissent** 20, **tendere** 23, **accessisset** 25.

Page 58. 1–3. CHAPTER 14. **Prō**: *in behalf of.* **eum**: Caesar. **facit verba**: *speaks, intercedes.* **omnī tempore**: *always*, the idea of duration lying chiefly in the adjective. **in fidē atque amīcitiā**: *under the friendly protection*, i.e. the Bellovaci were clients of the Haedui. The power of the Haedui seems to have been merely nominal at this time, whatever it may have been in the past.

4. **impulsōs**: limits *eōs* to be supplied as subject of *dēfēcisse* and *intulisse*.

6. **omnēs**: *every kind of.*

7. **populō**: dat., indirect object of the compound verb *intulisse.*

8. **Quī**: equivalent to *eōs quī*, with *eōs* as subject of *profūgisse.* **prīncipēs**: *leaders.* **quantam . . . intulissent**: an indirect question.

Page 59. 1. **in Britanniam**: commercial relations and common religious interests made Britain a natural place of refuge for these Gallic leaders. See Introd. 60 and 61.

2–3. **suā**: in the not infrequent meaning, *his well-known.* **in eōs**: *towards them.*

3–6. **Quod**: *this.* The verbs in this sentence would be in direct discourse, *fēceris* (fut. perf. indic.), *amplificābis, incidērunt, cōnsuērunt.* For the force of the perfect tense of *cōnsuēscō, are accustomed,* see A. 476 (279, e); B. 262, A; G. 175, 5; H. 538, 4; H-B. 487. **quōrum**: refers to *Belgās.* **sī qua bella**: *whatever wars, any wars that.* For the tense of *inciderint* see A. 518, b (309, c); B. 302; G. 594, N.; H. 578; H-B. 576, 579.

Construction of **dīcerent 58**, 5, **cōnsilī** 8; **clēmentiā 59**, 2, **ūtātur** 3, **auxiliīs, opibus** 5. Principal parts of **reverterat 58**, 2, **redāctōs** 6; **profūgisse 59**, 1, **inciderint** 5, **cōnsuērint** 6.

7. CHAPTER 15. **honōris . . . causā**: *in deference to Diviciacus and the Haedui,* lit. *for the sake of honor(ing). Dīviciācī* and *Haeduōrum* are objective genitives.

8. **eōs in fidem receptūrum** (*esse*): *would take them under his protection, would receive their submission.* Cf. the phrases in **57**, 23–24, and **49**, 14–15. Observe that *esse* is often omitted in the future active and perfect passive infinitives.

9. **cīvitās**: that of the Bellovaci. **auctōritāte**: abl. of quality, in the predicate.

10. **hominum multitūdine**: *in population.*

16–17. **nūllum esse aditum,** etc.: *traders had no access to them.* **mercātōribus**: for the case see A. 373 (231); B. 190; G. 349; H. 430; H-B. 374. **nihil . . . īnferrī**: infinitive

clause governed by *patī;* with the latter supply *eōs* as subject. **vīnī**: gen. of the whole depending on *nihil, no wine.*

19. **ferōs māgnaeque virtūtis**: two qualities, one expressed by an adjective, the other by a genitive.

20–21. **quī**: equivalent to *cum eī, because they,* A. 540, c (321, b); G. 626, R.; H. 592; H-B. 523. **patriam**: an adjective.

Construction of **erat** 9, **multitūdine** 10, **quaereret** 15, **rēbus** 18, **populō** 20. Principal parts of **poposcit** 11, **dēdidērunt** 13, **attingēbant** 14, **quaereret** 15, **patī** 16, **prōiēcissent** 21.

25–26. CHAPTER 16. **Sabim**: river names in *-is* have *-im* in the accusative. **mīlia**: acc. of extent of space, *amplius* as an adverb having no effect on the case.

27. **ibi**: the Nervii were south, the Romans north, of the Sambre.

Page 60. 2. **hīs utrīsque**: *each of these peoples,* dat. after *persuāserant.* "The plural forms of *uterque* have the sense of each of two sides, each of the two parties, etc." (H-B). **utī . . . experīrentur**: *to try,* substantive clause, object of *persuāserant.*

4. **quīque**: equivalent to *et eōs quī, eōs* and *mulierēs* being objects of *coniēcisse.* **per**: *on account of.*

5–6. **quō . . . aditus nōn esset**: *to which an army had no access.* The clause is characterizing, *eum* meaning *a,* or *of such a sort.*

Construction of **trīduum, fēcisset 59**, 24, **passuum** 26; **fīnitimīs 60**, 1, **vidērentur** 5, **exercituī** 6. Principal parts of **cōnsēdisse 59**, 27; **experīrentur 60**, 2.

8–9. CHAPTER 17. **quī . . . dēligant**: *to choose.* **castrīs**: dat. of purpose. **ex dēditīciīs**: instead of a gen., depending on *complūrēs,* A. 346, c (216, c); B. 201, 1, a; G. 372, R. 2; H. 444; H-B. 346, e. Cf. also *quīdam ex hīs.*

11–12. **eōrum diērum**, etc.: *having observed our army's usual order of march during those days.* The accumulation of genitives is noteworthy. For the order of march see Introd. 31.

13. **inter singulās legiōnēs**: *between each two legions.* **impedīmentōrum māgnum numerum**: *a large amount of heavy baggage*, carried in vehicles and on pack animals.

14–18. **neque esse quicquam negōtī . . . adorīrī**: *and that there would be* (lit. *was*) *no difficulty in attacking. adorīrī* is the subject of *esse. negōtī* is gen. of the whole, lit. *not anything of difficulty.* **vēnisset**: *should arrive*, representing a fut. perf. indic. of direct discourse, while *abessent, should be distant*, represents a fut. indic. **castra**: *camping ground.* **hanc**: the first legion. **quā pulsā**: abl. absolute, *when*, or *if, this should be routed.* **futūrum** (*esse*), **ut**: *the result would be that*, etc. Caesar might have written *reliquās . . . nōn ausūrās esse.* The periphrasis, with a substantive clause of result as subject of *futūrum esse*, emphasizes the idea of result as in the corresponding English periphrasis, A. 569, a (288, f); B. 270, 3, a; G. 248; H. 619, 2; H-B. 472, c. **contrā cōnsistere**: *make a stand, offer opposition.*

19. **Adiuvābat**: the subject is the substantive *quod* clause, 20 ff.; we may translate, *additional weight was given to the advice of those who reported the matter by the fact that the Nervii*, etc.

20. **Nervīi**: subject of *effēcerant*, 26. **cum**: causal. **nihil possent**: *had no strength.*

21. **eī reī**: *that branch of the service*, dat. governed by a verb meaning *to favor.* **quicquid possunt**: *whatever strength they have; quicquid* (also *nihil* above), acc. of degree.

22. **valent**: *consists*, lit. *they are strong.* **quō facilius**, etc.: a clause of purpose, *in order the more easily to impede*, A. 531, a (317, b); B. 282, 1, a; G. 545, 2; H. 568, 7; H-B. 502, 2, b.

23. **vēnissent**: *should come*, for the mood and tense cf. *īnstrūxisset*, **53**, 12, and references in the note.

24. **incīsīs**: saplings were notched on the trunks and bent over; as the trees continued to grow, the branches, together with briers planted among them, formed impenetrable hedges.

26–27. **ut . . . praebērent**: substantive clause of result, object of *effēcerant, had caused these hedges to furnish protection like a wall. īnstar* is in apposition with *mūnīmentum;* it is regu-

larly followed by a genitive. **quō** : adverb, *which one not only could not penetrate, but could not even see through.* The passive infinitives are impersonal. The clause may be regarded as characterizing or as giving the reason for the previous statement. In the latter case we should translate, *since one not only could not penetrate them,* etc. These hedges were intended, not as frontier fortresses, but to protect individual fields. Hedges of a similar character are said to be found in the region to-day.

Page 61. 2. **nōn omittendum** (*esse*) **sibi cōnsilium** : *they must not neglect the advice;* for the dative of agent see A. 374, a (232); B. 189, 1; G. 355; H. 431; H-B. 373, 1.

Construction of **dēligant 60**, 8, **facerent** 10, **hīs**, 13, **spatium** 16, **equitātū**, **possent** 20, **cōpiīs** 22, **praedandī**, 23; **impedīrētur 61**, 1. Principal parts of **perspectā** 12, **intercēdere** 14, **adorīrī**, **dīreptīs** 17, **audērent** 18, **Adiuvābat** 19, **valent** 22, **īnflexīs** 24.

4. CHAPTER 18. **locum** : an antecedent repeated in the relative clause, as frequently occurs; omit in translation.

5. **dēclīvis** : note the force *dē-*, *downward*, and of *ad-*, *upward*, in *acclīvitās.*

7. **parī acclīvitāte** : *of,* or *with, equal slope,* abl. of quality limiting *collis.* **adversus** : *directly opposite.* **contrārius** : *on the other bank.*

Page 62. 1–2. **īnfimus** : *along the lower part, at the base,* equivalent to *ab īmā parte.* **apertus** : contrasted with *silvestris.* **ab superiōre parte** : *along the upper part, at the top.* **perspicī** : impersonal passive, as in **60**, 27.

4. **secundum** : preposition, *along.*

5. **pedum** : gen. of quality or measure, in the predicate.

Construction of **castrīs 61**, 4, **huic** 7; **passūs 62**, 1, **posset** 2, **flūmen** 4. Principal parts of **vergēbat 61**, 6, **nāscēbātur** 7.

6–7. CHAPTER 19. **omnibus cōpiīs** : abl. of accompaniment without *cum*, in a military phrase, as in **52**, 20. **ratiō ōrdōque agminis** : *the order of march. ratiō* and *ōrdō* are but parts of one

idea, hence the singular verb. **aliter sē habēbat, ac**: *was different from what,* lit. *had itself otherwise than.* After words of difference, such as *alius* and *aliter*, *ac* is to be translated *than.* How after *eadem*, **52**, 1?

9. **cōnsuētūdine**: abl. of accordance. **expedītās**: *unencumbered,* i.e. without baggage train; see Introd. 21 and 31.

11. **duae legiōnēs**: the 13th and 14th.

12-13. **praesidiō impedīmentīs erant**: *served as a guard for the baggage train.* For the datives see A. 382, 1 (233, a); B. 191, 2; G. 356; H. 433; H-B. 360, b.

16. **Cum**: *when, while.* **sē reciperent**: *kept withdrawing.*

17-19. **neque**; *and not,* the negative to be taken with *audērent.* **quem ad fīnem . . . pertinēbant**: *the extent of the open ground.* **cēdentēs**: *(them) as they fell back,* limits *eōs* to be supplied as object of *īnsequī.*

20. **prīmae**: adjective, where English employs an adverb. **opere dīmēnsō**: this had been done by the scouts and centurions, **60**, 7. Observe that perfect participles of deponent verbs are sometimes used passively.

21. **prīma impedīmenta**: *the head of the baggage train.*

22-24. **quod tempus . . . convēnerat**: *the time which had been agreed upon,* the appositional antecedent attracted, as usual, into the relative clause. **committendī proelī**: *for beginning battle,* depending on *tempus.* **ut . . . cōnfīrmāverant**: *just as they had,* etc., or better *in the manner in which they had arranged their order of battle within the woods and had mutually resolved (to act).*

26-27. **Hīs**: the cavalry. **celeritāte**: abl. of manner. **ut,** etc.: a clause of result.

Page 63. 1. **in manibus nostrīs**: *close upon us.*

2-4. **adversō colle**: *up the hill;* abl. absolute, lit. *the hill being against (them).* Cf. *adversō flūmine, up stream.* **occupātī**: *busy,* perf. participle as predicate adjective.

Construction of **hostibus, adpropinquābat** 8, **pertinēbant** 18, **opere** 20, **vīsa sunt** 22, **committendī** 23, **cōnstituerant**

24, **cōpiīs** 25. Full form of **conlocārat** 10. Principal parts of **claudēbant** 12, **porrēcta** 18, **cēdentēs** 19, **dīmēnsō** 20, **latēbant** 22, **dēcucurrērunt** 27.

5. CHAPTER 20. **Caesarī**: *by Caesar;* for the dative of agent see references on *sibi*, **61**, 2. **vexillum**: see Introd. 28.

6–7. **prōpōnendum**: sc. *erat.* **cum**: *whenever.* For the mood of *oportēret* see A. 548 (322); B. 288, 3, **a**; G. 584, R.; H. 601, 4; H-B. 540. **concurrī**: impersonal, subject of *oportēret.* **sīgnum**: the signal to "fall in," given after the display of the *vexillum* on the general's tent. **opere**: *work,* i.e. on the camp.

8–10. **quī**: for *eī quī*, *eī* being the subject of *arcessendī* (*erant*). **paulō longius**: *quite a distance;* lit. *a little farther,* in comparison with the troops at work on the camp. **aggeris**: here in the sense of *material for the camp rampart.* **cohortandī**: see Introd. 33. **sīgnum**: the signal to begin battle.

11. **impediēbat**: singular, *brevitās* and *incursus* constituting parts of a single idea. Cf. *ratiō ōrdōque sē habēbat*, **62**, 7.

12. **Hīs difficultātibus . . . subsidiō**: *two things served to remedy these difficulties.* For the datives cf. *praesidiō impedīmentīs*, **62**, 12. **duae rēs**: explained by the appositive nouns, *scientia* and *ūsus* (further explained by the causal clause, *quod . . . poterant*), and by the appositive clause, *quod . . . vetuerat, the fact of his having forbidden.*

14. **quid fierī oportēret**: an indirect question depending on *praescrībere* and *docērī.*

16–17. **lēgātōs discēdere**: an infinitive clause, the regular construction after *vetō*, *forbid.* **nisi mūnītīs castrīs**: *unless* or *before, the camp should be constructed.* An abl. absolute with *nisi* may be employed to express a condition. **Hī**: the *lēgātī.*

18–19. **nihil iam**: *no longer,* lit. *not at all* (*now*); *nihil*, acc. of degree, is frequently used as a stronger negative than *nōn.* **per sē**: *of their own accord.* **quae vidēbantur**: *what seemed* (*necessary*).

Construction of **aggeris** 8, **proeliīs**, **quid** 13, **oportēret** 14, **poterant** 15, **vidēbantur** 19. Principal parts of **concurrī**

6, **oportēret** 7, **arcessendī, īnstruenda** 9, **docērī** 15, **vetuerat** 17.

20. CHAPTER 21. **necessāriīs rēbus imperātīs**: *after giving (only) such orders as were indispensable.*

21. **quam in partem fors obtulit**: *in the direction chance took him.* For the antecedent standing in the relative clause only, cf. *quem ad fīnem*, **62**, 18.

22–24. **nōn longiōre . . . quam utī**: *in a speech just long enough to urge them to remember*, lit. *no longer than that they should remember.* The *utī* clause contains in indirect form the substance of Caesar's exhortation. **suae**: *their well-known, their usual*, as in **59**, 2. **neu**: the regular connective, *and not*, after *ut* and *nē* with imperative and optative ideas. Before *sustinērent* an *ut* is to be understood.

Page 64. 1. **quod . . . aberant**: causal, looking forward to *sīgnum dedit.*

2. **quō tēlum adigī posset**: *a javelin's cast*, lit. *to what (distance) a javelin could be cast.* The clause is one of result, or characteristic, A. 535, c (320, c); B. 283, 2, a; G. 298; H. 570, 1; H-B. 521, 2, c.

3. **alteram partem**: i.e. the right wing.

4. **pūgnantibus occurrit**: *finds (his men) already engaged.*

6–8. **īnsīgnia, galeās, tegimenta**: see Introd. 18. **scūtīs**: abl. of separation. **dēfuerit**: for the tense see A. 485, c (287, c); B. 268, 6; G. 513; H. 550; H-B. 478. **Quam in partem**: *to what(ever) place.*

9–10. **prīma**: adjective for adverb. **haec**: antecedent of *quae.* **suīs**: sc. *signīs.* **pūgnandī**: *from* (lit. *of*) *fighting.*

Construction of **cohortandōs 63**, 20, **ōrātiōne** 22, **virtūtis** 23, **animō** 24; **pūgnantibus 64**, 4, **dīmicandum** 5, **dēfuerit** 8, **dīmitteret** 10. Principal parts of **obtulit 63**, 21, **dēvēnit** 22; **adigī 64**, 2, **profectus** 4, **induendās, dētrahenda** 7, **cōnstitit** 9.

11. CHAPTER 22. **ut**: *as*, also in the next line.

13–15. **ratiō atque ōrdō**: *the theoretical arrangement.* **cum**:

as, since. **dīversae**: *acting independently.* **aliae aliā in parte**: *some in one part (of the field), others in another*, A. 315, c (203, c); B. 253, 2; G. 221, R. 1; H. 516, 1; H-B. 265. **saepibus . . . interiectīs**: abl. absolute, *by the intervening hedges.*

16–17. **neque**: here begins the main sentence. **certa**: *definite*, i.e. *according to a definite plan.* **neque, quid . . . esset, prōvidērī** (*poterat*): *nor was it possible to foresee what was necessary.*

Page 65. 1. **in tantā rērum inīquitāte**: *in such varying circumstances.*

3–4. Chapter 23. **ut . . . cōnstiterant**: *according to the position which they held at the left of the battle line. Ut* in such clauses contains a suggestion both of manner and cause. Cf. the *ut* clause, **62**, 23–24. **aciē**: gen., a form found occasionally instead of the form in *-ēī*.

6. **hīs**: i.e. the Atrebates. **ea pars**: *that post*, opposite the Roman left. **locō superiōre**: *the high ground* where the two legions were at the beginning of the battle.

7. **cōnantēs**: sc. *eōs*, object of *insecūtī*.

8–10. **impedītam**: *hampered (as they were).* **Ipsī**: the Romans. **locum inīquum**: the hill south of the river is meant. **resistentēs . . . redintegrātō**: *when they turned and renewed.*

12. **aliā in parte**: i.e. in the center. **dīversae**: *acting independently* of the other legions, as in **64**, 13.

14. **ex locō superiōre**: connect with *prōflīgātīs*.

15. **ā fronte**: *along the front.*

18. **cōnfertissimō agmine**: *in close formation*, abl. of manner. **duce Boduōgnātō**: *under the leadership of Boduognatus*, abl. absolute.

20–21. **ab apertō latere**: *on the unprotected flank*, i.e. the right, the shield being carried on the left arm. **summum castrōrum locum**: *the high ground (which was the site) of the camp;* the gen. is possessive.

Construction of **cursū, lassitūdine** 4, **hīs** 5, **proeliō** 10,

cōnstitisset 17, **duce** 18. Principal parts of **cōnfectōs** 5, **obvēnerat** 6, **compulērunt** 7, **prōgressī** 9, **coniēcērunt** 11, **contendērunt** 19, **coepit** 21.

23–24. CHAPTER 24. **quī**: refers to *peditēs*, while *quōs* refers to *equitēs* and *peditēs*. **quōs . . . dīxeram**: *who, as I have said, had been routed.* For the tense of *dīxeram* see note on *dīxerāmus*, **48**, 4.

Page 66. 1. **adversīs hostibus occurrēbant**: *met the enemy face to face.* Their first flight had carried them back to, and beyond, the Roman camp. As they reëntered from the rear or side they met the Nervii coming in from the front.

2–3. **decumānā portā**: the camp site, as usual, was the crest and slope of a hill, the rear gate resting on the crest; *ac summō iugō* merely explains the location of the gate. **nostrōs victōrēs**: *our victorious troops; victōrēs*, in apposition with *nostrōs*, replaces an adjective.

5. **praecipitēs**: agrees with *cālōnēs*, but may be translated with *fugae*.

6–8. **quī . . . veniēbant**: the 13th and 14th legions. **oriēbātur**: a singular verb, the two subjects being taken together as parts of one idea. Cf. *postulābat*, **64**, 13, and *habēbat*, **62**, 7. **aliī aliam in partem**: *some in one direction, others in another*, or simply *in different directions.* Cf. **64**, 13–14. **ferēbantur**: *were hurrying.*

10. **virtūtis opīniō**: *reputation for valor.*

Page 67. 2–3. **legiōnēs**: the 7th and 12th. **circumventās**: predicate adjective, forming with *tenērī* a stronger expression than *circumventās esse.*

5. **dēspērātīs nostrīs rēbus**: *giving our cause up as lost*, abl. absolute.

6–7. **pulsōs, superātōs**: sc. *esse.* **castrīs, impedīmentīs**: for the abl. with *potior* see A. 410 (249); B. 218, 1; G. 407; H. 477, I; H-B. 429. **potītōs**: sc. *esse.*

Construction of **armātūrae 65**, 22, **impetū** 24; **hostibus**

66, 1, **respexissent** 4, **fugae** 6; **vīdissent, domum 67**, 5, **cīvitātī** 7. Principal parts of **occurrēbant 66**, 1, **respexissent** 4, **oriēbātur** 7; **dispersōs 67**, 4.

CHAPTER 25. Caesar here resumes the narrative of his own part in the battle, interrupted at **64**, 4. In the following passage the main sentence is, **Caesar . . . profectus, . . . scūtō . . . dētractō** (21), . . . **prōcessit** (22) . . . **iussit** (25). **ubi . . . posset**, 9–21, pictures the condition of the right wing at Caesar's arrival. In translating break up into short declarative sentences, *Caesar proceeded from . . . to the right wing. There he found his men hard pressed. As the standards had become massed together, the crowded soldiers of the twelfth legion hampered one another in fighting*, etc.

10–11. **sibi, impedīmentō**: two datives, one of the person, the other of the end. Cf. **63**, 12.

12. **sīgniferō, sīgnō āmissō**: Introd. 28.

14. **in hīs**: *among them.* **prīmipīlō**: Introd. 15.

15–16. **multīs gravibusque**: *many severe*, without *and*, is the English idiom. **vulneribus cōnfectō**: Baculus lived to fight another day, as we find in Bk. III. **ut . . . nōn posset**: a clause of result; translate *iam* and *nōn* together, *no longer*.

17. **tardiōrēs**: *rather spiritless.* **ab novissimīs**: *in the rear ranks.* **proeliō**: abl. of separation.

18–19. **neque**: correlative with *et*, 19. In 20 we find the reverse order, *et . . . neque.* **neque . . . subeuntēs intermittere**: *and that the enemy did not stop advancing*, or *and that the enemy continued to advance.* *intermittere* is used absolutely.

20. **rem esse in angustō**: *matters were at a crisis.* **vīdit**: repeated from 11, above, because of the long passage intervening.

21. **quod . . . posset**: a clause of characteristic. **mīlitī**: *from a soldier;* for the dative of separation see A. 381 (229); B. 188, 2, d; G, 352; H. 427; H-B. 371.

25. **quō facilius**: *in order more easily*, a clause of purpose.

26. **mīlitibus**: dat. of indirect object after the compound

verb, *inlātā*. **cum prō sē quisque . . . operam nāvāre cuperet**: *since each was eager to do his best; prō sē*, lit. *according to his ability.*

Page 68. 1–2. **etiam in extrēmīs suīs rēbus**: *even though in extreme personal danger.*

Principal parts of **urgērī** 9, **occīsīs** 12, **excēdere** 18, **īnstāre** 19, **dētractō** 21; **cuperet 68**, 2.

6. CHAPTER 26. **sēsē**: object of *coniungerent*, *legiōnēs* being subject of the latter and also of *īnferrent*. Translate, *directed the tribunes that the legions should gradually draw together, face about, and advance upon the enemy.* For the use of the participle, *conversa*, instead of a coördinate verb, see A. 496, N. 2 (292, R.); B. 337, 5; G. 664, R. 1; H. 639; H-B. 604, 1. The exact nature of the movement here described is difficult to determine. It had the effect, if not the form, of a hollow square.

7–9. **aliīs aliī subsidium ferrent**: *rendered mutual assistance.* How lit.? **nē . . . circumvenīrentur**: *that*, etc.; for the construction after verbs of fearing see A. 564 (331, f); B. 296, 2; G. 550, 2; H. 567; H-B. 502, 4, a. **āversī**: *from the rear*, lit. *being turned away.* **hoste**: abl. of agent. The word is here used collectively.

13. **cursū incitātō . . . cōnspiciēbantur**: *quickened their pace and were sighted.* **summō**: *top of*, adjective denoting a part; cf. *īnfimus*, **62**, 1. **colle**: the hill on which the Roman camp lay.

16. **decimam legiōnem**: the 9th and 10th legions had driven the Atrebates across the river and had captured their camp in the woods. **subsidiō nostrīs**: *to the support of our troops.*

16. **Quī**: refers to *mīlitēs* implied in *legiōnem*.

17. **quō in locō rēs esset**: *the state of affairs.* How lit.?

19–20. **versārētur**: singular, in agreement with the nearest subject. **nihil . . . fēcērunt**: *made all possible haste*, lit. *made themselves nothing left with respect to haste. reliquī* is a predicate genitive of possession.

Construction of **ut . . . īnferrent** 6–7, **Quō** 7, **praesidiō**,

impedīmentīs 12, **gererentur** 15, **subsidiō, nostrīs** 16, **esset** 17, **versārētur** 19.

22. CHAPTER 27. **nostrī, etiam quī**: *even those of our men who.* **prōcubuissent**: subjv. by attraction.

23. **scūtīs**: for the ablative with *innitor* see A. 431 (254, b); B. 218, 3; G. 401, N. 6; H. 476, 3; H-B. 438, 2, a.

Page 69. 1. **inermēs**: with *cālōnēs.* **armātīs**: sc. *hostibus.*

3. **omnibus in locīs**: *everywhere,* i.e. regardless of the character of the ground. **sē . . . praeferrent**: *tried to outdo.* How lit.?

5. **etiam in extrēmā spē**: *even though there was but slight hope.*

6–7. **ut**, etc.: a clause of result, extending to *remitterent*, 10. **prīmī eōrum**: *their front ranks.* **proximī**: *those nearest.* **iacentibus**: dat. after the compound *īnsisterent*, *mounted on the fallen.*

8. **hīs**: *and when these.* **quī superessent**: *the survivors.* The subjv. is due to attraction.

9–10. **ut**: *as if.* **intercepta remitterent**: *caught up and hurled back.* For the participle instead of a coördinate verb cf. *conversa*, **68**, 6, and references in the note. Many of these javelins must have been rendered practically useless from the bending of the iron heads, Introd. 19. **nōn**: limits *nēquīquam.* **virtūtis**: gen. of quality.

13. **quae**: *things which,* i.e. the exploits in 11–12. **facilia**: in the predicate after *redēgerat*, *had rendered easy.* **ex difficillimīs**: *though naturally most difficult,* lit. *from most difficult.*

Construction of **redintegrārent 68**, 23; **armātīs 69**, 1, **dēlērent** 2, **pūgnandō, mīlitibus** 3. Principal parts of **prōcubuissent 68**, 22, **innīxī** 23; **praestitērunt 69**, 6, **īnsisterent** 7, **intercepta** 10, **redēgerat** 14.

16. CHAPTER 28. **redāctō**: takes the gender of the nearer noun, *nōmine.*

17. **aestuāria, palūdēs**: probably along the estuary of the Scheldt. **coniectōs**: sc. *esse.*

18-19. **victōribus nihil** (*esse*) **impedītum, victīs nihil** (*esse*) **tūtum**: *there was nothing to stop the victors and no safety for the vanquished.*

23. **vix ad quīngentōs**: an exaggeration of their losses, in view of the forces raised by the Nervii in subsequent years.

24-25. **ūsus**: sc. *esse.* **vidērētur**: *be seen.*

Page 70. 1-2. **ūtī**: sc. *eōs* as subject. **suōs**: *their dependents.* Construction of **nātū, 69**, 16, **victōribus** 18, **victīs, arbitrārentur** 19, **vidērētur** 25; **prohibērent 70**, 2.

3-4. CHAPTER 29. **suprā**: see **60**, 3. **cum**: conjunction. **cōpiīs**: abl. of accompaniment without a preposition. **auxiliō Nerviīs**; *to the aid of the Nervii.* **ex itinere**: *at once.* How lit.? Cf. **57**. 4.

6. **oppidum**: probably on Mont Falhize, north of the Meuse, though identified by some authorities with the citadel of Namur, at the junction of the Meuse and Sambre.

7-8. **cum**: *while.* **omnibus**: *all* (*other*). **ūnā ex parte**: i.e. to the northeast.

10-11. **pedum**: gen. of quality or measure, the comparative *amplius* being an adverb with no effect on the case. **tum**: *at this time, and now.*

13. **Cimbrīs, Teutonīs**: see note on **28**, 27.

15. **agere**: *drive,* live stock forming a part of the *impedīmenta.*

16-17. **custōdiam**: *custodians,* to care for the *impedīmenta.* **ex suīs**: *from among their number.* **praesidium**: *as a protecting force,* in apposition with *mīlia.* The *custōdia* and the *praesidium* seem to have been two different bodies. **ūnā**: *along with* (*it*), i.e. with the *impedīmenta.*

18-19. **eōrum**: referring to the main body. **cum . . . īnferrent, aliās . . . dēfenderent**: *sometimes taking the offensive, sometimes the defensive.* With *inlātum* sc. *bellum*, lit. *warding off war waged upon* (*them*).

20. **eōrum omnium**: i.e. their enemies. **hunc locum**: *this region.*

Construction of **auxiliō, Nerviīs, venīrent** 4, **habēret** 8,

pedum 10, **poterant** 15, **annōs** 18, **sibi, domiciliō** 20. Principal parts of **revertērunt** 5, **dēsertīs** 6, **relinquēbātur** 10, **dēlēgerant** 21.

Page 71. 1. CHAPTER 30. **vāllō**: a wall of circumvallation built by Caesar's army. It lay north of the Meuse, its ends touching the river east and west of the town. **pedum duodecim**: refers to the height.

2. **mīlium**: sc. *pedum*. **oppidō**: for the ablative without a preposition see note on *castrīs*, **56**, 10.

3. **aggere**: constructed along the *lēniter acclīvis aditus*, **70**, 9.

4–6. **cōnstituī**: *being erected.* **inridēre, increpitāre**: for the historical infinitive see A. 463 (275); B. 335; G. 647; H. 610; H-B. 595. **quod . . . īnstituerētur**: a reported reason; for the mood see A. 540 (321); B. 286, 1; G. 541; H. 588, II; H-B. 535, 2, a. **ā**: *away.* **tantō spatiō**: abl. of degree of difference. **quibusnam manibus**, etc.: *with what hands, pray,* an indirect question depending on the idea of asking implied in *increpitāre vōcibus.*

7. **praesertim hominēs**: *especially (as they were) men. hominēs* is in apposition with the subject of *cōnfīderent.*

8–9. **omnibus Gallīs . . . contemptuī est**: *is a (matter of) contempt to all the Gauls,* or *excites the contempt of all the Gauls.*

10. **in mūrō**: the Atuatuci evidently knew little or nothing of Roman siege operations.

Construction of **vīdērunt** 4, **statūrae** 7, **Gallīs** 8, **contemptuī** 9, **oneris, cōnfīderent** 10. Principal parts of **exstrūctō** 3, **inrīdēre** 4, **cōnfīderent** 10.

12. CHAPTER 31. **movērī, adpropinquāre**: *moving, approaching;* sc. *turrim* as subject.

14. **ad hunc modum**: *in this fashion, to this effect.* **nōn**: in emphatic position, but to be taken with *sine ope.*

16. **quī**: equivalent to *cum eī, since they,* A. 540, c (321, b); B. 283, 3, a; G. 633; H. 592; H-B. 523.

18–20. **Ūnum**: *one thing,* explained by *nē . . . dēspoliāret,*

that he should not deprive them of their arms. **suā**: *his well-known, his usual.* **statuisset**: *should decide.*

22. **virtūtī**: dat. after a verb meaning *to envy.* **trāditīs armīs**: abl. absolute, *if they should surrender their arms.*

23–26. **Sibi praestāre**: *it was better for them;* the infinitive *patī* is subject of *praestāre.* **eum casum**: *such a dilemma,* that of submitting to the Romans or being left to the mercy of their Gallic neighbors. **quamvīs fortūnam**: *any fate, whatever (it might be).* **ā**: *at the hands of.* **per cruciātum interficī**: *be tortured to death.* **cōnsuēssent**: for the contracted form see A. 181, a (128, a); B. 116, 1; G. 131, 1; H. 238; H-B. 163, 1.

Construction of **mūrīs** 12, **altitūdinis, celeritāte** 16, **audīrent** 19, **statuisset, armīs** 20, **Sibi** 21, **possent** 23, **dēdūcerētur** 24. Principal parts of **locūtī** 14, **statuisset** 20, **invidēre** 22.

Page 72. 1–2. CHAPTER 32. **cōnsuētūdine, meritō**: abls. of accordance.

5. **attigisset**: for a fut. perf. indic. of direct discourse. By ancient custom it was too late for entreaties after the assault began.

7–8. **nisi armīs trāditīs**: *except to deliver over their arms.* For *nisi* with an abl. absolute cf. **63**, 16–17. **in Nerviīs**: *in the case of the Nervii.*

9. **fīnitimīsque imperātūrum**: *and would order their neighbors,* or *by ordering,* explanatory of *id, quod . . . fēcisset.* **nē quam . . . īnferrent**: *not to inflict any injury.*

11. **quae imperārentur, facere dīxērunt**: *announced their obedience to his commands.* The present infinitive, *facere,* instead of a future, is employed to indicate vividly their immediate submission; *sē* is to be understood as subject.

14. **aggeris**: the *agger* had been extended almost to the wall, probably to the outer edge of the moat, before the surrender occurred.

Construction of **dēdidissent** 5, **fēcisset** 8, **adaequārent** 14,

perspectum est 15. Principal parts of **attigisset, dēdidissent** 5, **iactā** 13, **retentā, patefactīs** 16.

19–20. Chapter 33. **nē quam . . . acciperent**: a clause of purpose.

21. **praesidia**: stationed in the Roman *castella.*

22–23. **partim . . . partim**: *partly . . . partly, some . . . others.*

24. **ex**: governs both *cortice* and *vīminibus intextīs.*

26. **minimē arduus**: *least steep,* implying that the Roman line of circumvallation was traced along high ground.

Page 73. 3. **ignibus**: perhaps piles of brush and wood were in readiness for such an emergency.

4. **eō concursum est**: *there was a rush to that point,* impersonal passive, A. 208, d (146, d); B. 138, IV; G. 208, 2; H. 302, 6; H-B. 201, c.

5–7. **pūgnātum ab hostibus . . . est, ut ā virīs fortibus . . . pūgnārī dēbuit**: *the enemy fought as spiritedly as brave men ought to have fought,* or freely *as might have been expected of brave men;* impersonal passive of *pūgnō.* **quī . . . iacerent**: a clause of characteristic. **ūnā**: *alone, only.*

8. **ad**: adverb, equivalent to *circiter, about.*

13. **mīlium quīnquāgintā**: *as fifty-three thousand,* predicate gen. This number included the survivors in the town, but not the whole tribe, as we find the Atuatuci leagued with other Gallic tribes against the Romans in the year 54.

Construction of **crēdiderant 72**, 22, **retinuerant** 23, **postulābat** 25, **cōnsisteret 73**, 8, **dēfenderet** 10. Principal parts of **concursum est** 4, **Occīsīs** 8, **refrāctīs** 10, **vēndidit, ēmerant** 12.

CLOSE OF THE CAMPAIGN, 34–35.

14. Chapter 34. **legiōne ūnā**: the 7th. This legion figures in the battle with the Nervii. Crassus was probably sent against the seacoast tribes immediately after. The siege

of the Atuatuci clearly occupied considerable time, their surrender occurring possibly in September, the battle with the Nervii towards the end of July.

16. **quae**: attracted to the gender of the predicate noun, *cīvitātēs*.

18. **in diciōnem**, etc.: the statement appears somewhat exaggerated, as they had only given hostages.

20. CHAPTER 35. **omnī Galliā**: not to be taken literally, but applying merely to the defeated tribes.

Page 74. 1. **incolerent**: subjv. by attraction.

2. **quī . . . pollicērentur**: a relative clause of purpose. **datūrās, factūrās**: agreeing in gender with *nātiōnibus*, the envoys speaking, not for themselves, but for their respective tribes.

3. **Ītaliam**: i.e. Cisalpine Gaul.

4. **initā proximā aestāte**: *at the beginning of the next summer.*

6. **quaeque cīvitātēs**: for *et in eās cīvitātēs quae.*

8. **Ob eāsque**: in a prepositional phrase the enclitic *-que* is generally attached to the second word, if the first word is a preposition.

9. **ex litterīs Caesaris**: *as reported by Caesar's despatches.* **supplicātiō**: a season of thanksgiving, decreed by the senate and celebrated with religious ceremonies.

10. **quod**: (*a thing*) *which*, (*an honor*) *which*, the neuter relative referring, as frequently, to the substance of a preceding sentence. The longest *supplicātiō* on record up to this time had lasted twelve days.

BOOK III.

INTRODUCTION.

Events at Octodurus. — The first episode of Book III belongs to the year 57. Servius Galba, one of Caesar's lieutenants, with one legion and a detachment of cavalry, was directed to free the road over the Alps by the Great St. Bernard from the control hitherto exercised by hostile mountaineers. The natives, though at first defeated and compelled to give hostages, finally mustered large numbers and attacked Galba's winter camp at Octodurus. The Romans succeeded in cutting their way out. Galba, however, fearful of his ability to obtain supplies, deemed it prudent to return with his force to the Transalpine province.

Rising of the Veneti. — The maritime tribes, nominally subdued by Crassus in 57, rose in rebellion under the lead of the seafaring Veneti, seized the officers sent to collect grain for Crassus's legions and demanded back their hostages. Caesar ordered the construction of a fleet in anticipation of naval operations in the summer of 56. Upon rejoining his army, he first sent detachments to various important posts to forestall a general uprising in Gaul. The attempt to reduce the Veneti by a land attack met with great obstacles, as their towns were situated on promontories cut off from the mainland at high tide. Before a capture could be effected, the inhabitants took to their fleet and escaped. The arrival of the Roman fleet under command of Decimus Brutus at last forced the enemy's fleet to battle not far from Quiberon Bay, Caesar with his army looking on from the heights near by. Strong hooks attached to long poles enabled the Roman sailors to destroy the rigging of the opposing fleet, after which the crippled vessels were boarded and taken by hand-to-hand fighting. The submission of the tribes involved followed.

Sabinus among the Venelli. — Meanwhile Caesar's lieutenant, Quintus Sabinus, had been sent to keep the Venelli and allies from uniting with the Veneti. The Eburovices and Lexovii, in a burst of warlike fury, put to death their senates, when the latter refused to sanction hostilities, and united under Viridovix, chief of the Venelli. Sabinus, after establishing his three legions in a strong camp, assumed an attitude of fear and sent a pretended deserter over to the enemy to lure them on. The ruse succeeded, the Gauls coming to the attack in all haste, whereupon the Romans made a sortie and routed them. The disheartened Gauls submitted to Sabinus.

Crassus in Aquitania. — Publius Crassus, too, with twelve cohorts, a large cavalry force, and certain auxiliaries, was no less successful in Aquitania. After defeating the Sotiates in the open, he besieged and took their stronghold, the site of modern Sos. Other Aquitanian tribes, now thoroughly aroused, summoned aid from neighboring Spanish tribes, together with leaders who had acquired skill in war under the Roman general Sertorius. Constructing a camp fortified after the Roman fashion, they determined to avoid a decisive battle for the present, to cut off the Romans from supplies, and then to attack them if they attempted a retreat. Crassus resolved to assault their camp without further delay. During the battle it was discovered that the rear gate afforded a vulnerable point. An entrance was effected here. The Aquitani, assailed front and rear, gave way and fled, the Roman cavalry pursuing and cutting down the fugitives. The greater part of Aquitania then offered its submission.

The Morini and Menapii. — The year's events closed with an effort by Caesar to subdue the Morini and Menapii, two Belgic tribes which had not yet acknowledged Roman authority. Defeated in the open field, the Gauls retired to the forests and marshes of their country. Caesar gave pursuit, but was eventually compelled to desist, baffled by the denseness of the forests and by inclement weather. The legions were quartered for the winter among the maritime tribes lately conquered.

BOOK III.

EVENTS AT OCTODURUS, 1-6.

Page 75. 1. CHAPTER 1. **Cum . . . proficīscerētur**: Caesar spent the winter in Cisalpine Gaul, as usual. **Ser. Galbam**: Galba had already seen service in Gaul in the campaign against the Allobroges, in 61 B.C. He was Caesar's lieutenant through 55. In 44 he took part in the conspiracy against Caesar's life.

4. **summās**: *summit of, upper.*

5. **iter**: subject of *patefieri.* This is the road over the Great St. Bernard into Italy.

6. **quō**: abl. of the way or route. **perīculō**: refers rather to attacks by the natives than to natural dangers. **cum**: *with, by the payment of.* **portōriīs**: tolls levied by the mountaineers.

7–8. **Huic permīsit, . . ., utī**: *gave him permission to,* etc. **sī . . . arbitrārētur**: *if he should think,* for a fut. indic. in a direct statement.

10. **castellīs**: *strongholds, fortified villages.*

11. **eōrum**: the three tribes mentioned above.

13. **in Nantuātibus**: near modern St. Maurice.

15–16. **nōn māgnā adiectā plānitiē**: *with a plain of no great extent adjoining,* abl. absolute. **Cum**: causal.

17. **hīc**: sc. *vīcus.* **flūmine**: the Dranse.

18. **alteram**: on the west bank of the Dranse. **vacuam**: predicate adjective after *relictam.*

21–22. CHAPTER 2. **hībernōrum**: *in winter quarters.* **eō**: adverb.

Page 76. 2. **concesserat**: indic. in an explanatory statement of the author's.

3. **ā multitūdine**: "collective nouns referring to persons, and abstract nouns when personified, may be construed as the personal agent" (B. 216, 1).

5-6. **Id**: *it*, explained by the substantive clause of result, *ut . . . caperent.*

7-8. **neque eam plēnissimam**: *and that not a full legion.* **dētractīs**, etc.: the abls. absolute give the reason for the depletion of the legion. In addition, this legion had met with severe losses in the battle with the Nervii. **duābus**: see **75**, 12-13. **complūribus**: sc. *mīlitibus*.

11. **cum . . . dēcurrerent**: *when they should run down*, the imperf. subjv. representing a future indic. of direct discourse.

13-14. **Accēdēbat, quod**: *there was the additional reason, that*, etc., lit. *it was added, that;* a substantive *quod* clause as subject. **līberōs abstractōs** (*esse*): *at the taking of their children*, an infinitive clause, object of *dolēbant*. **nōmine**: *under the name*, or *guise*.

14-17. **Rōmānōs . . . cōnārī**: *that the Romans were attempting*, indirect discourse after *sibi persuāsum habēbant, had persuaded themselves, were convinced.* The participle *persuāsum* is neuter acc. to agree with the infinitive clause. *sibi persuāserant* might have been written; see A. 497, b (292, c); B. 337, 7; G. 238; H. 431, 3; H-B. 605, 5, a. **possessiōnis**: sc. *causā*.

18-19. CHAPTER 3. **opus**: the work as a whole, especially the quarters for the troops; see Introd. 30. **perfectae**: agrees with the nearer subject, *mūnītiōnēs*.

20. **neque esset prōvīsum**: impersonal passive, *nor had sufficient provision been made.*

23-24. **tantum repentīnī perīculī**: *such great and sudden peril; perīculī* is gen. of the whole.

25. **complēta**: in the predicate after *cōnspicerentur, were seen to be.*

26. **subsidiō**: dat. of purpose after the impersonal passive

venīrī; sc. *posset* and translate, *and since it was neither possible for them to be reënforced, nor for supplies to be brought up.*

28. **ēius modī**: gen. of quality, *of this sort, to the effect*; explained by the appositive *ut* clause, *that they should hasten.*

Page 77. 2. **itineribus**: abl. of the way by which; cf. *quō*, **75**, 6. **pervēnissent**: subjv. by attraction.

4–5. **experīrī, dēfendere**: subjects of *placuit.*

6–8. CHAPTER 4. **ut . . . darētur**: a clause of result, the conjunction yielding its regular position of first in the clause in order to emphasize *vix.* **cōnstituissent**: for mood cf. *pervēnissent*, 2, above. **eīs rēbus . . . conlocandīs**: for the gerundive construction in the dative see A. 505 (299, a); B. 339, 2; G. 429; H. 627, 2; H-B. 612, II. **dēcurrere**: *rushed down*, historical infinitive. Six others follow in the rapid and vivid narrative; see A. 463 (275); B. 335; G. 647; H. 610; H-B. 595.

9–10. **integrīs vīribus**: *while their strength was fresh.*

11. **locō superiōre**: i.e. the top of the rampart.

12. **dēfēnsōribus**: abl. of separation. **vidēbātur**: *was seen.* **eō**: *to that point*, for *ad eam partem.* **occurrere**: *they would run*, historical infinitive with the force of an imperfect indic. of repeated action, to match *vidēbātur.*

13. **hōc**: abl. of specification, *in this*, explained by the *quod* clause, *that*, etc. **superārī**: *were at a disadvantage.*

16–18. **nōn modo**: sc. *nōn*, A. 217, e (149, e); B. 343, 2, a; G. 482, R. 1; H. 656, 3; H-B. 299. **dēfessō, sauciō**: substantives, dat. of indirect object. **suī recipiendī**: A. 504, c (298, a); B. 339, 5; G. 428, R. 1; H. 626, 3; H-B. 614.

19. CHAPTER 5. **Cum iam . . . pūgnārētur**: *when the battle had continued*; for the tense with *iam* see A. 471, b (277, b); B. 260, 4; G. 234; H. 535, 1; H-B. 485. The principle applies to the tenses of the subjunctive as well as to those of the indicative. **hōrīs**: abl. of comparison.

21. **languidiōribus nostrīs**: abl. absolute, *now that our men's strength was failing.*

22. **fossās**: plural with reference to different points, there being but one ditch. Cf. *rīpās*, **31**, 12.

24. **prīmī pīlī centuriō**: see Introd. 15. **quem . . . dīximus**: *who, as we have said.* See **67**, 14. **cōnfectum**: sc. *esse.*

Page 78. 1. **cōnsilī, virtūtis**: for the genitive see A. 345 (215); B. 203, 1; G. 365; H. 440, 3; H-B. 355. Note the position and agreement of *māgnī;* it is to be taken with both genitives.

2–3. **sī ēruptiōne factā . . . experīrentur**; in form a condition, *if they should make a sortie*, etc.; best translated as the subject of *esse, was to make a sortie*, etc.

4. **certiōrēs facit**: *directs, orders.* What is the usual meaning?

5. **intermitterent proelium**: *to check their fighting;* for the subjv. see A. 565, a (331, f, R.); B. 295, 1, 8; G. 546, R. 2; H. 565, 4; H-B. 502, 3, a.

6. **missa**: *hurled (at them).* **exciperent**: *parry.* **post**: adverb.

9. CHAPTER 6. **Quod iussī sunt**: for *id, quod facere iussi sunt.* **omnibus portīs**: *through all the gates*, abl. of the way by which.

10. **quid fieret**: an indirect question.

12–13. **in spem vēnerant**: *had conceived the hope.* **potiundōrum**: the endings *-undus* and *-iundus* of the third and fourth conjugation gerundives represent probably the original type in these conjugations. **circumventōs interficiunt**: *surround and kill;* for the participle instead of a coördinate verb see A. 496, N. 2 (292, R.); B. 337, 5; G. 664, R. 1; H. 639; H-B. 604, 1.

14–15. **ex mīlibus**: expressing a partitive idea after *tertiā parte. amplius* and *plūs* have no effect upon the constructions.

Page 79. 3. **exūtīs**: with *copiīs.* **armīs**: abl. of separation.

5. **saepius**: *too often.*

6-7. **aliō cōnsiliō**: *with one plan;* **aliīs rēbus**, *different circumstances*, i.e. from what he had expected. Galba had expected no effective opposition from the mountaineers.

8. **commeātūs**: *other supplies, provisions in general.*

9. **prōvinciam**: the Transalpine province.

RISING OF THE VENETI, 7–16.

14. CHAPTER 7. **pācātam**: *in a peaceful condition.* **superātīs Belgīs**, etc.: abls. absolute explaining *causīs*.

15. **initā hieme**: *at the beginning of winter*, i.e. in the year 57.

16. **eās**: equivalent to *of that province.*

19. **P. Crassus**: see **73**, 14.

20. **mare**: for the accusative with *proximus* see A. 432, a (234, e); B. 141, 3; G. 359, N. 1; H. 435, 2; H-B. 380, b.

22. **praefectōs**: see Introd. 16. **complūrēs**: with *cīvitātēs*.

Page 80. 1. CHAPTER 8. **Hūius**: *the last mentioned.*

2. **omnis ōrae maritimae**: equivalent to *omnium cīvitātum maritimārum.*

3. **in Britanniam nāvigāre**: see Introd. p. 60.

4. **cōnsuērunt**: *are accustomed.* What is the meaning of the perfects, *cōgnōvī, meminī, ōdī?*

5. **in māgnō impetū**: *because of* (lit. *in*) *the great violence.*

7. **habent vectīgālēs**: *they hold tributary.* Vessels from other states were made to pay harbor tolls.

9. **Ab hīs fit initium retinendī Sīlī**: *these begin* (*the insurrection*) *by detaining Silius.* The genitive is explanatory, A. 343, d (214, f); B. 202; G. 361, 1; H. 440, 4; H-B. 341.

10. **per eōs**: i.e. by holding them for exchange.

12. **ut sunt**, etc.: *just as the resolutions of the Gauls are*, etc., or *quite in keeping with the sudden and hastily formed resolutions of the Gauls. Ut* frequently introduces some general fact, to mark a particular fact as *natural, to be expected.*

14. **inter sē coniūrant**: *pledge one another.*

15. **nihil** (*sē*) . . . **āctūrōs** (*esse*) . . . **lātūrōs**: indirect discourse, giving the substance of their pledge.

17–19. **ut . . . mālint**: *to prefer*, substantive clause dependent on *sollicitant.* **quam** (18): *rather than;* the idea of *rather* is in *mālint.*

21. **velit, remittat**: in direct discourse, *vīs* and *remitte*. What do *suōs* and *sibi* represent?

24. CHAPTER 9. **longius**: *too far*, i.e. to give immediate personal attention to the matter. **nāvēs longās**: see Introd. 38.

Page 81. 2. **prōvinciā**: the Transalpine province.

3–4. **cum prīmum . . . potuit**: *as soon as the season permitted.* The conference of the triumvirs at Lucca occurred in April, after Caesar returned to Italy from Illyricum. See Introd. p. xvi. Probably he did not rejoin his army before the first of May.

7. **in sē admīsissent**: lit. *had taken upon themselves*, i.e. *had been guilty of;* subjv. in an indirect question.

8–10. **lēgātōs . . . retentōs** (*esse*) . . . **coniectōs** (*esse*): *in having detained envoys*, etc., explaining *facinus*. The use of an infinitive clause instead of an appositive *quod* clause is doubtless due partly to the proximity of *intellegēbant*, partly to the desire not to employ *quod* too frequently in a short passage. **quod nōmen**: *a title which.* In applying the title "envoys" to officers sent merely to secure grain, Caesar is evidently trying to justify the following campaign. **ad**: *among*, or *in the sight of.*

12. **hōc māiōre spē**: *with (all) the greater hope.* Explain the ablatives. **multum**: acc. of degree with *cōnfīdēbant.* **nātūrā**: for the ablative with *cōnfīdō* see A. 431, N. (254, b); B. 219, 1; G. 401, N. 6; H. 476, 3; H-B. 437.

13–14. **concīsa, impedītam**: predicate adjectives. **īnscientiam**: i.e. on the part of the Romans.

15–16. **neque**: *and not*, the negative going with *posse.* **diūtius**: *too long, very long.*

17. **cōnfīdēbant**: *trusted that*, governing indirect discourse, *nostrōs . . . posse.* **ac iam**: *then, too.* **ut**: *even though, granted that*, A. 527, a (313, a); B. 308; G. 608; H. 586, II; H-B. 532, 2, b.

18. **plūrimum posse**: *were very strong;* the infinitive clause is governed by the continued force of *sciēbant*, 15.

19. **Rōmānōs**: (*while*) *the Romans.*

20. **gestūrī essent**: *were about to wage war.* The periphrastic must be employed for past future expressions where the simple tenses would be ambiguous; *gererent* might mean *were waging.*

21–22. **ac**: *and besides, furthermore.* **longē aliam atque**: *far otherwise than, far different from what it was.* **conclūsō marī**: i.e. the Mediterranean.

26. **cōnstābat**: *it appeared, it was generally supposed.*

29. **ex Britanniā**: in Bk. IV, p. **109**, 4–5, Cæsar offers as a reason for invading Britain the support furnished the Gauls from the island in previous campaigns.

Page 82. 1. CHAPTER 10. **Erant**: *there were (it is true).*

2. **multa**: *many considerations,* explained by *iniūria, rebelliō,* etc.

3. **iniūria retentōrum equitum**: *the wrong (done) in the detention of Roman knights.* For the explanatory gen. cf. *initium retinendī Sīlī,* **80**, 9, and note. Observe, too, that the participle expresses the leading idea, A. 497 (292, a); B. 337, 6; G. 664, R. 2; H. 636, 4; H-B. 608, 2. In the phrase "Roman knights" allusion is made to the fact that the tribunes were of the equestrian order.

4. **datīs obsidibus**: abl. absolute, *after,* or *although,* etc.

5–6. **nē . . . arbitrārentur**: *(the fear) that the other tribes would think,* a substantive clause on a par with the preceding nominatives in explaining *multa.* **hāc parte**: *this quarter* of Gaul.

10. **cōnspīrārent**: *should conspire;* for the mood with *priusquam* see A. 551, b (327); B. 292, 1, b; G. 577; H. 605, I, II; H-B. 507, 4, b.

11. **sibi**: dat. of agent.

14. CHAPTER 11. **flūminī**: what case did *proximus* govern in **79**, 20? Which is the more common construction?

15. **adeat**: *to visit,* dependent on *mandat.* For the absence of an introductory *ut* see references on *intermitterent,* **78**, 5.

16–17. **auxiliō**: dat. of purpose. **arcessītī** (*esse*): for the personal construction with the passive, *dīcēbantur,* see

A. 582 (330, b, 1); B. 332, c; G. 528, 1; H. 611, 1, N. 1; H-B. 590, 1. Observe that *dīcēbantur*, standing in a parenthetical clause, is indic., while *cōnentur* is subjv., since its clause is an essential part of the instructions. **per vim . . . trānsīre**: *to force their way across.*

18. **legiōnāriīs**: added to distinguish them from auxiliary cohorts. See Introd. 5.

23. **quī . . . cūret**: a clause of purpose, *to see that their forces are kept from concentrating.* For the gerundive after *cūrō* see A. 500, 4 (294, d); B. 337, 8, b, 2; G. 430; H. 622; H-B. 612, III.

25. **Pictonibus, Santonīs**: see **80**, 24.

Page 83. 2. **eō**: adv., for *in Venetōs.* **pedestribus cōpiīs**: when may accompaniment be expressed without *cum?* With Galba's force Caesar had two legions and eight cohorts with him.

5. CHAPTER 12. **extrēmīs**: *the ends of.* **pedibus**: *by land.*

6. **cum . . . incitāvisset**: *at high tide;* lit.? For the subjv. of repeated action see A. 548 (322); B. 288, 3, a; G. 584, R.; H. 601, 4; H-B. 540. The mood may also be explained by the principle of attraction. **quod**: (*a thing*) *which.*

8. **adflīctārentur**: subjv. by attraction to the mood of *habērent.* Why is not *accidit* also attracted to the subjv.? **utrāque rē**: *from both circumstances.*

9. **impediēbātur**: imperfect of repeated occurrences. Cf. also the tenses in the sentence following, in particular the pluperfect *coeperant.* **sī quandō**: *whenever,* lit. *if ever.*

10. **operis**: i.e. the Roman works of approach.

11. **aggere ac mōlibus**: two explanations have been offered for this expression; one assumes the construction of two parallel dikes, the space between affording ground for the maneuvering of troops; the other assumes but one large dike, which served as a causeway.

12. **fortūnīs**: dat., *for the outcome,* lit. *for their fortunes; dēspērō* may take an accusative, a dative, or *dē* with an ablative.

13. **cūius reī**: for *quārum*. **dēportābant**: *would carry off.*

17. **summa**: limiting *difficultās*.

18. **vāstō marī . . . nūllīs portibus**: abls. absolute, *in the wide and open sea, where the tides were high, and where there were few and in fact almost no harbors.*

20–21. CHAPTER 13. **Namque**: frequently suggests an ellipsis; here, *the Veneti had no such difficulties.* **factae, armātae**: predicate adjectives. **carīnae**: sc. *erant*, also in the sentences following. **quam nostrārum nāvium**: *than (those) of our ships*, A. 297, f, N. (195, a, b); B. 247, 3; H. 445, 1; H-B. 273, b.

22–23. **quō facilius . . . possent**: a clause of purpose.

25. **tōtae**: *entirely*, adjective with force of an adverb. **quamvīs**: from *quīvīs*.

26. **trānstra**: *cross-timbers*, supporting the decks.

Page 84. 1–2. **digitī pollicis crassitūdine**: *of the thickness of a thumb.* Explain the cases. **prō**: *instead of.*

3. **pellēs**: *(untanned) hides.* **vēlīs**: i.e. canvas sails. **tenuiter cōnfectae**: *worked thin*, as compared with the untanned skins.

4. **ēius ūsūs**: *its use; ēius* is an objective genitive.

5. **eō**: *for the reason*, explained by *quod . . . arbitrābantur.* The first *quod* is a relative. **vērī**: for the case with *simile* see A. 385, c, 2 (234, d, 2); B. 204, 3; G. 359, R. 4; H. 435, 4; H-B. 339, c.

7. **tanta onera nāvium**: for *tantī oneris nāvēs;* translate, *such heavy ships.* The turn given the phrase emphasizes the idea of heaviness.

9. **nostrae classī**: *of our fleet.* Explain the case.

10. **ūnā**: *only.* **reliqua**: *(while) all other conditions*, adversative asyndeton.

12. **eīs**: dat. governed by *nocēre.* Give the rule. **nostrae**: sc. *nāvēs.* **rōstrō**: see Introd. 38.

15–18. **cōpulīs**: see Introd. 38. **Accēdēbat, ut . . . ferrent**, etc.: *then, too, they withstood*, etc., lit. *it was added that they*

withstood. For the substantive clause as subject see A. 569, 2 (332, a, 2); B. 297, 2; G. 553, 4; H. 571, 1; H-B. 521, 3, a. **coepisset, dedissent**: for mood see note on *incitāvisset*, **83**, 6. **in vadīs cōnsisterent**: *rode at anchor in the shallow water.* **ab aestū**: abl. of agent; the tide is personified. **relictae**: *if stranded.* **nihil**: *not at all*, acc. of degree.

19. **nāvibus**: dat., or abl.?

23. CHAPTER 14. **neque eīs nocērī posse**: *and that no harm could be done them.* For the dative and the passive verb see A. 372 (230); B. 187, II, a, b; G. 346, R. 1; H. 426, 2, 3; H-B. 364, 2.

24. **ubi . . . prīmum**: *as soon as.*

26. **armōrum**: equivalent to *armāmentōrum.*

27. **portū**: formed by the mouth of the river Auray. The army watched the battle probably from the heights of St. Gildas. **nostrīs**: dat. after *adversae.*

Page 85. 1–3. **neque satis Brūtō . . . cōnstābat, quid . . . agerent . . . īnsisterent**: *it was not quite clear to Brutus . . . what to do*, etc. The direct question would be, *quid agāmus aut quam ratiōnem īnsistāmus? What are we to do*, etc. See A. 444 (268); B. 277; G. 265; H. 559, 4; H-B. 503. **Rōstrō**: abl. of means.

4–5. **nocērī . . . cōgnōverant**: *knew that no damage could be done.* **turribus excitātīs**: *even when towers were erected.* See Introd: 38. **ex**: *on*, or *of.*

6–7. **neque**: correlative with *et.* **et missa ā Gallīs**: *while those hurled by the Gauls.*

8. **Ūna**: emphatic, (*but*) *there was one device* (*rēs*). **falcēs**: in apposition with *rēs.* **māgnō ūsuī**: *of great service.* Explain the case.

9–10. **nōn absimilī fōrmā mūrālium falcium**: *in shape not unlike mural hooks*, for *nōn absimilī fōrmā fōrmae* (dat.) *mūrālium falcium.* Explain the case of *fōrmā* and the supplied *fōrmae.*

12–13. **comprehēnsī . . . erant**: for the mood and tense with *cum, when*(*ever*), see A. 542 (322); B. 288, B, 3; G. 584;

H. 601, 4; H-B. 579, N. **adductī**: *pulled taut*, lit. *pulled towards* (our ships).

16. **nāvibus**: dat. of reference, instead of a possessive genitive.

18. **ūnō tempore**: *at the same time.* **Reliquum**: *after that.*

19. **superābant**: *were superior*, absolute use of the verb.

21. **paulō fortius**: *unusually brave.*

23. **in mare**: *down on the sea*, the idea of *down* residing in the *dē* of *dēspectus*.

25–26. CHAPTER 15. **bīnae ac ternae**: it need not be inferred that the Roman ships were more numerous than those of the Veneti. As they were more easily maneuvered and had crippled many opposing vessels, they could attack, in groups of two or three, one vessel after another with comparatively little fear of interference. **circumsteterant**: for mood and tense cf. *comprehēnsī erant*, 12, above. **vī**: explain the case.

27. **Quod**: *this.*

Page 86. 1. **eī reī**: *for this emergency.*

3–4. **quō**: adverb, for *in quam.* **ferēbat**: used absolutely, *in the direction of the wind.* **malacia ac tranquillitās**: *dead calm.* The two words go to form a single idea, hence the singular verb, *exstitit.* **movēre nōn possent**: the ships of the Veneti were not supplied with oars.

6. **singulās**: *one after the other.*

8. **cum . . . pūgnārētur**: *the battle lasting.* **hōrā ferē quārtā**: the day between sunrise and sunset was divided at all seasons into twelve equal hours, the sixth ending at noon. Only at the equinoxes were the hours of equal length with the hours of modern time. As this battle probably occurred toward the close of the summer, the hours would nearly correspond in length to those of modern time; *hōrā quārtā*, then, is about equivalent to 10 A.M., for the word *hōra*, applied to a definite point of time, refers to the end of the hour.

11. CHAPTER 16. **cum**: correlative with *tum*, 13, *not only . . . but also.*

12-13. **graviōris aetātis**: genitive of quality, serving here to classify. **cōnsilī, dīgnitātis**: genitives of the whole with *aliquid*. Likewise **nāvium** with *quod, whatever of ships there had been anywhere, all the ships they had possessed.*

15-16. **neque, quō sē reciperent,** etc.: *had no (place) to which they could retreat, and no way in which they could defend their towns.* The subjunctives are potential, *quō* and *quem* relatives. Cf. **120**, 22-23, also *nihil erat, quō famem tolerārent,* **23**, 16.

17. **vindicandum** (*esse*): impersonal, *punishment must be meted out to them the more severely. eō* and *quō* are correlatives, the latter introducing a clause of purpose.

20. **sub corōnā**: *as slaves.* It had formerly been the custom to place a wreath on the head of a prisoner of war put up for sale. The sale of prisoners was managed by the quaestor, who disposed of them to traders following in the train of the army.

SABINUS AMONG THE VENELLI, 17-19.

21. CHAPTER 17. **Dum . . . geruntur**: for the mood and tense with *dum* see A. 556 (276, e); B. 293, I; G. 229, R.; H. 604, 1; H-B. 559.

22. **eīs cōpiīs**: see **82**, 22.

Page 87. 2. **exercitum**: a regularly organized army. **cōpiās**: seems to refer to troops levied for the occasion, to be employed if needed.

3. **hīs paucīs diēbus**: *within these few days,* i.e. while Sabinus was marching upon them.

5. **nōlēbant**: plural, a plural subject being supplied from the collective *senātū*.

8. **quōs**: for *eī quōs*.

10. **rēbus**: abl. of specification. **locō**: the site can not be determined with certainty. Napoleon thought it was probably to be identified with a hill about four miles east of Avranches.

11. **cum**: *although.* **spatiō**: abl. of degree of difference.

13. **hostibus**: dat. of reference, *in the eyes of the enemy.*

15. **nōn nihil carperētur**: *did not escape criticism.* *nihil* is acc. of degree.

18. **eō**: i.e. Caesar.

19. **nisi**: with abls. absolute, *unless the ground were favorable or some (special) advantage were offered.*

20. What is the force of **dī-** in *dīmicandum?*

25. Chapter 18. **prō**: *as, pretending to be.*

27. **neque longius abesse, quīn,** etc.: *that no later than the next night Sabinus would lead,* etc., or *that Sabinus was about to lead his army out of camp the next night,* etc. For the *quīn* clause see A. 558 (319, d); B. 298: G. 556; H. 595, 1; H-B. 502, 3, b.

Page 88. 4. **negōtī bene gerendī**: *of a successful engagement.* **īrī**: impersonal passive, subject of *oportēre, they ought to attack the camp.*

8. **erat prōvīsum**: impersonal, *provision had been made.*

9–10. **quod . . . crēdunt**: *the fact that,* a substantive clause in apposition with *rēs,* along with the nouns, *cūnctātiō,* etc.

11–12. **prius . . . quam ab eīs sit concessum**: *until they give their consent;* for the subjv. see A. 551, b, N. 2 (327); B. 292; G. 577, N. 2; H. 605, I; H-B. 507, 4, c. **utī . . . contendant**: a substantive clause, subject of *sit concessum.*

13. **ut explōrātā victōriā**: *as if victory were already assured.*

14–15. **quibus . . . compleant**: *with which to fill up,* a clause of purpose.

17. Chapter 19. **passūs mīlle**: acc. of extent of space, to be taken with *acclīvis.*

18. **spatī**: gen. of the whole after *quam minimum, the least possible time.*

22. **portīs**: abl. of the way by which, *through the gates.* **Factum est**: *the result was,* with *ut . . . verterent,* 24–26, as subject.

25. **ac**: here with adversative meaning, *but.*

Page 89. 1. **paucōs**: *(only) a few.*

4–6. **ut . . . sīc**: *just as . . . so, while . . . yet.* **animus**:

spirit, which furnishes the impulse to action; **mēns**, *mind*, their disposition in general.

CRASSUS IN AQUITANIA, 20–27.

8. CHAPTER 20. **P. Crassus**: see **82**, 18.

10. **ex tertiā parte**: *as a third*, possibly referring to Bk. I, Chapter 1. But it is there said merely that Aquitania is one of three divisions of Gaul.

12. Explain the cases of **sibi** and **annīs**. **L. Valerius Praecōnīnus**: known only from this passage. His defeat and death occurred doubtless in the war with Sertorius.

14. **L. Mānlius**: governor of the Transalpine province, defeated in 78 by one of Sertorius's officers. On his retreat from Spain through Aquitania he was attacked and defeated by the natives. **āmissīs**: *with the loss of*.

15. **nōn mediocrem**: *no ordinary*.

17. **comparātō**: agrees with the nearer noun, *equitātū*. **multīs virīs . . . ēvocātīs**: see Introd. 7. **Tolōsā**, etc.: for the abl. of town names see A. 427, 1 (258, a); B. 229, 1, a; G. 391; H. 491, II, 2; H-B. 451.

21. **quō**: *in which*.

26. **Hī**: though referring to *cōpiās*, is made masculine in accordance with the sense, *cōnstrūctiō ad sēnsum*.

Page 90. 2. CHAPTER 21. **superiōribus victōriīs**: i.e. the victories over Praeconinus and Manlius. For the abl. with *frētus* see A. 431, a (254, b, 2); B. 218, 3; G. 401, N. 6; H. 476, 1; H-B. 438.

5–9. **quid . . . possent**: *how strong they were, what they could (do)*, an indirect question depending on *perspicī*.

12. **ex itinere**: in its usual sense of *at once*, i.e. without resorting to regular siege works. **oppidum**: to be identified with modern Sos.

15. **cunīculīs āctīs**: i.e. mines were extended out under the *agger*. If the latter contained much wood, it might

be set on fire. See Introd. 36. **reī**: gen. governed by *perītissimī*, A. 349, a (218, a); B. 204, 1; G. 374; H. 451, 1; H-B. 354.

17. **sectūrae**: open cuttings, probably stone-quarries.

21. **faciunt**: *they do (so)*, *they obey*.

24. Chapter 22. **soldūriōs**: a Celtic or Iberian term.

25–26. **ut . . . fruantur**, etc.: *that they shall enjoy*, etc., substantive appositive clause explaining *condiciō*.

27. **dēdiderint, accidat**: subjv. by attraction. **sī quid . . . accidat**: euphemistic for *if these meet a violent death*.

Page 91. 2–3. **memoriā**: abl. of time within which. **quī . . . recūsāret**: a clause of characteristic. **dēvōvisset**: why subjv.?

4. **cum hīs**: repeating the idea of *cum dēvōtīs*, above, after the long explanation.

7. **tamen**: i.e. in spite of his treachery. **utī . . . ūterētur**: substantive clause of result, object of *impetrāvit*.

12. Chapter 23. **paucīs diēbus, quibus eō ventum erat**: *in the few days since his arrival*. **expūgnātum**: sc. *esse*.

15. **citeriōris Hispāniae**: predicate genitive, *which belong to nearer Spain*, between the Pyrenees and the river Ebro.

16. **fīnitimae**: limiting *quae*.

18. **Ducēs**: *as leaders*, a predicate nominative.

19. **Q. Sertōriō**: Sertorius was an adherent of the Marian party. As governor of Spain he trained an army and from 82 to 72 maintained a war against the government in Rome, terminated only by his assassination. **omnēs annōs**: *all the years*, of the Sertorian war.

21. **loca**: *suitable positions*, for camps in particular. Sertorius had taught the Spaniards Roman military methods.

24. **Quod**: *this*, object of *animadvertit*; the relative refers to the facts of the preceding sentence, and in turn is expanded by the infinitive clauses, *cōpiās . . . dīdūcī*, etc.

25. **hostem**: (*while*) *the enemy*.

26. **et**: *and yet*.

Page 92. 1-2. **nōn cūnctandum** (*esse*), **quīn pūgnā dēcertāret**: *ought not to hesitate to fight a decisive battle.* For the *quīn* clause see A. 558, a, N. 2 (332, g, N. 2); B. 298, b; G. 555, R. 3; H. 595, 1; H-B. 502, 3, b.

3. **idem sentīre**: *were of the same opinion.* Construction of *idem?*

4. **pūgnae**: explain the case.

5. CHAPTER 24. **duplicī aciē**: the small number of legionaries at Crassus's disposal made it necessary to employ the double line instead of the usual triple line, in order to present a front of sufficient extent. The auxiliaries, too, were removed from their customary position on the wings to the center; this made them more nearly an integral part of the line and less likely to give way.

7. **cōnsilī**: with *quid*, *what plan.* **caperent**: *would adopt*, subjv. in an indirect question; for the tense see A. 483 (286); B. 269, 2; H. 545, II, 3; H-B. 507, 3. **exspectābat**: *waited to see.*

9. **etsī . . . exīstimābant**: for the mood see A. 527, c (313, c); B. 309, 2; G. 604; H. 585; H-B. 582, 8. **esse**: the subject is *potīrī*, 11.

12. **coepissent**: *should begin.*

13. **sub sarcinīs īnfīrmiōrēs animō**: *less resolute because weighted by their packs.* **adorīrī cōgitābant**: *they planned to attack;* the infinitive is complementary.

15. **suā**: referring to *hostēs.*

17-19. **vōcēs**: *exclamations*, followed by indirect discourse, *that they must no longer postpone an advance on the camp. exspectārī*, impersonal passive, is subject of *oportēre.* For the *quīn* clause cf. line 2. *īrētur* is also an impersonal passive.

23. CHAPTER 25. **quibus**: governed by *cōnfīdēbant*, A. 367 (227); B. 187, II, a; G. 346; H. 426, 1; H-B. 362, 2. **ad pūgnam**: *for fighting*, may be rendered with *quibus*, *in whose fighting qualities.*

24. **subministrandīs**: *by supplying*, A. 507 (301); B. 339; G. 431; H. 630; H-B. 612, IV. **aggerem**: the *agger* on this

occasion could not have been an elaborate structure, from the shortness of the time.

Page 93. 1. **nōn timidē**: *fearlessly.* Point out other instances of litotes in this chapter. **locō superiōre**: i.e. the top of the camp rampart. The Aquitani, under the guidance of the *ducēs* mentioned in **91**, 18, had constructed a fortified camp.

3. **ab**: *at.*

8. CHAPTER 26. **ab**: *in consequence of.*

11. **eās . . . mūnītiōnēs**: *that part of the fortifications*, i.e. the rear gate.

12–14. **prius quam posset**: for the subjv. see A. 551, b (327); B. 292, 1, b; G. 577; H. 605, II; H-B. 507, 4, b, N. **vidērī**: depends on *possent*, to be supplied from *posset.* **quid reī gererētur**: *what was going on*, an indirect question depending on *cōgnōscī. reī* is gen. of the whole. **ab eā parte**: i.e. at the rear gate.

15. **nostrī**: i.e. those with Crassus in front of the camp. **quod**: *a thing which*, or *as*, referring to the fact in *redintegrātīs vīribus.*

18. **per**: *over.*

19. **apertissimīs campīs**: locative abl. without *in*, expressing the *ground along which.*

20–22. **quae . . . convēnisse**: infinitive clause, subject of *cōnstābat.* **multā nocte**: *late at night.*

Page 94. 3. Chapter 27. **paucae ultimae nātiōnēs**: for *paucae, quae ultimae erant, nātiōnēs.* **tempore**: abl. depending on *cōnfīsae*, as in **81**, 12. But cf. *quibus*, **92**, 23, dat. of a *person.* **cōnfīsae**: *relying;* for the perfect participle in a present sense see A. 491 (290, b); B. 336, 5; G. 282, N.; H. 640, 1; H-B. 601, 1.

THE MORINI AND MENAPII, 28–29.

6. CHAPTER 28. **omnī**: *all the remainder of.* **Morinī Menapiīque**: (*only*) *the Morini and Menapii.*

7-8. **essent, mīsissent**: why subjv.? **arbitrātus**: *thinking*. See note on *cōnfīsae*, 3, above. **id bellum**: equivalent to *bellum cum eīs*.

9-10. **longē aliā ratiōne ac**: *according to a plan far different from*. For the force of *ac* following words of difference or dissimilarity, cf. *longē aliam . . . atque*, **81**, 21.

13. **eō**: adverb.

15-16. **neque . . . vīsus esset**: *without having seen*.

19-20. **longius**: *too far*. **locīs**: for the abl. see note on *campīs*, **93**, 19.

21. CHAPTER 29. **deinceps**: *continuously, one after the other*.

22. **inermibus . . . mīlitibus**: abl. absolute, *while the soldiers were unarmed*.

Page 95. 1. **conversam ad hostem**: i.e. somewhat in the manner of an abatis. **prō**: *to serve as*.

3. **cōnfectō**: *having been cleared*. **extrēma**: *the rear of*.

4. **tenērentur**: the imperfect marks the imminence of the act, *were about to be seized, were almost within our grasp*. **ipsī**: (*and*) *they*.

6. **continuātiōne**: abl. of cause.

7. **sub pellibus**: i.e. in tents.

8. **Itaque**, etc.: comparison of these two chapters with Bk. IV, Chapter 38, shows that Caesar invaded only the country of the Morini in this campaign.

BOOK IV.

INTRODUCTION.

The Usipetes and Tencteri. — In the year 55 Caesar had again to check the danger to Gaul from German inroads. Two German tribes, the Usipetes and Tencteri, harassed by the more powerful Suebi, had crossed the Rhine in search of a home and had spent the preceding winter in the land of the Menapii. Upon Caesar's arrival at army headquarters, the newcomers were advancing farther into Gaul at the invitation of certain tribes, and were now in the country of the Eburones and Condrusi. Caesar hastened to intercept them. Learning of his approach, the Germans sent envoys with an offer of friendship and a request for an assignment of territory. They were warned to leave Gaul, but were told they might settle east of the Rhine in the land of the Ubii, who were now appealing to Caesar for aid against the Suebi. In the course of negotiations a treacherous attack on the Roman cavalry gave Caesar a pretext for a counter surprise, in which men, women, and children were massacred indiscriminately. The survivors fled across the Rhine. Caesar's dealings with these people met with severe censure in Rome, Cato declaring in the senate that Caesar ought to be delivered up to the Germans for his breach of faith in detaining their chiefs and for the ruthless massacre.

Campaign in Germany. — To enforce the lesson of Gaul for the Gauls, — and Romans, — and to strike terror into these dangerous foes, Caesar determined in turn to invade Germany. Germans should be made to understand that "the army of the Roman people had both the ability and the daring to cross the Rhine." The petition of the Ubii furnished the pretext. The

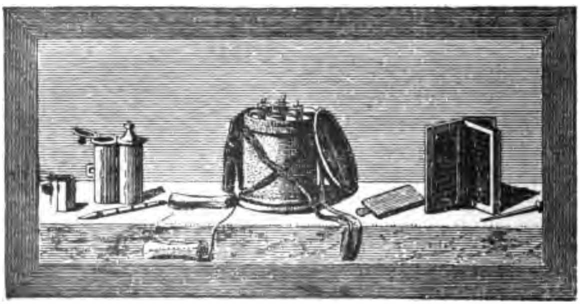
passage of the river was made more impressive to German imagination by the construction of a bridge, the work of ten days. The Sugambri, whom Caesar wished to chastise for harboring the remnant of the Usipetes and Tencteri, withdrew before his advance into the solitude of their forests. As the Suebi adopted the same tactics, Caesar decided to proceed no farther, but recrossed the river and destroyed the bridge. A campaign of eighteen days on German soil was scarcely more than a demonstration in force. Conquest of Germany was beyond Caesar's resources. His wisdom was displayed in recognizing his limitations.

First Campaign in Britain. — An expedition to Britain next claimed Caesar's attention. As a reason therefor he alleges the assistance given his Gallic enemies by the Britons in previous campaigns. A spirit of adventure doubtless played no small part in his decision. Learning of his intentions, various British tribes sent envoys across the channel in token of submission. Obtaining what information he could from traders, Caesar assembled at the Portus Itius, Wissant or Boulogne, a fleet sufficient to transport two legions. Transports with cavalry were to sail from a neighboring port. The infantry transports set sail the night of August 26th, and anchored off the cliffs of Dover about ten o'clock the next morning. After waiting several hours in vain for the cavalry, the fleet proceeded up the coast to the low shore of Deal. In the face of stubborn resistance from the British cavalry and chariots the legionaries landed and put the enemy to flight. Envoys now came to sue for peace. Three days after the landing the cavalry transports approached the British coast, but were driven back by a storm. The same night storm and high tide did great damage to Caesar's fleet. Subsequently, while the repair of the shattered vessels was in progress, the Britons renewed hostilities in an attack on one legion, sent out to secure supplies. Timely arrival of reënforcements prevented a disaster. The Britons ventured some days later to assault the camp by the seashore, but being severely beaten, again sent envoys to offer their submission.

As the equinox was approaching, Caesar embarked his troops and returned to the continent. The expedition had served scarcely more than to discover a landing-place, to learn something of British tactics, and to stimulate a desire for further exploration.

The Morini and Menapii. — Two transports, unable to make the same harbors as the rest, were driven down the coast. The soldiers upon disembarking were attacked by the Morini, but after a brave resistance of several hours were rescued by cavalry reënforcements. A punitive expedition led by Labienus soon brought the Morini to terms. Before a similar expedition the Menapii retired to the protection of their dense forests.

The legions were quartered for the winter among the Belgae. In honor of the year's exploits the Roman senate voted a thanksgiving of twenty days. Upon his departure for Italy Caesar left orders for the construction of new vessels and the repair of the old, all with a view to another expedition to Britain in the following year.



WRITING MATERIALS.

BOOK IV.

THE USIPETES AND TENCTERI, 1–15.

Page 96. 1–2. CHAPTER 1. **Eā hieme**: i.e. the winter of 56–55. **quī**: attracted to the gender of the predicate noun, *annus;* see A. 306 (199); B. 250, 3; G. 614, R. 3, b; H. 396; H-B. 326, 1. **Cn. Pompēiō, M. Crassō cōnsulibus**: Pompey and Crassus entered upon their consulship Jan. 1, 55. See Introd. p. xvi.

4. **nōn longē**: probably in the vicinity of modern Cleve. It was *not far*, relatively speaking. **marī**: *(that part of) the sea.* **quō**: adverb.

7. **Suēbōrum**: cf. **31**, 12 ff. The Suebi included a number of tribes, the most prominent being the Semnones, according to Tacitus. The same author attributes to the Semnones the *centum pāgī* into which Caesar represents all the Suebi as divided.

9. **singula mīlia**: *a thousand each.*

11. **rūrsus**: *again*, of the repetition of the fact. **in vicem**: *in their turn*, of the change of persons.

13. **ratiō, ūsus**: *theory, practical experience*, parts of one idea, the art of war; hence the singular verb, *intermittitur.* **prīvātī . . . agrī nihil**, etc.: in Bk. VI Caesar asserts this of the Germans generally.

15–16. **multum, partem, multum**: accusatives of degree. **sunt**: equivalent to *versantur*, *engage.*

17. **quae rēs**: subject of *alit* and *efficit*, 20–21.

18–20. **quod . . . faciunt**: the clause explains *lībertāte vītae.* **officiō, disciplīnā**: *in*, or *to*, *no duty*, etc. Caesar employs the ablative or an infinitive to express the thing *in which* or *to which* with *adsuēfaciō.*

20–21. **et . . . et**: *both . . . and.* **immānī corporum māgnitūdine**: it was the "huge stature" of the Germans that caused the panic in Caesar's army when it was about to march against Ariovistus. See **33** ff. **hominēs**: predicate accusative; sc. *eōs, renders them men,* etc.

22. **ut,** etc.: a substantive clause of result in apposition with *cōnsuētūdinem.* Translate, *they have accustomed themselves to wear . . . and to bathe.* For the voice of *lavārentur* see A. 156, a (111, a); B. 256, 1; G. 218; H. 517; H-B. 288, 3. **vestītūs**: gen. of the whole with *quicquam, no clothing but skins.* Observe *neque* correlative with *et.*

Page 97. 1. **habērent, lavārentur**: for the tense see A. 485, a (287, a); B. 268, 1; G. 511, R. 3; H. 546; H-B. 481.

2. **est**: why not subjv. by attraction?

3–4. CHAPTER 2. **Mercātōribus est aditus**: *traders are allowed access to them.* **eō**: abl. of cause, explained by the clause of purpose, *ut . . . habeant.* **cēperint**: subjv. by attraction. **quibus vēndant**: (*some one*) *to whom they can sell,* potential subjv. The unexpressed antecedent of *quibus* is the object of *habeant.* **quam quō**: *than because;* for the mood of *dēsīderent* see A. 540, N. 3 (321, R.); G. 541, N. 2; H. 588, 2; H-B. 535, 2, b.

5. **iūmentīs**: in the restricted sense of *saddle-horses.*

7. **importātīs nōn ūtuntur**: *do not import for use.*

9. **summī labōris**: genitive of quality in the predicate, *render capable of the greatest endurance.* The *ut* clause is a substantive clause of result, object of *efficiunt.*

10. **pedibus**: *on foot.*

11. **remanēre**: for the construction with *adsuēfaciō* see note on *officiō,* **96**, 18. **vestīgiō**: locative abl. without a preposition.

15. **Vīnum,** etc.: cf. what is said of the Nervii, **59**, 16.

18. CHAPTER 3. **Pūblicē**: not *publicly.*

19. **vacāre agrōs**: subject of *esse, laudem* being a predicate accusative. In Bk. VI, Chapter 23, increased safety from at-

tacks by other tribes is given as an additional reason for the custom described here.

21. **ūnā ex parte**: probably the east is meant. **ā Suēbīs**: *from the country of the Suebi*, to be taken with *circiter . . . centum.*

22. **agrī . . . dīcuntur**: note the personal construction.

23. **fuit**: *was (formerly), used to be.*

24. **ut est captus Germānōrum**: *according to the German standard.* **quamquam sunt**: for the mood see A. 527, d (313, f); B. 309, 2; G. 605; H. 586, I; H-B. 556.

27. **ipsī**: i.e. the Ubii. **mōribus**: for the case see note on *officiō*, **96**, 18.

Page 98. 2. **vectīgālēs**: predicate accusative; also *humiliōrēs* and *īnfīrmiōrēs.*

4. CHAPTER 4. **causā**: *condition*, or *situation.*

5. **suprā**: see **96**, 2 ff.

6. **ad extrēmum**: *at last, finally.*

8. **quās regiōnēs**: *(to) the districts which.* **ad**: *on.*

11. **trāns**: *across* (from the standpoint of Gaul), i.e. east of the river.

12. **trānsīre**: *from crossing;* for the construction with *prohibeō* see note on *ingredī*, **50**, 5.

13. **omnia**: *every (other) expedient.* **vī contendere**: *to force their way across.*

16. **trīduī**: gen. of quality or measure. **viam**: for the acc. with *prōgressī* see A. 390 (238); B. 176, 4; G. 333, 2; H. 409; H-B. 396, 1.

17. **equitātū**: *by the cavalry.* The main body followed and crossed with the cavalry in the captured boats. **cōnfectō**: limits *itinere.*

18. **-que**: *and consequently.*

21. **Hīs, eōrum**: *the latter, their,* both referring to the Menapii. **priusquam . . . certior fieret**: *before that part . . . could be informed.* For the mood cf. *prius quam posset*, **93**, 12, and note.

24. **partem**: acc. of duration of time. **cōpiīs**: *stores, resources*.

27. CHAPTER 5. **veritus**: *fearing*. For the present force of the perfect participle see references on *cōnfīsae*, **94**, 3.

Page 99. 1–2. **nihil . . . exīstimāvit**: *thought he dared not rely upon them*, i.e. he must go in person to meet the threatened danger from a German invasion. **cōnsuētūdinis**: predicate genitive, lit. *this belongs to Gallic custom;* freely, *the Gauls have the custom*, explained by the *utī* clause, *of compelling travelers to stop*, etc.

8–9. **quōrum eōs**, etc.: *which they are forced to repent of forthwith;* for the cases with *paenitet* see A. 354, c (221, b); B. 209, 1; G. 377; H. 457; H-B. 352, 1.

10. **plērīque**: referring to *viātōrēs* and *mercātōrēs*. **ad**: *to suit*. **ficta respondeant**: *invent replies*.

12. CHAPTER 6. **graviōrī**: *too formidable*, i.e. in case the Gauls welcomed the Germans and allied themselves with them against the Romans.

13. **mātūrius**: possibly in April. **ad exercitum**: the army had wintered among the Aulerci and Lexovii, **95**, 9. Caesar had spent the winter in Cisalpine Gaul.

16. **utī . . . discēderent**: i.e. to penetrate farther into Gaul.

17. **postulāssent**: *should demand*, representing a future perf. indic. of direct discourse. **fore parāta**: for a future perf. indic. of direct discourse; it may be paraphrased in English, *the Germans would find everything made ready by the Gauls*. See A. 164, c, N. (147, c, 2); B. 270, 4; H. 619, 4.

22. **permulsīs et cōnfīrmātīs**: Caesar deals with the Gallic chiefs as if they feared the Germans.

23. **cōnstituit**: here in the sense of *announced his intention*.

25. CHAPTER 7. **ea loca**: Caesar's route can only be conjectured. The campaign map is after Napoleon.

Page 100. 1. **quibus**: sc. *locīs*. **iter**: acc. of extent of space.

3. **neque priōrēs . . . īnferre**: freely, *would not take the initiative by making war on the Roman people.*

4. **recūsāre, quīn contendant**: *refuse to fight;* for the *quīn* clause see A. 558 (319, d); B. 298; G. 555; H. 595, 2; H-B. 502, 3, b.

6. **resistere, dēprecārī**: *offer resistance, resort to entreaties,* both verbs used absolutely.

7. **Haec tamen dīcere**: *nevertheless they had this much to say.* A subject, *sē*, is understood with *dīcere* and the following infinitives.

8. **eīs**: i.e. the Romans.

9. **attribuant, patiantur**: *let them,* etc. What are the equivalents in direct discourse? **eōs**: sc. *agrōs.* The subject of *tenēre* is readily supplied from the context.

10. **quibus**: dat. after *parēs.*

11–13. **reliquum, nēminem**: both words stand in emphatic positions. What mood, or moods, of direct discourse, are represented by *possint*, 11, and *possint*, 13?

14. CHAPTER 8. **quae vīsum est**: *what seemed appropriate (to reply).*

16–17. **vērum**: (equivalent to *iūstum*) *fair,* a *true* principle of action. Understand *eōs* as antecedent of *quī* and subject of *occupāre.* **aliēnōs**: sc. *fīnēs.*

19. **licēre**: sc. *eīs, they might.*

24. CHAPTER 9. **post diem tertium**: *the third day after,* i.e. *in two days.* In such phrases Latin reckons in the day from which the period begins.

25. **sē**: acc. after *propius,* A. 432, a (261, a); B. 141, 3; G. 359, N. 1; H. 420, 5; H-B. 380, b.

Page 101. 5. CHAPTER 10. **monte Vosegō**: (*that part of*) *the Vosges.* The Meuse rises in the plateau of Langres, Caesar giving *Vosegus* a greater extent than is now understood by Vosges.

6. **parte**: *arm, branch.*

8. **inde**: i.e. from the confluence of the Waal and the

Meuse. In Caesar's time the junction was probably near Fort St. André.

10. **Nantuātium**: there seems to be no very satisfactory way of reconciling the location of these people as given here and in **75**, 2, where they are placed south of Lake Geneva.

11. **citātus**: adjective for adverb.

13. **multīs ingentibusque**: *many large*, A. 323, d (208, 3); B. 241, 3.

14. **ex quibus sunt, quī**: *to whom belong those who.*

16. **capitibus**: *mouths.* The word usually means *source*, in reference to a river.

18. CHAPTER 11. **ut erat cōnstitūtum**: see **100**, 24.

19. **congressī**: *having met (him).*

21. **praemitteret**: used absolutely, *send ahead*, or *send orders ahead.*

23. **mittendī**: depending on *potestātem.* Observe that the gerund has a direct object, *lēgātōs.* Give the gerundive construction. For the occasion of the embassy see **100**, 19 ff.

24. **iūre iūrandō fidem**: *an oath-bound pledge.* **fēcisset**: *would give*, represents what mood and tense of direct discourse? The verb agrees in number with the nearer subject, *senātus.*

Page 102. 2. **daret**: *let him grant.* Give the equivalent in direct discourse. The time asked for seems scant for a trip to and from the country of the Ubii, and constitutes an argument against placing the final battle so far north.

3. **eōdem illō pertinēre**: *had the same purpose in view*, explained by *ut . . . reverterentur.*

4. **equitēs**: antecedent of *quī.* **abessent**: subjv. by attraction. For the fact see **101**, 1–3.

6. **aquātiōnis**: i.e. at some stream, possibly the Niers.

9. **mittit**: an object is to be supplied, *messengers.* **nūntiārent**: *give orders.* **nē**: with *lacesserent* only; *ut* is to be supplied with *sustinērent.*

10. **et**: *but.* **sustinērent**: *hold out, stand on the defensive*, used absolutely. **exercitū**: used here of the infantry only.

11. **accessisset**: for a fut. perf. indic. of direct discourse.

13-14. CHAPTER 12. **cum**: *although.* **amplius**: adverb, with no influence on the case of *equitēs.*

17. **indūtiīs**: dat. of purpose.

18. **hīs**: i.e. the Roman cavalry.

23. **vēnissent**: subjv. by attraction, representing a perf. indic.; see A. 551, a (327); B. 291, 2; G. 576; H. 605, I; H-B. 550, b.

25. **Pīsō**: an Aquitanian who had probably received a Roman name along with Roman citizenship. See note on *cīvitāte*, **42**, 14.

26. **genere**: for the abl. with *nātus* see A. 403, a (244, a); B. 215; G. 395; H. 469, 2; H-B. 413.

27. **amīcus**: see note on *amīcus*, **3**, 13.

Page 103. 2. **quoad**: *as long as.*

4. **id**: object of *animadvertisset.* **excesserat**: why not subjv. by attraction?

5. **incitātō equō**: *putting spurs to his horse.*

7-8. CHAPTER 13. **neque iam**: *no longer.* **ab**: *from.*

Page 104. 2-3. **exspectāre**: subject of *esse*, 3. **augērentur**: *should be increased.* The subjv. would be retained in direct discourse, A. 553 (328, 1); B. 293, III, 2; G. 572; H. 603, II, 2; H-B. 507, 5. **equitātusque reverterētur**: *-que* introduces an explanation, *by the return of the cavalry.* **summae dēmentiae esse**: *would be (an act) of the utmost folly.*

4. **cōgnitā**: *knowing (as he did).*

6. **sentiēbat**: *felt instinctively, guessed.*

8-9. **cōnsiliō**: *his plan*, explained by the appositive clause, *nē . . . praetermitteret, not to let pass.* **pūgnae**: genitive.

10. **quod**: *that*, etc., in apposition with *rēs.*

11. **eādem . . . ūsī**: *with the same pretense and perfidy.*

12. **adhibitīs**: *including.*

13. **suī**: A. 504, c (298, a); B. 339, 5; G. 428, R. 1; H. 626, 3; H-B. 614.

14–16. **quod . . . commīsissent**: the reason given by the Germans, therefore the subjv. **contrā atque**: *in violation of what had been agreed upon*, etc. What is the meaning of *aliter ac, īdem atque, pār atque?* **ut, sī quid possent, . . . impetrārent**: *in order to gain by trickery anything they could in the matter of a truce.* **Quōs . . . oblātōs gāvīsus**: *glad that they had been put in his power.*

20. Chapter 14. **Aciē**: instead of the usual marching column, *agmen*. See Introd. 31. **mīlium**: sc. *passuum.*

21–22. **prius . . . quam . . . possent**: explain the mood.

23. **et . . . et**: *both . . . and.* **celeritāte, discessū**: appositives explaining *rēbus.*

24–25. **suōrum**: i.e. the chiefs and others, 12, above. **habendī, capiendī**: gen. of gerundive and gerund depending on *spatiō.* **perturbantur**: *were thrown into confusion*, followed by the indirect question, *cōpiāsne . . . praestāret, whether it would be better to lead*, etc.

Page 105. 7. **quōs**: referring to *multitūdō*, but made masculine plural by construction according to sense.

9. Chapter 15. **clāmōre**: i.e. of the women and children.

12. **Rhēnī**: the Waal is meant, Caesar regarding it as part of the Rhine. But because of the considerable distance from the Ubii (see note, **102**, 2), and the necessity of long marches and countermarches in Caesar's subsequent movements, it has been urged that *Mosellae* be substituted for *Mosae*. The manuscripts, however, all have the latter reading.

15. **ad ūnum omnēs**: *all to a man.*

16. **ex**: *after*, implying *although they had had reason to fear.* **cum**: *since.*

18. **eīs**: see **104**, 17.

20. **veritī**: *fearing.*

21. **lībertātem**: seems to mean *permission (to do so)*. For the feeling in Rome relative to Caesar's conduct in this whole affair see the Introduction to Bk. IV.

CAMPAIGN IN GERMANY, 16–19.

Page 106. 1. Chapter 16. **iūstissima**: *strongest, most cogent.* **quod**: *that.*

2–3. **suīs quoque rēbus timēre**: *to fear for their own land also.* **cum intellegerent**: *when they should understand, by making them understand;* imperfect subjv. for a fut. indic. in direct discourse.

5. **Accessit etiam, quod**: *there was the additional fact, that.*

6–7. **suprā**: see **101**, 1–3. **commemorāvī**: the first person, of Caesar the author. **proeliō**: dative. Why?

10. **quōs**: the Sugambri.

11. **dēderent**: *that they surrender*, for the subjv. without *ut* see A. 565, a (331, f, R.); B. 295, 1, 8; G. 546, R. 2; H. 565, 4; H-B. 502, 3, a.

13. **aequum**: in the predicate, *if he thought it unfair for the Germans to cross over into Gaul.*

14. **suī . . . imperī aut potestātis**: predicate genitives of possession; lit. *why should he claim that anything beyond the Rhine belonged to his dominion and authority.*

18–20. **quod . . . premerentur**: whose reason, and why subjv.? **facere**: *from doing*, depending on *prohibērētur.* **occupātiōnibus reī pūblicae**: *by affairs of state, by official duties.* **exercitum, Rhēnum**: for the two accusatives see A. 395 (239, 2, b); B. 179, 1; G. 331, R. 1; H. 413; H-B. 386. **modo trānsportāret**: *let him but transport.*

21. **reliquī temporis**: *for the future.*

23. **ēius**: *his.* **Ariovistō**, etc.: abl. absolute, expressing cause.

24. **ad**: *among.*

29. Chapter 17. **trānsīre**: subject of *esse*, **107**, 1, 2.

Page 107. 1. **neque . . . tūtum**: i.e. to depend upon boats might endanger his communications.

2. **suae dīgnitātis**: predicate genitive, *in accord with his own dignity.*

3. **faciendī**: *in constructing.* The site of the bridge cannot be fixed definitely. It may have been at Bonn, as the campaign map indicates, or farther up the river, nearer Coblenz.

7. **Tīgna**: object of *iungēbat.* **bīna**: *in pairs* gives the force of the distributive.

8. **paulum**: with *praeacūta*, i.e. the piles were given blunt points to facilitate driving. **ab īmō**: *at the lower end.* **dīmēnsa ad**: *their length proportioned to the depth of the river;* for the participle see A. 190, b (135, b); B. 112, b; G. 167, N. 2; H. 222, 2; H-B. 291, d.

9. **intervāllō pedum duōrum**: refers to the space between the two *tīgna* of each pair. **inter sē iungēbat**: *he fastened together.*

10. **māchinātiōnibus**: *engines*, with some device for holding a pair of *tīgna* at the proper angle while being rammed down by the driver. **dēfīxerat**: the pluperfect indic. of repeated instances. **immissa**: render as a coördinate verb, *had let down.*

11. **sublicae modō**: *in the manner of an (ordinary) pile.*

12. **secundum nāturam flūminis**: *down stream.*

13. **duo**: sc. *tīgna.* **ad eundem modum**: *in the same manner*, as described above.

14. **quadrāgēnum**: *forty feet in each case*, measured perhaps at the surface of the water. **ab īnferiōre parte**: *farther down (stream).*

16–18. **trabibus immissīs**: abl. absolute. **quantum**: a relative (acc. of degree) referring to the noun idea in *bipedālibus.* **fībulīs**: abl. of means or abl. absolute. Translate freely, *the opposite pairs of piles were (connected and at the same time) held apart by letting in from above a cross-timber two feet thick, which was the distance between the piles (of each pair), with two braces at each of its ends.* The nature of the *fībulae* is much disputed.

19. **quibus**: the opposite pairs of piles in each case. **revīnctīs**: *braced.*

20. **ea rērum nātūra**: lit. *such the nature of things;* in trans-

lation the phrase may be included in the result clause following, *that from the nature of the case*, etc.

21. **quō māior**, etc.: *the more violently the water dashed against them.* **inligāta**: sc. *tigna.*

22. **Haec**: i.e. the cross-timbers, or perhaps used loosely of the whole structure so far described. **dērēctā māteriā iniectā**: *with timbers laid lengthwise* (*of the bridge*).

24. **et**: correlative with *et*, 26. **ad īnferiōrem partem flūminis**: i.e. on the lower or down-stream side of the bridge.

25–26. **quae . . . exciperent**: a relative clause of purpose, *which . . . were to break.* **prō ariete**: *as buttresses.* **aliae**: sc. *agēbantur.* Though Caesar does not say so, these piles above the bridge were probably driven perpendicularly.

28. **essent immissae**: *should be sent down*, for a fut. perf. indic. in a direct statement. See note on *sī vellet*, **43**, 8.

29. **eārum rērum**: i.e. the logs and boats. **neu**: *and that not*, B. 282, 1, e; G. 543, 4; H. 568, 6; H-B. 464, 1.

Page 108. 1. CHAPTER 18. **Diēbus decem, quibus**: *within ten days from the time when.* Cf. *paucīs diēbus, quibus*, **91**, 12. **coepta erat**: *had begun;* for the passive of this verb see A. 205, a (143, a); B. 133, 1; G. 423, N. 3; H. 299, 1; H-B. 199, 2.

2. **ad utramque partem**: *at each end.*

5. **quibus . . . petentibus**: *to their petition for peace and friendship.*

8. **hortantibus eīs**: abl. absolute, *under the urging of those*, i.e. the cavalry detachment, **106**, 5.

10. **in**: *in*, lit. *into*, with the acc. because of the motion implied in *abdiderant.* Cf. **11**, 3.

15. CHAPTER 19. **premerentur**: *should be harassed*, for a fut. indic. in the direct promise.

18. **utī . . . dēmigrārent**, etc.: dependent on the idea of command in *nūntiōs*, *messengers* (*with orders*) *that the people should abandon*, etc.

21. **medium**: in the predicate; freely, *the place chosen was about the center*, etc.

23. **dēcertāre**: *to fight a decisive battle.*

24. **rēbus**: *purposes*, explained by the purpose clauses, *ut . . . iniceret*, etc., *namely, to inspire the Germans with fear*, etc. **rērum**: omit in translation.

28. **ad**: *with respect to, from the standpoint of.* **prōfectum**: observe that *ō* is long.

FIRST CAMPAIGN IN BRITAIN, 20–36.

Page 109. 1. CHAPTER 20. **Exiguā parte reliquā**: abl. absolute with adversative force, *although but a small part was left.*

4. **bellīs**: abl. of time when, A. 423, d (256); B. 230; G. 394, R.; H. 486, 1; H-B. 439, 3.

5. **auxilia**: the summoning of British contingents is mentioned specifically only in Bk. III, p. **81**, 29. **sī**: *even if.*

7–8. **sī modo adīsset**: *if he should merely visit*, or *merely to visit;* the conditional clauses are in thought the subjects of *fore.* **aditūs**: *landing-places.*

10. **illō**: adverb.

12. **Galliās**: plural with reference to the divisions of the country. **vocātīs**: *although he summoned.*

13. **quanta esset**, etc.: indirect questions depending on *reperīre*, 17.

15–16. **quibus īnstitūtīs ūterentur**: *what sort of institutions they lived under.* **māiōrem**: *unusually large.*

18. CHAPTER 21. **priusquam perīculum faceret**: *before he should make trial, before he should venture on the enterprise;* for the subjv. see A. 551, b (327); B. 292, 1, a; G. 577; H. 605, II; H-B. 507, 4, a.

20. **Huic mandat, ut**: *he commissions him to*, etc.

22. **inde**: i.e. from the country of the Morini.

24. **quam, classem**: for *eam classem, quam.* See **80**, 24 ff.

Page 110. 3. **quī polliceantur**: *to promise.* **dare, obtemperāre**: objects of *polliceantur*, A. 580, c (330, f, N.); B. 328, 1; G. 531, N. 4; H. 619, 1; H-B. 593, a.

5. **pollicitus**: used absolutely, *after making promises.*

7. **Atrebātibus superātīs**: i.e. in the battle with the Nervii; see **65**, 3 ff. The appointment of Commius as king has not been mentioned before.

9. **in hīs regiōnibus**: i.e. in that part of Gaul where the Atrebates were situated. **māgnī habēbātur**: *was counted great*, or *valued highly;* for the genitive see A. 417 (252, a); B. 203, 3; G. 380; H. 448, 1; H-B. 356, 1.

10. **adeat**: *to visit;* for the subjunctive without *ut* see references on *dēderent*, **106**, 11. **quās possit cīvitātēs**: *what states he can;* the subjv. is due to attraction.

11. **fidem sequantur**: see vocabulary, *fidēs.*

13–14. **eī**: indefinite, *a man, one.* **facultātis**: gen. of the whole after *quantum;* translate, *so far as opportunity could be afforded one who,* etc. **quī . . . nōn audēret**: a clause of characteristic.

15. **quae . . . perspexisset**: an indirect question.

17. CHAPTER 22. **Dum . . . morātur**: Caesar probably reached the port of embarkation in the latter part of July.

19. **superiōris temporis**: *in time past,* referring to the year before. See Bk. III, Chapters 28–29. **cōnsiliō**: *policy, conduct.*

20. **hominēs barbarī et . . . imperītī**: *being a barbarous people and unacquainted with our policy.* **cōnsuētūdinis**: i.e. the policy of sparing and protecting those who voluntarily submitted to Roman authority. For the gen. with *imperītī* see A. 349, a (218, a); B. 204, 1; G. 374; H. 451, 1; H-B. 354.

21–22. **sē . . . factūrōs** (*esse*): contrast the simple present infinitive dependent on *polliceor*, 3, above. **ea, quae imperāsset**: *his bidding.* The pluperfect subjv. represents a future perf. indic. of direct discourse.

25–26. **hās . . . occupātiōnēs**: *attention to such unimportant matters as this,* lit. *these employments in unimportant matters.*

Britanniae antepōnendās: *should be given preference over (the expedition to) Britain.*

27. **eīs imperat**: *levies upon them, demands of them.*

Page 111. 1. **quot**: relative, *a number which.*

2. **duās**: the 7th and 10th. **quod**: acc. with dependent gen. of the whole, *nāvium, all the war galleys he had in addition.*

4. **Hūc accēdēbant**: *there were besides.*

5. **eō locō**: though Caesar does not give definite information on the point, the harbor from which he sailed on this first expedition was in all probability the Portus Itius from which the second expedition started, as related in Bk. V. Portus Itius is to be identified with Wissant or Boulogne, more probably the former. The harbor eight miles distant will be Ambleteuse for Boulogne, or Sangatte for Wissant. **ā mīlibus passuum octo**: *eight miles distant.* **tenēbantur**: *were held,* connoting *prevented* and so followed by *quōminus . . . possent, from being able,* A. 558, b (319, c); B. 295, 3; G. 549; H. 568, 8; H-B. 502, 3, b.

10–11. **dūcendum**: *to lead,* lit. *to be led;* for the gerundive with verbs like *cūrō, dō,* etc. see A. 500, 4 (294, d); B. 337, 8, b, 2; G. 430; H. 622; H-B. 612, III. **eō . . . quod**: *such . . . as.*

14. CHAPTER 23. **tertiā vigiliā**: the third watch began at midnight. From data in these chapters and in Bk. V, and with the aid of astronomical calculations, the night of August 26–27 has been fixed upon as the date.

16. **esset administrātum**: used absolutely and impersonally, *the order (to embark) having been acted on somewhat slowly by them.* In consequence the cavalry transports lost the advantage of favoring winds and did not reach the coast of Britain till three days later.

17. **hōrā quārtā**: shortly before 10 A.M. See note on *hōrā quārtā,* **86**, 8.

18. **ibi**: Caesar's landing-place has been the subject of endless discussion, based chiefly on the account of his passage in

the second expedition. The choice seems to lie most likely between the level shore near Deal and that near Romney Marsh. If the former, as the campaign map assumes, then the cliffs mentioned here are the cliffs of Dover.

19. **haec**: *such.*

23. **dum . . . convenīrent**: *for the rest of the ships to arrive;* for the subjv. with *dum* see A. 553 (328, 1); B. 293, III, 2; G. 572; H. 603, II, 2; H-B. 507, 5. **hōram nōnam**: about 3.30 P.M.

27. **ut, ut**: *as, as.* **maritimae rēs**: *naval maneuvers.*

28–29. **postulārent**: subjv. by attraction. **ut quae . . . habērent**: lit. *as (things) which involved,* better *since they involved, involving as they did; quae* refers to *rēs.* For the use of *ut* and for the mood see A. 535, e, N. 1 (320, e, N. 1); B. 283, 3, a; G. 633; H. 592, 1; H-B. 523, b. **omnēs rēs . . . administrārentur**: *that all orders be executed by them;* the subjv. depends upon *monuit* without *ut,* which would have been awkward in view of the three preceding. Cf. *imperat, adeat,* **110**, 10.

Page 112. 1. **aestum**: *tidal current.* Consideration of the tidal currents in the Straits of Dover is one of the most important items in the attempt to determine Caesar's landing-place.

3–4. **apertō . . . lītore**: *where the shore was open and level;* for the abl. see A. 429 (258, f); B. 228, b; G. 385, N. 1; H. 485, 2; H-B. 436.

6. CHAPTER 24. **quō . . . genere**: *a class of troops which.* The reference may be not merely to the charioteers, but to the mixture of cavalry and charioteers. See Chapter 33.

8. **ēgredī**: *from landing.*

9. **nisi**: *except.* **in altō**: *in deep water,* and consequently quite a distance from the shore.

10–11. **mīlitibus**: dat. of agent with *dēsiliendum,* etc., *the soldiers had to leap.* **pressīs**: *weighed down (as they were).*

13. **cum illī**: *while they,* the Britons.

Page 113. 1. **īnsuēfactōs**: *trained* to such maneuvers.

2. **generis**: for case after *imperītī* see note on *cōnsuētūdinis*, **110**, 20.

3. **quō**: agrees in gender with the nearer antecedent. **ūtī**: *exhibit.*

6–7. CHAPTER 25. **mōtus ad ūsum expedītior**: i.e. were more easily maneuvered, because propelled by oars.

8. **latus apertum**: *the unprotected flank*, i.e. the right.

9. **inde**: for *ex eō locō.* **tormentīs**: see Introd. 38.

11. **quae rēs**: *this maneuver.*

13. **inūsitātō genere tormentōrum**: *by the artillery, a kind of arms unfamiliar to them.*

18–20. **quī aquilam ferēbat**: equivalent to *aquilifer.* **obtestātus deōs, ut . . . ēvenīret**: *with a prayer to the gods that his act might result*, etc. For the substantive clause see A. 563 (331); B. 296, 1; G. 546; H. 565; H-B. 530, 2.

22. **certē**: *at least*, or *for my own part.*

24. **praestiterō**: *shall have done.* **cum**: the conjunction, *when.*

27–28. **cohortātī inter sē, nē . . . admitterētur**: *urging one another not to permit.* **tantum dēdecus**: see Introd. 28.

Page 114. 1. **ex proximīs nāvibus**: (*the men*) *on the nearest ships.*

4. CHAPTER 26. **utrīsque**: *both sides.* For the plural of *uterque* cf. *utraque*, **107**, 16, and note on *hīs utrīsque*, **60**, 2.

5. **fīrmiter**: for the form of the adverb see A. 214, c (148, c); B. 77, 4; G. 92, 2; H. 309; H-B. 126, 2. With *īnsistere, gain a firm footing.*

6. **alius aliā ex nāvī**: *one from one ship, another from another*, or *indiscriminately from the different ships.*

7. **sē adgregābat**: sc. a dative, *hīs* or *eīs.* Compare the battle with the Nervii, **64**, 9.

9. **ubi**: *whenever, as often as*, followed by the pluperfect indic. of repeated action. **singulārēs**: *singly, apart from their comrades.* **adoriēbantur**: also of repeated action, *would attack.*

10–11. **plūrēs**: *in large numbers.* **paucōs**: *small detachments.* **ab latere apertō**: *on our unprotected flank.* **ūniversōs**: *our line as a whole.*

15. **quōs**: *whomever, whenever any.*

16. **simul**: occasionally, as here, for *simul atque, as soon as.*

18. **neque potuērunt**: *but they were unable.*

20. **Hōc ūnum . . . dēfuit**: lit. *this one thing failed Caesar with respect to his previous good fortune,* better *with this one exception Caesar's good fortune attended him as hitherto.* For the Roman conception of fortune see note on *fēlīcitātem,* **35**, 24.

24. Chapter 27. **quaeque**: for *et ea quae.*

26. **suprā**: see **110**, 6. **dēmōnstrāveram**: for the tense cf. *dīxerāmus,* **48**, 4, and note.

Page 115. 1. **illī**: the Britons. **cum**: *although.*

2. **ōrātōris modō**: *in the capacity of envoy.*

3. **tum**: *but now.*

4. **ēius reī**: *this act,* i.e. their treatment of Commius.

5–6. **ut īgnōscerētur**: impersonal passive, *that pardon be granted, that they be pardoned.*

7–9. **quod . . . intulissent**: why subjv.? **cum**: *although.* **lēgātīs missīs**: for the fact see **110**, 2. **īgnōscere**: *sē* as subject is understood from the context.

11. **arcessītam**: make coördinate with *datūrōs, would summon and give.*

15–16. Chapter 28. **post diem quārtum**, etc.: *three days after he arrived,* lit. *the fourth day after.* Cf. *post diem tertium, in two days,* **100**, 24, and note.

17–18. **suprā**: see **111**, 4 and 15. **superiōre portū**: identical with the *ulterior portus* of **111**, 15.

23. **occāsum**: for the case see note on *sē,* **100**, 15.

24–26. **tamen**: i.e. in spite of the storm, applies to *ancorīs iactīs* only. Translate freely, *and though they did cast anchor in spite of the storm, yet as they began to fill.* **adversā**: see Vocabulary. **in altum prōvectae**: *having put to sea.*

Page 116. 1. CHAPTER 29. **Eādem nocte**: the night of August 30–31. **quī diēs**: *the day which.*

2. **aestūs māximōs**: spring tides at Dover are said to rise nineteen feet.

3. **id**: i.e. the fact of such high tides. The tides of the Mediterranean are but slight.

4. **exercitum trānsportandum cūrāverat**: *had had his army transported.* For the gerundive with *cūrō* see references on *dūcendum,* **111**, 10.

5. **subdūxerat**: see Introd. 38.

7–8. **administrandī**: *of managing them,* on the part of the sailors. **auxiliandī**: *of rendering assistance,* on the part of the troops ashore.

10–11. **āmissīs**: *by the loss of.* **id quod . . . accidere**: *as was inevitable,* lit. *a thing, the happening of which was inevitable. quod* is accusative, subject of *accidere,* while the infinitive clause as a whole is subject of *necesse erat.*

13. **possent**: sc. *cōpiae* or *mīlitēs* as subject.

14–15. **erant**: Why not subjv., like *possent,* 13? **omnibus cōnstābat**: *it was clear to all, it was generally assumed.* **hiemārī oportēre**: *that they should winter.* **in hiemem**: *for,* or *against, the winter.*

17. CHAPTER 30. **prīncipēs**: subject of *dūxērunt,* 23.

19–20. **Rōmānīs deesse**: *that the Romans lacked.*

21. **hōc etiam angustiōra**: *so much the smaller.*

23. **optimum . . . dūxērunt**: *concluded the best thing to do was to renew hostilities,* etc. For the supine (*factū*) see A. 510 (303); B. 340, 2; G. 436, N. 1; H. 635; H-B. 619, 1.

24. **rem**: *the struggle, the war.*

25. **hīs superātīs**: *if these,* etc.

27. **rūrsus**: *in turn,* in contrast to their recent peaceful attitude.

Page 117. 1. **castrīs**: i.e. the Roman camp, which they had visited freely since peace had been made. **ex agrīs dēdūcere**: equivalent to *muster their forces.* See **115**, 12–14.

4. CHAPTER 31. **ēventū nāvium**: *what had happened to the ships, the disaster to the ships.* **ex eō quod**: *from the fact that.*

5. **dare**: with *intermīserant, had ceased to give.* **fore id, quod accidit**: *that things would turn out as they actually did.*

8. **nāvēs**: antecedent incorporated in the relative clause. Translate as if *eārum nāvium quae.* **aere**: *bronze,* for the rostra and for spikes.

11. **administrārētur**: *the work was carried on.*

12. **reliquīs ut . . . posset, effēcit**: *he made the rest fairly seaworthy,* lit. *brought about that sailing could be done well enough with the rest.*

13. CHAPTER 32. **geruntur**: explain the mood and tense. **ex cōnsuētūdine**: to be taken closely with *ūnā, one legion as usual.* **frūmentātum**: supine, expressing purpose.

15. **bellī**: *of actual hostilities,* not contradictory to *fore id . . . suspicābātur,* 5, above. **cum**: *inasmuch as.* **hominum**: i.e. the Britons.

17. **prō portīs**: one cohort kept guard at each of the four gates of the camp.

18. **quam cōnsuētūdō ferret**: *than usual.*

20. **id quod erat**: *that which was* (*true*), *as proved to be the case.*

22. **duās**: i.e. one half of a cohort for each gate.

23. **armārī**: *to arm themselves;* for reflexive use of the passive see A. 156, a (111, a); B. 256, 1; G. 218; H. 517; H-B. 288, 3. Cf. also *lavārentur,* **97**, 2.

25. **paulō longius**: *some little distance.*

Page 118. 3–4. **dispersōs, occupātōs**: with *nostrōs,* to be understood as object of *adortī.*

7. CHAPTER 33. **hōc**: *as follows.* **ex essedīs**: a prepositional phrase with adjectival force, limiting *pūgnae.* There is no good evidence that these were scythe-bearing chariots. They probably carried two men, the *aurīga* and the *essedārius.*

8–9. **ipsō**: *mere.* **terrōre equitum**: *terror inspired by the horses;* the genitive is subjective.

13–14. **ut . . . habeant**: a clause of result. **illī**: the dismounted *essedāriī*. **premantur**: subjv. by attraction. **Ita**: *thus, in this way.*

15–16. **tantum . . . efficiunt**: *they become so skillful.*

17. **incitātōs**: *at full speed.* **brevī**: *quickly.*

18. **per**: *along.* **iugō**: *the yoke,* at the end of the pole and resting on the horses' necks.

20. CHAPTER 34. **rēbus**: abl. of means. **novitāte**: abl. of cause. **nostrīs**: dat. of indirect object, or abl. absolute.

23–24. **Quō factō . . . arbitrātus**: *having accomplished this, (but) thinking.* **ad . . . aliēnum**: *unfavorable for.*

25. **suō sē locō continuit**: *held his ground.*

27. **quī**: for *eī quī,* referring to those Britons who had taken no part in the battle. They now withdrew to join their people in arms.

Page 119. 5–6. **quanta . . . facultās darētur**: indirect question. **suī**: see references on *suī,* **104**, 13.

11–12. CHAPTER 35. **fore**: *would happen.* **ut . . . effugerent**: *namely, that they would escape,* explaining *idem.* **equitēs**: to be used in pursuit.

15–16. **diūtius nōn**: *not long.* **ac**: *but.*

17. **tantō spatiō**: abl. expressing the space over which, *as far,* or *as long.* **quantum . . . potuērunt**: *as their speed and strength permitted.*

21–22. CHAPTER 36. **Hīs**: dat. of reference. **ante**: see **115**, 9.

23. **propinquā diē aequinoctiī**: abl. absolute, *as the equinox was near at hand.* **īnfīrmīs nāvibus**, etc.: lit. *did not think that a voyage in disabled ships ought to be exposed to stormy weather.* The repairs had fitted the fleet for fair weather only.

Page 120. 1. **incolumēs**: predicate adjective. 2–3. **eōsdem portūs**; though plural, refers possibly to the Portus Itius alone. **paulō īnfrā**: i.e. farther south, on account of wind or tidal current.

THE MORINI AND MENAPIĪ, 37-38.

5. CHAPTER 37. **Quibus**: i.e. the two transports mentioned above.

6. **castra**: doubtless a camp constructed by Rufus. See **111**, 10.

7. **pācātōs**: see **110**, Chapter 22.

8. **nōn ita māgnō numerō**: *with no very great number.*

9. **sēsē interficī**: for the infinitive clause instead of an infinitive alone with *nōllent*, see A. 563, b (331, b, N.); B. 331, IV, a; G. 532, R. 2; H. 565, 2; H-B. 586, b. **pōnere**: *lay down.*

10. **orbe**: see Introd. 33.

11. **ad**: *in answer to,* or *attracted by.* **hominum**: after *mīlia.*

21. CHAPTER 38. **siccitātēs**: plural of an abstract noun, with reference to more than one marsh.

22-23. **quō sē reciperent, nōn habērent**: *had no place to which they could retreat; reciperent* is a potential subjunctive. Cf. **86**, 15. **quō perfugiō . . . erant ūsī**: referring to *palūdum, a place of refuge they had made use of the year before.* See Bk. III, Chapter 28. **potestātem**: see Vocabulary.

Page 121. 1. **Titūrius, Cotta**: see **111**, 8-10.

3-4. **quod . . . abdiderant**: the reason for *sē . . . recēpērunt.*

8. **ex litterīs Caesaris**: *in accordance with (the news in) Caesar's dispatches,* or simply *upon receipt of Caesar's dispatches.*

9. **supplicātiō**: see note on **74**, 9.

BOOK V.

Introduction.

Second Campaign in Britain.—During the winter of 55–54 the assizes in Cisalpine Gaul occupied Caesar's time as usual. In the spring he visited Illyricum, his least important province, and exacted reparation from a neighboring tribe for depredations on the province. Upon returning to northern Gaul he found that a large fleet of vessels, which he had ordered to be constructed after a certain design, was all but ready to launch. The Portus Itius was named as the place of embarkation. Before starting for Britain it was necessary to make sure of the allegiance of the Gallic Treveri by supporting the ambitions of a friendly chieftain, Cingetorix, in preference to his rival Indutiomarus. At the port of departure chiefs from various Gallic tribes had assembled, it being Caesar's intention to take most of them with him as hostages. Further delay was occasioned by the attempt of Dumnorix, the Haeduan, to escape during the process of embarkation. Pursued and overtaken by Caesar's cavalry, Dumnorix offered resistance and was killed in consequence, in pursuance of Caesar's orders.

Leaving Labienus on the continent in charge of three legions and two thousand cavalry, Caesar set sail in the latter part of July with the same number of cavalry and five legions. The landing in Britain was effected this time without opposition, the place being the same as the year before. A camp site chosen, Caesar marched against the Britons, some twelve miles distant, routed them, and captured their rude woodland stronghold. A message soon came announcing that the fleet had been badly damaged by a storm. Ten days were spent in beaching

the ships for repairs and in the construction of an extensive naval camp. The British forces facing the Roman army had meanwhile greatly increased and were now united under the command of one chieftain, Cassivellaunus. The Roman forces were at first baffled by the character of the British attack with chariots. By keeping cavalry and infantry close together they were finally able to repulse the Britons, who then retired north of the Thames. Dismissing the greater part of his forces, Cassivellaunus thereafter employed his chariots alone, and for the purpose of harassing the Roman advance by sudden sallies.

Certain tribes now submitted to Caesar, notably the Trinovantes, at whose request Caesar restored the young prince Mandubracius to the throne his father had occupied before him. The capture of Cassivellaunus's fortified town soon followed. Meanwhile an attack on the Roman camp at the seaside, made by the Kentish tribes, at Cassivellaunus's bidding, had failed. The British chief now came to terms. It was clear enough to Caesar that nothing substantial was to be gained by prolonging the campaign. He therefore led his army back to the coast and returned to the continent. The two campaigns in Britain were really barren of any practical results. As Tacitus puts it, Caesar had merely "pointed the attention of posterity to Britain, without handing down the country as a possession."

Winter Quarters. Defeat of Sabinus and Cotta. — The legions were now distributed in winter quarters at various points in northern Gaul, in an area covered by a circle with a radius of one hundred miles, Caesar remaining until the distribution should be effected. Two lieutenants, Sabinus and Cotta, were placed in charge of one legion and five cohorts in the country of the Eburones. The Gauls, instigated by Indutiomarus of the Treveri, soon rose in revolt. Repulsed in a sudden attack on the camp, they asked for, and were granted, an interview. The Gallic leader Ambiorix, though attempting to exculpate himself, craftily represented the attack on the camp as part of a general plan, according to which all the winter camps were to

be assaulted in one day. Declaring himself under obligations to Caesar for past favors, he urged Sabinus and Cotta to withdraw their cohorts and join one of the nearest camps, promising them safe passage through his country. A hot dispute arose among the officers as to the acceptance of the Gallic chieftain's advice, Sabinus favoring and Cotta opposing. It was finally decided to abandon their position. At daybreak the column started in a long line, unprepared for danger. In a valley about two miles from camp they found themselves caught in a carefully planned ambuscade. Before night nearly all the men had fallen either on the field or in the camp, where some of them made their final stand. Sabinus himself was treacherously slain during a parley with Ambiorix. Cotta fell while cheering his men on to the fight. A few stragglers made their way to Labienus and reported the disaster.

Siege of Cicero's Camp. — Elated with victory, Ambiorix proceeded to the camp of Quintus Cicero, spreading the news of his victory and summoning the neighboring tribes to arms. The first attack was repulsed with difficulty. During the following night the Romans began strengthening the camp fortifications with towers. Day and night the work continued, the Gauls attacking by day. They at last asked for a parley, and endeavored to entice Cicero into the same fatal blunder made by Sabinus and Cotta. Cicero refused to accept terms from an armed enemy. The siege became more desperate, the Gauls adopting Roman devices for attack, towers, sappers' huts, etc. In spite of wounds and fatigue the legionaries held out, hoping for aid from some quarter. At length, after many vain attempts, Cicero succeeded in getting a message to Caesar, who had not yet left for Italy and was at Samarobriva. Caesar was soon on his way with one legion, and was joined on the march by another. Upon learning of his approach the Gauls raised the siege and hastened to intercept him. Warned by Cicero, Caesar succeeded in luring the enemy to attack him in camp, whereupon his army made a sortie and repulsed them. Caesar soon joined Cicero, and bestowed merited praise on commander and

men for their gallant defense. Caesar himself decided not to proceed to Italy, but to spend the winter in headquarters at Samarobriva.

Revolt of the Senones and Treveri. — The ensuing months of this winter were filled with rumors of plots forming among the Gauls, inspired by the annihilation of Sabinus and Cotta's cohorts. With the exception of the Haedui and Remi, almost every Gallic tribe was suspected of disaffection. The Senones in particular expelled the king whom Caesar had placed over them, their senate refusing to obey Caesar's summons to appear before him. Indutiomarus at the head of his followers among the Treveri was about to attack Labienus, when deterred by Caesar's arrival in Cicero's camp. Later, after gathering a considerable force of malcontents and adventurers, he appeared before Labienus's camp. Labienus, as Caesar had recently done, by creating an impression of fear, gained a favorable opportunity for a sortie. The cavalry was ordered to seek out and kill Indutiomarus at all hazards. His death brought about a quieter condition in Gallic affairs.



Coins of Caesar.

BOOK V.

SECOND CAMPAIGN IN BRITAIN, 1–23.

Page 122. 1. CHAPTER 1. **L. Domitiō, Ap. Claudiō**: consuls, 54 B.C. The official year began January 1st, which corresponded to December 12th, 55 B.C., of the Julian calendar. Caesar seems to have remained with his army in Gaul in the autumn of 55 until some time after the new consuls took office.

3–5. **utī . . . aedificandās . . . cūrent**: *to have as many ships as possible built in the winter and to have the old ones repaired.* For the gerundive with *cūrō* cf. **116**, 4.

5. **modum**: *size.*

6. **subductiōnis**: see Introd. 38. **humiliōrēs**, etc.: the new vessels were to have comparatively low sides, broad beam, and flat bottoms.

7. **quibus**: for *eae quibus.* **nostrō marī**: the Mediterranean.

8. **id**: felt perhaps as the object of a verb to be supplied, *facit;* translate, *and the more so.* **commūtātiōnēs**: the choppy seas of the channel are due rather to the narrowness and shallowness, together with the conflict of winds and currents.

9. **ad**, etc.: asyndeton.

10. **ac**: *and especially.*

11. **lātiōrēs**: predicate accusative; sc. *eās facit.* **reliquīs maribus**: i.e. the various parts of the Mediterranean, to which special names were given. **Hās . . . fierī**: an infinitive clause is occasionally found with *imperō.* What is the usual construction? **āctuāriās**: see Introd. 41.

13. **Ea, quae sunt ūsuī**: i.e. metals, iron and copper; a

kind of broom used in making ropes for rigging was also found in Spain.

16. **Pīrūstīs**: a tribe of which little is known. In 167 they had taken sides with the Romans against the Illyrian king, Gentius.

18. **mīlitēs**; i.e. auxiliary troops.

20. **pūblicō cōnsiliō**: *with the sanction of the state.*

Page 123. 8. Chapter 2. **cum vēnisset**: about June 1st. **circumitīs**: *having gone the round of*, on a tour of inspection.

9. **in**: *in, notwithstanding.*

10. **cūius**: instead of *quod*, attracted to the case of the antecedent, *generis*.

11–12. **neque multum**, etc.: *and that it was not far from possible to launch them in a few days.* For the *quīn* clause cf. **87**, 27, and note.

14. **portum Itium**: see note on *eō locō*, **111**, 5.

16. **mīlium**: gen. of quality or measure, limiting *trāiectum.*

17. **huic reī**: *for this purpose*, i.e. to protect the fleet from attack as it assembled at the Portus Itius. **mīlitum**: gen. of the whole after *quod*, *what seemed an adequate force.*

20. **concilia**: beginning with this year, 54, Caesar seems to have attempted to hold regular assemblies of the Gauls, one in the spring and one in the autumn of each year. Among other things the quotas of auxiliaries were fixed for the various tribes, also the amount of provisions they were to furnish for the legions in winter quarters.

22. Chapter 3. **equitātū valet**: see **66**, 10.

24. **suprā**: see **82**, 14.

25. **Indūtiomārus**: father-in-law of Cingetorix. See **159**, 10–11.

Page 124. 1. **alter**: *one*, i.e. Cingetorix.

2. **cōgnitum est**: impersonal; translate, *as soon as he learned.*

3. **officiō**: see Vocabulary.

6. **cōgere**: dependent, with *parāre*, on *īnstituit.*

7. **in armīs esse**: equivalent to *arma ferre.*

13. **rēbus**: *interests.* **petere**: used absolutely, *to make petitions, to solicit his favor.*

14. **cīvitātī**: in contrast to *prīvātīs rēbus.* Fear of Indutiomarus prevented them from consulting the interests of the state as a whole. **possent**: subjv. in a reported reason. **veritus**: limits *Indūtiomārus*, to be supplied.

16. **idcircō**: *with this purpose in view*, explained by the clause of purpose, *quō . . . continēret.*

17. **nē**: *for fear that*, or *in order to prevent.*

18. **omnis nōbilitātis discessū**: equivalent to a conditional clause, *if all the nobility departed.*

19. **cīvitātem in suā potestāte esse**: *he had the state under control.*

22. CHAPTER 4. **quae rēs**: *what consideration*, i.e. the defection of the chiefs, 11, above.

23. **īnstitūtō**: *already formed, original.*

26. **in eīs**: *among them.*

28. **ēvocāverat**: sc. *Caesar* as subject.

Page 125. 1. **prīncipibus**: i.e. the chiefs who had hitherto favored Indutiomarus.

3. **quod**: *a thing which*, referring to the fact related in *hōs . . . conciliāvit.* **cum**: correlative with *tum*, *not only . . . but also.*

4. **māgnī interesse**: *it was of great importance.* The genitive is one of indefinite value expressing the "degree of concern or interest." The subject of *interesse* is the infinitive clause, *ēius auctōritātem . . . valēre.* **ēius**: *of one.*

6. **factum**: substantive, *this (act)*, explained by *suam grātiam . . . minuī, the impairment of his influence among his people.*

7. **quī**: equivalent to *cum is, inasmuch as he*, or *although he.*

8. **hōc dolōre**: equivalent to *hūius reī dolōre, through resentment at this.*

11. CHAPTER 5. **pervenit**: probably late in June. **nāvēs**, etc.: these vessels were doubtless brought down the Marne and

Seine. According to Strabo, Caesar's naval arsenal was at the mouth of the Seine, to which *eōdem*, 13, naturally refers.

18. **obsidum locō**: *as hostages.*

19. **cum ipse abesset**: *when he himself should be away.*

21. CHAPTER 6. **cēterīs**: sc. *prīncipibus.*

22. **ante**: see **3**, 15, and **15**, 12 ff.

23–24. **cupidum**: predicate accusative of an adjective expressing a quality, along with two predicate genitives of quality. **māgnī animī**: *of high spirit, ambitious.*

25. **Accēdēbat hūc, quod**: *there was the additional reason, that.*

26. **sibi . . . rēgnum dēferrī**: *he had an offer of kingship in his state from Caesar.* Compare the case of Commius and the Atrebates, **110**, 7. But Dumnorix had doubtless invented the story about himself in order to alienate the Haedui from Caesar.

Page 126. 2. **neque**: *but not.*

3. **hospitibus**: i.e. among the Haedui.

6. **nāvigandī**: objective genitive depending on *īnsuētus, unused to sailing.*

7–8. **timēret, dīceret**: for the subjv. see A. 540, 2, N. 2 (321, 2, N. 2); B. 286, 1, a; G. 541, N. 3; H. 588, II, 1; H-B. 535, 2, a, N. 3. **religiōnibus**: *religious scruples* or *motives*, perhaps referring to omens warning him not to go, or to vows, the performance of which would keep him at home.

11–12. **territāre**: historical infinitive. **fierī, ut . . . spoliārētur**: *did it happen that Gaul was being despoiled.*

13–14. **ut . . . trāductōs necāret**: *to take over and put to death*, a substantive clause explaining *id.* **fidem interpōnere**: *pledged his word;* the infinitive again is historical.

15. **iūs iūrandum**: *as an oath*, in predicate agreement with the clause, *ut . . . administrārent*, which is the object of *poscere.* **quod**: for *id quod.*

18–19. CHAPTER 7. **tantum dīgnitātis**: *a place of so much importance.* As the Haedui had been friendly so long, it would

be a great blow to Caesar's prestige not to be able to hold them in allegiance.

21. **longius**: *too far.* **prōspiciendum** (*esse*): depending on *statuēbat.*

22. **quid**: acc. of degree limiting *nocēre, do any harm.* **sibi**: Caesar. **reī pūblicae**: the Roman commonwealth.

23. **chōrus ventus**: for the noun in apposition cf. such combinations as *terra Gallia, mare Oceanus.*

24. **partem**: acc. of duration of time. **omnis temporis**: equivalent to *tōtius annī.*

Page 127. 1. **impedītīs**: equivalent to *occupātīs, preoccupied,* i.e. with the task of embarkation.

5. **retrahī**: sc. *eum,* and see note on *Hās . . . fierī,* **122**, 11.

6. **sī vim faciat**: *if he should offer violent resistance.*

7. **quī**: equivalent to *cum is.* **praesentis**: sc. *Caesaris.*

10. **Illī**: the Roman cavalrymen.

12. **omnēs**: emphatic, *without exception.*

16. CHAPTER 8. **prō tempore et prō rē**: *according to time and circumstances.*

17–18. **quīnque legiōnibus**: only the 7th is mentioned by name in the narrative. **parī numerō quem**: *the same number as; pār atque* is more common, as in **23**, 26. **ad sōlis occāsum**: the date, from various considerations, seems to have been about July 20th.

20. **longius**: *quite a distance,* i.e. to the northeast. When the fleet set sail the current was running southwest; a few hours later it shifted to the northeast.

22. **aestūs commūtātiōnem**: about daylight the tidal current turned southwest again.

23. **eam partem īnsulae**: i.e. the shore near Deal.

26. **vectōriīs . . . nāvigiīs**: *with the heavily laden transports.* **nōn intermissō rēmigandī labōre**: *by unremitting work at the oars.* See Introd. 38.

28. **Accessum est**, etc.: *the entire fleet reached Britain;* the verb is impersonal; *nāvibus* is abl. of means.

Page 128. 2. **cum**: *although.*

3-5. **quae amplius octingentae,** etc.: *which were seen at one time, more than eight hundred in number.* **prīvātīs**: sc. *nāvibus.* The reference may be to vessels owned by traders and by such members of Caesar's staff as could afford it.

6. **loca**: why not an abl. instead of an acc.?

9. CHAPTER 9. **cohortibus decem**: the employment of this phrase instead of *ūnā legiōne* may mean that the cohorts were drawn from several legions, perhaps two from each of the five legions.

11. **eō minus veritus nāvibus**: *feeling the less anxiety for his ships.*

12. **mollī atque apertō**: *gently sloping and open.* Cf. the description, *apertō ac plānō,* **112**, 4.

Page 129. 1. **flūmen**: probably the Great Stour, above Wye. **ex locō superiōre**: with *coepērunt.* The northern bank was higher than the southern.

5. **domesticī**: i.e. with some neighboring tribe.

6. **crēbrīs arboribus succīsīs**: a barricade of felled trees. Cf. **135**, 25-28.

7. **ex silvīs**: *from the (vantage-ground of the) woods.* **rārī**: *in small groups.*

8. **prohibēbant**: *tried to prevent,* the conative imperfect.

9-10. **testūdine**: see Introd. 34. **aggere**: the siege mole in this instance was doubtless of very simple construction. **adiectō**: *having pushed forward.*

12. **prōsequī**: sc. *mīlitēs* as subject.

16. CHAPTER 10. **in expedītiōnem**: *as a flying column.* Cf. the adjective *expedītus, lightly equipped.* **mīsit**: Caesar himself, apparently, remained at the camp of the night before, in which case he would naturally keep with him a detachment of troops.

17. **aliquantum itineris**: *some distance.* Explain the cases.

18. **extrēmī**: may mean *the rear of the enemy's forces* or *only the rear of our columns.*

19. **superiōre nocte**: *the night before.*

21. **sustinērent**: *held firm.*

23. **ex eō concursū**: *from the ensuing collision.*

26. CHAPTER 11. **in itinere resistere**: lit. *to resist upon the march*, i.e. *to retire on the defensive.* The troops most likely returned to the field camp; see line 13, above.

28. **āmissīs . . . nāvibus**: *although*, etc.

Page 130. 2. **fabrōs**: see Introd. 9.

3. **scrībit, ut . . . īnstituat**: *writes Labienus to fit out.* **legiōnibus**: abl. of means.

5. **erat . . . labōris**: *involved much labor and trouble.* Explain the genitives.

6. **ūnā mūnītiōne**: we may imagine that two lines of ramparts were constructed, running from corners of the camp down to the shore and inclosing a beach sufficient to accommodate the shattered vessels.

8. **ad labōrem intermissīs**: *being exempt from toil; ad*, lit. *with respect to.*

11. **quās ante**: *as before.* **eōdem**: i.e. to the field camp.

14. **administrandī**: with *bellī* only.

17. **mīlia passuum octogintā**: measured from Deal to the point where Caesar crossed the Thames. **Huic . . . bella intercesserant**: *he had been continually at war.*

21–22. CHAPTER 12. **quōs nātōs** (*esse*): subject of *prōditum* (*esse*); translate freely, *who are said to be indigenous to the island, according to oral tradition.* The Britons were in reality all mainly of Celtic origin.

24. **īsdem nōminibus**: two tribes at least, the Belgae and Atrebates, bore names also found on the continent.

Page 131. 3. **aedificia**: round, wooden, straw-thatched huts. **Gallicīs**: sc. *aedificiīs.*

4. **tāleīs ferreīs**: it has been suggested recently that these *iron bars* are to be identified "with certain iron objects found, sometimes with Celtic remains, in the south and west of Eng-

land. These iron objects somewhat resemble unfinished sword blades. They are flat and slightly tapering blades with blunt, vertical edges and rude handles made by turning up the edges to meet one another at one end." See *Classical Review*, May, 1905, report of a paper by Mr. Reginald A. Smith.

5. **ad certum pondus exāminātīs**: *of a fixed weight.* **prō nummō**: *as money.*

6. **plumbum album**: tin from the mines of Cornwall had been known to Phoenician traders from early times. **mediterrāneīs, maritimīs**: a mistake; the terms should be reversed in their application.

7. **exigua**: the great development of the iron mines was yet to come. **aere**: copper mining in Britain was not extensively carried on until the eighteenth century.

9. **fāgum, abietem**: the beech is certainly indigenous to Britain. The fir is perhaps to be identified with the silver fir, not indigenous and not introduced till modern times. (Stock.)

10. **fās nōn putant**: the reason for this aversion is unknown. **haec**: explain the gender. **animī causā**: *for amusement.*

11-12. **Loca**: *the climate* is the English idiom. **frīgoribus**: *the cold.* For the plural see note on *frīgora*, **14**, 2.

14. Chapter 13. **alter angulus**: approximately the North Foreland.

15. **adpelluntur**: *direct their course, put in.*

16. **Inferior**: sc. *angulus;* Land's End. The southern side of the island is given too much of a north-south direction in this description.

18. **Alterum**: sc. *latus.* **vergit ad Hispāniam**: ancient writers conceived of Spain as being much farther north than it is.

20-21. **parī spatiō . . . atque**: *the distance across is the same as.* *spatiō* is an ablative of quality, limiting *Hibernia.* **In hōc mediō cursū**: *halfway across,* inaccurate as applied to *Mona*, Anglesey. Caesar, however, may have confounded it with the Isle of Man.

22–23. **complūrēs minōrēs**: this may be a reminiscence of vague reports of the Hebrides. **obiectae**: sc. *esse, to lie opposite*, i.e. the west side.

24. **nōn nūllī**: Greek writers, probably.

26. **nisi**: *except that*, or *but*. **ex aquā**: i.e. by means of the clepsydra, water clock.

28. **ut fert opīniō**: *according to the opinion*. Cf. *cōnsuētūdō ferret*, **117**, 18. **illōrum**: the *nōn nūllī* of 24.

Page 132. 1–2. **Tertium**: sc. *latus*. **ēius**: sc. *lateris*. **angulus alter**: this must be identical with *alter angulus*, **131**, 14.

6. Chapter 14. **hīs**: the Britons.

8. **cōnsuētūdine**: *manner of life*.

9. **plērīque**: *as a rule*. **frūmenta nōn serunt**: in contrast to the Britons of Kent. See **117**, 7, 13.

10. **sunt vestītī**: *clothe themselves*.

12–13. **horribiliōrēs sunt aspectū**: *present a more fearful appearance*. **capillō, parte**: abls. of quality; translate, *wear their hair long and shave the entire body*.

16–17. **quī**: for *eī quī*. **eōrum līberī habentur**: *are considered as the children of those*. **quō**: equivalent to *ad quōs*.

18. Chapter 15. **Equitēs**, etc.: the narrative of Chapter 11 is here resumed. For the method of fighting from chariots see **118**, 7 ff. For the combination of cavalry and chariots see **112**, 5–7 and **118**, 5–6.

20. **partibus**: equivalent to *locīs*.

23. **intermissō spatiō**: *after some time*.

26. **conlocātī**: predicate adjective.

Page 133. 1. **atque hīs prīmīs**: *and the first cohorts at that*. The first cohort of a legion contained the best soldiers.

2. **cum**: *although*, i.e. notwithstanding the very narrow interval separating the two cohorts.

3. **novō**: this word seems to show that these troops had not participated in the first expedition.

4. **perrūpērunt**: sc. *hostēs* as subject.

7. CHAPTER 16. **Tōtō hōc in genere pūgnae**: *throughout a battle of this kind.*

8. **dīmicārētur**: impersonal. **nostrōs**: the legionaries.

10. **neque ab sīgnīs discēdere audērent**: i.e. did not dare to break up into small detachments, as would have been necessary to pursue the small detachments of the enemy, *rārī*, 17. The Roman infantry was equipped and trained for fighting in large bodies and in close array.

12. **illī**: the enemy.

13. **cēderent**: *would give way*, repeated action; so also the pluperfect after *cum, when* (*ever*), and the two imperfects following.

14. **disparī proeliō**: *in an unequal battle;* the Roman cavalry was at a disadvantage when thus opposed to the dismounted charioteers. The latter were also doubtless supported by their cavalry, for which see Bk. IV, Chapter 33.

15–16. **ratiō**: *the manner, the terms.* **cēdentibus et īnsequentibus**: sc. *nostrīs*. Translate, *the terms of a cavalry engagement brought the same danger to our cavalry in retreat as when in pursuit.* When the Roman cavalry followed up the Britons it met with the difficulties described in the preceding sentence; in retreat it was pursued and overtaken by the British cavalry and chariots.

17–18. **Accēdēbat hūc, ut numquam . . . proeliārentur**: *there was the additional fact that,* etc., or *then, too, they never fought.* **statiōnēs**: *detachments*, of reserves.

19. **aliōs aliī deinceps exciperent**: *would succeed one another in turn.*

26–27. CHAPTER 17. **sīc utī . . . nōn absisterent**: lit. *so that they* (the enemy) *did not refrain from the standards and legions;* freely, *and even advanced up to the standards and legions.*

Page 134. 1. **quoad**: *until.* For the indicatives following see A. 554 (328); B. 293, III; G. 571; H. 603, II; H-B. 550. **subsidiō**: explain the case.

4. **Ex hāc fugā**: *after this rout.*

6–7. **summīs copiīs**: *in full force.*

8. CHAPTER 18. **cōnsiliō eōrum**: the British plan is explained in Chapter 19.

9–10. **ūnō locō**: the place of crossing cannot be determined with certainty from the data afforded here. **hōc**: sc. *locō, and even here with difficulty.* Cf. *atque hīs prīmīs*, **133**, 1.

16. **eā**: *such.*

17. **mīlitēs**: i.e. the infantry. **cum**: *although.*

19. **-que**: *but.*

21. CHAPTER 19. **suprā**: see 5–7, above.

22. **contentiōnis**: i.e. effective resistance in full force. **ampliōribus**: *the greater part of.*

24–25. **locīs, regiōnibus**: locative ablatives without a preposition. Observe the tenses of repeated action in this passage.

28. **līberius**: *with too little caution.*

Page 135. 1. **viīs, sēmitīs**: abls. of the way by which.

3. **hōc metū**: *from fear of this.* **vagārī**: a subject accusative is to be supplied from *hīs*.

4–7. **Relinquēbātur**: the substantive *ut* clause is subject. Translate, *the only thing left Caesar was not to permit* (*the cavalry*) *to depart too far from the column of legions, and to inflict only so much injury on the enemy*, etc. **discēdī**: impersonal. **nocērētur**: impersonal, lit. *that only so much injury should be done to the enemy.* **in labōre atque itinere**: *in the course of laborious marching*, a case of hendiadys.

10. CHAPTER 20. **fidem secūtus**: see Vocabulary, *fidēs*.

12. **ipse**: *while he himself.*

13. **dēditūrōs**: sc. *sē* as subject.

15. **Cassivellaunī**: *at the hands of Cassivellaunus.*

16. **quī praesit**: *to rule over them.* The verb is used absolutely. What case might it govern? **imperium obtineat**: *to hold independent power*, added to emphasize their release from allegiance to Cassivellaunus. **Hīs imperat**: *demands of them.*

19. **ad numerum**: *to the required number.*

20–21. CHAPTER 21. **dēfēnsīs**: i.e. against Cassivellaunus.

omnī iniūriā: the soldiers were forbidden to plunder. **prohibitīs**: *having been secured.*

23. **eō locō**: the place where the embassies met Caesar. **oppidum**: possibly Roman Verulamium, modern St. Albans.

25. **autem**: in the sense of *now*, in a parenthetical statement.

Page 136. 9. CHAPTER 22. **quibus regiōnibus**: for *cui*, referring to Cantium.

11. **castra nāvālia**: see **130**, 5-7.

17. **Commium**: see **110**, 6 ff., and **114**, 25 ff.

19. **hiemāre in continentī**; the army would of course winter in Gaul. Caesar himself expected to go to Italy as usual. **repentīnōs mōtūs**: i.e. uprisings that might occur. Cf. **125**, 19-20.

21-22. **quid vectīgālis**: *how much tribute.* **penderet**: *was to pay.* Explain the mood. As no force was left in Britain to exact this tribute, it was never paid.

26. CHAPTER 23. **nāvēs refectās**: see Chapter 11.

Page 137. 1. **tot nāvigātiōnibus**: *notwithstanding the many voyages.*

3. **dēsiderārētur**: *was missing, was lost.*

4-5. **priōris**: *the first* of the two mentioned in **136**, 28. **posteā**: i.e. after the storm had damaged the fleet; see **130**, 3-4.

6. **faciendās cūrāverat**: *had caused to be built;* see note on *reficiendās cūrent*, **122**, 5. **locum**: *destination.*

10-11. **angustius**: *more closely*, than on the first trip. **prīmā lūce**: it was about September 21st.

ASSIGNMENT OF WINTER QUARTERS, 24-25.

13. CHAPTER 24. **conciliō**: see note on *concilia*, **123**, 20.

14-15. **frūmentum . . . angustius prōvēnerat**: *there was a shortage in the grain crop.* **siccitātēs**: plural of an abstract noun, referring to different places, as in **120**, 21.

17-18. **ūnam dūcendam dedit**: *gave one to Caius Fabius to conduct.*

19. **Q. Cicerōnī**: brother of the orator, Marcus Cicero. Quintus had joined Caesar at the beginning of this year's campaign in the capacity of *lēgātus*.

23. **Ūnam legiōnem, quam proximē cōnscrīpserat**: these words may mean that a new legion had been levied in the winter of 55–54, or they may refer to one of the two legions levied in 57. See **48**, 18. The location of the various quarters is given definitely, after Napoleon, though the data are really insufficient to make certain of the sites. **trāns**: from the standpoint of Rome, i.e. north of the Po.

24. **cohortēs quīnque**: these five cohorts, apparently, are the remnants of a legion; the other five may have been used to repair losses in other legions, or they may have fallen in battle. **in Eburōnēs**: at a place called Atuatuca, as we learn from Bk. VI.

Page 138. 7. **mīlibus passuum centum continēbantur**: the exact meaning of these words is difficult to determine. The explanation of a circle with a radius of one hundred miles is plausible.

8–9. **quoad . . . cōgnōvisset**: *until he should know;* for the mood see A. 553 (328); B. 293, III, 2; G. 572; H. 603, II; H-B. 507, 5.

10. CHAPTER 25. **summō locō nātus**: *a man of noble birth.*

13. **in omnibus bellīs**: i.e. in all of Caesar's Gallic campaigns hitherto. **singulārī ēius operā fuerat ūsus**: *had found his services of unusual value.* **fuerat**: instead of *erat*, to express action prior to that of *restituerat.*

14–15. **hunc**: Tasgetius. **inimīcī**: *personal enemies.* **multīs auctōribus**: *with the sanction of many citizens*, i.e. adherents of the anti-Roman party in the state, who naturally opposed a king placed over them by Caesar.

17. **ad plūrēs pertinēbat**: lit. *it extended to many*, better *many were involved in the affair.*

20–21. **comprehēnsōs ad sē mittere**: *to arrest and send to him.*

23. **perventum** (*esse*): impersonal, *they had arrived.*

DEFEAT OF SABINUS AND COTTA, 26–37.

24. CHAPTER 26. **Diēbus circiter quīndecim**, etc.: *about fifteen days after their arrival.* How lit.? Cf. **108**, 1. The legions probably reached winter quarters toward the end of October.

25. **initium ortum est**: somewhat pleonastic, for *initium factum est.*

Page 139. 1–2. **cum**: *although.* **fīnēs**: *boundaries, frontier.* **Sabīnō . . . praestō fuissent**: *had come to meet Sabinus and Cotta.*

3. **Indūtiomārī**: see Chapter 3 ff.

8. **dēspērātā rē**: *despairing of success.*

9–10. **conclāmāvērunt**: implying a request, hence the clause *utī aliquī . . . prōdīret.* **habēre sēsē, quae . . . vellent**: *they had certain things to say of mutual interest.*

18–19. CHAPTER 27. **plūrimum dēbēre**: *was deeply indebted.*

20. **eī**: what pronoun should we expect instead of the demonstrative?

22. **obsidum numerō missōs**: *though sent as hostages.*

23–24. **id, quod fēcerit dē oppūgnātiōne castrōrum**: translate simply, *the attack on the camp*, object of *fēcisse.*

25. **imperia**: *his authority;* explain the use of the plural.

27. **Cīvitātī porrō**: *now in the case of the state;* explain the dative.

Page 140. 5. **hībernīs oppūgnandīs**: gerundive construction, dative of purpose.

7. **Gallōs**: subject of *potuisse*, but at the same time assigns a reason, *since they were Gauls.*

10. **pietāte**: *loyalty, patriotism.*

13. **conductam**: *hired, mercenary.*

14. **Ipsōrum esse cōnsilium, velintne**: *it rests with the Romans themselves to consider whether they wish*, lit. *the consideration is their own*, etc.

18. **Illud** : *this*, explained by the infinitive clause, *sē . . . datūrum* (*esse*).

19–20. **Quod** : a relative. Translate the clause, *in doing so*.

Page 141. 1. CHAPTER 28. **facere** : equivalent to *inferre*. **vix erat crēdendum** : *it was hardly credible*.

2. **eōs** : those participating in the council of war.

6. **discēdendum** (*esse*) : impersonal, *they must not leave*.

8. **rem** : *the fact*, explained by the *quod* clause. **testimōniō** : dat. of purpose or end, *this fact served as a proof*, *that*, etc.

12. **esse** : for the mood see A. 586 (338); B. 315, 2; G. 651, R. 1; H. 642, 2; H-B. 591, a.

13. **auctōre hoste** : abl. absolute, *by the advice of an enemy*.

14–15. CHAPTER 29. **cum** : *when*. **convēnissent** : *should have assembled*.

19. **fuisse captūrōs** (*esse*) : *would have adopted*, representing *cēpissent* of direct discourse.

20. **nostrī** : observe the form the pronoun takes as an objective genitive.

21. **auctōrem** : *as an adviser*, *for advice*. **rem** : *the actual facts*.

23. **Ariovistī mortem** : Ariovistus, it will be remembered, escaped after the battle in 58. See **46**, 14–15. The time of his death is not known.

26. **hōc** : *of this*, object of *persuādēret*.

28. **in utramque partem** : *in either event*. **nihil dūrius** : *no unusual difficulty*.

Page 142. 4. **habēre** : *offer*. For mood see reference on *esse*, **141**, 12.

7. CHAPTER 30. **in utramque partem** : *pro and con*.

8. **prīmīs ōrdinibus** : i.e. *the centurions of the first rank*. **ācriter resisterētur** : *strong opposition was offered*.

9. **et id** : *and that too*. Cf. *atque id*, **122**, 8, and note.

10–11. **is, quī . . . terrear** : *the man to be terrified*.

13. **sī per tē liceat**: *if you would let them, were it not for you*.

15. **nōn intereant**: *instead of perishing.*

17. CHAPTER 31. **Cōnsurgitur**: impersonal, *the council breaks up.* **comprehendunt**: *grasp by the hand.* **utrumque**: i.e. Sabinus and Cotta.

20. **sī modo**: *if only, provided.* **ūnum**: *one thing, the same course.*

22–23. **dat manūs**: *gives in;* metaphor from the battlefield, the signal of submission made by a soldier asking for quarter.

25. **cum sua**, etc.: *each soldier looking through his belongings, to see what he could take with him,* etc.

27–28. **Omnia excōgitantur**, etc.: *reasons of every sort are thought of, why they may not remain without danger,* etc.

Page 143. 2–4. **ut quibus esset persuāsum**: for *ut eī quibus*, etc., *as men convinced,* A. 535, e, N. 1 (320, e, N. 1); B. 283, 3, a; G, 626, N. 1; H. 592, 1; H-B. 523, b.

6. CHAPTER 32. **sēnsērunt**: used absolutely, followed by *dē* and an ablative, *found out about.*

7. **ā**: *away, off.*

12. **nostris**: dat. after *inīquissimō, very unfavorable to our troops.*

14. CHAPTER 33. **quī**: equivalent to *cum is, since he.*

15. **trepidāre**, etc.: historical infinitives. **dispōnere**: *tried to form in order of battle.* **haec tamen**: sc. *faciēbat*, and cf. *et id*, **142**, 9.

16. **ut**: for *ita-ut.* **quod**: *a thing which.*

17. **in ipsō negōtiō**: cf. English *on the spur of the moment.*

18. **quī**: as in 14.

23. **sē**: referring to the subject of *possent*, Sabinus and Cotta.

25. **prōnūntiārī**: *the command to be given.*

26. **orbem**: see Introd. 33.

28. **incommodē cecidit**: *had an unfortunate result.*

Page 144. 2. **id**: i.e. the formation of the *orbis.*

3. **quod fierī necesse erat**: *as was inevitable.*

4. **quaeque**: for *et ea quae.*

8. Chapter 34. **tōtā aciē** : *all along the line.* **prōnūntiārī** : as in **143**, 25.

9. **illōrum** : predicate gen. of possession.

11. **existimārent** : *let them consider*, representing an imperative of direct discourse.

12. **duce** : Sabinus. **fortūnā** : personified, hence the preposition.

14. **prōcurrerat** : i.e. from the *orbis*. Observe the pluperfect and imperfect of repeated action.

17. **et** : *but.* **quam** : *whatever.*

19. **nihil eīs nocērī posse** : *that no harm could be done them; eīs* refers to the Eburones. **sē recipientēs** : i.e. the Romans.

21. Chapter 35. **cum** : *whenever.*

23. **eam partem** : referring apparently to the charging cohort, which would lose the protection of the *orbis.*

25. **erant progressī** : explain the number of the verb.

26. **quī cesserant** : only those of the enemy immediately in front of the cohort would fall back. **proximī** : those of the enemy on the left and right of the charging cohort.

27. **locum** : *their place*, in the *orbis.*

28. **locus** : *opportunity.*

Page 145. 1. **Tamen** : the concessive idea lies in *cōnflīctātī* and *acceptīs*, *though afflicted*, etc.

5. **ipsīs** : for the case with *indīgnum* see A. 418, b (245, a, 1); B. 226, 2; G. 397, 2; H. 481; H-B. 442. **esset** : explain the mood.

6–7. **T. Balventiō** : dat. of reference instead of a possessive genitive; best translated as if subject of *trāicitur.* **prīmum pīlum dūxerat** : see Introd. 15. Possibly Balvenitus was now serving as *ēvocātus*, Introd. 7.

9. **ēiusdem ōrdinis** : observe the gen. of quality used as an attributive without the intervention of an appositive.

10. **dum . . . subvenit** : *while attempting to rescue.*

18. Chapter 36. **impetrārī** : sc. as subject *id*, antecedent of *quod.* Cf. what Ambiorix said before, **139**, 25–26.

19–20. **ipsī vērō**, etc.: *to Sabinus at any rate no harm shall be done.* **inque eam rem**, etc.: *and he pledges his word thereto.*

21. **Ille**: Sabinus. **cum . . . commūnicat**: *informs*, or *confers with*, implying also *and requests*, and so followed by an *ut* clause. **sī videātur**: *if it seems best.*

23. **impetrārī**: impersonal, *that the request can be gained.*

24. **ad armātum hostem**: for Cotta's attitude cf. **141**, 12–13.

26. CHAPTER 37. **quōs**: for *eōs quōs.*

Page 146. 3. **condiciōnibus**: *terms of surrender.*

7. **victōriam conclāmant**: *raise the cry of "victory."*

17. **Illī**: those Roman soldiers who made their way into the camp.

SIEGE OF CICERO'S CAMP, 38–53.

27. CHAPTER 38. **neque noctem . . . intermittit**: *without stopping night or day.* The march began that very night.

Page 147. 1. **Rē**: *what had happened.*

3. **suī līberandī . . . ulcīscendī**: dependent on *occāsiōnem.*

4. **iniūriīs**: see **69**, 15 ff.

7. **nihil esse negōtī . . . legiōnēm . . . interficī**: *there would be* (lit. *was*) *no difficulty in suddenly surprising and destroying the legion*, etc. The subject of *esse* is the infinitive clause following.

12. CHAPTER 39. **sub imperiō**: see Introd. 65. **eōrum**: the Nervii.

14–15. **Huic quoque**: *in his case also*, as in the case of Sabinus and Cotta, **139**, 4. The dative is governed by *accidit.* **quod**: *which, as.*

16. **līgnātiōnis mūnītiōnisque causā**: *to get timber for the fortifications.*

18. **māgnā manū**: with *oppūgnāre incipiunt.*

21. **Aegrē . . . sustentātur**: *with difficulty did the troops hold their own that day. diēs* is here made the subject. How

lit.? Cf. the impersonal construction in *aegrē eō diē sustentātum est*, **51**, 26.

23. **adeptī**: *if they should win.*

25–26. CHAPTER 40. **ad Caesarem**: Caesar was at Samarobriva. **pertulissent**: *should deliver*, with *nūntiī* to be understood as subject, *litterās* as object. Explain the subjunctive.

27. **missī**: *those sent, the couriers.*

28. **turrēs**: these towers were erected on the rampart. The work was not finished this first night.

Page 148. 2. **resistitur**: *resistance is made.*

4. **ad . . . intermittitur**: *is exempt from.* Cf. **130**, 8.

7. **praeustae**: i.e. charred to a hard point. **mūrālium pīlōrum**: see Introd. 19.

8. **contabulantur**, etc.: the towers were divided by floors into several stories. Each floor was furnished with breastworks, *lōrīcae*, of hurdles, above which rose at intervals the pinnacles, *pinnae*, also of hurdles, intended to protect the soldiers as they hurled their missiles through the intervening spaces.

9. **cum**: *although.*

11–12. **ūt . . . cōgerētur**: a clause of result.

14. CHAPTER 41. **aditum**: *opportunity, claim.*

19–20. **fideī faciundae causā**: *to inspire confidence, to give color to their story.* Ambiorix would not have been likely to leave his own country unless he had destroyed the Roman force quartered there. Furthermore, as he had hitherto appeared friendly, his presence now tended to confirm the story of a general revolt. **Eōs**: Cicero and his men.

22. **hōc esse animō**: *are so disposed.*

23–24. **hanc cōnsuētūdinem**: *this practice*, of quartering Roman troops in Gallic territory. **per sē**: *so far as they are concerned.* **incolumibus**: predicate dative in agreement with *illīs*.

28. **accipere**, etc.: cf. Cotta's words, **145**, 24.

Page 149. 1–2. **sē adiūtōre ūtantur**: *let them make him their intercessor.*

4–5. CHAPTER 42. **hāc spē**: the hope of drawing Cicero into an ambuscade. **pedum decem**: i.e. in height; **pedum quīndecim**, in width.

7–8. **nūllā cōpiā**: abl. absolute, *having no supply.*

9. **caespitēs**: for the rampart.

13. **turrēs**: movable towers are meant. **ad altitūdinem**: *suitable to the height* of the Roman rampart, i.e. high enough to hurl missiles from them into the Roman camp.

17–18. CHAPTER 43. **glandēs**: possibly these clay balls were mixed with bits of coal found in the vicinity. **fervefacta iacula**: probably darts with some inflammable material attached.

18. **casās**: the huts of the winter quarters, Introd. 30.

Page 150. 1–2. **sīcutī partā . . . victōriā**: abl. absolute, equivalent to *velutsī parta esset . . . victōria.*

6. **ea**: equivalent to *tālis.* **ut**: separated from its verbs, *dēcēderet*, etc., by an intervening concessive clause, *cum . . . intellegerent.*

12. **dēmigrandī causā**: *to abandon his post.*

14. **tum ācerrimē**: *now more spiritedly than ever.*

17–18. **ut . . . interficerētur**: appositive clause explaining *ēventum.* **ut** (18): *as, for.*

20. **turrī**: one of the Gallic towers.

25. **dēturbātī** (*sunt*): sc. *hostēs* as subject.

28. CHAPTER 44. **prīmīs ōrdinibus**: see Introd. 15.

Page 151. 2. **uter alterī anteferrētur**: *which should be given preference over the other,* indirect question depending on *contrōversiās.* **locō**: *rank.*

5. **locum**: *chance, opportunity.*

8. **inrumpit**: *makes an attack.* **Nē . . . quidem**: *not . . . either.*

12–13. **ex multitūdine**: with *prōcurrentem.* **quō . . .**

exanimātō, hunc . . . prōtegunt: *quem . . . exanimātum prōtegunt* might have been written. The construction adopted serves better to contrast the prostrate comrade, ***hunc***, and the lone enemy, *illum*.

15. **Pullōnī**: dat. of reference instead of possessive gen.

16. **Āvertit**, etc.: the sword was worn at the right side.

17. **cōnantī**: *when he attempts*. See note on *Pullōnī*, 15. **impedītum**: sc. *eum*.

19. **labōrantī**: *in his plight*.

23. **in locum dēiectus īnferiōrem**: *having stumbled into a hole*.

28. **versāvit**: *dealt with*; how lit.? **inimīcus**: *though a rival*.

29. **anteferendus**: *deserving of preference*.

Page 152. 3. Chapter 45. **rēs . . . pervēnerat**: *the defenders had been reduced to a few*.

4. **litterae**: *dispatches*, plural, but singular in 10.

5. **quōrum**: referring to *nūntiī* only, as *litterae nūntiīque* are equivalent to *nūntiī cum litterīs*.

6. **ūnus**: *a single, one only*. **intus**: for *in hībernīs*.

7. **ā prīmā obsidiōne**: *at the beginning of the siege*.

8. **suamque eī fidem praestiterat**: *had given him evidence of his trustworthiness*.

11. **ille**: the slave. **in iaculō inligātās**: possibly the dispatch was concealed in the spear shaft, hollowed out to receive it. **Gallus**: *as he was a Gaul*.

15. Chapter 46. **M. Crassum**: see **137**, 21. Crassus's legion was to relieve that of Trebonius quartered near Samarobriva, which Caesar took with him.

19. **ut . . . addūcat**: *to lead*, explaining *Alterum* (*nūntium*). **sibi**: i.e. Caesar.

20. **reī pūblicae commodō**: *in accordance with the interests of the state*, or simply, *advantageously*. As Labienus occupied an important and dangerous post near the Treveri, and could best judge the situation himself, he was allowed to act at his own discretion.

22. **veniat**: *to come.* **Reliquam partem**: the legions with Roscius and Plancus. See **137**, 19, and **138**, 18.

23. **equitēs**: possibly a detachment of cavalry was kept in hand during the winter. See Introd. 6.

Page 153. 1. Chapter 47. **Crassum . . . praeficit**: learning of Crassus's approach from the arrival of his advance guard, Caesar seems to have started at once, leaving orders for Crassus to assume command at Samarobriva.

2. **impedīmenta**: each legion had its own baggage train in winter quarters. Extra munitions of war may have been included in the baggage at Samarobriva. **litterās pūblicās**: *official records.*

5. **nōn ita multum morātus**: *without losing much time.*

8. **sī . . . fēcisset**: the clause implies that any departure from winter quarters under the circumstances would seem like flight.

9–10. **nōn posset**: *would be unable.* **praesertim**, etc.: *especially since he knew them to be elated by their recent victory.* **quōs**: equivalent to *cum eōs.*

11. **quantō**, etc.: indirect question depending on *litterās, a dispatch, showing with how great danger,* etc.

12. **rem gestam**: *what has happened,* i.e. the annihilation of the cohorts under Sabinus and Cotta.

15. Chapter 48. **opīniōne**: abl. of separation after *dēiectus, disappointed in his hope.*

22. **Graecīs litterīs**: probably in Greek letters only, not in the Greek language.

23–24. **Sī adīre nōn possit**: i.e. if he could not gain access to the Roman winter camp, a difficult thing to do, as he had to feign friendship for the besieging Gauls.

25. **āmentum**: a leather loop attached to the spear shaft. The fingers of the spear hand were thrust through it, to give the missile a rotary motion and thus secure greater accuracy and distance in the throw.

28. **perīculum**: *danger,* from Roman missiles in particular.

Page 154. 1. **perlēctam**: sc. *epistulam.*

3. **fūmī incendiōrum**: Caesar was laying waste the country as he came to the rescue.

6–7. CHAPTER 49. **Haec**: referring to *cōpiīs*, but attracted to agreement with the predicate noun, *mīlia.* **armāta**: what other case might have been employed? **datā facultāte**: *as the opportunity now offered*, i.e. through the raising of the siege.

8. **Gallum**: *a Gaul*, probably not the same messenger as before, as his return has not been mentioned.

11. **hostēs, multitūdinem**: subject and object respectively of *convertisse.*

16. **trāns . . . rīvum**: to be taken with *cōnspicātur.*

18. **tum**: *furthermore.*

20. **remittendum dē celeritāte**: *he might relax his speed.*

22. **mīlium**: gen. limiting *haec* and amplifying *exigua*, *being a camp for barely seven thousand men.*

23. **nūllīs cum impedīmentīs**: the heavy baggage had been left at Samarobriva, the soldiers carrying on their backs sufficient rations for the march. **angustiīs viārum**: *by making the camp streets narrow.*

24. **eō cōnsiliō**, etc.: *with the purpose of exciting the utmost contempt of the enemy.*

Page 155. 2. CHAPTER 50. **Gallī**: sc. *sēsē continent*, and the singular verb with *Caesar.*

3–4. **sī**: *in case, in the hope.* **suum**: *his own*, equivalent to *aequum, favorable.* Cf. *aliēnus, another's*, for *inīquus, unfavorable.*

11. **obstruī**: it was a sham barricade, as told below, 21.

12–13. **concursārī, agī**: impersonal passives; translate in the active voice.

15–16. CHAPTER 51. **inīquō locō**: Caesar's camp was pitched as usual on the crest and slope of a hill. **nostrīs . . . dēductīs**: this was to increase the appearance of consternation.

17. **circummissīs**: i.e. around the various sides of the Roman camp.

19. **licēre**: sc. *eī*, *he might do so.*

21. **in speciem**: *to make a show.*

23. **manū**: i.e. without the aid of tools, so confident were they.

24. **omnibus portīs**: *through all the gates,* abl. of the way by which.

26. **nēmō**: in emphatic position, *not a man.*

Page 156. 2. CHAPTER 52. **neque etiam**: equivalent to *nē . . . quidem.* **dētrīmentō**: dat. after *relinquī*, *no further opportunity was left for inflicting even a slight loss upon them.* The cavalry force was too small for effective pursuit.

6. **nōn decimum quemque mīlitem**: *not one soldier in ten.*

12. **certius**: *more definitely.* Caesar had heard of the disaster from Labienus's dispatch.

15. **hōc aequiōre animō**: *with the greater composure.*

19. CHAPTER 53. **per Rēmōs**: *through the country of the Remi.*

20. **cum**: *although.*

21. **eō**: for *in hīberna Cicerōnis.*

24. **grātulātiō fieret**: the phrase *grātulātiō fierī* constitutes a passive for the deponent *grātulārī.*

25. **Indūtiomārus**: see Chapters 3 and 4 of this Book.

28. **in hīberna**: in the country of the Morini, **137**, 18.

29. **tribus legiōnibus**: the legions of Crassus, Trebonius, and Cicero. **trīnīs**: explain the use of the distributive numeral.

Page 157. 2. **ipse**: emphatic repetition of the pronoun; in the first instance it served to mark a contrast. **ad exercitum manēre**: i.e. contrary to his usual practice of going to Cisalpine Gaul at the close of each year's campaigns.

3. **dē Sabīnī morte**: *of Sabinus's death,* defines *incommodō.* **perlātō**: *having been noised abroad.*

6. **reliquī**: nom. pl., *what plan the other Gauls would adopt.* **unde**: for *ā quibus.*

9–10. **quin . . . acciperet**: *(and) without his receiving.*

11. **In his**: sc. *nūntiīs, among these messages.*

13. **Aremoricae**: for a list of these tribes see Bk. II, Chapter 34.

REVOLT OF THE SENONES AND TREVERI, 54–58.

19. CHAPTER 54. **cum . . . dēnūntiāret**: *declaring.* The *cum* clause serves to amplify *territandō.*

21. **quae est cīvitās**: equivalent to *quōrum cīvitās est*, the relative being attracted to agreement with the predicate noun.

23. **Moritasgus**: a singular verb is to be supplied from *obtinuerant.*

24. **adventū**: abl. of time. **in Galliam**: *in* with the acc. after the idea of motion in *adventū.*

25. **interficere cōnātī**: cf. the case of Tasgetius, Chapter 25. **pūblicō cōnsiliō**: *with official sanction*, perhaps by decree of the senate.

26. **fīnēs**: *boundaries, frontier*, as in **139,** 1.

Page 158. 4–5. **esse aliquōs,** etc.: *that some had been found to take the lead in making war*, infinitive clause subject of *valuit* and *attulit.*

9. **Gallicī bellī**: *in the Gallic war.*

10. **adeō**: limits *mīrandum.* **mīrandumne sit**: indirect question, *and I do not know whether this is so very strange.*

11. **cum . . . tum**: *not only . . . but also.* **complūribus aliīs dē causīs**: e.g. the payment of tribute, the quartering of legions among them, the devastation of their country.

12. **quī**: for *eī quī.*

13. **tantum sē . . . dēperdidisse**: depending on *dolēbant, grieved that.* **ut**: *as to*, result.

16–17. CHAPTER 55. **quin . . . mitterent**: *without sending.* **pecūniās**: *subsidies.*

20–21. **persuādērī**: *no German tribe could be induced.* Account for the construction with the passive of this verb. **cum**

. . . **dīcerent** : *since* (*as*) *they said.* **expertōs** (*esse*) : the verb is used absolutely, *they had made trial twice.* **Tencterōrum** : Caesar omits the Usipetes, who are generally named in conjunction with the Tencteri.

23. **lapsus** : *disappointed.*

Page 159. 1. CHAPTER 56. **ultrō** : *spontaneously.* **venīrī** : impersonal passive, *men were coming.*

2. **facinoris** : see Chapters 25 and 54.

5. **Hōc** : *this*, i.e. the assembling of a council in arms.

6. **quō** : adverb, *to such a council.*

7. **armātī** : predicate adjective.

8. **omnibus** : *all sorts of, all possible.*

11. **suprā** : see Chapters 3 and 4.

14. **arcessītum** : *appealed to for aid.*

15. **hūc** : for *ad hās cīvitātēs.*

16. **agrōs populātūrum** : the Remi were to be punished as traitors to the Gallic cause.

21. CHAPTER 57. **cōgitābat** : adversative asyndeton, *but was planning.* **nē . . . dīmitteret** : *not to let slip any chance of a successful engagement.*

25. **conveniendī** : equivalent to *ad conveniendum.*

26. **sub castrīs** : *close to the camp.*

Page 160. 3. **augēbat** : *tried to increase.*

5. CHAPTER 58. **nocte ūnā** : *in a single night,* in order to reduce the chances of discovery by the Gauls.

6. **arcessendōs cūrāverat** : *had caused to be summoned.*

9. **ex** : *in accordance with.*

11. **māgnā cum contumēliā verbōrum** : *with loud taunts.*

13. **ubi vīsum est** : *when it seemed best, at their pleasure.*

16. **praecipit atque interdīcit** : *gives strict orders,* lit. *instructs and forbids.* The first verb looks forward to *petant,* the second to *neu quis . . . vulneret.*

17. **quod fore . . . vidēbat** : *which he saw would happen, as it did.* *quod* refers to *perterritīs hostibus . . . coniectīs.*

18. **ūnum** : *alone.* **quem** : indefinite pronoun, *any one.*

20. **morā reliquōrum** : *through delay (caused by pursuit) of the rest.*

22. **hominis** : for *ēius.*

23. **in ipsō flūminis vadō** : *right at the water's edge.*

28. **paulō** : with *quiētiōrem.* **habuit** : *found.*



STANDARD BEARER WITH THE EAGLE (AQUILA).

SYNONYMS AND CONTRASTED WORDS.

The numerals following definitions in this table refer to pages and lines of the Latin text, where the student may study the words at first hand in their relation to other words.

VERBS.

1. **bellare**, *wage war*, **2**, 22. **contendere**, *contend, fight*, **1**, 13. **pugnare**, *fight, engage in battle*, **21**, 9. **proeliari**, *engage in battle, fight*, **65**, 14. **dimicare**, *fight, essay battle*, **64**, 5. **propugnare**, *fight in defense*, **52**, 15, **129**, 7. **decertare**, *fight a decisive battle*, **39**, 12, **55**, 8.

2. **oppugnare**, *attack, assault, try to storm*, a town or camp, **4**, 26; a person, **39**, 9, **147**, 19. **impugnare**, *press on to the attack*, **93**, 16. **adgredi**, *attack* openly, **11**, 2. **adoriri**, *attack, fall upon* unexpectedly, **12**, 3. **expugnare**, *take by storm*, **9**, 16.

3. **pellere**, *repulse, rout, defeat*, **6**, 8, **62**, 26. **depellere**, *drive off, dislodge*, **92**, 22. **propellere**, *rout, drive back* or *off*, **13**, 18, **113**, 10. **repellere**, *drive back, repulse*, 7, 8. **propulsare**: *repel, keep at bay*, **44**, 7. **reicere**, *drive back, repulse*, **20**, 24. **deturbare**, *drive off in confusion*, **150**, 25. **proturbare**, *drive in confusion*, **62**, 26. **fundere**, *rout, scatter*, **79**, 3. **submovere**, *drive away, dislodge*, **21**, 21.

4. **vincere**, *defeat, conquer, vanquish*, **21**, 21. **superare**, *overcome, defeat, vanquish*, **15**, 5. **pellere**, *rout, defeat*, **6**, 8. **opprimere**, *overwhelm, crush*, **40**, 12, **76**, 6. **pacare**, *subdue*, **5**, 8.

5. **interficere**, *kill*, the generic word, **11**, 7. **necare**, *put to death, murder*, **47**, 9, **86**, 20. **concidere**, *cut down* in battle, *cut to pieces, kill*, **11**, 2. **occidere**, *cut down* in battle, *kill*, **6**, 8.

6. **mori**, *die*, **4**, 10. **interire**, *perish*, **142**, 16. **perire**, *perish*, **46**, 19. **cadere**, *fall, be slain*, **13**, 16.

7. **populari**, *lay waste, devastate*, **9**, 11. **depopulari**, *lay waste, devastate*, **9**, 18. **vastare**, *lay waste, ravage*, **9**, 15. **vexare**, *overrun, harry, ravage*, **50**, 4, **105**, 20. **diripere**, *pillage, sack, ransack*, **60**, 17. **praedari**, *obtain plunder*, **60**, 23.

8. **iuvare**, *help, assist*, **22**, 17, **49**, 19. **adiuvare**, *help, aid, further*, **60**, 19, **122**, 13. **auxiliari**, *give aid, lend assistance*, **116**, 8. **subvenire**, *come to the aid of, support*, **145**, 10, **151**, 19. **sucurrere**, *run to the aid of*, **151**, 18.

9. **defendere**, *defend, protect*, **9**, 12, **55**, 7. **tueri**, *guard, keep safe, protect*, **100**, 17, **127**, 15. **protegere**, *shield from attack, protect*, **151**, 13.

10. **fugere**, *flee*, **46**, 10, **56**, 17. **effugere**, *escape, escape from, avoid*, **119**, 12, **160**, 20. **profugere**: *flee, escape*, **26**, 13, **59**, 1. **elabi**, *slip away, escape*, **146**, 21. **evadere**, *get away, escape*, **89**, 1.

11. **dedere**, *surrender, deliver up, submit*, usually persons, **59**, 13, **106**, 11. **tradere**, *deliver up, hand over, surrender*, persons and things, **23**, 3, 12, **45**, 14. **prodere**, *abandon, betray*, **113**, 22.

12. **pergere**, *direct one's course, proceed*, **88**, 15. **procedere**, *go forward, advance, proceed*, **31**, 20, **63**, 8, **67**, 22. **progredi**, *go forward, advance, proceed*, **44**, 13, **55**, 3, **111**, 15.

13. **contendere**, *hasten, push forward, hasten* to do, **8**, 22, 26, **19**, 7. **maturare**, *make haste, hasten* to do, **5**, 20, **31**, 15, **51**, 15. **properare**, *hasten, be in a hurry* to do, **56**, 7, **74**, 4, **144**, 5.

14. **proficisci**, *set out, start, depart, proceed*, **3**, 2, **5**, 20, **47**, 21, **49**, 8, **74**, 8. **egredi**, *go out, march out, go beyond, disembark*, **23**, 7, **39**, 26, **56**, 5, **110**, 14. **exire**, *go forth, quit, leave, go on, set out*, **2**, 11, **29**, 1, **72**, 19, **152**, 17. **decedere**, *withdraw, yield possession*, **26**, 20, **40**, 19, **150**, 13. **discedere**, *go away, depart, disperse, leave*, **13**, 9, **14**, 8, **76**, 2, **122**, 1, **134**, 5. **excedere**, *go forth, retire, withdraw*, **67**, 18, **105**, 6, **108**, 9.

15. **cogere**, *bring together, collect, assemble, rally*, troops, ships, **4**, 6, **13**, 13, **81**, 27. **conducere**, *bring together, bring together* for hire, men, **4**, 7, **48**, 13. **conferre**, *bring together, collect, gather*, grain, baggage, etc., **14**, 9, **20**, 21, 23, **57**, 20. **contrahere**, *assemble, concentrate* an army, **29**, 16. **colligere**, *gather, collect* brush, **88**, 14. **comportare**, *bring together, bring in, convey* grain, etc., **14**, 9, **92**, **25**.

16. **ponere, positus**, *placed, situated*, of places, **75**, 15, **83**, 4; *place, post* a guard, **51**, 20. **disponere**, *place at intervals, distribute*, **6**, 21, **98**, 12; *arrange* in battle, **143**, 15. **statuere**, *place, set* bridge piles, **107**, 16. **constituere**, *station, array, form, draw up* troops, **38**, 1, **45**, 3, **62**, 24; *establish* redoubts, **53**, 11; *station, anchor* ships, **112**, 4, 10; *establish, settle* people, **11**, 24. **conlocare**, *place, station, post* troops, **20**, 19, **53**, 12, **64**, 16; *establish* in quarters, **75**, 8, 13; *establish, settle* people **23**, 25.

17. **deducere**, *lead away, draw off, withdraw* troops, **40**, 13, **72**, 21, **117**, 1. **subducere**, *draw up, withdraw* to higher ground, **19**, 19, **20**, 15. **detrahere**, *withdraw, detach* troops, **76**, 7. **removere**, *withdraw, draw away* ships, troops, **113**, 7, **133**, 14.

18. **abdere** (*put away*), *hide, conceal* persons, **11**, 4, **33**, 19, **62**, 22. **celare**, *hide, conceal* persons, objects, **72**, 16, 23. **occultare**, *hide, conceal* persons, **134**, 25; actions, **23**, 5. **tegere**, *cover up, conceal* persons, objects, **134**, 14. **latere**, *lie hid*, of persons, **62**, 22; *escape notice*, of actions, **85**, 22. **delitescere**, *conceal one's self*, **118**, 3.

19. **aedificare**, *build, construct* ships, etc., **80**, 24. **facere**, *make, construct, build*, fortifications, bridges, ships, etc., **7**, 5, **8**, 21, 11, 16. **constituere**, *set up, raise* a tower, **57**, 12, **71**, 4. **instituere**, *set up, construct, build, equip, make ready* a tower, ships, etc., **71**, 6, **108**, 7, **130**, 4, **148**, 8.

20. **augere**, *increase, make larger, augment*, **15**, 23, **92**, 1. **amplificare**, *increase, strengthen*, **59**, 4. **crescere**, *increase, grow, become stronger*, **17**, 20.

21. **accidere**, *happen, chance, occur, take place, befall*, **12**, 15, **16**, 8, **24**, 18, **74**, 10, **76**, 5. **incidere**, *occur, break out*, **59**, 5. **contingere**, *happen to, fall to the lot of*, **38**, 8. **fieri**, *happen, come about, be the result*, **2**, 20, **50**, 6.

22. **adipisci**, *gain, achieve* a victory, **147**, 23. **consequi**, *get, win, achieve, accomplish*, prestige, rewards, etc., **38**, 12, **48**, 15, **104**, 5. **impetrare**, *obtain, obtain one's request, obtain permission*, **8**, 4, 10, **25**, 10, 13, **90**, 20. **nancisci**, *happen to find, find* a boat, **46**, 15; weather, **111**, 13, **112**, 2; troops, **119**, 12.

23. **coepisse** (*to have begun*), usually with complementary infinitive, **13**, 19, and often. **incipere**, with complementary infinitive, *begin*, **49**, 3, **155**, 24. **instituere**, *begin, form* a plan, **124**,

23; with infinitive, *begin*, *set about*, **81**, 12, **91**, 22. **oriri** (*arise*), *begin*, of a country, **2**, 2; *begin*, *originate*, of a disturbance, **33**, 10, **138**, 25. **cooriri** (*arise*), *begin*, *break out*, of war, **79**, 18; *begin*, *arise*, of a storm or a wind, **115**, 20, **149**, 16.

24. **iubere**, *command*, *order* to do, **4**, 21, and often. **imperare**, *command*, *order*, *give orders* to do, **23**, 11, **122**, 12. **mandare**, *commission*, *direct*, **25**, 6, **42**, 20. **praecipere**, *direct*, *instruct*, *command*, **19**, 20, **153**, 28. **praescribere**, *direct*, *dictate*, **30**, 18, **63**, 14.

25. **rogare**, *ask*, *ask for*, *request*, *beg*, **6**, 6, **9**, 13, **18**, 2, **39**, 3. **orare**, *beg*, *beeseech*, *entreat*, **18**, 2, **101**, 20, **106**, 18. **obsecrare**, *beseech*, *implore*, *conjure*, **17**, 16. **obtestari**, *implore*, *supplicate*, **113**, 19. **implorare**, *beg for*, *entreat*, *implore*, **26**, 9, **28**, 5. **petere**, *seek*, *seek for*, *seek out*, *repair to*, **27**, 11, **56**, 6, **63**, 8, **86**, 2, **95**, 5; *petition*, *beg*, *beg for*, *request*, **17**, 12, **22**, 23, **27**, 21, **71**, 18. **deprecari**, *deprecate*, *beg off*, *resort to entreaty*, **71**, 18, **100**, 6, **126**, 2. **postulare**, *demand*, *require*, *claim*, **26**, 14, **29**, 8, **30**, 1, **47**, 18, **50**, 16. **poscere**, *demand*, **22**, 26, **27**, 4, **126**, 15. **flagitare**, *demand urgently*, *importune*, **14**, 2.

26. **dicere**, *speak*, *say*, **15**, 16, **36**, 20; *say*, *relate*, *mention*, **35**, 20, **82**, 17, **85**, 25, **93**, 11; *say*, *utter* statements, opinions, **15**, 16, **40**, 23, **76**, 28; *say*, *agree*, **37**, 25, **104**, 14; *agree upon*, *set* a date, **5**, 16; *plead* a case, **4**, 2; *say* followed by indirect discourse, **1**, 16, **6**, 4 and often. **loqui**, *talk*, *speak*, *act as spokesman*, **18**, 10, **22**, 23, **25**, 15. **conloqui**, *converse*, *confer*, **17**, 9, **38**, 3. **inquam**, **inquit**, *say* (*said*) *I*, *says* (*said*) *he*, with direct quotations, **113**, 21.

27. **scire**, *know* in the widest sense of the word, **17**, 17, **18**, 10. **intellegere**, *perceive*, *be aware of*, *understand*, *know*, **8**, 17, **11**, 19, **18**, 7. **noscere**, *come to know*; perfect tense, *know*, *be acquainted with*, **81**, 21. **cognoscere**, *come to know*; perfect tense, *know*, *be acquainted with*, **17**, 4, **85**, 4, **99**, 21.

28. **putare**, *think*, *believe*, **6**, 9, **12**, 18, **34**, 10. **arbitrari**, *be of an opinion*, *believe*, *think*, **2**, 24, **4**, 11, 15, **69**, 19. **existimare**, *judge*, *consider*, *think*, **5**, 14, **6**, 11, **17**, 25. **credere**, *suppose*, *believe*, **72**, 22, **141**, 1. **iudicare**, *judge*, *consider*, **24**, 22, **34**, 13, **41**, 2. **cogitare**, *consider*, *reflect upon*, *reflect*, **28**, 16, **143**, 18; *think* of doing, *plan* to do, **92**, 13, **159**, 21. **sentire**, *feel*, *be of a mind*, **92**, 3, **142**, 20. **ducere**, *deem*, *consider*, **3**, 7. **habere**, *hold*, *esteem*, *consider*, **13**, 20, **19**, 9.

29. **statuere**, *decide*, *decide upon*, *determine*, **9**, 23, **17**, 14, 16, **37**, 15, **53**, 1. **constituere**, *decide*, *determine*, *determine upon*, *set*, **3**, 2, **4**, 3, 14, **44**, 7, **56**, 4. **placere**, *please*; impersonal, *ei placet*, *he decides*, **29**, 7, **77**, 3. **censere**, *decree* by vote, **30**, 10. **decernere**, *decree* by vote, **74**, 9; *resolve*, *determine*, **106**, 29, **125**, 19.

30. **invenire**, *come upon*, *find*, **46**, 13, **123**, 11; *find*, *learn*, **59**, 24, **123**, 11. **reperire**, *find*, *discover*, **24**, 1, **45**, 24, **86**, 1; *find*, *learn*, **15**, 17, **16**, 12, **35**, 5, **44**, 22. **comperire**, *learn*, *ascertain*, *discover*, **19**, 14, **35**, 22, **40**, 17. **cognoscere**, *learn*, *learn of*, *find*, *find out*, **16**, 18, **19**, 2, 5, 24, **29**, 25, **60**, 11. **resciscere**, *find out*, *learn of*, **23**, 9.

31. **videre**, *see*, *perceive*, **13**, 13, **19**, 21, **25**, 14, **41**, 17, **55**, 3. **conspicere**, *catch sight of*, *espy*, *see*, **42**, 22, **64**, 9, **66**, 3, **93**, 10. **conspicari**, *catch sight of*, *observe*, *see*, **21**, 17, **68**, 15, **69**, 1. **perspicere**, *see through* or *into*, *see clearly*, *see*, *learn*, *understand*, **34**, 14, **56**, 10, **60**, 12, 27. **spectare**, *look*, *face*, *trend*, *look to*, *regard*, *respect*, **2**, 8, 6, **41**, 7, **141**, 22. **animadvertere**, *notice*, *observe*, **27**, 22, **34**, 6, **45**, 18. **intueri**, *look* or *gaze upon*, **27**, 24. **sentire**, *perceive*, *be aware*, **15**, 13, **104**, 6, **140**, 15.

NOUNS.

32. **bellum**, *war*, **1**, 11. **pugna**, *fighting*, *combat*, *battle*, **21**, 6, **35**, 8, **43**, 12, **69**, 18. **proelium**, *engagement*, *battle*, **1**, 13, **13**, 15, 19, 20, **16**, 12, **21**, 19, 22. **oppugnatio**, *attack*, *assault*, *siege*, **52**, 1, **83**, 9, **149**, 16. **congressus**, *meeting*, *encounter*, **84**, 9. **certamen**, *struggle*, *contest*, **85**, 18, **151**, 27. **contentio**, *struggle*, *dispute*, *rivalry*, **40**, 8, **134**, 22, **151**, 27.

33. **copiae**, *forces*, *troops*, **9**, 10, **10**, 5, **52**, 20. **manus**, *band*, *force*, *forces*, **31**, 16, **49**, 6, **51**, 6. **exercitus**, *army*, **3**, 22, etc. **agmen**, *a marching army*, *column*, *line*, **13**, 14, **21**, 15, **62**, 7, **65**, 18. **acies**, *line of battle*, *line*, **19**, 19, **20**, 21, **21**, 21.

34. **captivi**, *captives*, *prisoners*, **19**, 14, **59**, 25. **dediticii**, *surrendered persons*, *captives*, *prisoners*, **23**, 5, **39**, 17, **60**, 9.

35. **hostis**, public *enemy*, **9**, 19, **13**, 21, **18**, 12, **22**, 3. **inimicus**, *an unfriendly person*, personal *foe*, *enemy*, *rival*, **8**, 19, **138**, 15, **151**, 18.

36. **arma**, *arms* offensive or defensive, *force of arms*, **4**, 9, **19**, 18, **63**, 8, **72**, 7, 12, 14, **96**, 11. **telum**, *missile*, *weapon*, **7**, 8, **22**, 6.

37. **murus**, *a wall*, **6**, 20, **52**, 3, **71**, 12. **moenia**, *walls* of a town, *fortifications*, **52**, 2, **83**, 11.

38. **ager**, *field*, *land*, *country*, *territory*, **2**, 16, **4**, 25, **9**, 15, 19, **23**, 21. **campus**, *open country*, *field*, *plain*, **93**, 19. **fines**, *boundaries*, *frontier*, *country*, *territory*, **1**, 14, **2**, 2, 24, **5**, 7, **139**, 1.

39. **aedificium**, *a building*, **4**, 17, **52**, 18. **casa**, *hut*, *cabin*, **149**, 18. **tectum**, *roof*, *shelter*, *house*, **31**, 6. **domus**, *home*, **4**, 18, 21, **15**, 25, **24**, 19. **domicilium**, *dwelling-place*, *abode*, *home*, **24**, 21, **27**, 10, **70**, 20. **sedes**, *seat*, *dwelling-place*, *residence*, *abode*, **26**, 23, **27**, 10, **39**, 5.

40. **opes**, *means*, *resources*, **17**, 21, **59**, 5. **possessiones**, *possessions*, *holdings*, **9**, 20, **40**, 1. **fortunae**, *fortunes*, *property*, **9**, 24, **150**, 11. **bona**, *goods*, *property*, **159**, 13. **res familiaris**, *personal property*, *estate*, **15**, 23.

41. **gens**, *race*, *people*, *nation*, **69**, 15, **96**, 7. **natio**, *tribe*, *race*, *people*, **46**, 17, **73**, 21. **populus**, *a people*, **3**, 13, 25. **multitudo**, *the multitude*, *the common people*, **15**, 1, **115**, 5. **plebs**, *the common people*, *the populace*, **3**, 16, **14**, 23. **vulgus**, *the multitude*, *the populace*, **17**, 23, **99**, 5; of soldiers, **41**, 19. **civitas**, *state*, **2**, 10, **3**, 5. **res publica**, *state*, *commonwealth*, **18**, 4, **28**, 21.

42. **consanguinei**, *blood relatives*, *kinsmen*, **9**, 17, **28**, 17, **49**, 22. **necessarii**, *closely connected*, *kinsmen*, **9**, 17. **propinqui**, *relations*, *kinsmen*, **16**, 3, **39**, 4.

43. **homo**, *a human being*, *person*, *man*, **2**, 21, 23, **4**, 5, 10, **12**, 25, **16**, 1. **vir**, *a man*, **67**, 15, **73**, 5. **capita** (*heads*), *souls*, *persons*, **24**, 6, **73**, 13.

44. **os**, *the face*, **145**, 12. **vultus**, *expression of countenance*, *mien*, *face*, **33**, 6, 18.

45. **labor**, *labor*, *toil*, *exertion*, **40**, 22, **78**, 6, **97**, 9, 16. **opus**, *work*, *labor*, **63**, 3, 15; *work*, *structure*, *siege works*, *defensive works*, **6**, 21, **7**, 8, **57**, 12, **107**, 25. **opera**, *labor*, *trouble*, **130**, 5; *services*, *assistance*, *agency*, **138**, 13, 20. See vocabulary, *opera*, and *navo*.

46. **factum**, *deed*, *act*, *event*, **85**, 21, **125**, 6, **126**, 3. **facinus**, *deed*, *misdeed*, *wrong*, *crime*, **35**, 22, **81**, 7, **159**, 2. **maleficium**, *wrong-doing*, *mischief*, *damage*, **6**, 4, 11, **8**, 13.

47. **clamor**, *cry*, *shout*, *shouting*, **56**, 21, **66**, 7, **91**, 4. **ululatus**, *howl*, *shout*, *yell*, **146**, 8. **fremitus**, *roar*, *uproar*, *hubbub*, **66**, 7, **104**, 27. **strepitus**, *din*, *clatter*, **56**, 4, **118**, 9.

48. **mors**, *death*, **4**, 12, 13, **40**, 18, **135**, 12. **nex**, *death* by violence, **14**, 15. **interitus**, *destruction*, *death*, **153**, 6. **internecio**, *destruction*, *annihilation*, **12**, 10, **69**, 15. **pernicies**, *destruction*, *ruin*, **17**, 22, **31**, 3.

49. **imperium**, *command*, *order*, **63**, 18, **64**, 17. **imperatum**, *order*, *bidding*, **49**, 17, **74**, 2. **mandatum**, *injunction*, *charge*, *order*, **29**, 20, **38**, 23, **51**, 10. **dictum**, *word*, *orders*, **34**, 4, **35**, 19. **praeceptum**, *instructions*, *orders*, **144**, 21. **praescriptum**, *dictation*, *command*, **30**, 17. **postulatum**, *demand*, *requirement*, **34**, 13, **39**, 1, **102**, 8. **iniussu**, *without orders*, **16**, 21, **141**, 6.

50. **potentia**, *power*, *influence* personal or political, **16**, 1, 7. **potestas**, official *power*, *authority*, *sway*, **14**, 15, **28**, 9, **49**, 15, **73**, 18. **imperium**, *power*, *rule*, *sovereignty*, *supremacy*, *government*, **2**, 13, **3**, 20, **15**, 4, **16**, 10, **26**, 10, **43**, 12, **49**, 23, **65**, 19. **dicio**, *authority*, *sway*, **26**, 10, **28**, 18, **73**, 18. **potentatus**, *leadership*, *supremacy*, **25**, 17. **regnum**, *royal* or *supreme power*, *sovereignty*, **2**, 9, **3**, 13, **48**, 14. **vis**, sing., *force*, *violence*, **5**, 14, **7**, 4, **9**, 19, **84**, 11; pl., *strength*, **46**, 12, **71**, 7, **77**, 10.

51. **lex**, statute *law*, *resolution*, **1**, 4, **3**, 8, **49**, 23. **ius**, *right*, *rights*, *privilege*, *law*, **4**, 9, **23**, 26, **30**, 14, **49**, 23. **fas**, *divine law* or *will* = *right*, *lawful*, *permissible*, **44**, 26, **131**, 10.

52. **sententia**, *opinion*, *view*, *decision*, *determination*, **40**, 23, **55**, 10, **76**, 22, 28, **110**, 5. **opinio**, *opinion*, *impression*, *fame*, *reputation*, *expectation*, **49**, 11, **52**, 25, **73**, 21, **76**, 24, **87**, 15. **iudicium**, *judgment*, *opinion*, **36**, 11, **139**, 24. **existimatio**, public *opinion*, **17**, 23, **151**, 9. **arbitrium**, *judgment*, *discretion*, **30**, 17.

53. **fama**, *report*, *news*, **147**, 14, **156**, 20. **rumor**, *common talk*, *rumor*, **48**, 2, **99**, 9. **auditio**, *hearsay*, *rumor*, **99**, 7. **nuntius**, *messenger*, **22**, 16, **108**, 17; *message*, *report*, *news*, **48**, 17, **157**, 10.

54. **auxilium**, *help*, *aid*, *assistance*, *support*, **9**, 13, **16**, 15; pl., *auxiliary troops*, *auxiliaries*, **20**, 19, **44**, 9. **subsidium**, *aid*, *support*, *relief*, *reserve force*, **46**, 8, **52**, 10, **67**, 20; pl., *reserve forces*, *reserves*, *reënforcements*, **64**, 16, **114**, 15.

55. **consuetudo**, *habit*, *practice*, *custom*, *policy*, **26**, 26, **41**, 1,

44, 23, **60**, 11. **mos**, *manner*, *custom*, *practice*, **7**, 2, **57**, 27 ; pl., *customs*, *character*, **4**, 1, **59**, 15, **97**, 27.

56. **facultas**, *means*, *opportunity*, *chance*, **6**, 10, **28**, 7, **110**, 13, **148**, 5. **potestas**, *power*, *chance*, *opportunity*, **35**, 7, **43**, 9, **52**, 7, **87**, 12. **occasio**, *opportunity*, *fitting occasion*, **88**, 3, **141**, 17, **147**, 5. **opportunitas**, *advantage*, *favorable opportunity* or *occasion*, **83**, 15, **87**, 19.

ADJECTIVES.

57. **imperitus**, *inexperienced*, *ignorant*, *unfamiliar*, **35**, 10, **40**, 6, **110**, 20. **insciens**, *not knowing*, *without knowledge*, **16**, 22, **127**, 2. **inscius**, *not knowing*, *ignorant*, *unaware*, **98**, 18. **imprudens**, *unsuspecting*, *unprepared*, **94**, 22, **132**, 23.

58. **notus**, *known*, *familiar*, **112**, 15. **nobilis**, *known*, *noted*, *of high birth* or *rank*, *noble*, **2**, 8, **16**, 1. **egregius**, *unusual*, *distinguished*, **17**, 3, **23**, 24. **eximius**, *extraordinary*, *remarkable*, **52**, 25. **insignis**, *marked*, *signal*, *memorable*, **11**, 9. **praecipuus**, *special*, *peculiar*, *chief*, **158**, 7.

59. **aptus**, *fitted*, *adapted*, *suitable*, **84**, 11, **133**, 110. **idoneus**, *suited*, *adapted*, *favorable*, **43**, 24, **87**, 10, **109**, 19, **111**, 13. **accommodatus**, *adapted*, *advantageous*, **84**, 12. **commodus**, *suitable*, *advantageous*, *expedient*, **37**, 15, **123**, 15, **130**, 5. **opportunus**, *suitable*, *convenient*, *opportune*, **24**, 22, **53**, 4, **86**, 6, **118**, 21.

60. **tutus**, *safe*, *secure*, *free from danger*, **51**, 17, **69**, 19, **106**, 25, **140**, 19, **141**, 28. **incolumis**, *unharmed*, *safe*, *without loss*, **47**, 11, **79**, 11, **156**, 3. **integer**, *uninjured*, *unwearied*, *unimpaired*, *fresh*, **77**, 9, 14, **133**, 19.

61. **magnus**, *large*, *great*, **2**, 22, and often. **grandis**, *large*, *high*, **37**, 24. **amplus**, *of large extent*, *large*, *numerous*, *splendid*, *distinguished*, **38**, 7, **80**, 1, **97**, 23, **102**, 25, **134**, 22. **ingens**, *vast*, *huge*, *enormous*, **33**, 3, **101**, 13, **124**, 8. **immanis**, *monstrous*, *huge*, **96**, 20. **vastus**, *vast*, *boundless*, **81**, 22, **83**, 18.

62. **antiquus**, *former*, *ancient*, *old*, **16**, 7, **41**, 6. **vetus**, *old*, *of long standing*, *former*, **12**, 1, 19, **38**, 13, **92**, 8, **122**, 4. **pristinus**, *former*, *previous*, *old-time*, *tried*, **12**, 2, **63**, 23, **105**, 1. **senex**, *old*, *aged*; as subst., *old man*, **24**, 5.

63. **novus**, *new*, *fresh*, *novel*, *strange*, **31**, 16, **44**, 26, **71**, 13,

117, 20; superl., *last*, *latest*, **106**, 23. See vocabulary, *agmen*. **recens**, *new*, *recent*, *fresh*, *unexhausted*, **12**, 19, **27**, 16, **104**, 18, **133**, 19.

64. **repentinus**, *sudden*, *unexpected*, *hasty*, **11**, 17, **76**, 24, **80**, 12, **136**, 19. **subitus**, *sudden*, *off-hand*, **79**, 17, **80**, 12.

65. **parvus**, *small*, **15**, 21. **angustus**, *narrow*, *small*, *contracted*, **2**, 24, **5**, 2, **116**, 21. **exiguus**, *scanty*, *meager*, *small*, **109**, 1, **131**, 7, **154**, 22.

66. **multus**, *much*, pl. *many*, **3**, 12, **22**, 3, and often. **complures**, *several*, *a number of*, *many*, **7**, 5, **9**, 3, **15**, 20. **plerique**, *the most of*, *the majority of*, *in general*, **50**, 1, **99**, 10, **132**, 9. **crebri**, *repeated*, *frequent*, *numerous*, **48**, 2, **60**, 24, **71**, 2. **frequentes**, *in large numbers*, **102**, 7, **104**, 11.

67. **omnis**, *all*, *every*, *as a whole*, *every kind of*, **1**, 1, and often. **totus**, *all*, *entire*, *the whole*, *the whole of*, **2**, 13, **5**, 22, **22**, 2, 12. **cunctus**, *all*, *entire*, **70**, 5. **universus**, *all in a body*, *all together*, *all*, *the whole*, **73**, 12, **113**, 28, **114**, 11.

68. **alius**, *other*, *another*, pl., *other*, *others*, **alii**, . . . **alii**, *some . . . others*, **1**, 2, **6**, 5, **15**, 17, **16**, 4, **92**, 21. **alter**, *the other* of two, *another*, *a second*. **alter** . . . **alter**, *the one . . . the other*, pl., **alteri** . . . **alteri**, *the one party . . . the other*, **2**, 17, **21**, 25, **26**, 20, **30**, 16, **75**, 17, 18. **ceteri**, *all the rest*, *all the others*, *all other*, **27**, 23, **49**, 18, **125**, 21. **reliquus**, *remaining*, *the remainder of*, **1**, 12, **4**, 17, **11**, 15, **15**, 5.

ADVERBS.

69. **nunc**, *now*, *at the present time*, **25**, 22, **26**, 20, **50**, 21. **iam**, *now*, *by this time*, *already*, *at last*, *at length*, *finally*, **4**, 15, **9**, 9, **10**, 5, **15**, 2, **37**, 3, **42**, 16, **76**, 27.

70. **tum**, *then*, *at that time*, *thereupon*, *then too*, *in addition*, **52**, 5, 9, **113**, 27, **118**, 3, **127**, 22, **154**, 18. **deinde**, *then*, *next*, *thereupon*, *secondly*, *in the second place*, *furthermore*, **21**, 1, **30**, 3, **36**, 12, **48**, 8. **porro**, *further*, *furthermore*, **139**, 27.

71. **ante**, *before*, *previously*, *formerly*, *above* in quotations, **3**, 14, **14**, 3, **16**, 13, **57**, 13, **89**, 12. **antea**, *before*, *previously*, *hitherto*, **14**, 22, **36**, 25, **37**, 4. **antiquitus**, *in former times*, *long ago*, **50**, 1, **60**, 20. **prius**, *before*, *earlier*, **39**, 23.

72. **post**, *after, afterward, later*, **42**, 3, **78**, 6, **96**, 11. **postea**, *afterward*, **19**, 10, 14.

73. **primum**, *first*, in enumeration, *in the first place, first of all, at first*, **21**, 1, **48**, 6, **55**, 6, **71**, 4. **primo**, *at first*, **25**, 20, **52**, 24.

74. **demum**, *at length, at last*; with **tum**, *then at last, then and not till then*, **14**, 21, **44**, 15. **denique**, *at length, finally, at least*, **19**, 24, **34**, 27, **72**, 22. **tandem**, *after a long time, in the end, at last*, **21**, 12, **90**, 10; with questions, *pray, anyhow*, **34**, 17. **postremo**, *finally*, in argument, **141**, 12, 26. **ad extremum**, *in the end, at last, finally*, **98**, 6.

75. **interea**, *meanwhile, in the meantime*, **6**, 16, **20**, 20. **interim**, *meanwhile, in the meantime*, **14**, 1, **20**, 16.

76. **interdum**, *from time to time, sometimes, now and then*, **12**, 27, **33**, 18. **non numquam** (*not never*), *sometimes, occasionally*, **7**, 7, **13**, 18.

77. **continenter**, *incessantly, without stopping*, **1**, 11, **22**, 12, **77**, 19. **semper**, *in all time, always, constantly*, **15**, 25, **81**, 9, **158**, 7.

78. **diu**, *a long time, long*, **12**, 23, **14**, 10, **15**, 10. **longius**, *longer*, **96**, 14. **amplius**, *more, longer*, **77**, 19, **120**, 14. **iam**, with negatives, *longer*, **63**, 18, **67**, 16, **73**, 10, **103**, 7.

79. **iterum**, *again, a second time*, **26**, 1, **29**, 19, **39**, 11. **rursus** (*turned back*), *again, anew, once more, in turn*, **21**, 18, **62**, 17, **65**, 10, **96**, 11, **151**, 24. **deinceps**, *in turn, in succession, one after another*, **94**, 21, **133**, 19, **148**, 3.

80. **repente**, *suddenly, without warning*, **45**, 20, **133**, 25. **subito**, *suddenly, off-hand*, **33**, 7, **35**, 8, **62**, 24, **72**, 25. **improviso** and **de improviso** (abl. of *improvisus, unforeseen*), *suddenly, without warning, unexpectedly*, **12**, 3, **49**, 11, **136**, 11.

81. **protinus** (*right on*), *forthwith, at once*, **54**, 12, **134**, 5. **confestim**, *without delay, promptly, immediately*, **117**, 23, **134**, 16. **statim**, (*on the spot*), *at once, immediately*, **47**, 9, **56**, 8, **88**, 25.

82. **fere**, *almost, about, generally, usually*, **1**, 13, **10**, 6, **33**, 4, **88**, 9, **89**, 8. **circiter**, *about, not far from*, **13**, 22, **21**, 15, **44**, 15. **paene**, *almost, nearly*, **9**, 14, **17**, 22, **62**, 27, **67**, 3. **prope**, *near*, of space, *nearly, almost*, **37**, 1, **69**, 15, **72**, 13, **102**, 11.

83. **plus** (acc.) with **possum**, *more*, **14**, 24. **magis**, *in a greater degree, more, rather*, **12**, 7, **20**, 9, **84**, 11, **84**, 5. **potius**, *rather*, **41**, 2, **55**, 8.

INDEX OF SYNONYMS AND CONTRASTED WORDS.

GROUPS OF RELATED WORDS.

[The words in heavy type are primitives, indented words derivatives, the relative degree of indentation showing their relation to each other and to the primitive in each case: e.g. the primitive **arceo** gives the derivative **exerceo**, from which are derived **exercitus** and **exercito**, and from the latter **exercitatus** and **exercitatio**. Words inclosed in parentheses ( ) are not found in the text of this edition.]

(**acer**, *sharp.*)
  acriter, *sharply.*
acervus, *pile, heap.*
  coacervo, *heap up.*
acies, *sharp edge; line of battle.*
acutus, *sharp, pointed.*
  praeacutus, *sharpened at the end.*
aequus, *even; fair.*
  aequaliter, *evenly.*
  aequo, *equalize.*
    adaequo, *make equal, equal.*
  aequitas, *fairness.*
  aequinoctium, *equinox.*
  iniquus, *unfair, unfavorable.*
    iniquitas, *inequality, unfavorableness.*
ago, *drive.*
  adigo, *drive down; move forward; hurl.*
  cogo, *bring together; compel.*
  cogito, *ponder.*
  exigo, *drive out; finish.*
    exiguus, *small, scanty.*
      exiguitas, *smallness, scantiness.*
  exagito, *harass.*
  perago, *finish, end.*
  redigo, *reduce, render.*
  actuarius, *swift.*
  agmen, *column, line.*
ager, *field.*
alius, *another.*
  alias, *at another time.*
  aliter, *otherwise.*
  alienus, *another's.*
alo, *nourish, support.*
  altus, *high, deep.*
    altitudo, *height, depth.*
  adulescens, *young.*
amor, *love.*
  amicus, *friend.*
    amicitia, *friendship.*
    inimicus, *unfriendly; a foe.*
animus, *soul, spirit.*
  animadverto, *notice.*
  exanimo, *make out of breath, exhaust.*
arx, *citadel.*
(**arceo**, *inclose.*)
  coerceo, *restrain.*
  exerceo, *train, drill.*

exercitus, *army*.
(**exercito**, *agitate*.)
exercitatus, *well-trained*, *experienced*.
exercitatio, *training*.
arma, *implements*, *arms*.
armo, *arm*, *equip*.
armamenta, *equipment*, *tackle*.
armatura, *armor*.
inermis, *unarmed*.
audeo, *dare*.
(**audax**, *bold*, *daring*.)
audacter, *boldly*, *courageously*.
audacia, *boldness*, *daring*.
augeo, *increase*, *strengthen*.
auctor, *supporter*, *instigator*.
auctoritas, *authority*.
auxilium, *help*, *support*.
bellum, *war*.
bellicosus, *warlike*.
bello, *make war*.
rebellio, *renewal of war*, *revolt*.
cado, *fall*.
accido, *fall; happen*.
concido, *fall; be slain*.
incido, *fall in with; occur*.
occido, *fall; perish*.
occasio, *opportunity*.
occasus, *setting*.
casus (*falling*), *chance*, *occurrence; misfortune*.
cadaver, *corpse*.
capio, *take*.
accipio, *take*, *receive*.
excipio, *receive*, *meet*.
incipio, *begin*.
intercipio, *intercept*.
occupo, *seize; occupy*.
occupatio, *occupation*, *employment*.
praecipio, *take beforehand; instruct*, *order*.
recipio, *take back; receive*.
suscipio, *undertake*.
captivus, *captive*.
deinceps, *in succession*.
princeps, *first; leader*, *chief*.
principatus, *leadership*.
caput, *head*.
capillus, *hair*.
anceps, *double*, *twofold*.
praeceps, *headlong*, *steep*.
praecipito, *hurl headlong*.
causa, *cause; case*.
accuso, *accuse*, *reproach*.
excuso, *excuse*.
incuso, *blame*, *upbraid*.
recuso, *refuse*.
(**cerno**, *separate; perceive*.)
certus, *certain*, *definite*.
incertus, *uncertain*.
certamen, *struggle*, *contest*.
decerto, *fight a decisive battle*.
decerno, *decree; decide*.
secreto, *separately*, *in secret*.
colo, *till*.
cultura, *cultivation*.
cultus, *mode of life*, *civilization*.
incolo, *dwell; inhabit*.
cupio, *desire*, *wish*.
cupidus, *desirous*.
cupide, *eagerly*.
cupiditas, *desire*, *eagerness*.
(**curro**, *run*.)
accurro, *run to*, *hasten up*.
concurro, *run together*, *hurry*.

concursus, *running together; onset.*
concurso, *rush to and fro.*
decurro, *run down.*
occurro, *run to meet, meet.*
procurro, *run forward.*
currus, *chariot.*
cursus, *running, speed; course.*
excursio, *sally.*
incursio, *raid.*
incursus, *onward rush; attack.*
dico, dicare, *dedicate, set apart.*)
dicio, *dominion, sway.*
condicio, *agreement, terms; condition.*
praedico, *proclaim; boast.*
dīco, dīcere, *say.*
dictum, *word; command.*
indico, *proclaim, appoint, call.*
indicium, *information.*
interdico, *forbid.*
dies, *day.*
diurnus, *by day.*
biduum, *a period of two days.*
cotidie, *daily.*
cotidianus, *daily; usual.*
interdiu, *in the daytime.*
pridie, *on the day before.*
postridie, *on the next day.*
do, *give.*
abdo, *put away; hide.*
circumdo, *put around, surround.*
dedo, *deliver up, surrender.*
deditio, *a surrender.*
dediticius, *surrendered; a captive, prisoner.*
edo, *put forth; visit upon.*
editus, *raised, elevated.*
perdo, *ruin.*
perditus, *ruined, desperate.*
deperdo, *lose.*
prodo, *hand down; betray.*
reddo, *give back.*
trado, *give over, surrender; transmit.*
dono, *present, grant.*
condono, *give up; pardon.*
eo, *go.*
iter, *journey.*
adeo, *go to, approach, visit.*
aditus, *approach; access.*
circumeo, *go around.*
circuitus, *circuit; detour.*
exeo, *go out.*
exitus, *outcome, result.*
ineo, *enter upon; begin; form.*
initium, *beginning.*
intereo, *perish.*
interitus, *destruction.*
introeo, *go in, enter.*
introitus, *entrance.*
obeo, *go to meet; attend to.*
obitus, *destruction.*
pereo, *perish.*
(**praetereo**, *pass by.*)
praeteritus, *past.*
praetor (=prae-itor), *praetor.*
praetorius, *praetorian.*
prodeo, *go forth, advance.*
redeo, *go back, return.*
reditio, *returning, return.*
reditus, *return.*
(**seditio** (*a going apart*), *sedition.*)
seditiosus, *seditious.*
subeo, *come up, advance; enter; undergo.*
subitus, *sudden.*
subito, *suddenly.*

transeo, *cross, pass through.*
transitus, *crossing, passage.*
facio, *make, do.*
adficio, *treat; affect.*
conficio, *complete, accomplish; furnish; weaken.*
deficio, *fail, desert; be insufficient.*
defectio, *defection, revolt.*
efficio, *complete; render; bring about.*
interficio, *kill.*
perficio, *accomplish; bring about.*
praeficio, *put in command.*
proficio, *effect; derive advantage.*
proficsicor, *set out, depart.*
profectio, *departure.*
reficio, *rebuild; refresh.*
faber, *workman.*
facilis, *easy.*
facile, *easily.*
facultas, *opportunity; supply, force.*
difficilis, *difficult.*
difficultas, *difficulty.*
perfacilis, *very easy.*
facinus, *deed, misdeed.*
factum, *deed, event.*
factio, *faction, party.*
officium, *service, duty.*
firmus, *strong.*
infirmus, *weak.*
infirmitas, *weakness.*
firmitudo, *strength, stability.*
confirmo, *make firm; establish; reassure; assert.*
fortis, *strong, brave.*
fortitudo, *bravery.*
fluo, *flow.*
flumen, *river.*
fluctus, *flood, wave, sea.*
(**confluo**, *flow together.*)
confluens, *confluence.*
influo, *flow into.*
fugio, *flee.*
effugio, *flee, escape.*
perfugio, *flee for refuge.*
perfuga, *deserter.*
perfugium, *place of refuge.*
profugio, *flee, escape.*
fuga, *flight.*
fugitivus, *fleeing.*
(**gigno**, *beget.*)
gener, *son-in-law.*
genus, *race, birth; kind.*
generatim, *by tribes.*
gens, *race, people.*
ingens (*not natural*), *vast, huge.*
nascor (=gnascor), *be born.*
(**gradior**, *step.*)
adgredior, *approach; attack.*
congredior, *meet, encounter.*
congressus, *meeting, encounter.*
egredior, *go out, set out; disembark.*
egressus, *landing.*
ingredior, *advance into, enter.*
progredior, *proceed, advance.*
transgredior, *cross.*
gratus, *pleasing, welcome.*
gratia, *favor, good-will, influence.*
gratulor, *congratulate.*
gratulatio, *rejoicing; congratulation.*
habeo, *have.*
adhibeo, *hold toward; summon, admit.*
debeo, *owe; ought.*

praebeo, *furnish.*
prohibeo, *prohibit.*
hiems, *winter.*
hiemo, *spend the winter.*
hiberna, *winter quarters, winter camp.*
homo, *man, person.*
humanus, *cultivated, civilized.*
humanitas, *cultivation, refinement.*
nemo, *nobody.*
iungo, *join.*
coniungo, *join, unite.*
cunctus, *all, entire.*
iugum, *yoke; ridge.*
iumentum, *beast of burden.*
iunctura, *a joining, joint.*
iuxta, *near by.*
ius, *right.*
ius iurandum, *oath.*
iustus, *just.*
iustitia, *justice.*
iniuria, *injury, wrong.*
iudicium, *judgment; trial.*
iudico, *judge, consider; decide.*
iuro, *swear, take oath.*
coniuro, *conspire, league together.*
coniuratio, *league, conspiracy.*
(**legō, legere**, *gather, collect.*)
colligo, *gather, collect.*
deligo, *choose, select.*
(diligo, *single out.*)
(diligens, *careful.*)
diligenter, *carefully.*
indiligenter, *carelessly.*
diligentia, *care, watchfulness.*
intellego, *understand, know.*
neglego, *disregard, neglect.*
perlego, *read through.*
legio, *legion.*
legionarius, *legionary.*
(**lēgō, lēgāre**, *depute.*)
legatus, *envoy; lieutenant.*
legatio, *mission; embassy.*
relego, *send away; exile.*
liber, *free.*
liberi, *children.*
libere, *freely, frankly.*
(liberalis, *befitting a freeman.*)
liberalitas, *liberality, generosity.*
liberaliter, *courteously, graciously.*
libero, *set free, relieve.*
libertas, *freedom.*
magnus, *large, great.*
magnopere, *greatly.*
magnitudo, *greatness.*
maiores, *ancestors.*
magis, *more, rather.*
(**magister**, *master.*)
magistratus, *magistracy, magistrate.*
malus, *mast.*
manus, *the hand, a band, force.*
manipulus (*handful*), *maniple.*
mando, *intrust; direct, give orders.*
mandatum, *command, order.*
commendo, *intrust.*
mansuetudo, *gentleness.*
mens, *mind.*
amentia, *folly.*
dementia, *madness.*
memoria, *memory.*
commemoro, *mention, relate.*
memini, *remember.*
reminiscor, *recall, remember.*

moneo, *warn*, *urge*.
demonstro, *point out*, *show*.
modus, *measure ; kind ; manner*.
modo, *only*.
moderor, *control*.
admodum, *fully*, *very*.
commodus, *suitable*.
commodum, *advantage*.
(incommodus, *disadvantageous*.)
incommode, *disadvantageously*.
incommodum, *disadvantage*, *disaster*.
accommodo, *fit*, *adapt ; put on*.
moenia, *walls* of a town.
munio, *fortify*.
circummunio, *wall around*, *invest*.
communio, *fortify ; construct*.
munitio, *fortification*.
munimentum, *fortification*.
moveo, *move*.
commoveo, *move deeply*, *arouse*.
permoveo, *move*, *influence ; dismay*.
removeo, *remove*, *withdraw*.
remotus, *remote*.
submoveo, *drive back*, *dislodge*.
(muto, *change*.)
commuto, *change*.
commutatio, *change*.
mobilis, *unstable*.
motus, *movement ; disturbance*.
(**no**, *swim*.)
trano, *swim across*.
navis, *ship*.
navalis, *naval*.
navicula, *skiff*.
navigo, *sail*, *navigate*.
navigatio, *sailing*, *voyage*.
navigium, *vessel*, *ship*.
nauta, *sailor*.
nauticus, *nautical*.
nascor, *be born*.
enascor, *grow out*.
prognatus, *descended*.
natio, *tribe*, *race*, *people*.
natura, *nature*.
natus, *birth*, *age*.
neco, *kill*, *put to death*.
nex, *death* by violence.
internecio, *destruction*.
pernicies, *ruin*.
nosco, *come to know*.
notus, *known*.
ignotus, *unknown*.
cognosco, *come to know*, *learn*.
incognitus, *unknown*.
ignosco, *pardon*.
ignoro, *not know*, *overlook*.
nobilis, *noted ; nobly born*, *noble*.
nobilitas, *high birth*, *nobility*.
ignobilis, *unknown*, *obscure*.
nomen, *name*.
nomino, *name*, *mention*.
nominatim, *by name*.
novus, *new*.
novitas, *novelty*.
renovo, *renew*.
nuper, *recently*.
nunc, *now*.
nuntius, *messenger*, *message*.
nuntio, *announce*.
denuntio, *declare*, *threaten*.
enuntio, *disclose*.
pronuntio, *proclaim*.
renuntio, *bring back word*, *report*.

opes, *resources.*
copia, *abundance*, *supply.*
copiosus, *well supplied.*
inopia, *want*, *scarcity.*
opera, *toil*, *trouble; services.*
opus, *work.*
os, *mouth.*
oro, *beg.*
orator, *speaker; envoy.*
oratio, *speech.*
pars, *part.*
partim, *partly.*
partior, *divide.*
bipertito, *in two divisions.*
tripertito, *in three divisions.*
pauci, *few.*
perpauci, *very few.*
paucitas, *small numbers.*
paulus, *small.*
paulum, *a little.*
paulo, (*by*) *a little.*
paululum, *a very little.*
paulisper, *for a short time.*
paulatim, *gradually.*
pes, *foot.*
pedalis, *a foot in measure.*
bipedalis, *two feet in measure.*
pedes, *foot-soldier.*
pedester, *on foot*, *by land.*
peditatus, *infantry.*
(expedio, *extricate*, *release.*)
expeditus, *unincumbered.*
expeditio, *expedition.*
impedio, *hamper*, *impede.*
impeditus, *incumbered; difficult.*
impedimentum, *a hindrance; baggage.*
populus, *people.*
publicus, *of the people.*
publice, *for the people* or *state.*
publico, *confiscate.*
potius, *rather.*
possum, *be able.*
potens, *powerful.*
potentia, *power*, *influence.*
potentatus, *power*, *dominion.*
potestas, *power*, *authority.*
potior, *become master of*, *gain.*
prope, *near.*
propior, *nearer.*
propinquus, *near; related.*
propinquitas, *nearness; relationship.*
adpropinquo, *approach.*
propter, *near; on account of.*
propterea, *for the reason*, *because.*
rego, *guide*, *rule*, *control.*
derectus, *laid straight.*
erectus, *upright.*
pergo, *proceed.*
porrigo, *stretch out*, *extend.*
(surgo, *rise.*)
consurgo, *rise together.*
regio, *direction; region*, *district.*
rex, *king.*
regnum, *royal power; realm.*
regno, *rule*, *reign.*
(**sedeo**, *sit.*)
consido, *settle; halt*, *take position.*
obsideo, *besiege*, *blockade.*
obsidio, *siege; oppression.*
possideo, *possess*, *hold.*
possido, *take possession of.*
possessio, *possession;* pl., *possessions.*

(**subsido**, *settle down; lie in wait.*)
subsidium, *aid; reënforcements.*
supersedeo, *refrain.*
sedes, *seat; abode.*
insidiae, *ambush; stratagem.*
obses, *hostage.*
praesidium, *protection; guard, garrison.*
sentio, *perceive, think.*
consentio, *agree.*
consensus, *agreement.*
dissentio, *disagree.*
dissensio, *dissension.*
sententia, *opinion.*
sequor, *follow.*
consequor, *follow up, overtake.*
consector, *pursue, hunt down.*
exsequor, *follow up; enforce.*
insequor, *pursue.*
persequor, *pursue, harass.*
prosequor, *pursue; address.*
subsequor, *follow after, keep up with.*
secundus, *second; favorable, successful.*
secundum, *next to, along; in accordance with.*
socius, *associate, ally.*
signum, *signal; standard.*
designo, *point out, mean.*
insignis, *memorable.*
insigne, *signal; ornament.*
signifer, *standard-bearer.*
significo, *indicate, make known.*
significatio, *sign, indication.*
simul, *at the same time.*
simultas, *dissension, feud.*
similis, *like.*
absimilis, *unlike.*
consimilis, *very like.*
simulo, *pretend.*
dissimulo, *hide, pretend ignorance of.*
simulatio, *pretense, show.*
(**-spicio**, *spy, see.*)
species, *appearance, sight.*
specto, *look; face; consider.*
expecto, *wait for, wait.*
speculor, *spy.*
speculator, *scout, spy.*
conspicio, *catch sight of.*
conspectus, *sight.*
conspicor, *catch sight of.*
despicio, *look down upon.*
despectus, *view, prospect.*
perspicio, *see through, perceive.*
prospicio, *provide for.*
prospectus, *view, outlook.*
respicio, *look back.*
(**suspicio**, *suspect.*)
suspicio, *suspicion.*
suspicor, *suspect, surmise.*
sto, *stand.*
consto, *stand firm, be established.*
(**constans**, *firm, steadfast.*)
constanter, *resolutely; uniformly.*
constantia, *steadfastness.*
insto, *be at hand; press on.*
praesto, *excel; exhibit.*
statio, *post; outpost, guard.*
statim, *at once.*
statura, *height, stature.*
(**stabilis**, *firm, steadfast.*)
instabilis, *unstable, changeable.*

stabilitas, *steadiness, stability.*
statuo, *set up; decide.*
constituo, *establish; determine.*
destituo, *abandon.*
instituo, *set up; begin.*
institutum, *practice, custom.*
restituo, *restore.*
sum, *be.*
absum, *be absent, be distant.*
adsum, *be at hand, be present.*
desum, *be lacking, fail.*
intersum, *be between; take part in.*
praesum, *be in command.*
praesens, *present.*
praesentia, *the present; presence.*
repraesento, *do at once.*
subsum, *be at hand.*
supersum, *be left, survive.*
video, *see.*
invideo, *envy.*
provideo, *make provision for.*
improviso, *unexpectedly.*
(**prudens**, *foreseeing.*)
prudentia, *foresight.*
imprudens, *unsuspecting.*
imprudentia, *indiscretion.*

VOCABULARY

ABBREVIATIONS.

abbr., abbreviation.
abl., ablative.
acc., accusative.
adj., adjective.
adv., adverb.
cf., *confer*, compare.
comp., comparative.
conj., conjunction.
correl., correlative.
dat., dative.
def., defective.
dem., demonstrative.
dep., deponent.
dim., diminutive.
distr., distributive.
e.g., *exempli gratia*, for example.
f., feminine.
freq., frequentative.
gen., genitive.
i.e., *id est*, that is.
impers., impersonal.
indecl., indeclinable.
indef., indefinite.
indic., indicative.
intens., intensive.
interrog., interrogative.
intr., intransitive.
Introd., general Introduction.
lit., literally.
m., masculine.
n., neuter.
nom., nominative.
num., numeral.
p.p., perfect participle.
pass., passive.
pers., personal.
pl., plural.
possess., possessive.
pr. p., present participle.
prep., preposition.
pron., pronoun.
pronom., pronominal.
rel., relative.
sc., *scilicet*, supply.
semi-dep., semi-deponent.
sing., singular.
subjv., subjunctive.
subst., substantive.
superl., superlative.
tr., transitive.
voc., vocative.

VOCABULARY.

In the case of compounds the component parts are simply spaced — e.g., *ab-dūcō* — when the composition is obvious. In other cases the etymology is given in square brackets [ ], the meaning of such parts being added as are not found elsewhere in the Vocabulary.

The English pronunciation of each proper name is given in parenthesis, with the following vowel values. Other phonetic devices are self-explanatory. Unstressed vowels vary somewhat, and are usually left unmarked, as the student will have no difficulty in adjusting their pronunciation to the accompanying sounds.

ā as in l*a*te. **ă** as in m*a*t. **ä** as in *a*re. **a** as in *a*mount, di*a*logue, bot*a*ny.

ē as in h*e*. **ĕ** as in l*e*t. **ẽ** as in h*e*r. **e** as in *e*lement, ben*e*ficent, add*e*d.

ī as in l*i*ne. **ĭ** as in b*i*t. **i** as in del*i*cate, quant*i*ty.

ō as in n*o*te. **ŏ** as in n*o*t. **ô** as in *o*r. **o** as in *o*bey, el*o*quent.

ū as in f*u*me. **ŭ** as in b*u*t. **u** (oo) as in r*u*le. **u** as in instr*u*ment, circ*u*s.

ae (ē or ĕ), as in C*ae*sar and *Ae*tna.

au as in *au*thor.

eu (ū) as in f*eu*d.

Primary accents are indicated ′, secondary (whenever necessary) ″.

The location of towns and tribes is indicated by reference to the Map of Gaul; *e.g.*, Allobroges, G 4.

A., abbr. for the praenomen **Aulus** (au′-lus).

a. d., abbr. for **ante diem**. See note on I. 6.

ā before consonants only, **ab** before vowels and consonants, **abs** before **tē** only: Prep. with abl., *from*, *away from*, *from the vicinity of.* — Time, *from*, *after.* — Agency, *by*, *at the hands of.* — Position, *on*, *in*, *at.*

Absolutely, *away*, *off*, *at a distance of*, e.g., **ab mīlibus passuum duōbus castra pōnere**, *to pitch camp two miles away.*

abditus, **-a**, **-um** [p.p. of **abdō**], adj., *concealed*, *removed.*

ab-dō, **-dere**, **-didī**, **-ditum** [**dō**, *put*], tr., *hide*, *conceal.*

ab-dūcō, **-ere**, **-dūxī**, **-ductum**, tr., *lead away*, *carry off.*

abiciō, **-icere**, **-iēcī**, **-iectum** [**ab** + **iaciō**], tr., *throw away*, *throw down; hurl.*

abiēs, **-etis**, f., *fir-tree.*

abscīdō, **-ere**, **-cīdī**, **-cīsum** [**abs** + **caedō**], tr., *cut away.*

absēns [pr. p. of **absum**], adj., *absent.*

ab-similis, **-e**, adj., *unlike.*

ab-sistō, **-ere**, **-stitī**, — [**sistō**, *set*, *stand*], intr., *withdraw from*, *leave.*

abstineō, **-ēre**, **-tinuī**, **-tentum** [**abs** + **teneō**], tr. and intr., *keep back; abstain from*, *refrain from.*

abs-trahō, **-ere**, **-trāxī**, **-tractum**, tr., *drag away*, *take away*, *carry off.*

ab-sum, **-esse**, **āfuī**, **āfutūrus**, intr., *be absent*, *away*, *distant; be lacking*, *be wanting; be free from*, *be out of.*

ac, see **atque**.

accēdō, **-ere**, **-cessī**, **-cessūrus** [**ad** + **cēdō**], intr., *approach*, *come to*, *near*, *draw near; be added*, *be in addition; arise in*, *be inspired in.*

acceptus, **-a**, **-um** [p.p. of **accipiō**], adj., *acceptable*, *pleasing*, *popular.*

accidō, **-ere**, **-cidī**, — [**ad** + **cadō**], intr., *fall*, *strike; happen*, *occur; happen to*, *befall.*

accipiō, **-cipere**, **-cēpī**, **-ceptum** [**ad** + **capiō**], tr., *take*, *accept*, *receive; inherit; meet with*, *suffer; learn*, *hear.*

acclīvis, **-e** [**ad** + **clīvus**, *a slope*], adj., *rising*, *ascending*, *sloping.*

acclīvitās, **-ātis** [**acclīvis**], f., *ascent*, *slope.*

accommodātus, **-a**, **-um** [p.p. of **accommodō**], adj., *fitted*, *adapted*, *suitable.*

accommodō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [**ad** + **commodō**, *furnish*], tr., *fit*, *adapt; put on.*

accurrō, **-ere**, **-currī** or **-cucurrī**, **-cursum** [**ad** + **currō**, *run*], intr., *run to*, *hasten up to.*

accūsō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [**ad** + **causa**], tr., *accuse*, *reproach.*

acervus, **-ī**, m., *pile*, *heap.*

aciēs, **-ēī**, f. (*sharpness*, *sharp edge*), *glare*, *flash; line of battle*, *line.*

ācriter [**ācer**, *sharp*], adv., *sharply*, *fiercely*, *eagerly*, *desperately.*

āctuārius, **-a**, **-um** [**agō**], adj., *easily moved*, *swift.* See **nāvis**.

acūtus, **-a**, **-um** [p.p. of **acuō**, *sharpen*], adj., *sharpened*, *sharp*, *pointed.*

ad, prep. with acc., *to*, *toward*, *in the direction of*, *to the vicinity of.* — Place where, *among*, *at*, *on*, *near*, *in the vicinity of.* — Time, *till*, *until*, *up to*, *about*, *by.* — Purpose and other ideas, *to*, *for; in respect to; against*, *to meet; in response to; in accordance with*, *according to*, *in proportion to.* Adv., with numbers or expressions of measure, = **circiter**, *about.*

ad-aequō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, tr., *make equal to*, *build to a level with; equal*, *keep up with.*

ad-amō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [**amō**, *love*], tr., *fall in love with*, *desire eagerly*, *covet.*

ad-dō, **-dere**, **-didī**, **-ditum** [dō, *put*], tr., *attach*, *add*, *join*; *say also*, *tell also*.

ad-dūcō, **-ere**, **-dūxī**, **-ductum**, tr., *lead to*, *bring to*, *bring*, *conduct*; *draw to*, *draw tight*; *move*, *induce*, *influence*, *prevail upon*.

1. **ad-eō**, adv., *to this*, *to this point*; *to such an extent* or *degree*, *in such a way*, *so*, *so very*.

2. **ad-eō**, **-īre**, **-iī** or **-īvī**, **-itum**, tr. and intr., *go to*, *come to*, *come*, *approach*, *draw near*, *reach*; *visit*, *meet*; *face*, *attack*.

ad-equitō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, — [equitō, *ride*], intr., *ride up to*, *gallop up*.

ad-ferō, **-ferre**, **attulī**, **allātum**, tr., *bring to*, *carry*, *deliver*; *allege*; *produce*, *cause*, *afford*.

adficiō, **-ficere**, **-fēcī**, **-fectum** [**ad** + **faciō**], tr., *treat*, *use*; *affect*, *fill with*; *inflict*, *visit with*, *subject to*.

ad-fīgō, **-ere**, **-fīxī**, **-fīxum** [fīgō, *fix*], tr., *fasten to*, *attach to*.

adfīnitās, **-ātis** [**adfīnis**, *related*], f., *relationship* (by marriage).

adflictō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [freq. of **adflīgō**], tr., *dash to pieces*, *shatter*, *destroy*.

ad-flīgō, **-ere**, **-flīxī**, **-flīctum** [flīgō, *strike*], tr., *dash*, *throw down*, *push over*; *damage*, *shatter*.

adgredior, **-gredī**, **-gressus** [**ad** + **gradior**, *step*], dep., tr. and intr., *approach*; *attack*, *assault*, *fall upon*.

ad-gregō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, [**gregō**, *collect in a herd*], tr., *attach*, *join*.

ad-haerēscō, **-ere**, **-haesī**, **-haesūrus** [**haerēscō**, *stick*], intr., *stick to*, *adhere to*.

adhibeō, **-ēre**, **-uī**, **-itum** [**ad** + **habeō**], tr., *hold toward*; *have in company with*; *summon*, *admit*, *employ*.

ad-hortor, **-ārī**, **-ātus sum**, dep., tr., *urge on*, *cheer on*, *encourage*.

ad-hūc, adv., *until now*, *hitherto*, *as yet*.

Adiatunnus, **-ī**, m. (ā′′-di-a-tŭn′-us), commander-in-chief of the Sotiates, III. 22.

adiciō, **-icere**, **-iēcī**, **-iectum** [**ad** + **iaciō**], tr., *throw to*; *add to*; *throw up*, *construct*.

adigō, **-ere**, **-ēgī**, **-āctum** [**ad** + **agō**], tr., *drive down* (piles); *move forward* (a tower); *hurl*, *cast*, *drive home* (weapons).

adimō, **-ere**, **-ēmī**, **-ēmptum** [**ad** + **emō**], tr., *take away*, *remove*.

adipīscor, **-ī**, **adeptus sum** [**ad** + **apīscor**, *reach*], dep., tr., *overtake*; *win*, *achieve*.

aditus, **-ūs** [2 **adeō**], m., *approach*; *access*, *way or place of approach*, *entrance*; *right of approach*, *admittance*; *right*, *ground*.

ad-iungō, **-ere**, **-iūnxī**, **-iūnctum**, tr., *join*, *attach*; *annex*; *ally with*, *associate with*, *win over*.

ad-iūtor, -ōris [adiuvō], m., *helper, supporter, intercessor.*

ad-iuvō, -āre, -iūvī, -iūtum, tr., *help, aid, further.*

ad-ministrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ministrō, *attend*], tr., *manage, control, conduct, execute, perform, carry out; issue, deliver.*

ad-mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., tr. and intr., *regard with wonder, be surprised or astonished at; wonder that, be surprised that.*

ad-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, tr., *let go; permit, allow; commit, bring upon, incur;* equō **admissō,** *with horse at full speed;* **in sē facinus admittere,** *commit,* or *be guilty of, a misdeed.*

ad-modum [modum, acc. of **modus**], adv. (*to the measure*), *fully, quite, very, highly.*

ad-moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, tr., *admonish, warn, advise.*

ad-orior, -īrī, -ortus sum, dep., tr., *assail, attack, fall upon.*

ad-pellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum, tr., *drive to, conduct to; bring up, land, put in* (of ships).

ad-petō, -ere, -petīvī or **-petiī, -petītum,** tr. and intr., *strive for, seek; approach.*

ad-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *carry to, bring.*

ad-propinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [propinquō, *draw near*], intr., *approach, draw near.*

ad-scīscō, -ere, -scīvī, -scītum [scīscō, *accept*], tr., *receive, admit, join* or *associate with.*

adsuēfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum [**adsuēsco,** *accustom* + **faciō**], tr., *accustom, train, inure.*

ad-sum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, intr., *be near, be at hand, be present.*

adulēscēns, -entis [pr. p. of **adolēscō,** *grow up*], adj., *young.* Subst., m. and. f., *a young man* or *woman.*

adulēscentia, -ae [**adulēscēns**], f., *youth, youthfulness.*

adulēscentulus, -ī [dim. of **adulēscēns**], m., *a very young man, a mere boy.*

adventus, -ūs [**adveniō,** *arrive*], m., *coming, approach, arrival.*

1. **ad-versus, -a, -um** [p.p. of **advertō,** *turn toward*], adj., *fronting, facing, in front; opposite, face to face; adverse, unfavorable, unsuccessful;* **adversō colle,** *up the hill;* **adversā nocte,** *in the face of night;* **in adversum ōs,** *full in the face.*

2. **ad-versus** [**advertō**], prep. with acc., *against.*

ad-vertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum [vertō, *turn*], tr., *turn to.* See **animus.**

ad-volō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [volō, *fly*], intr., *hasten towards, rush upon.*

aedificium, -ī [aedificō], n., *a building.*

aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**aedēs,** *building,* cf. **faciō**], tr., *build, construct.*

aeger, **-gra**, **-grum**, adj., *sick.*

aegrē [aeger], adv., *painfully; with difficulty, hardly.*

Aemilius, **-ī**, m. (ē-mĭl′-i-us), *Lucius Aemilius*, a Gallic cavalry officer in Caesar's army. I. 23.

aequāliter [aequālis, *equal*], adv., *equally; uniformly, evenly.*

aequinoctium, **-ī** [aequus + nox], n., *the equinox.*

aequitās, **-ātis** [aequus], f., *evenness; equity, fairness, generosity.*

aequō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [aequus], tr., *make even* or *equal, equalize.*

aequus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *even, level; equal; just, fair, reasonable; favorable, advantageous.* See **animus.**

aerārius, **-a**, **-um** [aes], adj., *of copper.* Subst., **aerāria**, **-ae**, f., *copper-mine.*

aes, **aeris**, n., *copper, bronze.*

aestās, **-ātis**, f., *summer.*

aestimō, **-ārē**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, tr., *estimate, value, rate.* See **līs.**

aestuārium, **-ī** [aestus], n., *inlet, salt marsh.*

aestus, **-ūs**, m., *tide;* **dēcessus aestūs**, *ebb-tide.*

aetās, **-ātis** [for older **aevitās**, cf. **aevum**, *lifetime, age*], f. *age, period of life.*

Āfricus, **-a**, **-um** [Āfrica], adj., *from Africa, African.* Subst., **Āfricus**, **-ī**, m., sc. **ventus**, *the southwest wind.*

ager, **-grī**, m., *field, land; country, territory.*

agger, **-eris** [ad + gerō], m., *mole, mound, rampart, siege-mound; material for a rampart* or *mound.*

agmen, **-minis** [agō], n., *an army on the march, column, line;* **claudere agmen**, *to bring up the rear;* **novissimum agmen**, *rear line, rear;* **prīmum agmen**, *the van.*

agō, **agere**, **ēgī**, **āctum**, tr., *drive; advance, bring up, push forward; do, carry on,* (passive) *go on, occur; hold, preside over; express; treat, discuss, confer, address.* See **conventus**, **grātia.**

alacer, **-cris**, **-cre**, adj., *eager, ready.*

alacritās, **-ātis** [alacer], f., *eagerness, readiness, alacrity.*

ālārius, **-a**, **-um** [āla, *wing*], adj., *belonging to a wing.* Subst., **ālāriī**, **-ōrum**, m., *auxiliary troops, auxiliaries.*

albus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *white.*

aliās [acc. pl. f. of **alius**], adv., *at another time;* **aliās . . . aliās**, *at one time . . . at another, sometimes . . . sometimes, now . . . now.*

aliēnus, **-a**, **-um** [alius], *belonging to another, another's, of others; strange; unfavorable, inopportune, unsuitable.*

aliquam-diū [aliquam, *in some degree*], adv., *a while, for some time.*

aliquantō [abl. n. of **aliquantus**], adv., *somewhat.*

aliquantus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *some, a little.* Subst., **aliquantum**, **-ī**,

anteā [ante + eā], adv., *before, formerly, previously.*

ante-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, tr. and intr., *go before, go ahead, go ahead of, precede; surpass, excel.*

antecursor, -ōris [antecurrō, *run before*], m., only in pl., *advance guard, vanguard.*

ante-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, tr., *prefer, give preference over.*

antemna, -ae, f., *sail-yard.*

ante-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, tr., *place before; prefer, give preference over.*

antīquitus [antīquus], adv., *in former times, long ago.*

antīquus, -a, -um [ante], adj., *former, ancient, old.*

Ap., abbr. for the praenomen **Appius** (ăp′-pi-us).

apertus, -a, -um [p.p. of aperiō, *open*], adj., *uncovered; open, clear, unobstructed; unprotected, exposed.*

appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *address, accost, call to, call by name; name, call*

Apr. or **Aprīl.**, abbr. for **Aprīlis**, adj. (sc. **mēnsis**, *month*), *of April.*

aptus, -a, -um, adj., *fitted, adapted, suitable.*

apud, prep. with acc., *before, in the presence of; among, with; at, near; in the power of, in the possession of.*

aqua, -ae, f., *water.*

aquātiō, -ōnis [aquor, *bring water*], f., (the act of) *obtaining water.*

aquila, -ae, f., *eagle;* the standard of the legion.

Aquilēia, -ae, f. (ăk-wi-lē′-ya), a city in Cisalpine Gaul at the head of the Adriatic Sea. I. 10.

aquilifer, -ferī [aquila + ferō], m., *eagle-bearer.*

Aquītānia, -ae, f. (ăk-wi-tā′-ni-a), one of the three divisions of Gaul. I. 1; III. 11, 20 ff. D E 4, 5.

Aquītānus, -a, -um [Aquītānia], adj., *Aquitanian.* Subst., **Aquītānus, -ī**, m., *an Aquitanian;* usually pl., *the Aquitani, the Aquitanians.* I. 1; III. 21. D E 4, 5.

Arar, -ris, m. (ā′-rar), a river in Celtic Gaul, *the Saône.* I. 12, 13, 16. G 3.

arbiter, -trī, m., *arbitrator, judge, umpire.*

arbitrium, -ī [arbiter], n., *judgment, discretion, pleasure.*

arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum [arbiter], dep., intr., *think, believe, suppose, consider.*

arbor, -oris, f., *tree.*

arcessō, -ere, -cessīvī, -cessītum, tr., *send for, summon; appeal to.*

ārdeō, -ēre, -ārsī, -ārsūrus, intr., *be on fire, burn; be excited, be in a fury, burn* (with indignation).

Arduenna, -ae, f. (är-dū-ĕn′-a), an extensive forest in northeastern Gaul, *the Ardennes.* V. 3. G H 2.

arduus, -a, -um, adj., *steep.*

Aremoricus, -a, -um [Celtic, *upon the sea*], adj., *Aremorican.* **Aremoricae cīvitātēs,** *the Aremorican states,* near the sea and between the rivers Loire and Seine. V. 53. C D E 2.

argilla, -ae, f., *white clay, potter's earth.*

āridus, -a, -um [āreō, *be dry*], adj., *dry, arid.* Subst., **āridum, -ī,** n., *dry land, beach.*

ariēs, -etis, m., *ram; battering-ram.*

Ariovistus, -ī, m. (ā″-ri-o-vĭs′-tus), a German king whom Caesar defeated and drove from Gaul in 58. I. 31–53; IV. 16; V. 55.

arma, -ōrum, n., *implements, equipments; arms, weapons; force of arms.* **concurrere ad arma,** *rush to arms, form for battle;* **discēdere ab armīs,** *lay down arms, give up hostilities.*

armāmenta, -ōrum [armō], n., *implements; equipments, tackle.*

armātūra, -ae [armō], f., *armor, equipment;* **levis armātūrae peditēs,** *light-armed infantry.*

armātus, -a, -um [p.p. of armō], adj., *armed, in arms.* Subst., **armātī, -ōrum,** m., *armed men, soldiers.*

armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**arma**], tr., *arm, equip, fit out.*

Arpinēius, -ī, m. (är-pi-nē′-yus), *Gaius Arpineius,* a Roman knight in Caesar's army. V. 27, 28.

arripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptum [**ad + rapiō,** *seize*], tr., *seize hurriedly, seize upon, snatch up, take.*

arroganter [**arrogāns,** *assuming*], adv., *presumptuously, arrogantly.*

arrogantia, -ae [**arrogāns,** *assuming*], f., *presumption, arrogance, insolence.*

artē [**artus,** *close*], adv., *closely, firmly, tightly.*

Arvernī, -ōrum, m. (är-vĕr′-nī), cf. French Auvergne: a tribe in Celtic Gaul. I. 31, 45. F 4.

arx, arcis, f., *citadel, stronghold.*

ascendō, -ere, -dī, -scēnsum [**ad + scandō,** *climb*], tr. and intr., *mount, climb, ascend, scale.*

ascēnsus, -ūs [**ascendō**], m., *a climbing, ascent; way up, approach, ascent.*

aspectus, -ūs [**aspiciō,** *look at*], m., *sight, appearance, aspect.*

asper, -era, -erum, adj., *rough; violent, desperate.*

at, conj., *but, on the other hand, while, but meanwhile, however; yet, at least, yet at least, at any rate.*

atque [**ad + -que**] before vowels and consonants, **ac** before consonants only, conj., *and, and also, and besides, as well as, together with; and actually, and even, and in fact.* After words of comparison, equivalence, and likeness, *as, than,* see **aliter, alius, contrā, īdem, pār, simul.**

Atrebās, -ātis, m., *one of the*

Atrebates; usually pl., **Atrebātēs**, **-um**, m. (ăt-re-bā′-tēz), *the Atrebates*, a tribe in Belgic Gaul. II. 4, 16, 23; IV. 21; V. 46. F 1.

Atrius, **-ī**, m. (ā′-tri-us), *Quintus Atrius*, an officer in Caesar's army. V. 9, 10.

attexō, **-ere**, **-texuī**, **-textum** [**ad** + **texō**, *weave*], tr., *weave to*, *attach to*.

attingō, **-ere**, **-tigī**, **-tāctum** [**ad** + **tangō**], tr., *touch*, *reach*; *border upon*, *adjoin*, *extend to*.

attribuō, **-ere**, **-uī**, **-ūtum** [**ad** + **tribuō**], tr., *assign*, *allot*; *entrust*, *commit*.

Atuatucī, **-ōrum**, m. (ăt-ū-ăt′-ū-sī), a tribe in Belgic Gaul, descended from the Cimbri and Teutones. II. 4, 16, 29–33; V. 27, 38–51, 56. G 1.

auctor, **-ōris** [**augeō**], m., *supporter*, *backer*, *adviser*, *instigator*; **auctor bellī esse**, *to sanction a war*, *to favor a war*.

auctōritās, **-ātis** [**auctor**], f., *authority*, *influence*, *power*, *prestige*, *reputation*; *example*, *precedent*.

auctus, **-a**, **-um** [p.p. of **augeō**], adj., *increased*, *rich*.

audācia, **-ae** [**audāx**, *daring*,], f., *daring*, *boldness*, *intrepidity*.

audācter [**audāx**, *daring*], adv., *boldly*, *courageously*.

audeō, **-ēre**, **ausus sum**, semi-dep., tr. and intr., *dare*, *venture*; *be daring*, *be brave*.

audiō, **-īre**, **-īvī** *or* **-iī**, **-ītum**, tr., *hear*, *hear of*, *learn of*; *listen to*, *grant a hearing to*; **dictō audiēns esse**, *be obedient*, *obey*.

audītiō, **-ōnis** [**audiō**], f., *rumor*, *report*.

augeō, **-ēre**, **auxī**, **auctum**, tr., *increase*, *augment*, *strengthen*.

Aulercī, **-ōrum**, m. (au-lĕr′-sī), a people of Celtic Gaul consisting of three tribes, the Aulerci Brannovices, Aulerci Cenomani, and Aulerci Eburovices. II. 34; III. 17, 29. D E 2.

aureus, **-a**, **-um** [**aurum**, *gold*], adj., *of gold*, *golden*.

aurīga, **-ae**, m., *charioteer*.

Aurunculēius, **-ī**, m. (au-rŭng″-kū-lē′-yus), *Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta*, one of Caesar's lieutenants, defeated and slain by the Eburones. II. 11; IV. 22, 38; V. 24–37, 52.

Auscī, **-ōrum**, m. (au′-sī), a tribe in Aquitania. III. 27. E 5.

aut, conj., *or*, *or at least*; **aut . . . aut**, *either . . . or*.

autem, conj., *but*, *on the other hand*, *on the contrary*, *however*; *furthermore*, *moreover*, *while*.

auxiliāris, **-e** [**auxilium**], adj., *auxiliary*. Subst., **auxiliārēs**, **-ium**, m., *auxiliary troops*, *auxiliaries*.

auxilior, **-ārī**, **-ātus sum** [**auxilium**], dep., intr., *give help*, *aid*, *assist*.

auxilium, **-ī** [cf. *augeō*], n., *help*, *aid*, *assistance*, *support*; *resource*, *remedy*, *resort*. Pl.

auxilia, **-ōrum**, n., *auxiliary troops*, *auxiliaries*.

avāritia, **-ae** [**avārus**, *greedy*], f., *greed*, *avarice*.

ā-versus, **-a**, **-um** [p.p. of **āvertō**], adj., *turned away*, *in flight*, *in retreat*.

ā-vertō, **-ere**, **-tī**, **-sum**, tr., *turn away*, *turn aside*; *disarrange*; *turn from*, *estrange*.

avis, **-is**, f., *bird*.

avus, **-ī**, m., *grandfather*.

Axona, **-ae**, m. (ăks′-o-na), a river in Belgic Gaul, *the Aisne*. II. 5, 9, 10. F G 2.

B

Baculus, **-ī**, m. (băk′-ū-lus), see **Sextius**.

Baleārēs, **-ium**, m. (băl-e-ā′-rēz), the people of the Balearic Islands, employed as slingers in Caesar's army. II. 7.

balteus, **-ī**, m., *belt*, *sword-belt*.

Balventius, **-ī**, m. (băl-vĕn′-sh(i)-us), *Titus Balventius*, a brave centurion in Caesar's army. V. 35.

barbarus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *foreign*, *barbarian*; *rude*, *barbarous*, *uncivilized*. Subst., **barbarī**, **-ōrum**, m., *barbarians*.

Batāvī, **-ōrum**, m. (ba-tā′-vī), a German nation at the mouth of the Rhine. IV. 10. G 1.

Belgae, **-ārum**, m. (bĕl′-jē), *the Belgae*, *Belgians*, occupying the northern of the three divisions of Gaul. I. 1; II. 1–33; III. 7, 11; IV. 38.

Belgium, **-ī**, n., *Belgium*, the country of the Belgae. V. 12, 25.

bellicōsus, **-a**, **-um** [**bellicus**, *of war*], adj., *warlike*, *martial*.

bellō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [**bellum**], intr., *wage war*, *fight*.

Bellovacī, **-ōrum**, m. (be-lŏv′-a-sī), cf. French Beauvais: a tribe in Belgic Gaul. II. 4, 5, 10, 13–15; V. 24, 46. E F 2.

bellum, **-ī**, n., *war*; **dēfendere bellum**, *take*, or *act on*, *the defensive*; **īnferre bellum**, *make war on*.

bene [**bonus**], adv., *well*, *successfully*, *to good advantage*. Comp., **melius**, *better*. Superl., **optimē**, *best*, *thoroughly*.

beneficium, **-ī** [**bene**, cf. **faciō**], n., *favor*, *benefit*, *kindness*, *kind treatment*, *service*.

benevolentia, **-ae** [**benevolēns**, *well-wishing*], f., *goodwill*, *friendship*, *favor*.

bi-, insep., prefix, *twice*, *in two*.

Bibracte, **-is**, n. (bi-brăk′-tē), cf. French Beuvray: the chief town of the Haedui, on Mont Beuvray, near Autun. I. 23. F 3.

Bibrax, **-actis**, f. (bī′-brăks), a town of the Remi. II. 6. F 2.

Bibrocī, **-ōrum**, m. (bĭb′-ro-sī), a tribe in Britain. V. 21. D 1.

bīduum, **-ī** [**bi-** + **diēs**], n., *a period of two days*, *two days*.

biennium, **-ī** [**bi-** + **annus**], n., *a period of two years*, *two years*.

Bigerriōnēs, **-um**, m. (bi-

jĕr″-ri-ō′-nēz), cf. French Bigorre: a tribe in Aquitania. III. 27. D E 5.

bīnī, -ae, -a [cf. **bis**], distrib. num. adj., *two each, two at a time, two together.*

bipedālis, -e [bi- + **pedālis**, *of a foot*], adj., *two feet in measure, two feet thick.*

bipertītō [bi- + **partiō**, *divide*], adv., *in two divisions.*

bis, adv., *twice.*

Biturīgēs, -um, m. (bĭt-ū-rī′-jēz), cf. French Bourges: a tribe in Celtic Gaul. I. 18. E F 3.

Boduōgnātus, -ī, m. (bŏd″-ū-og-nā′-tus), a leader of the Nervii. II. 23.

Bōiī, -ōrum, m. (bō′-i-ī), a Celtic people. I. 5, 25, 28, 29. F 3.

bonitās, -atis [**bonus**], f., *goodness, excellence, superiority.*

bonus, -a, -um, adj., *good, excellent; favorable.* Subst., **bonum, -ī**, n., *good, advantage.* Pl., **bona, -ōrum**, n., *goods, property.* Comp., **melior, -ius**, *better.* Superl., **optimus, -a, -um**, best.

bracchium, -ī, n., *the arm.*

Bratuspantium, -ī, n. (brăt-us-păn′-sh(i)-um), a town of the Bellovaci. II. 13. F 2.

brevī [abl. n. of **brevis**], adv., *in a short time, quickly.*

brevis, -e, adj., *short, brief.*

brevitās, -ātis [**brevis**], f., *shortness; small stature.*

Britannī, -ōrum, m., *the Britons.* IV. 21, 23-36; V. 8-23.

Britannia, -ae, f., *Britain.* II. 4, 14; III. 8, 9; IV. 20–36; V. 2, 6, 8–23.

Britannicus, -a, -um, adj., *British.* V. 4.

brūma, -ae [for **brevima** = **brevissima**], f., *the winter solstice;* **sub brūmam**, *in midwinter.*

Brūtus, -ī, m., *Decimus Junius Brutus*, one of Caesar's lieutenants. III. 11, 14.

C

C., abbr. for the praenomen **Gāius** (gā′-yus).

Cabūrus, -ī, m. (ka-bū′-rus), see **Valerius**.

cadāver, -eris [**cadō**], n., *dead body, corpse.*

cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsūrus, intr., *fall; fall dead, be slain; happen, result, turn out.*

caedēs, -is [**caedō**], f., *slaughter, massacre, carnage.*

caedō, -ere, cecīdī, caesum, tr., *cut, cut down, fell.*

Caemānī, -ōrum, m. (se-mā′-nī), a tribe in Belgic Gaul. II. 4. G 1.

Caerōsī, -ōrum, m. (se-rō′-sī), a tribe in Belgic Gaul. II. 4. H 1.

caeruleus, -a, -um [cf. **caelum**, *sky*], adj., *blue, dark blue.*

Caesar, -aris, m., *Gaius Julius Caesar.* See Introd.

caespes, -pitis [**caedō**], m., *cut sod, turf, piece of turf.*

calamitās, -ātis, f., *misfortune, reverse, calamity, disaster.*

Caletī, **-ōrum**, m. (kăl′-e-tī), or **Caletēs**, **-um**, m. (kăl′-e-tēz), a tribe in Belgic Gaul. II. 4. E 2.

callidus, **-a**, **-um** [calleō, *be experienced*], adj., *experienced*, *shrewd*, *adroit*.

cālō, **-ōnis**, m., *a soldier's servant*, *camp servant*.

campus, **-ī**, m., *plain*, *open country*, *field*.

Cantabrī, **-ōrum**, m. (kăn′-ta-brī), a tribe on the north coast of Spain. III. 26. B C 5.

Cantium, **-ī**, n. (kăn′-sh(i)-um), a district in Britain, *Kent*. V. 13, 14, 22. E 1.

capillus, **-ī** [cf. **caput**], m., *the hair of the head*, *hair*.

capiō, **capere**, **cēpī**, **captum**, tr., *take*, *receive*; *seize*, *capture*; *choose*, *select*; *gain*, *reach*, *arrive at*; *catch*, *deceive*; *conceive*, *adopt*, *form*; *derive*, *feel*.

captīvus, **-a**, **-um** [**captus**, **capiō**], adj., *captive*. Subst., **captīvī**, **-ōrum**, m., *captives*, *prisoners*.

captus, **-ūs** [**capiō**], m., *comprehension*, *capacity*, *standard*.

caput, **-itis**, n., *the head*; *mouth* (of a river). Pl., *persons*, *individuals*.

Carcasō, **-ōnis**, f. (kär′-ka-sō), French Carcassonne: a city in the Roman Transalpine province. III. 20. F 5.

carīna, **-ae**, f., *keel*.

Carnutēs, **-um**, m. (kärn′-ū-tēz), a tribe in Celtic Gaul. II. 35; V. 25, 29, 56. E 2, 3.

carō, **carnis**, f., *flesh*, *meat*.

carpō, **-ere**, **-psī**, **-ptum**, tr., *pick*, *pluck*; *censure*, *blame*.

carrus, **-ī**, m., *a cart*.

cārus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *dear*, *precious*, *valued*.

Carvīlius, **-ī**, m. (kär-vĭl′-i-us), a king of Cantium, in Britain. V. 22.

casa, **-ae**, f., *hut*, *cabin*.

Cassī, **-ōrum**, m. (kăs′-ī), a tribe in Britain. V. 21. D 1.

Cassiānus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *of* or *with Cassius*. I. 13.

Cassius, **-ī**, m. (kăsh′-(i)us), *Cassius Longinus*, a Roman general defeated in 107 by the Tigurini. I. 7, 12.

Cassivellaunus, **-ī**, m. (kăs″-i-ve-lau′-nus), a British chief of the country north of the Thames. V. 11, 18–22.

castellum, **-ī** [dim. of **castrum**], n., *redoubt*, *stronghold*.

Casticus, **ī**, m. (kăs′-ti-kus), a prominent Sequanian. I. 3.

castrum, **-ī**, n., *fort*. Pl., **castra**, **-ōrum**, n., *a camp*; **movēre castra**, *break camp*; **pōnere castra**, *pitch camp*.

cāsus, **-ūs** [**cadō**], m., (*a falling*), *chance*, *occurrence*, *event*, *accident*; *emergency*, *crisis*; *fortune*, *fate*, *misfortune*, *disaster*, *calamity*; **extrēmus cāsus**, *a final crisis*, *a last resort*.

Catamantaloedis, **-is**, m. (kăt-a-măn-ta-lē′-dis), a Sequanian, father of Casticus. I. 3.

catēna, **-ae**, f., *chain*, *fetter*.

Caturīgēs, **-um**, m. (kăt-ū-rī′-

jēz), a Gallic tribe in the Alps. I. 10. H 4.

Catuvolcus, **-ī**, m. (kăt-ū-vŏl′-kus), a king of the Eburones. V. 24, 26.

causa, **-ae**, f., *cause*, *reason*, *motive*, *occasion*, *ground*; *condition*, *position*, *state*; *case*; **causā** (with dependent gen.), *for the sake of*, *on account of*, *for the purpose of*; **dīcere causam**, *plead one's case*, *stand trial*.

cautē [**cautus**, *careful*], adv., *cautiously*, *carefully*.

Cavarīnus, **-ī**, m. (kăv-a-rī′-nus), a Gaul appointed king of the Senones by Caesar. V. 54.

caveō, **-ēre**, **cāvī**, **cautus**, tr. and intr., *be on one's guard*, *guard against*.

cēdō, **-ere**, **cessī**, **cessum**, intr., *withdraw*, *retire*, *retreat*, *give way*.

celer, **-eris**, **-ere**, adj., *swift*, *fleet*, *quick*, *rapid*.

celeritās, **-ātis** [**celer**], f., *swiftness*, *speed*, *rapidity*.

celeriter [**celer**], adv., *quickly*, *swiftly*, *rapidly*, *promptly*.

cēlō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, tr., *conceal*, *hide*.

Celtae, **-ārum**, m. (sĕl′-tē), *the Celts*, occupying the central of the three divisions of Gaul. I. 1.

Cēnimāgnī, **-ōrum**, m. (sĕn-i-măg′-nī), a tribe in Britain. V. 21. E 1.

cēnseō, **-ēre**, **cēnsuī**, **cēnsum**, tr., *rate*, *estimate*; *propose*, *vote*, *resolve*, *decree*.

cēnsus, **-ūs** [**cēnseō**], m., *a census*; **cēnsum habēre**, *take a census*.

centum, indecl. num., *hundred*.

centuriō, **-ōnis** [**centuria**, *a century*, *division of a hundred men*], m., *centurion*, *commander of a century*.

certāmen, **-inis** [**certō**, *contend*], n., *struggle*, *strife*, *contest*, *rivalry*.

certē [**certus**], adv., *surely*, *certainly*, *at least*, *at any rate*; *definitely*.

certus, **-a**, **-um** [p.p. of **cernō**, *decide*], adj., *fixed*, *certain*, *clearly established*; **aliquem certiōrem facere**, *to inform*, *instruct*, *direct some one*.

cēterus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *the rest of*, *the remaining*. Always pl. in Caesar. Subst., **cēterī**, **-ōrum**, m., *the rest*, *the others*.

Ceutronēs, **-um**, m. (sū′-tro-nēz), (1) a Gallic tribe in the Alps. I. 10. H 4. (2) a tribe in Belgic Gaul. V. 39. G 1.

Chōrus, **-ī**, m., *the northwest wind*.

cibārius, **-a**, **-um** [**cibus**], adj., *given as rations*. Subst., **cibāria**, **-ōrum**, n., *food*, *provisions*; **molita cibāria**, *meal*.

cibus, **-ī**, m., *food*, *fare*.

Cicerō, **-ōnis**, m., *Quintus Tullius Cicero*, one of Caesar's lieutenants. V. 24, 27, 38–53.

Cimberius, **-ī**, m. (sĭm-bē′-ri-us), a leader of the Suebi. I. 37.

Cimbrī, **-ōrum**, m. (sĭm′-brī),

a people of northern Germany. I. 33, 40; II. 4, 29.

Cingetorix, **-igis**, m. (sĭn-jĕt′-o-rĭks), (1) a chief of the Treveri. V. 3, 56, 57. (2) a king of Cantium, in Britain. V. 22.

cingō, **-ere**, **cīnxī**, **cīnctum**, tr., *surround*, *encircle*, *encompass*.

circinus, **-ī**, m., *a pair of compasses*.

circiter [**circus**, *circle*], adv., *about*, *not far from*. Prep. with acc., *about*, *near*.

circuitus, **-ūs** [**circumeō**], m., *circuit*, *circumference*; *detour*.

circum [acc. of **circus**, *circle*], prep. with acc., *around*, *about*, *in the neighborhood of*, *near*.

circumcīdō, **-ere**, **-cīdī**, **-cīsum** [**circum** + **caedō**], tr., *cut around*, *cut*.

circum-dō, **-dare**, **-dedī**, **-datum**, tr., *put* or *place around*, *surround*, *encompass*.

circum-dūcō, **-dūcere**, **-dūxī**, **-ductum**, tr., *lead* or *conduct around*; *draw around*, *trace*.

circum-eō, **-īre**, **-iī** or **-īvī**, **-itum**, tr., *go around*, *march* or *ride around*; *visit*.

circumiciō, **-icere**, **-iēcī**, **-iectum** [**circum** + **iaciō**], tr., *throw around*, *place* or *post around*.

circum-mittō, **-ere**, **-mīsī**, **-missum**, tr., *send around*.

circum-mūniō, **-īre**, **-īvī**, **-ītum**, tr., *wall around*; *surround with*; *fortify*, *protect*.

circum-sistō, **-ere**, **-stetī**, — [**sistō**, *set*, *stand*], tr., *surround*.

circumspiciō, **-spicere**, **-spexī**, **-spectum** [**-spiciō**, *look*, *spy*], tr., *look around at*, *survey*.

circum-veniō, **-īre**, **-vēnī**, **-ventum**, tr., *come around*, *surround*, *beset*, *outflank*, *ensnare*.

cis, prep. with acc., *on this side of*.

citātus, **-a**, **-um** [p.p. of **citō**, *rouse*], adj., *rapid*, *swift*.

citerior, **-ius** [**citer**, *on this side*], comp. adj., *on this side*, *nearer*, *hither*.

citō [abl. n. of **citus**, *swift*], comp. **citius**, superl. **citissimē**, adv., *speedily*, *quickly*.

citrā [**citer**, *on this side*], prep. with acc., *this side of*, *on the nearer side of*.

citrō [dat. of **citer**, *on this side*], adv., *to this side*; **ultrō citrōque**, *to and fro*, *backwards and forwards*.

cīvitās, **-ātis** [**cīvis**, *citizen*], f., *citizenship*; *state*, *nation*.

clam, adv., *secretly*.

clāmitō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [freq. of **clāmō**, *cry out*], tr., *call out loudly*, *shout*.

clāmor, **-ōris** [**clāmō**, *cry out*], m., *cry*, *shout*, *shouting*, *din*.

clārus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *clear*, *bright*; *loud*, *distinct*.

classis, **-is**, f., *fleet*.

Claudius, **-ī**, m. (klau′-di-us), *Appius Claudius Pulcher*, consul with Lucius Domitius Ahenobarbus in 54. V. 1.

claudō, **-ere**, **clausī**, **clausum**, tr., *shut*, *close*. See **agmen**.

clāvus, -**ī**, m., *nail*, *spike*.

clēmentia, -**ae** [clēmēns, *mild*], f., *moderation*, *forbearance*, *clemency*.

cliēns, -**entis** [for **cluēns**, from clueō, *hear*], m., *client*, *dependent*, *vassal*.

Cn., abbr. for the praenomen **Gnaeus** (nē'-us).

coacervō, -**āre**, -**āvī**, -**ātum** [**com-** + **acervō**, *heap up*], tr., *heap up*, *pile up*.

coāctus, -**ūs** [cōgō], m., found only in abl. sing., *compulsion*.

Cocosātēs, -**um**, m. (kŏk-o-sā'-tēz), a tribe in Aquitania. III. 27. D 4.

coëmō, -**ere**, -**ēmī**, -**ēmptum** [**com-** + **emō**], tr., *purchase*, *buy up*.

coepī, **coepisse**, **coeptum**, def., tr. and intr., *begin*, *commence*.

coerceō, -**ēre**, -**uī**, -**itum** [**com-** + **arceō**, *enclose*], tr., *confine*, *surround*; *restrain*, *control*.

cōgitō, -**āre**, -**āvī**, -**ātum** [**com-** + **agitō**, *consider*], tr., *consider thoroughly*, *ponder*; *imagine*, *anticipate*; *contemplate*, *plan*.

cōgnōscō, -**ere**, -**gnōvī**, -**gnitum** [**com-** + (**g**)**nōscō**, *know*], tr., *become acquainted with*, *recognize*; *ascertain*, *learn*, *learn of*, *hear of*, *find*, *know*; *examine*, *investigate*; *reconnoitre*.

cōgō, -**ere**, **coēgī**, **coāctum** [**com-** + **agō**], tr., *bring together*, *collect*, *assemble*; *force*, *compel*.

cohors, -**rtis**, f., *cohort*; **cohors praetōria**, *a general's bodyguard*.

cohortātiō, -**ōnis** [**cohortor**], f., *exhortation*, *encouragement*.

cohortor, -**ārī**, -**ātus sum** [**com-** + **hortor**], tr., *encourage*, *cheer*, *cheer on*, *urge*.

cōiciō, -**icere**, **coniēcī**, **coniectum** [**com-** + **iaciō**], tr., *cast*, *hurl*, *throw*; *place*, *station*; *put* or *place hastily*; *drive*.

colligō, -**ere**, -**lēgī**, -**lēctum** [**com-** + **legō**, *gather*], tr., *gather*, *collect*; **colligere sē**, *recover one's self*, *rally*.

collis, -**is**, m., *hill*. See **adversus**.

colō, -**ere**, **coluī**, **cultum**, tr., *till*, *cultivate*.

color, -**ōris**, m., *color*, *hue*, *tint*.

com-, **con-**, **co-**, old form of **cum**, *with*, used in composition, *with*, *together*; *completely*, *entirely*, *utterly*.

combūrō, -**ere**, -**ussī**, -**ustum** [**com-** + **ūrō**, *burn*], tr., *burn up*.

commeātus, -**ūs** [**commeō**], m., *voyage*, *trip*, *expedition*; *supplies*, *provisions*.

com-memorō, -**āre**, -**āvī**, -**ātum** [**memorō**, *mention*], tr., *mention*, *state*, *relate*.

commendō, -**āre**, -**āvī**, -**ātum** [**com-** + **mandō**], tr., *intrust*, *place under protection of*.

com-meō, -**āre**, -**āvī**, -**ātum** [**meō**, *go*, *pass*], intr., *come and go*; **ad . . . commeāre**, *resort to*, *visit*.

commīlitō, **-ōnis** [com-, cf. **mīles**], m., *fellow-soldier*, *comrade*.

comminus [com- + **manus**], adv., *hand to hand*, *at close quarters*. See **gerō**.

com-mittō, **-ere**, **-mīsī**, **-missum**, tr., *join*, *engage in*, *bring on*, *begin*; *commit*, *perpetrate*; *bring about*, *cause*, *make possible*; *intrust*, *trust*.

Commius, **-ī**, m. (kŏm′-i-us), a chief of the Atrebates, appointed king by Caesar. IV. 21, 27, 35; V. 22.

commodē [**commodus**], adv., *well*, *effectively*; *readily*, *conveniently*, *advantageously*.

commodus, **-a**, **-um** [com- + **modus**], adj., *suitable*, *convenient*, *easy*, *advantageous*, *useful*, *expedient*. Subst., **commodum**, **-ī**, n., *advantage*, *interest*, *good*.

commonefaciō, **-facere**, **-fēcī**, **-factum** [**commoneō**, *remind*, + **faciō**], tr., *remind*, *admonish*.

com-moror, **-ārī**, **-ātus sum**, dep., intr., *tarry*, *linger*, *delay*.

com-moveō, **-ēre**, **-mōvī**, **-mōtum**, tr., *move* or *arouse thoroughly*, *deeply*; *disturb*, *alarm*, *startle*.

commūnicō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [**commūnis**], tr., *share*; *impart*, *communicate*; *confer*.

com-mūniō, **-īre**, **-īvī**, **-ītum**, tr., *fortify*, *intrench*; *construct* (*strongly*). **commūnīre castra**, *establish an intrenched camp*.

commūnis, **-e** [com- + **mūnus**, *service*, *duty*], adj., *common*, *general*, *combined*, *joint*; *of common interest*, *mutual*.

commūtātiō, **-ōnis** [**commūtō**], f., *change*.

com-mūtō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [**mūtō**, *alter*], tr., *change*, *alter*.

1. **com-parō**, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, tr., *prepare*, *make ready*, *prepare for*; *provide*, *furnish*, *secure*; *get together*, *muster*; *acquire*, *gain*, *win*.

2. **comparō**, **-are**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [compār, *like*], tr., *compare*.

com-pellō, **-ere**, **-pulī**, **-pulsum**, tr., *drive*; *compel*.

comperiō, **-īre**, **-perī**, **-pertum** [com- + **pariō**], tr., *learn*, *find*, *ascertain*, *discover*.

complector, **-ī**, **-plexus sum** [com- + **plector**, *embrace*], tr., *embrace*.

com-pleō, **-ēre**, **-ēvī**, **-ētum** [**pleō**, *fill*], tr., *fill*, *fill up*; *occupy*, *cover*.

com-plūrēs, **-a**, adj., pl., *several*, *a number of*, *many*.

com-portō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, tr., *bring together*, *bring in*, *bring*, *collect*, *gather*.

com-prehendō, **-ere**, **-hendī**, **-hēnsum**, tr., *grasp*, *catch hold of*, *seize*; *arrest*, *capture*, *take*.

com-probō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, tr., *approve*, *sanction*, *justify*.

cōnāta, **-ōrum** [p.p. of **cōnor**], n., *attempts*, *undertakings*, *plans*.

cōnātus, **-ūs** [**cōnor**], m., *attempt*, *effort*, *enterprise*.

con-cēdō, **-ere**, **-cessī**, **-cessum**, tr. and intr., *yield*, *give*

way; admit inferiority, yield precedence; grant, vouchsafe; permit, allow, grant permission.

concidō, -ere, -cidī, — [com- + cadō], intr., *fall, be slain.*

concīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum [com- + caedō], *tr., cut to pieces, kill; break up, intersect.*

conciliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [concilium], tr., *win over, make friendly, attach, secure one's allegiance; win, gain, procure.*

concilium, -ī [com-, cf. calō, *call*], n., *assembly, meeting, council.*

con-citō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [citō, *rouse*], tr., *rouse, arouse, excite, incite.*

con-clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. and intr., *cry out, shout, exclaim.*

conclūsus, -a, -um [p.p. of conclūdō, *shut up*], adj., *closed, confined; inland, land-locked.*

con-currō, -ere, -currī or -cucurrī, -cursum [currō, *run*], intr., *run* or *rush together, assemble quickly, hasten.* See **arma**.

concursō, -āre, — [freq. of concurrō], intr., *rush to and fro.*

concursus, -ūs [concurrō], m., *running together, running to and fro; collision, clash; onset, attack, charge.*

condiciō, -ōnis [cf. condīcō, *agree*], f., *terms, stipulation, proposition; terms of service, condition, state, position, rank.*

con-dōnō, āre, -āvi, ātum, tr., *give up; pass over, pardon.*

Condrūsī, -ōrum, m. (kondroo′-sī), a tribe in Belgic Gaul; II. 4; IV. 6. G 1.

con-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, tr., *bring together, gather, assemble, muster; hire, employ.*

cōn-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, tr., *bring together, collect, gather; bring, convey; compare; put off, postpone; throw, lay upon; attribute, ascribe;* **sē cōnferre**, *betake one's self, make for.* See **signum**.

cōnfertus, -a, -um [p.p. of conferciō, *press close*], adj., *crowded, closely packed, compact, in close array.*

cōnfestim, adv., *immediately, at once, without delay.*

cōnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum [com- + faciō], tr., *make, prepare, complete, finish, bring to a close, accomplish, carry out; pass over, traverse; furnish, raise, muster; weaken, wear out, overcome, exhaust.*

cōn-fīdō, -ere, -fīsus sum [fīdō, *trust*], semi-dep., intr., *trust, rely upon, have* or *put confidence in; feel confident, expect, believe, suppose, hope.*

cōn-fīgō, -ere, -fīxī, -fīxum [fīgō, *fix*], tr., *join, fasten together.*

cōnfīnium, -ī [cōnfīnis, *bordering*], n., *limit, border, frontier.*

cōnfirmātiō, -ōnis [cōnfirmō], f., *confirmation; assurance, evidence.*

cōn-firmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [fīrmō, *make firm*], tr., *make*

firm, *confirm*, *strengthen*, *increase*, *establish; reassure*, *encourage*, *cheer; set*, *appoint; assert*, *declare*, *protest*.

cōnfiteor, -ērī, -fessus sum [**com-** + **fateor**, *confess*], dep., intr., *acknowledge*, *confess*, *admit*.

cōn-flagrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**flagrō**, *blaze*], intr., *burn up*, *be on fire*.

cōnflīctor, -ārī, -ātus sum [freq. of **cōnflīgō**], dep., intr., *struggle; be afflicted*, *be overwhelmed*, *meet with*.

cōnflīgō, -ere, -flīxī, -flīctum [**-flīgō**, *dash*], intr., *contend*, *struggle*, *fight*.

cōnfluēns, -entis [pr. p. of **cōnfluō**, *flow together*], m., *confluence*, *junction*.

congredior, -ī, -gressus sum [**com-** + **gradior**, *step*], dep., intr., *meet*, *encounter; join battle*, *engage in battle*, *contend*, *fight*.

congressus, -ūs [**congredior**], m., *meeting*, *encounter*, *combat*.

con-iungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum, tr., *unite*, *join*, *connect; ally with*.

coniūnctus, -a, -um [p.p. of **coniungō**], adj., *connected*, *related*.

coniūrātiō, -ōnis [**coniūrō**], f., *alliance*, *league*, *conspiracy*.

con-iūrō, -āre, -āvī, ātum, intr., *combine*, *league together*, *conspire*, *plot*.

con-laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**laudō**, *praise*], tr., *praise highly*, *extol*, *eulogize*.

con-ligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**ligō**, *bind*], tr., *bind* or *fasten together*.

con-locō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**locō**, *place*], tr., *arrange*, *station*, *post*, *locate*, *place; settle*, *establish*. With or without **nūptum**, *give in marriage*.

conloquium, -ī [**conloquor**], n., *conversation*, *conference*, *interview*.

con-loquor, -ī, -locūtus sum, dep., intr., *converse*, *confer*, *hold a conference* or *interview*.

cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., intr., *try*, *attempt*, *endeavor*, *undertake*.

conquīrō, -ere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītum [**com-** + **quaerō**], tr., *seek for*, *search out*, *hunt up*.

cōn-sanguineus, -a, -um [**sanguineus**, *of blood*], adj., *related by blood*. Subst., **cōnsanguineī, -ōrum**, m., *blood-relatives*, *kinsmen*.

cōnscendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsum [**com** + **scandō**, *climb*], tr., *climb*, *mount; go on board of*, *embark on*.

cōnscientia, -ae [**cōnsciō**, *be conscious*], f., *consciousness*, *knowledge*.

cōn-scīscō, -ere, -scīvī, -scītum [**scīscō**, *approve*], tr., *resolve upon*, *decree;* **sibi mortem cōnscīscere**, *commit suicide*.

cōnscius, -a, -um [**com-** + **sciō**], adj., *conscious*, *aware*.

cōn-scrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum, tr., *write; enroll*, *enlist*, *levy*.

cōn-sector, -ārī, -ātus sum [freq. of **cōnsequor**], dep., tr., *follow up*, *pursue*, *hunt down*, *overtake*.

cōnsēnsus, -ūs [**cōnsentiō**], m., *agreement*, *consent;* **cōnsēnsū omnium** or **ex commūnī cōnsēnsū**, *by general consent*, *unanimously*.

cōn-sentiō, -īre, -sēnsī, sēnsum, intr., *agree*, *unite*, *combine*, *conspire*.

cōn-sequor, -ī, -secūtus sum, dep., tr. and intr., *follow*, *ensue*, *succeed; follow up*, *pursue*, *press after; overtake*, *come up with; attain*, *obtain*, *acquire*, *win*, *gain*.

cōn-servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *keep safe*, *preserve*, *protect; spare; observe*.

Cōnsidius, -ī, m. (kon-sĭd′-i-us), *Publius Considius*, an officer in Caesar's army. I. 21, 22.

cōn-sīdō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessum [**sīdō**, *sit down*], intr., *settle; halt*, *encamp; station one's self*, *take position*.

cōnsilium, -ī [cf. **cōnsulō**], n., *council*, *meeting; counsel*, *advice; purpose*, *intention*, *policy; consent; measure*, *plan*, *design; good judgment*, *wisdom*, *prudence*, *discretion*, *tact*.

cōn-similis, -e, adj., *very like*, *quite like*.

cōn-sistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitum [**sistō**, *stand*], intr., *take one's stand* or *place*, *take position*, *stand*, *form; find footing; halt*, *stop; make* or *take a stand*, *maintain one's ground; depend upon*.

cōn-sōlor, -ārī, -ātus sum [**sōlor**, *to comfort*], dep., tr., *console*, *encourage*, *reassure*, *cheer*.

cōnspectus, -ūs [**cōnspiciō**], m., *sight*, *view*.

cōnspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum [**-spiciō**, *look at*, *spy*], tr., *catch sight of*, *see*, *notice*, *observe*.

cōnspicor, -ārī, -ātus sum [cf. **cōnspiciō**], tr., *catch sight of*, *see*, *perceive*, *observe*.

cōn-spīrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**spīrō**, *breathe*], intr., *unite*, *combine*, *form a league*, *conspire*.

cōnstanter [**cōnstāns**, *firm*], adv., *firmly*, *resolutely*, *obstinately; uniformly*, *consistently*.

cōnstantia, -ae [**cōnstāns**] f., *firmness*, *steadfastness*, *resolution*.

cōn-sternō, -ere, -strāvī, -strātum [**sternō**, *spread out*], tr., *strew over*, *cover*.

cōn-stīpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**stīpō**, *crowd*], tr., *pack* or *crowd closely together*.

cōnstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum [**com- + statuō**], tr., *put*, *place*, *station*, *locate*, *establish*, *post*, *arrange*, *draw up*, *form*, *array; put up*, *throw up*, *erect; set*, *appoint*, *fix; determine*, *determine upon*, *decide*, *decide upon*, *resolve*.

cōn-stō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātūrus, intr., *stand firm; agree*, *be consistent;* **cōnstat**, impers.,

it is certain, known, evident, clear; it appears, it is generally supposed.

cōn-suēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētum [suēscō, *become used*], intr., *become accustomed, form the habit of.* Perfect tense, *be accustomed, be in the habit of.*

cōnsuētūdō, -dinis [cōnsuētus, *used*], f., *habit, practice, custom, manner, policy; manner of living; close intercourse, association, intimacy;* **ex cōnsuētūdine,** *according to custom;* **sē in consuētūdinēm addūcere ut,** *accustom one's self to;* **cōnsuētūdō fert,** *it is usual, is the custom.*

cōnsul, -ulis, m., *consul,* one of the two chief magistrates of the Roman people, chosen annually.

cōnsulātus, -ūs [cōnsul], m., *consulship.*

cōnsulō, -ere, -suluī, -sultum, intr., *deliberate, consult; provide for, consult the interests of.*

1. **cōnsultō, -āre, -avī, -ātum** [freq. of cōnsulō], intr., *deliberate, take counsel.*

2. **cōnsultō** [abl. of cōnsultum], adv., *deliberately, purposely.*

cōnsultum, -ī [p.p. of cōnsulō], n., *decree, resolution.*

cōn-sūmō, -ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptum, tr., *use up, consume, waste, destroy; spend, pass.*

cōn-surgō, -ere, -surrēxi, -surrēctum [surgō, *rise*], intr., *rise together, rise, stand up.*

contabulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [com- + **tabula,** *board*], tr., *cover with boards, furnish with floors, build story by story.*

con-temnō, -ere, -tempsī, -temptum [temnō, *slight*], tr., *esteem lightly, disdain, despise.*

contemptiō, -ōnis [contemnō], f., *contempt, disdain, defiance.*

contemptus, -ūs [contemnō], m., *contempt, scorn, source of contempt.*

con-tendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum, tr. and intr., *strain, struggle, strive, exert one's self; hasten, hurry; push forward, march rapidly; vie, dispute; contend, fight, engage in battle; strive for, be eager for, seek, attempt.*

contentiō, -ōnis [contendō], f., *struggle, strife, contest, dispute, rivalry.*

con-testor, -ārī, -ātus sum [testor, *invoke*], tr., *call to witness, invoke, appeal to.*

con-texō, -ere, -texuī, -textum [texō, *weave*], tr., *weave together, fasten, join.*

continēns, -entis, [pr. p. of contineō], adj., *continuous, unbroken; continual, uninterrupted.* Subst., f., *mainland, continent.*

continenter [continēns], adv., *continually, incessantly, without stopping.*

contineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -ten-

tum [com- + teneō], tr., *keep, hold, shut in, confine, bound; contain, fill, take up; detain, restrain, check;* **sē continēre**, *remain.*

contingō, -ere, -tigī, -tāctum [com- + tangō], tr. and intr., *touch, reach; happen to, befall, fall to.*

continuātiō, -ōnis [continuō, *join*], *f., continuance, unbroken succession.*

continuus, -a, -um [com-, cf. teneō], adj., *continuous, in succession.*

cōntiō, -ōnis [for conventiō, *a coming together*], f., *meeting, assembly.*

contrā, adv., *in opposition, opposite, against; on the other hand;* **contrā atque**, *otherwise than, different from what;* **contra cōnsistere**, *offer opposition.* Prep. with acc., *opposite, facing, towards; contrary to; against, in opposition to, in hostility to; in reply to, in answer to.*

con-trahō, -ere, -trāxī, -tractum, tr., *draw together, collect, muster, assemble; contract, make small.*

contrārius, -a, -um [contrā], adj., *lying over against, opposite, facing.*

contrōversia, -ae [contrōversus, *disputed*], *f., quarrel, dispute, controversy, debate.*

contumēlia, ae, f., *affront, insult, indignity, taunt, injury; rough usage, violence.*

con-vallis, -is, f., *valley, defile.*

con-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, tr. and intr., *come together, assemble, gather, arrive; meet;* **convenit**, impers., *it is agreed upon.*

conventus, -ūs [conveniō], m., *meeting, assembly; court.*

con-vertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum, tr., *turn, turn round; change, alter; guide, direct;* **sē convertere**, *turn, face around.*

con-vincō, -ere, -vīcī, -victum, tr., *overcome; convict, prove, convict of.*

con-voco, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *call together, call, summon.*

coörior, -īrī, -ortus sum [com- + orior], dep., intr., *arise, break* or *burst forth, break out.*

cōpia, -ae [com- + ops], f., *abundance, ample supply, plenty, supply; large number, multitude, force.* Pl., *forces, troops; wealth, riches, resources, supplies.*

cōpiōsus, -a, -um [cōpia], adj., *well supplied* or *stored, rich.*

cōpula, -ae, f., *a fastening; grappling-hooks.*

cōram [com- + ōs], adv., *present, in person, with one's own eyes.*

Coriosolitēs, -um, m. (kō″-ri-o-sŏl′-i-tēz), a tribe in Celtic Gaul. II. 34; III. 7, 11. C 2.

cornu, -ūs, n., *a horn; wing* (of an army).

corōna, -ae, f., *garland,*

wreath; **sub corōnā vēndere,** *to sell as slaves.* See note on III. 16.

corpus, -oris, n., *the body, the person; dead body, corpse.*

cortex, -icis, *m., bark.*

cōtēs, -is, f., *crag, reef.*

cotīdiānus, -a, -um [cotīdiē], adj., *daily; usual, ordinary, accustomed.*

cotīdiē [quot + diēs], adv., *daily, day after day.*

Cotta, -ae, m. (kŏt′-a), see **Aurunculēius.**

crassitūdō, -dinis [crassus, *thick*], f., *thickness.*

Crassus, -ī, m. (krăs′-us), (1) *Marcus Licinius Crassus,* the triumvir. I. 21; IV. 1. (2) *Marcus Licinius Crassus,* son of (1) and an officer in Caesar's army. V. 24, 46, 47. (3) *Publius Licinius Crassus,* younger son of (1) and one of Caesar's lieutenants. I. 52; II. 34; III. 7–9, 11, 20–27.

crātis, -is, f., *wickerwork; fascine, hurdle.*

crēber, -bra, -brum, adj., *frequent, numerous, repeated.*

crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, tr. and intr., *believe, think, suppose, expect.*

cremō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *burn.*

creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *make, create; choose, elect.*

crēscō, -ere, crēvī, crētum, intr., *grow, increase; rise, prosper, increase in influence.*

Crētēs, -um, m., *the Cretans,* employed as archers in Caesar's army. II. 7.

cruciātus, -ūs [cruciō, *to torture*], m., *torture, torment, suffering;* **per cruciātum interficī** or **cum cruciātū necārī,** *to be tortured to death;* **in cruciātum venīre,** *meet with cruel treatment.*

crūdēlitās, -ātis [crūdēlis, *cruel*], f., *cruelty, barbarity.*

crūdēliter [crūdēlis, *cruel*], adv., *cruelly;* **crūdēliter imperāre,** *make cruel demands.*

culmen, -inis, n., *top, summit.*

culpa, -ae, f., *blame, fault, error.*

cultūra, -ae [colō], f., *cultivation, tillage;* **agrī cultūra,** *agriculture.*

cultus, -ūs [colō], m., *mode of life; culture, civilization, refinement.*

1. **cum,** prep. with abl., *with, together with, in company with, along with, at the same time with; under the command of;* **ūnā cum,** *along with, at the same time with.*

2. **cum,** conj., temporal, *when, at the time when, while, after, whenever, as often as.* Causal, *since, because, as.* Concessive or adversative, *although, while;* **cum prīmum,** *as soon as;* **cum . . . tum,** *not only . . . but also.*

cūnctātio, -ōnis [cūnctor], f., *delay, hesitation.*

cūnctor, -ārī, -ātus sum,

dep., intr., *delay, hesitate, hang back.*

cūnctus, -a, -um [contracted for **coniūnctus**, *joined together*], adj., *all, entire.*

cunīculus, -ī, m., *tunnel, mine.*

cupidē [**cupidus**], adv., *eagerly, gladly.*

cupiditās, -ātis [**cupidus**], f., *longing, desire, eagerness, passion.*

cupidus, -a, -um [**cupiō**], adj., *desirous of, fond of, eager for.*

cupiō, -cupere, -īvī, -ītum, tr. and intr., *desire, wish, be eager; favor, wish well to.*

cūr, adv., *why? for what reason?*

cūra, -ae, f., *care, attention, concern.*

cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**cūra**], tr., *care for, attend to.* With gerundive, *have done, cause to be done.*

currus, -ūs, m., *chariot.*

cursus, -ūs [**currō**, *run*], m., *running; speed, pace; course, route, passage;* **in hōc mediō cursū**, *halfway across.*

custōdia, -ae [**custōs**], f., *a guard.* Pl., *sentinels, outposts.*

custōs, -ōdis, m., *guard, keeper, watcher.*

D

D., abbr. for the praenomen Decimus (dĕs′-i-mus).

D = **quīngentī**, 500.

damnātī, -ōrum [p.p. pl. of **damnō**], m., *criminals, outlaws.*

damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**damnum**, *harm*], tr., *condemn, convict.*

dē, prep. with abl., *from, away from, down from, out of; from among, of; as a result of, for; concerning, about, in regard to.*

dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum [**dē** + **habeō**], tr., *owe; ought, must.* **plūrimum dēbēre**, *be under the deepest obligations.*

dē-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, intr., *withdraw, depart.*

decem, indecl. num., *ten.*

dē-cernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētum [**cernō**, *separate; decide*], tr., *decree, vote; decide, determine.*

dē-certo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**certō**, *contend*], intr., *fight a decisive battle, fight it out; join battle.*

dēcessus, -ūs [**dēcēdō**], m., *departure.* See **aestus**.

dēcidō, -ere, -cidī, — [**dē** + **cadō**], intr., *fall, fall down, fall from.*

decimus, -a, -um [**decem**], num. adj., *tenth.*

dēcipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum [**dē** + **capiō**], tr., *deceive.*

dē-clārō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**clārō**, *brighten*], tr., *declare, proclaim.*

dēclīvis, -e [**dē** + **clīvus**, *slope*], adj., *sloping downward, sloping.*

decumānus, -a, -um [**decimus**], adj., *of the tenth;* **decumāna porta**, *the rear gate* (of a Roman camp), where the tenth cohort was stationed.

decuriō, -ōnis [**decuria**, *a division of ten men*], m., *decurion*, a commander of ten men in the cavalry.

dē-currō, -ere, -cucurrī, -cursum [currō, *run*], intr., *run* or *hasten down*, *run*, *hasten*, *hurry along*.

dē-decus, -oris [decus, *honor*], n., *disgrace*, *dishonor*.

dēditīcius, -a, -um [dēditus, dēdō], adj., *surrendered*, *captive*. Subst., **dēditīciī, -ōrum**, m., *captives*, *prisoners*.

dēditiō, -ōnis [dēdō], f., *capitulation*, *surrender;* **in dēditōnem venīre**, *to surrender*.

dē-dō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, tr., *deliver up*, *give up*, *surrender; devote*.

dē-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, tr., *lead out*, *away*, *from*, *withdraw; lead*, *conduct; draw down*, *launch; bring home* (a bride), *marry; reduce*, *bring*.

dēfatīgātiō, -ōnis [dēfatīgō], f., *fatigue*, *exhaustion*.

dē-fatīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [fatīgō, *tire*], tr., *fatigue*, *exhaust*.

dēfectiō, -ōnis [dēficiō], f., *defection*, *revolt*, *rebellion*.

dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsum [-fendō, *strike*], tr., *ward off*, *repel; defend*, *protect*, *offer defence*. See **bellum**.

dēfēnsiō, -ōnis [dēfendō], f., *defence*.

dēfēnsor, -ōris [dēfendō], m., *defender*.

de-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, tr., *carry down* or *along; carry*, *deliver; grant*, *give*, *bestow*, *intrust; report*, *lay before*, *announce*. Passive, (of ships) *drift*, *float*, *be carried*.

dēfessus -a, -um [p.p. of **dēfetīscor**, *grow weary*], adj., *weary*, *exhausted*, *faint*.

dēficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum [**dē + faciō**], tr. and intr., *withdraw*, *revolt*, *desert*, *fail*, *be insufficient* or *unsuitable*.

dē-fīgō, -ere, -fīxī, -fīxum [fīgō, *fix*], tr., *fasten*, *fix*, *fix in place; drive* or *thrust into*.

dēfōrmis, -e [**dē + fōrma**, *shape*], adj., *misshapen*, *ill-shaped*, *ugly*.

dēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum [**dē + iaciō**], tr., *throw* or *cast down*, *throw off; throw*, *hurl; strike down*, *overthrow*, *kill; disappoint ;* (of ships) *drive* or *carry out of course*.

dēiectus, -ūs [dēiciō], m., *declivity*, *downward slope*, *slope*.

deinceps [**dein(de)**, cf. **capiō**], adv., *in turn*, *in succession*, *continuously*.

deinde [**dē + inde**], adv., *then*, *next*, *thereupon*, *afterwards; secondly*, *in the second place*.

dēlectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [freq. of dēliciō, *entice*], tr., *delight*, *please*, *charm*. Passive, *take pleasure in*.

dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, tr., *wipe out*, *destroy*.

dē-līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. and intr., *weigh well*, *consider carefully*, *deliberate*.

dē-ligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ligō, *bind*], tr., *tie up, bind fast; fasten, moor.* See ancora.

dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum [dē + legō, *gather*], tr., *choose, pick out, select.*

dēlitēscō, -ere, -lituī, — [dē + latēscō, *hide*], intr., *conceal one's self, lie hid, hide.*

dēmentia, -ae [dēmēns, *out of one's mind*], f., *madness, folly.*

dē-metō, -ere, -messuī, -messum, tr., *reap, harvest.*

dē-migrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [migrō, *depart*], intr., *depart, go away, remove.*

dē-minuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, tr., *lessen, diminish, impair; take away.*

dē-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, tr., *send* or *let down, lower; bow;* sē dēmittere, *descend, enter.*

dēmō, -ere, dēmpsī, dēmptum [dē + emō], tr., *take away* or *down, remove.*

dē-mōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [mōnstrō, *point out*], tr., *point out, show, explain, describe; mention, state.*

dē-moror, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., tr., *retard, delay.*

dēmum, adv., *at length, at last;* tum dēmum, *then at last, then and not till then.*

dē-negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *refuse, deny.*

dēnī, -ae, -a [decem], distrib. num. adj., *ten each.*

dēnique, adv., *at last, at length, finally; in short; at least, certainly.*

dēnsus, -a, -um, adj., *dense, thick.*

dē-nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *announce, declare.*

dē-pellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum, tr., *drive out, drive off, dispel, dislodge.*

dē-perdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum [perdō, *lose*], tr., *lose.*

dē-pereō, -īre, -periī, -peritūrus, intr., *perish, be lost.*

dē-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, tr., *lay aside, put aside, place, leave, deposit; give up, lose.*

dē-populor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., tr., *lay waste, devastate, plunder, pillage.*

dē-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *carry off, take away.*

dēprecātor, -ōris [dēprecor], m., *intercessor, mediator.*

dē-precor, -ārī, -ātus sum [precor, *beg*], dep., tr. and intr., *beg off, beg, entreat, resort to entreaties.*

dē-prehendō, -prehendere, -prehendī, -prehēnsum, tr., *seize, catch, surprise.*

dērēctē [dērēctus], adv., *straight, perpendicularly.*

dērēctus, -a, -um [p.p. of dērigō, *lay straight*], adj., *straight, lengthwise.*

dēscendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsum [dē + scandō, *climb*], *descend; have recourse, resort.*

dē-serō, -ere, -seruī, -sertum

[serō, *bind*], tr., *abandon*, *desert*, *forsake*, *betray*.

dēsertus, -a, -um [p.p. of **dēserō**], adj., *deserted*, *lonely*, *out of the way*.

dēsīderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *wish*, *desire*; *miss*, *lose*.

dē-sīgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [sīgnō, *mark out*], tr., *mark out*, *point out*, *designate*, *mean*.

dēsiliō, -īre, -siluī [dē + saliō, *leap*], intr., *leap down*, *dismount*; *jump overboard*.

dē-sistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitum [sistō, *set*, *stand*], intr., *desist*, *desist from*, *cease*, *stop*; *give up*, *abandon*.

dēspectus, -ūs [dēspiciō], m., *view*, *prospect*.

dēspērātiō, -ōnis [dēspērō], f., *hopelessness*, *despair*.

dē-spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. and intr., *despair*, *lose hope*; *despair of*, *lose hope of*, *give up for lost*.

dēspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum [-spiciō, *look*], tr., *look down upon*, *hold in contempt*, *despise*.

dē-spoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *rob*, *despoil*, *deprive*.

dēstinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *fasten*, *bind*, *hold*.

dēstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum [dē + statuō], tr., *abandon*, *desert*, *betray*.

dē-stringō, -ere, -strīnxī, -strictum [stringō, *draw*, *strip*], tr., *strip off*; *unsheathe*, *draw*.

dē-sum, deesse, dēfuī, dēfutūrus, intr., *be lacking*, *be wanting*, *fail*.

dē-super [super, *above*], adv., *from above*.

dēterior, -ius, comp. adj., *worse*, *poorer*, *smaller*.

dē-terreō, -ēre, -terruī, -territum, tr., *frighten off*, *deter*, *dissuade*, *prevent*.

dētineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum [dē + teneō], tr., *hold back*, *detain*.

dē-trahō, -ere, -trāxī, -tractum, tr., *draw off*, *take away*, *withdraw*, *remove*.

dētrīmentum, -ī [dē + terō, *rub*], n., *loss*, *damage*, *injury*.

dē-turbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [turbō, *disturb*], tr., *drive off*, *dislodge*.

deus, -ī, nom. pl., **diī**, dat. and abl., **dīs**, m., *god*.

dē-vehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectum [vehō, *convey*], tr., *carry away*, *take away*, *convey*, *transport*.

dē-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, intr., *come along*, *arrive*, *reach*.

dēvōtus, -a, -um [p.p. of **dēvoveō**], adj., *devoted*. Subst., **dēvōtī, -ōrum**, m., *devoted followers*.

dē-voveō, -ēre, -vōvī, -vōtum [voveō, *vow*], tr., *vow*, *devote*, *attach*.

dexter, -tra, -trum, adj., *on the right hand*, *right*. Subst., **dextra, -ae**, f., *the right hand*.

Diablintēs, -um, m. (dī-a-blĭn′-tēz), cf. French Jublains: a tribe in Celtic Gaul. III. 9. D 2.

(diciō), -ōnis [cf. dicō, *devote*], nom. sing. not used, f., *dominion*, *authority*, *sway*.

dicō, -ere, -dīxī, -dictum, tr. and intr., *say*, *speak*, *assert*, *state*, *relate*, *utter*, *express*, *mention; appoint*, *set*, *fix; agree.* See **causa.**

dictiō, -ōnis [cf. dīcō], f., *a pleading*, *defence.*

dictum, -ī [p.p. of dīcō], n., *word*, *utterance*, *assertion; order*, *command.*

dī-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, tr., *lead apart*, *separate*, *divide; scatter*, *spread out.*

diēs, -ēī, m. and f., *day; time*, *period;* **ad diem,** *on time*, *punctually;* **ad certam diem,** *on a fixed day*, *at a fixed time;* **diem ex diē,** *day after day;* **in diēs,** *from day to day*, *daily;* **in longiōrem diem,** *till later.*

differō, -ferre, distulī, dīlātum [**dis-** + **ferō**], tr. and intr., *carry in different directions*, *scatter; differ.*

difficilis, -e [**dis-** + **facilis**], adj., *difficult*, *perilous.*

difficultās, -ātis [**difficilis**], f., *difficulty*, *trouble*, *obstacle.*

diffīdō, -ere, -fīsus sum [**dis-** + fīdō, *trust*], semi-dep., intr., *distrust; despair of.*

diffluō, -ere, -flūxī, — [**dis-** + **fluō**], intr., *flow in different directions.*

digitus, -ī, m., *finger.*

dignitās, -ātis [**dīgnus,** *worthy*], f., *worth*, *merit; dignity*, *authority*, *rank*, *eminence*, *importance.*

dī-iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *judge between; settle*, *decide.*

dīligenter [**dīligēns,** *careful*], adv., *with care*, *carefully*, *scrupulously*, *diligently.*

dīligentia, -ae [**dīligēns,** *careful*], f., *care*, *watchfulness*, *diligence.*

dī-mētior, -īrī, -mēnsus sum, dep., tr., *measure off*, *lay out*, *measure.*

dī-micō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [micō, *flash*, *vibrate*], intr., *fight*, *struggle*, *contend.*

dīmidius, -a, -um [**dis-** + **medius**], adj., *half; one half of.* Subst., **dīmidium, -ī,** n., *a half.*

dī-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, tr., *send different ways*, *send out*, *despatch; send away*, *dismiss; let go*, *let slip*, *lose; leave*, *abandon.*

dirimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēmptum [**dis-** + **emō**], tr., *separate; break up*, *put an end to.*

dīripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptum [**dis-** + **rapiō,** *seize*], tr., *tear to pieces; lay waste*, *plunder.*

dis- (**dir-**), **dī-,** inseparable prefix used in composition, *asunder*, *apart*, *in different directions;* or with negative force.

dīs, dītis, adj., *rich*, *wealthy.* Superl., **dītissimus.**

dis-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, intr., *depart*, *withdraw*,

leave, *disperse; forsake*, *desert*. See **arma**.

discessus, **-ūs** [discēdō], m., *departure*, *withdrawal*.

disciplīna, **-ae** [cf. **discipulus**, *pupil*], f., *training*, *drill*, *discipline*, *skill*.

disclūdō, **-ere**, **-clūsī**, **-clūsum** [dis- + claudō], tr., *hold apart*, *keep apart*, *separate*.

discō, **-ere**, **didicī**, **—**, tr., *learn*, *be taught*.

disiciō, **-icere**, **-iēcī**, **-iectum** [**dis-** + **iaciō**], tr., *break up*, *scatter*, *disperse*, *rout*, *throw into confusion*.

dis-pār, **-paris**, adj., *unequal*, *ill-matched*.

dispergō, **-spergere**, **-spersī**, **-spersum** [dis- + spargō, *scatter*], tr., *scatter*, *disperse*.

dis-pōnō, **-ere**, **-posuī**, **-positum**, tr., *place here and there*, *place at intervals; station*, *post*, *arrange*, *draw up*.

disputātiō, **-ōnis** [disputō, *discuss*], f., *discussion*, *debate*, *dispute*.

dissēnsiō, **-ōnis** [dissentiō], f., *dissension*, *lack of harmony*, *discord*.

dis-sentiō, **-īre**, **-sēnsī**, **-sēnsum**, intr., *think differently*, *disagree*, *differ in opinion*.

dis-simulō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, tr., *hide*, *conceal*, *pretend not to know*, *ignore*.

dissipō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, tr., *scatter*, *disperse*, *rout*.

distineō, **-ēre**, **-tinuī**, **-tentum** [**dis-** + **teneō**], tr., *hold apart*, *keep apart*, *keep away; divide*, *separate*, *keep from uniting*.

disto, **-stāre**, **—**, **—** [**dis-** + **stō**], intr., *stand apart*, *be apart*, *be distant*.

dis-tribuō, **-ere**, **-tribuī**, **-tribūtum**, tr., *divide*, *distribute*, *assign*, *quarter*.

dītissimus, see **dīs**.

diū, adv., comp. **diūtius**, superl. **diūtissimē**, *a long time*, *a long while*, *long*.

diurnus, **-a**, **-um** [cf. **diēs**], adj., *of the day*, *by day*.

diūtinus, **-a**, **-um** [diū], adj., *long continued*, *lasting*, *long*.

diūturnitās, **-ātis** [diūturnus], f., *long duration*, *length*.

diūturnus, **-a**, **-um** [diū], adj., *lasting*, *long*, *prolonged*.

dīversus, **-a**, **-um** [p.p. of dīvertō, *turn different ways*], adj., *in different places*, *apart*, *separate*, *separated*.

Dīviciācus, **-ī**, m. (dĭv″-i-sĭ-ā′-kus), (1) a prominent Haeduan, friend of Caesar and the Romans. I. 3, 16, 18, 19–20, 31, 32, 41; II. 5, 10, 14, 15. (2) a king of the Suessiones. II. 4.

Dīvicō, **-ōnis**, m. (dĭv′-i-kō), a chief and general of the Helvetii. I. 13–14.

dīvidō, **-ere**, **-vīsī**, **-vīsum**, tr., *divide*, *separate*.

dīvīnus, **-a**, **-um** [**dīvus**, *of a god*], adj., *divine*, *from the gods*.

dō, **dare**, **dedī**, **datum**, tr., *give*, *assign*, *allot*, *bestow*, *ap-*

point; afford, present, allow; make, give (a reply); *state, lay down* (terms or demands); **inter sē dare**, *exchange.*

doceō, **-ēre**, **docuī**, **doctum**, tr., *teach, instruct, direct, inform, show, point out.*

doleō, **-ēre**, **doluī**, **dolitūrus**, intr., *feel pain; grieve, lament, be sorry, be indignant, resent.*

dolor, **-ōris** [doleō], m., *pain; grief, distress, regret, vexation, indignation, resentment.*

dolus, **-ī**, m., *craft, cunning, trickery, stratagem.*

domesticus, **-a**, **-um** [**domus**], adj., *of, at,* or *from home, one's own; internal, civil.*

domicilium, **-ī** [**domus**], n., *home, dwelling-place, abode.*

dominor, **-ārī**, **-ātus sum** [**dominus**, *master*], dep., intr., *be lord, be supreme, reign.*

Domitius, **-ī**, m. (do-mĭsh′-(i)us), *Lucius Domitius Ahenobarbus*, consul along with Appius Claudius Pulcher in 54. V. 1.

domus, **-ūs** (locative **domī**, abl. sing. **domō**, acc. pl. **domōs**), f., *house, home.* Locative, *at home.* Acc. sing. after verbs of motion, *home, homewards.*

dōnō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [**dōnum**, *gift*], tr., *present, grant.*

Dūbis, **-is**, m. (dū′-bis), a river in Celtic Gaul, *the Doubs.* I. 38. G H 3.

dubitātiō, **-ōnis** [dubitō], f., *uncertainty, doubt, hesitation.*

dubitō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [**dubius**], intr., *doubt, have doubt, hesitate.*

dubius, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *doubtful, uncertain;* **nōn est dubium**, *there is no doubt.*

ducentī, **-ae**, **-a** [**duo** + **centum**], num. adj., *two hundred.*

dūcō, **-ere**, **dūxī**, **ductum**, tr., *lead, conduct, command; prolong, protract; put off, delay; consider, regard, think.* With or without **in mātrimōnium**, *marry.*

dum, conj., *while, until.*

Dumnorīx, **-īgis**, m. (dŭm′-no-rĭks), a prominent Haeduan, unfriendly to the Romans. I. 3, 9, 18–20; V. 6.

duo, **duae**, **duo**, num. adj., *two.*

duodecim [**duo** + **decem**], indecl. num., *twelve.*

duodecimus, **-a**, **-um** [**duodecim**], num. adj., *twelfth.*

duo-dēnī, **-ae**, **-a**, distrib. num. adj., *twelve each.*

duo-dē-vīgintī, indecl. num., *eighteen.*

duplex, gen. **-icis** [**duo**, cf. plicō, *fold*], adj., *twofold, double.*

duplicō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [**duplex**], tr., *double.*

dūrus, **-ā**, **-um**, adj., *hard; adverse, difficult.*

Dūrus, **-ī**, m. (dū′-rus), see **Laberius**.

dux, **ducis** [cf. **dūcō**], *leader, guide; commander, general, officer, chief.*

E

ē before consonants only, **ex** before vowels and consonants, prep. with abl., *out of*, *from*, *out from*, *from among*, *of; from*, *as a result of*, *in consequence of; in accordance with*, *according to*, *by; since*, *after*.

eā [abl. f. of is], adv., *there*, *on that side*, *by that way*.

Eburōnēs, **-um**, *m.* (ĕb-ū-rō′-nēz), a tribe in Belgic Gaul. II. 4; IV. 6; V. 24–53, 58. G H 1.

Eburovicēs, **-um**, m. (ĕb″-ū-ro-vī′-sēz), see **Aulercī**. III. 17. E 2.

ēditus, **-a**, **-um** [p.p. of ēdō], adj., *raised*, *elevated*, *high*.

ē-dō, **-dere**, **-didī**, **-ditum**, tr., *put forth; visit upon*, *inflict*.

ē-doceō, **-ēre**, **-docuī**, **-doctum**, tr., *teach* (*thoroughly*), *show in detail*, *inform*.

ē-dūcō, **-ere**, **-dūxī**, **-ductum**, tr., *lead forth*, *lead out; draw*, *unsheathe*.

effēminō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [**ex** + **fēmina**, *woman*], tr., *make effeminate*, *weaken*, *enervate*.

efferō, **-ferre**, **extulī**, **ēlātum** [**ex** + **ferō**], tr., *carry forth*, *carry away*, *take from; report*, *make known; lift up*, *elate*.

efficiō, **-ficere**, **-fēcī**, **-fectum** [**ex** + **faciō**], tr., *complete*, *accomplish*, *do; render*, *make; produce*, *form; bring about*, *bring to pass*, *cause*.

effugiō, **-fugere**, **-fūgī**, **-fugitūrus** [**ex** + **fugiō**], tr. and intr., *flee away*, *escape; flee from*, *escape from*.

effundō, **-ere**, **-fūdī**, **-fūsum** [**ex** + **fundō**], tr., *pour forth;* **sē effundere**, *rush out*, *scatter*, *disperse*.

ego, **meī**, pers. pron., *I*.

ēgredior, **-gredī**, **ēgressus sum** [**ex** + **gradior**, *step*], dep., intr., *go out*, *come forth*, *sally out*, *set out*, *march out*, *depart*, *leave; disembark*, *land*.

ēgregiē [ēgregius], adv., *excellently*, *remarkably*, *unusually well*.

ēgregius, **-a**, **-um** [**ex** + **grex**, *flock*], adj., *extraordinary*, *distinguished*, *surpassing*, *unusual*, *remarkable*.

ēgressus, **-ūs** [ēgredior], m., *landing*, *place for landing*.

ēiciō, **-icere**, **-iēcī**, **-iectum** [**ex** + **iaciō**], tr., *cast out*, *drive out* or *away*, *expel*, *banish; run aground*, *strand* (of ships); **sē ēicere**, *rush out*, *dash out*.

ē-lābor, **-ī**, **-lāpsus sum**, dep., intr., *slip out*, *slip away*, *escape*.

ēlēctus, **-ā**, **-um** [p.p. of ēligō, *pick out*], adj., *picked*, *select*, *chosen*, *choice*.

ēliciō, **-licere**, **-licuī**, **-licitum** [-liciō, *lure*], tr., *lure forth*, *draw out*, *entice*.

Elusātēs, **-um**, m. (ĕl-ū-sā′-tēz), cf. French Eauze: a tribe in Aquitania. III. 27. E 5.

ē-migrō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [**migrō**, *depart*], intr., *emigrate*.

ē-mittō, **-ere**, **-mīsī**, **-missum**,

tr., *send out, send forth; hurl, cast; loose, drop, abandon.*

emō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptum, tr., (*take*); *buy, purchase.*

ē-nāscor, -ī, -nātus sum, dep., intr., *grow out; sprout up.*

enim, conj., *for, for in fact, indeed.*

ē-nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *announce, report, disclose, divulge.*

1. **eō** [id], adv., *to that place, thither; in that place, there; thereon; for this reason, for the reason, for the purpose.* With comp., *the,* e.g., **eō facilius,** *the more easily.* Correl., eō (with comp.) . . . **quō** (with comp.), *the . . . the.*

2. **eō, īre, iī, itūrus,** intr., *go, start, march, travel, move, proceed, advance.*

eōdem [īdem], adv., *to the same place; to the same result, to the same thing.*

ephippiātus, -a, -um [ephippium], adj., *riding with a saddle.*

ephippium, -ī, n., *saddle-pad, saddle.*

epistula, -ae, f., *letter, epistle.*

eques, -itis [equus], m., *horseman, cavalryman; a knight,* one of the equestrian order.

equester, -tris, -tre [eques], adj., *of* or *with the cavalry.*

equitātus, -ūs [equitō, *ride*], m., *cavalry.*

equus, -ī, m., *horse.*

ērēctus, -a, -um [p.p. of ērigō, *raise up*], adj., *upright, straight.*

ergā, prep. with acc., *toward, to.*

ēripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptum [ex + rapiō, *seize*], tr., *take away, wrest from; rescue, save;* **sē ēripere,** *escape, save one's self.*

errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr., *wander, stray; err, be mistaken.*

ē-rumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum [rumpō, *break*], intr., *burst forth, sally forth, rush out.*

ēruptiō, -ōnis [erumpō], f., *sally, sortie.*

essedārius, -ī [essedum], m., *a fighter in a war-chariot, chariot-warrior.*

essedum, -ī, n., *war-chariot.*

Esuviī, -ōrum, m. (e-sū′-vi-ī), a tribe in Celtic Gaul. II. 34; III. 7; V. 24. D E 2.

et, conj., *and;* **et . . . et,** *both . . . and.*

etiam [et + iam], conj. and adv., *even, still, yet; also, too, in addition, furthermore, likewise;* **quīn etiam,** *nay even, nay indeed, nay in fact;* **cum . . . tum etiam,** *not only . . . but also;* **nōn modo** or **nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam,** *not only* or *not merely . . . but also.*

etsī [et + sī], conj., *though, although, even if.*

ē-vādō, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsum [vādō, *go*], intr., *escape.*

ē-vellō, -ere, -vellī, -vulsum [vellō, *tear*], tr., *pull* or *tear out, extract.*

ē-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, intr., *come out; turn out, result, end.*

ēventus, -ūs [ēveniō], m., *occurrence, event; result, outcome, issue; fortune, fate.*

ē-vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *call out, summon; challenge.*

ē-volō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [volō, *fly*], intr., *fly out, dash out, burst* or *rush forth.*

ex, see ē.

ex-agitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [agitō, *drive violently*], tr., *harass, persecute, give no peace to.*

exāminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**exāmen**, *tongue of a balance*], tr., *weigh, test.*

exanimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**exanimus**, *lifeless*], tr., *make out of breath, tire, fatigue, exhaust.*

ex-ārdēscō, -ere, -ārsī, -ārsūrus [ārdēscō, *blaze up*], intr., *blaze out; be incensed, be enraged.*

ex-audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, tr., *catch the sound of, hear distinctly.*

ex-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, intr., *go forth, depart, withdraw, retire.*

excipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum [**ex** + **capiō**], tr., *take out; receive, meet, withstand; ward off, parry; relieve.*

ex-citō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [citō, *rouse*], tr., *rouse, provoke, incite; animate, inspire; raise, erect.*

exclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsum [**ex** + **claudō**], tr., *shut out; cut off, prevent, bar.*

ex-cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *think out, discover, invent.*

excursiō, -ōnis [**excurrō**, *run out*], f., *sally, sortie.*

excūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**ex** + **causa**], tr., *excuse, justify;* **sē excūsāre**, *apologize.*

exemplum, -ī, n., *sample, example, kind; precedent, policy.*

ex-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, intr., *go out, go forth, march out, withdraw, depart; go on, proceed.*

exerceō, -ēre, -cuī, -citum [**ex** + **arceō**, *enclose*], tr., *employ, train, drill.*

exercitātiō, -ōnis [**exercitō**, *train*], f., *exercise, training, discipline, experience.*

exercitātus, -a, -um [p.p. of **exercitō**, *train*], adj., *trained, experienced, skilled.*

exercitus, -ūs [**exerceō**], m., *army.*

exhauriō, -īre, -hausī, -haustum [hauriō, *drain*], tr., *draw out, remove.*

exigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum [**ex** + **agō**], tr., *drive out; finish, end.*

exiguitās, -ātis [**exiguus**], f., *scantiness, small size* or *number; shortness, insufficiency.*

exiguus, -a, -um [**exigō**], adj., *small, meagre, scanty.*

eximius, -a, -um [**eximō**, *take out*], adj., *remarkable, extraordinary.*

existimātiō, -ōnis [**existimō**], f., *judgment, opinion.*

existimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [**ex + aestimō**], tr., *consider, conclude, judge, suppose, think, believe.*

exitus, -ūs [exeō], m., *a going out; end, outcome, result, issue.*

expeditiō, -ōnis [expediō, *release*],. f., *expedition, campaign, raid.*

expeditus, -a, -um [p.p. of **expediō,** *release*], adj., *unencumbered; unobstructed; without baggage, in light marching order; disengaged, free to act.*

ex-pellō, -ere, -puli, -pulsum, tr., *drive out, drive from, expel, remove.*

experior, -īrī, -pertus sum, dep., tr. and intr., *try, test; undergo, endure; make a trial* or *attempt; wait for, await.*

ex-piō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [piō, *appease*], tr., *atone for, expiate; make good, repair.*

explōrātor, -ōris [explōrō], m., *spy, scout.*

explōrātus, -a, -um [p.p. of **explōrō**], adj., *assured, certain.*

ex-plōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [plōrō, *cry out against*], tr., *examine, explore, reconnoitre; try to find out.*

ex-pōno, -ere, -posuī, -positum, tr., *put out, set forth; disembark, land; draw up, display.*

ex-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *carry out, carry off, remove.*

exprimō, -ere, -pressī, pressum [**ex + premō**], tr., *press* or *force out; draw from, elicit.*

ex-pūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *take by assault, storm, capture, reduce.*

exquīrō, -ere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītum [**ex + quaerō**], tr., *search out, inquire about, ask for.*

ex-sequor, -ī, -secūtus sum, dep., tr., *follow up; enforce, assert.*

ex-sistō, -ere, -stitī, — [**sistō,** *set, stand*], intr., *stand forth; appear, arise, spring up.*

ex-spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. and intr., *look for, wait for, await; wait, wait to see.*

ex-stinguō, -ere, -stīnxī, -stīnctum [**stinguō,** *put out*], tr., *extinguish; destroy, lose.*

ex-stō, -stāre, —, —, intr., *stand out; protrude, rise above.*

ex-struō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctum [**struō,** *pile up*], tr., *pile up, heap up; construct, raise.*

extimēscō, -ere, -timuī, — [**ex** + inch. of **timeō**], tr., *fear greatly, dread.*

extrā [exter, *outward*], prep. with acc., *outside of, beyond.*

ex-trahō, -ere, -trāxī, -tractum, tr., *draw out; waste, fritter away.*

extrēmus, -a, -um [superl. of **exterus,** *outside, outward*], adj., *outermost, extreme, farthest, remotest, last; last part of, end of, rear of;* **ad extrēmum,** *at last;* **extrēmum agmen,** *rear of a column, the rear;* **in extrēmīs rēbus,** *in extreme danger, in desperate plight.*

extrūdō, -ere, -trūsī, -trū-

sum [trūdō, *push*], tr., *thrust out, shut out.*

exul, -ulis, m., *exile, refugee, outlaw.*

exuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, tr., *take off; strip, deprive, despoil.*

ex-ūrō, ere, -ussī, -ustum [ūrō, *burn*], tr., *burn, burn up.*

F

faber, -brī, m., *workman, artisan, mechanic.*

Fabius, -ī, m. (fā′-bi-us), (1) *Quintus Fabius Maximus*, conqueror of the Arverni and Ruteni in 121. I. 45. (2) *Gaius Fabius*, one of Caesar's lieutenants. V. 24, 46, 47, 53.

facile [facilis], adv., *easily, without difficulty, readily.*

facilis, -e [faciō], adj., *easy, practicable.*

facinus, -oris [faciō], n., *deed; misdeed, wrong, wrongdoing, crime;* **in sē facinus admittere**, *be guilty of a misdeed.*

faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, tr., and intr., *make, build, construct, form; do, carry out, execute, accomplish; wage, carry on, engage in; bring to pass, bring about, cause; give, furnish, grant, allow; act, do, do so, behave.* Passive, **fīō, fierī, factus sum** (in addition to passives of verbs above), *happen, occur, take place; come to pass, come about, result, be the result.*

factiō, -ōnis [faciō], f., *faction, party.*

factum, -ī [p.p. of **faciō**], n., *deed, act, event.*

facultās, -ātis [facilis], f., *opportunity, chance, possibility; abundance, supply, force.* Pl., *resources, means.*

fāgus, -ī, f., *beech-tree.*

fallō, -erē, fefellī, falsum, tr., *deceive, trick.*

falx, falcis, f., *sickle, hook;* **falx mūrālis**, *wall-hook.*

fāma, -ae [fārī, *speak*], f., *report, news, rumor.*

famēs, -is, f., *hunger, famine, starvation.*

familia, -ae [famulus, *slave*], f., *household, slaves of a household, dependents;* **mātrēs familiae**, *matrons.*

familiāris, -e [familia], adj., *of a household, private;* **rēs familiāris**, *property, estate.* Subst., **familiāris, -is**, m., *intimate friend* or *acquaintance.*

fās [cf. **fārī**, *speak*], n. (only nom. and acc. sing.), *divine law* or *will; right, (what is) lawful;* **fās esse**, *be permitted, be the will of the gods.*

fastīgātē [fastīgātus], adv., *sloping, slanting.*

fastīgātus, -a, -um [p.p. of **fastīgō**, *make pointed*], adj., *sloping, descending.*

fātum, -ī [p.p. of **fārī**, *speak*], n., *destiny, fate, doom.*

faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautum, intr., *favor, be friendly to.*

fēlīcitās, -ātis [fēlīx, *fortunate*], f., *good luck, good fortune.*

fēlīciter [fēlīx, *fortunate*], adv., *happily*, *successfully*.

femur, **feminis**, n., *thigh*.

ferāx, gen. **-ācis** [ferō], adj., *fertile*, *productive*.

ferē, adv., *almost*, *nearly*, *about*; *generally*, *usually*. With negatives, *scarcely*, *hardly*.

ferō, **ferre**, **tulī**, **lātum**, tr., *bear*, *carry*; *endure*, *meet*, *withstand*, *suffer*; *propose*, *offer*. Passive used reflexively, (of a river) *flow*; (of persons) *rush*, *flee*.

ferrāmenta, **-ōrum** [ferrum], n., *iron implements*, *tools*.

ferreus, **-a**, **-um** [ferrum], adj., *of iron*, *iron*.

ferrum, **-ī**, n., *iron*; *iron spear-head*; *sword*.

fertilitās, **-ātis** [fertilis, *fertile*], f., *fertility*.

ferus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *wild*, *barbarous*, *savage*, *uncivilized*.

fervefactus, **-a**, **-um** [p.p. of fervefaciō, *boil*], adj., *boiling hot*, *red hot*.

fervēns, gen. **-entis** [pr. p. of ferveō, *boil*], adj., *boiling hot*, *glowing*.

festūca, **-ae**, f., *pile-driver*.

fībula, **-ae** [fīgō, *fix*], f., *fastening*, *brace*, *bolt*.

fidēlis, **-e** [fidēs], adj., *faithful*, *loyal*, *trustworthy*.

fidēs, **-eī**, f., *trust*, *faith*, *confidence*; *trustworthiness*, *fidelity*, *loyalty*; *pledge*, *word*, *assurance*; *protection*, *care*; **in fidē alicūius esse**, *be under some one's protection*; **fidem facere**, *inspire confidence*, *convince*; *give assurance*, *give a pledge*; **fidem interpōnere**, *pledge one's word*; **sē in fidem alicūius permittere**, or **fidem alicūius sequī**, or **in fidem alicūius venīre**, *attach one's self to some one*, *put one's self under some one's protection*; **aliquem in fidem recipere**, *take some one under one's protection*.

figūra, **-ae** [fingō], f., *form*, *shape*, *figure*.

fīlia, **-ae**, f., *daughter*.

fīlius, **-ī**, m., *son*.

fingō, **-ere**, **fīnxī**, **fictum**, tr., *form*, *fashion*; *make up*, *invent*; **vultum fingere**, *control one's expression*.

fīniō, **-īre**, **-īvī**, **-ītum** [fīnis], tr., *limit*, *bound*.

fīnis, **-is**, m., *end*, *limit*, *extent*; Pl., *boundaries*, *frontier*; (usually) *country*, *territory*, *land*.

fīnitimus, **-a**, **-um** [fīnis], adj., *adjoining*, *neighboring*, *near*. Subst., **fīnitimī**, **-ōrum**, m., *neighbors*.

fīō, **fierī**, **factus sum**, see faciō.

fīrmiter [fīrmus], adv., *steadily*; *with firm footing*.

fīrmitūdō, **-dinis** [fīrmus], f., *strength*, *stability*.

fīrmus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *strong*, *powerful*.

Flaccus, **-ī**, m. (flăk′-us), see **Valerius**.

flāgitō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, tr., *demand*, *press for*.

flamma, -**ae**, f., *flame, fire.*

flectō, -**ere**, **flexī**, -**flexum**, tr., *bend, turn; guide.*

fleō, -**ēre**, **flēvī**, **flētum**, intr., *weep, wail.*

flētus, -**ūs** [fleō], m., *weeping, wailing, lamentation.*

flō, -**āre**, -**āvī**, -**ātum**, intr., *blow.*

flōrēns, gen. -**entis** [pr. p. of flōreō, *bloom*], adj., *flourishing, prosperous.*

flūctus, -**ūs** [fluō], m., *wave, billow.*

flūmen, -**inis** [fluō], n., *river.*

fluō, -**ere**, **flūxī**, **flūxum**, intr., *flow, run.*

fōrma, -**ae**, f., *form, shape.*

fors, **fortis**, f., *chance.*

forte [abl. of fors], adv., *by chance, perchance, perhaps.*

fortis, -**e**, adj., *strong, steadfast; brave, valiant.*

fortiter [fortis], adv., *bravely, valiantly, gallantly.*

fortitūdō, -**inis** [fortis], f., *bravery, valor, courage.*

fortūna, -**ae** [fors], f., *fortune* (good or bad), *luck; condition, lot, fate.* Pl., *fortunes; property, possessions.*

fossa, -**ae** [fodiō, *dig*], f., *ditch, trench.*

frangō, -**ere**, **frēgī**, **frāctum**, tr., *break, shatter, crush; subdue, overcome, dishearten.*

frāter, -**tris**, m., *brother.*

frāternus, -**a**, -**um** [frāter], adj., *of* or *for a brother, brotherly, fraternal;* **frāternum nōmen**, *the title of brothers.*

fremitus, -**ūs** [fremō, *roar*], m., *murmur, roar, uproar, din, hubbub.*

frequēns, gen. -**entis**, adj., *in large numbers.*

frētus, -**a**, -**um**, adj., *leaning on, relying on.*

frīgidus, -**a**, -**um** [frīgeō, *be cold*], adj., *cold.*

frīgus, -**oris** [frīgeō, *be cold*], n., *cold, cold weather, cold season.*

frōns, **frontis**, f., *forehead; front;* **ā fronte**, *in front.*

frūctuōsus, -**a**, -**um** [frūctus, *produce*], adj., *fruitful, productive.*

(**frūx**), **frūgis**, *produce.* Pl., *crops.*

frūmentārius, -**a**, -**um** [frūmentum], adj., *of grain; productive;* **rēs frūmentāria**, *grain-supply, supplies, provisions.*

frūmentor, -**ārī**, -**ātus sum** [frūmentum], dep., intr., *to forage.*

frūmentum, -**ī**, n., *grain.* Pl., *crops, standing grain.*

fruor, -**ī**, **frūctus sum**, dep., intr., *enjoy.*

frūstrā, adv., *in vain, to no purpose, without effect.*

fuga, -**ae** [fugiō], f., *flight, rout;* **in fugam cōicere** or **dare**, *put to flight, drive in flight;* **sē fugae mandāre**, or **fugam petere**, *take to flight.*

fugiō, **fugere**, **fūgī**, **fugitūrus**, intr., *flee.*

fugitīvus, -**a**, -**um** [fugiō], adj., *fleeing, fugitive.* Subst.,

fugitīvī, **-ōrum**, m., *fugitive slaves.*

fūmus, **-ī**, m., *smoke.*

funda, **-ae**, f., *sling.*

funditor, **-ōris** [**funda**], m., *slinger.*

fundō, **-ere**, **fūdī**, **fūsum**, tr., *pour; rout, vanquish.*

fūnis, **-is**, m., *rope, cable, hawser.*

furor, **-ōris**, [**furō**, *rage*], m., *frenzy, rage, madness, passion.*

fūsilis, **-e** [**fundō**], adj., *molten, fluid.*

G

Gabīnius, **-ī**, m. (ga-bĭn′-i-us), *Aulus Gabinius*, consul along with Lucius Calpurnius Piso in 58. I. 6.

gaesum, **-ī**, n., *javelin.*

Galba, **-ae**, m. (găl′-ba), (1) king of the Suessiones. II. 4, 13. (2) *Servius Sulpicius Galba*, one of Caesar's lieutenants. III. 1–6.

galea, **-ae**, f., *helmet.*

Gallia, **-ae**, f., *Gaul.* **Gallia citerior**, *Cisalpine Gaul*, the Roman province south of the Alps. I. 24, 54; II. 1, 2; V. 1, 2. **Gallia ulterior**, *farther Gaul, Transalpine Gaul.* I. 7, 10; II. 2.

Gallicus, **-a**, **-um** [**Gallia**], adj., *Gallic, of Gaul.*

gallīna, **-ae** [**gallus**, *cock*], f., *hen.*

Gallus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *Gallic.* Subst., **Gallus**, **-ī**, m., *a Gaul;* Gallī, -ōrum, *the Gauls.*

Gallus, **-ī**, m. (găl′-us), see **Trebius.**

Garumna, **-ae**, m. (ga-rŭm′-na), a river separating Celtic Gaul from Aquitania, *the Garonne.* I. 1. D E 4, 5.

Garumnī, **-orum**, m. (ga-rŭm′-nī), a tribe in Aquitania. III. 27. E 15.

Gatēs, **-ium**, m. (gā′-tēz), a tribe in Aquitania. III. 27. E 4, 5.

gaudeō, **-ēre**, **gāvīsus sum**, semi-dep., intr., *rejoice, be glad.*

Geidumnī, **-ōrum**, m. (je-dŭm′-nī), a tribe in Belgic Gaul. V. 39. G 1.

Genava, **-ae**, f., a city on Lake Leman, *Geneva.* I. 6, 7. H 3.

gener, **-erī**, m., *son-in-law.*

generātim [**genus**], adv., *by tribes.*

gēns, **gentis**, f., *race, tribe, people.*

genus, **-eris**, n., *race, stock; birth, family; kind, sort, nature, method, style.*

Germānia, **-ae**, f., *Germany.* IV. 4; V. 13.

Germānicus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *German.* IV. 16.

Germānus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *German.* Subst., **Germānī**, **-ōrum**, m., *the Germans.*

gerō, **-ere**, **gessī**, **gestum**, tr., *bear, carry; carry on, wage, engage in; conduct, perform.* Passive (frequently), *take place, go on, be done, happen, occur;* **rēs gestae**, *exploits;* **male rēs gestae**, *unsuccessful exploits;* **comminus rem gerere**,

engage in a hand-to-hand combat.

gladius, **-ī**, m., *sword.*

glāns, **glandis**, f., *acorn, nut; a missile* (shaped like an acorn).

glōria, **-ae**, f., *glory, fame, renown, reputation.*

glōrior, **-ārī**, **-ātus sum** [glōria], dep., intr., *boast.*

Graecus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *Greek.*

Graiocelī, **-ōrum**, m. (grā-yō′-se-lī), a Gallic tribe in the Alps. I. 10. H 4.

grandis, **-e**, adj., *large, high.*

grātia, **-ae** [grātus], f., *favor, esteem, good-will; influence, popularity;* **grātiās agere**, *express thanks* or *gratitude;* **grātiam referre**, *requite, make requital, recompense.*

grātulātiō, **-ōnis** [grātulor], f., *joy, rejoicing; congratulation.*

grātulor, **-ārī**, **-ātus sum** [grātus], dep., intr., *congratulate.*

grātus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *pleasing, welcome, agreeable; grateful.*

gravis, **-e**, adj., *heavy; burdensome; hard, hard to bear; desperate; troublesome, formidable; severe, dangerous; advanced, experienced.*

gravitās, **-ātis** [gravis], f., *weight; importance, dignity, power.*

graviter [gravis], adv., *heavily, violently, hard; severely, sternly; deeply, bitterly;* **graviter ferre**, *take to heart, be incensed, be indignant.*

gravor, **-ārī**, **-ātus sum** [gravis], dep., intr., *be burdened; hesitate, be unwilling.*

Grudiī, **-ōrum**, m. (groo′-di-ī), a tribe in Belgic Gaul. V. 39. G 1.

gubernātor, **-ōris** [gubernō, *steer*], m., *pilot, helmsman.*

gustō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [gustus, *a tasting*], tr., *taste, eat.*

H

habeō, **-ēre**, **-uī**, **-itum**, tr., *have, hold, possess, keep; convene; involve; consider, regard; deliver, make;* **aliter sē habēre ac**, *be different from what, be otherwise than.*

Haeduus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *of the Haedui, Haeduan.* Subst., **Haeduus**, **-ī**, m., *a Haeduan;* **Haeduī**, **-ōrum**, m. (hĕd′-ū-ī), *the Haedui, the Haeduans,* a tribe in Celtic Gaul. I. 10 *and often.* F G 3.

Harūdes, **-um**, m. (ha-roo′-dēz), a tribe in Germany. I. 31, 37, 51. I 3.

haud, adv., *not at all, by no means.*

Helvētius, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *of the Helvetii, Helvetian.* Subst., **Helvētiī**, **-ōrum**, m. (hĕl-vē′-shi-ī), *the Helvetii, the Helvetians,* a Gallic people occupying country now a part of Switzerland. I. 1, 2–30, 31, 40; IV. 10. H I 3.

Hibernia, **-ae**, f. (hī-bĕr′-ni-a), *Ireland.* V. 13.

hībernus, **-a**, **-um** [hiems], adj., *of winter.* Subst., **hīberna**,

-ōrum, n., *winter-quarters*, *winter camp*.

hic, haec, hōc, gen. **hūius**, dem. pron. and adj., *this; he, she, it;* pl., *these, those, they;* pl. n. (often), *these things, such things, these facts, these words; the following, as follows;* hic . . . ille, *the latter . . . the former*.

hīc [hic], adv., *here, in this place*.

hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [hiems], intr., *pass* or *spend the winter*.

hiems, -emis, f., *winter, winter season; stormy weather*.

Hispānia, -ae, f., *Spain*. I. 1; V. 1, 13, 27. **Hispānia citerior**, *hither* or *nearer Spain*, the northern of the two provinces into which the peninsula was divided. III. 23.

Hispānus, -a, -um, adj., *Spanish*. V. 26.

homō, -inis, m. and f., *man, person*. Pl., *men, people*.

honestus, -a, -um [honōs], adj., *honored, honorable, distinguished, noble*.

honōrificus, -a, -um [honōs, cf. faciō], adj., *conferring honor, honorable, complimentary*.

honōs, -ōris, m., *honor, distinction, honorable position, regard, respect*.

hōra, -ae, f., *an hour*.

horreō, -ēre, -ui, —, tr. and intr., *shudder, tremble; fear, dread*.

horribilis, -e [horreō], adj., *terrible, dreadful*.

hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., tr., *urge, impel, instigate, encourage, cheer on*.

hospes, -itis, m. and f., *guest-friend; host, guest*.

hospitium, -ī [hospes], n., *hospitality; friendly alliance, guest-friendship;* **hospitiō ūtī**, *be on friendly terms with*.

hostis, -is, m. and f. (*stranger*), *enemy*. Sing. sometimes in collective sense, *the enemy*.

hūc [hic], adv., *to this place, hither; at this place, here*.

hūmānitās, -ātis [hūmānus], f., *cultivation, refinement*.

hūmānus, -a, -um [homō], adj., *cultivated, refined, civilized*.

humilis, -e [humus, *ground*], adj., *low, small; humble, obscure, insignificant*.

humilitās, -ātis [humilis], f., *lowness, small height; weakness, insignificance*.

I

iaceō, -ēre, -iacui, —, intr., *lie, be prostrate; lie dead;* **iacentēs**, pr. p. as subst., *the fallen, the slain*.

iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum, tr., *throw, cast, hurl; throw up, construct*.

iactō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [freq. of iaciō], tr., *throw about, toss about; consider, discuss*.

iaculum, -ī [iaciō], n., *dart, javelin*.

iam, adv., *at this* (*mentioned*) *time, now, then; by this time, already; at last, at length,*

finally; now, moreover, furthermore; with negatives, *longer, any longer.*

ibi, adv., *there, in that place.*

ibīdem [ibi], adv., *in the same place, in that very place.*

Iccius, -ī, m. (Ĭk′-shi-us), a chief of the Remi. II. 3, 6, 7.

ictus, -ūs [īcō, *strike*], m., *blow; cast.*

idcircō [id + abl. of **circus**], adv., *on that account, for this purpose.*

idem, eadem, idem, gen. **ēiusdem**, dem. pron. and adj., *the same; also, likewise, again;* **idem atque**, *the same as.*

identidem [idem + et + idem], adv., *repeatedly, again and again.*

idōneus, -a, -um, adj., *suitable, adapted, favorable.*

Īdūs, Īduum, f., pl., *the ides,* the 15th of March, May, July, October, the 13th of the other months.

ignis, -is, m., *fire; watch-fire, signal-fire.*

ignōbilis, -e [in- + (g)nōbilis], adj., *unknown, obscure.*

ignōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [cf. ignōscō], tr., *not know, overlook.*

ignōscō, -ere, -gnōvī, -gnōtum [in- + (g)nōscō], intr., *pardon, forgive.*

ignōtus, -a, -um [in- + (g)nōtus], adj., *unknown, strange.*

ille, illa, illud, gen. **illīus**, dem. pron. and adj., *that; this, the following; he, she, it;* pl., *they, those;* **hīc . . . ille**, *this* (here) . . . *that* (there), *the latter . . . the former.*

illīc [ille], adv., *in that place, there.*

illō [ille], adv., *to that place, thither; to that end* or *object.*

Īllyricum, -ī, n. (Il-lĭr′-i-kum), *Illyria,* east of the Adriatic Sea, one of the provinces assigned to Caesar. II. 35; III. 7; V. 1.

imber, -bris, m., *rain, storm.*

immānis, -e, adj., *huge, extraordinary.*

immittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum [in + **mittō**], tr., *send in; send against, launch against; let down, sink.*

immortālis, -e [in- + mortālis, *mortal*], adj., *immortal.*

impedīmentum, -ī [impediō], n., *a hindrance, impediment.* Pl., *heavy baggage, baggage-train.*

impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum [in + pēs], tr., *entangle, hamper, hinder, check, impede, prevent.*

impedītus, -a, -um [p.p. of impediō], adj., *encumbered, impeded; difficult, impassable, inaccessible; in the way of; engaged, preoccupied.*

impellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum [in + pellō], tr., *urge on, impel, incite, move, arouse.*

impendeō, -ēre, -pendī, — [in + pendeō, *hang*], intr., *hang over, overhang.*

impēnsus, -a, -um [p.p. of impendō, *weigh out*], adj., *ample, great, high.*

imperātor, **-ōris** [imperō], m., *commander-in-chief*, *general*.

imperātum, **-ī** [p.p. of imperō], n., *command*, *order*, *bidding*.

imperītus, **-a**, **-um** [in- + perītus], adj., *inexperienced*, *unskilled*, *ignorant*, *unfamiliar*.

imperium, **-ī** [imperō], n., *command*, *order*; *authority*, *rule*, *power*, *dominion*, *sovereignty*, *supremacy*, *supreme power*; *government*, *empire*, *realm*; **nova imperia**, *change of government*, *revolution*; **summa imperī**, *supreme command*.

imperō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, tr. and intr., *order*, *command*, *direct*; *demand of*, *make requisition for*; *rule*, *govern*, *issue commands*, *make demands*.

impetrō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [in + **patrō**, *bring about*], tr. and intr., *gain one's end*, *obtain one's request*; *accomplish*, *effect*, *obtain*, *gain*; *bring to pass*, *obtain permission*, *prevail upon*.

impetus, **-ūs** [in, cf. petō], m., *attack*, *assault*, *charge*, *onset*; *rush*, *violence*, *fury*, *vigor*.

implōrō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [in + **plōrō**, *cry out*], tr., *beg for*, *beseech*, *entreat*.

impōnō, **-ere**, **-posuī**, **-positum** [in + **pōnō**], tr., *place upon*, *mount*; *impose*, *assess*, *exact*.

importō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [in + **portō**], tr., *bring in*, *import*.

improbus, **-a**, **-um** [in- + **probus**, *good*], adj., *shameless*, *wicked*, *demagogic*.

imprōvīsō [abl. n. of **imprōvīsus**], adv., *suddenly*, *unexpectedly*, *without warning*.

imprōvīsus, **-a**, **-um** [in- + **prōvīsus**, *foreseen*] adj., *unforeseen*; **dē imprōvīsō** (n. sing.), *suddenly*, *unexpectedly*, *without warning*.

imprūdēns, gen. **-entis** [in- + **prūdēns**, *foreseeing*], adj., *unsuspecting*, *off one's guard*, *unprepared*.

imprūdentia, **-ae** [imprūdēns], f., *want of foresight*, *indiscretion*, *imprudence*.

impūgnō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [in + pūgnō], intr., *fight against*, *attack*, *invade*; *fight*, *charge*.

impulsus, **-ūs** [impellō], m., *impulse*; *instigation*.

impūnē [**impūnis**, *unpunished*], adv., *without punishment*, *with impunity*.

impūnitās, **-ātis** [**impūnis**, *unpunished*], f., *freedom from punishment*, *impunity*.

īmus, **-a**, **-um**, see **īnferior**.

in-, inseparable particle used in composition with negative force, *not*, *un-*, *in-*.

in, prep. with acc. and abl. With acc., *into*; *towards*, *against*; *to*, *in*, *on*, *upon*; *until*, *till*, *for*; *in regard to*; *in honor of*; *for the purpose of*, *for*. With abl., *in*, *within*, *on*, *upon*, *over*, *among*; *in the country of*; *in the case of*.

inānis, **-e**, adj., *empty*.

incendium, **-ī** [**incendō**], n., *fire*, *conflagration*.

incendō, **-ere**, **-cendī**, **-cēnsum** [**in** + **candeō**, *be bright*], tr., *set fire to*, *burn*.

in-certus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *uncertain*; *indefinite*; *in confusion*.

incidō, **-ere**, **-cidī**, — [**in** + **cadō**], intr., *fall on*, *fall upon*; *happen*, *occur*; *break out*.

incīdō, **-ere**, **-cīdī**, **-cīsum** [**in** + **caedō**], tr., *cut into*, *notch*.

incipiō, **-cipere**, **-cēpī**, **-ceptum** [**in** + **capiō**], tr. and intr., *begin*, *commence*.

in-citō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [**citō**, *rouse*], tr., *hasten*, *urge on*, *spur on*; *impel*, *incite*; *arouse*, *exasperate*; **sē incitāre**, (of the tide) *rush in*, *come in*; *rush* or *dash against*.

in-cōgnitus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *unknown*.

in-colō, **-ere**, **-coluī**, —, tr. and intr., *inhabit*, *dwell in*; *live*, *dwell*.

incolumis, **-e**, adj., *uninjured*, *unharmed*, *safe*, *without loss*.

incommodē [**incommodus**, *inconvenient*], adv., *inconveniently*, *unfortunately*.

incommodum, **-ī** [**incommodus**, *inconvenient*], n., *disadvantage*; *discomfiture*; *injury*, *loss*, *disaster*.

in-crēdibilis, **-e** [**crēdibilis**, *credible*], adj., *incredible*, *extraordinary*.

increpitō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [freq. of **increpō**, *rebuke*], tr., *rebuke*, *upbraid*, *taunt*, *jeer*.

incursiō, **-ōnis** [**incurro**, *run into*], f., *inroad*, *raid*.

incursus, **-ūs** [**incurrō**, *run into*], m., *rush*, *attack*.

incūsō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [**in** + **causa**], tr., *blame*, *censure*, *upbraid*.

inde, adv., *from that place*, *from there*, *thence*; *next*, *then*.

indicium, **-ī** [**indicō**, *inform*], n., *information*, *disclosure*, *evidence*.

in-dīcō, **-ere**, **-dīxī**, **-dictum**, tr., *proclaim*; *appoint*, *call*.

in-dignitās, **-ātis**, f., *insult*, *indignity*, *outrage*.

in-dīgnus, **-a**, **-um** [**dīgnus**, *worthy*], adj., *unworthy*, *unbecoming*.

in-dīligenter [**indīligēns**, *careless*], adv., *carelessly*.

in-dūcō, **-ere**, **-dūxī**, **-ductum**, tr., *lead into* or *on*; *draw over*, *cover*; *induce*, *influence*.

indulgeō, **-ēre**, **-dulsī**, **-dultum**, intr., *be kind to*, *favor*, *be partial to*, *be fond of*.

induō, **-ere**, **-duī**, **-dūtum**, tr., *put on*.

indūtiae, **-ārum**, f., *truce*, *armistice*.

Indūtiomārus, **-ī**, m. (In-dū''-shi-o-mā'-rus), a chief of the Treveri. V. 3, 4, 26, 53–58.

in-eō, **-īre**, **-īvī** or **-iī**, **-itum**, tr., *go into*, *enter*; *form*, *lay*, *concoct*, *adopt*; **initā aestāte**, *after the beginning of summer*.

inermis, **-e** [**in-** + **arma**], adj., *unarmed*, *defenceless*.

iners, gen. **-ertis** [in + **ars**, *skill*], adj., *unskilful; weak, indolent.*

īnferior, **-ius** [comp. of **īnferus**, *beneath, lower*], adj., *lower; weaker; inferior.* Superl., **īnfimus** or **īmus**, *lowest, lowest part of; at the bottom* or *foot.* Subst., **īmum**, **-ī**, n., *bottom.*

īn-ferō, **-ferre**, **-tulī**, **-lātum**, tr., *bring in* or *into, import; bring upon, inflict upon; inspire in, infuse into; bring forward, allege.* See bellum, **sīgnum**.

īnficiō, **-ficere**, **-fēcī**, **-fectum** [in + **faciō**], tr., *stain, color.*

īnfimus, **-a**, **-um**, —, see īnferior.

īn-fīnītus, **-a**, **-um** [**fīnītus**, *limited*], adj., *unlimited, countless.*

īnfirmitās, **-ātis** [**īnfirmus**], f., *weakness, want of courage, inconstancy.*

īn-fīrmus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *weak;* (of ships) *unseaworthy.*

īn-flectō, **-ere**, **-flexī**, **-flexum**, tr., *bend, bend over.*

īn-fluō, **-ere**, **-flūxī**, **-flūxum**, intr., *flow in* or *into, empty.*

īnfrā [**inferus**, *lower*], adj., *below, farther down.*

ingēns, gen. **-gentis**, adj., *vast, huge, enormous.*

ingredior, **-gredī**, **-gressus sum** [in + **gradior**, *step*], dep., intr., *advance into, enter.*

iniciō, **-icere**, **-iēcī**, **-iectum** [in + **iaciō**] tr., *throw into* or *on; lay on* or *upon; inspire in, infuse into.*

inimīcus, **-a**, **-um** [in- + **amīcus**], adj., *unfriendly, hostile.* Subst., **inimīcus**, **-ī**, m., (*personal*) *enemy, foe, rival.*

inīquitās, **-ātis** [**inīquus**], f., *unevenness, diversity; unfavorable character, difficulty.*

inīquus, **-a**, **-um** [in- + **aequus**], adj., *uneven, rough; unfair, unjust; unfavorable, disadvantageous.*

initium, **-ī** [**ineō**], n., *beginning, first part; edge; frontier.*

iniūria, **-ae** [in- + **iūs**], f., *injustice, wrong, wrong-doing, outrage, injury, affront, insult.*

(**iniussus**, **-ūs**) [in- + **iussus**, *order*], m., used only in abl., *without command, without orders.*

in-ligō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [ligō, *bind*], *bind on, tie on, fasten, bind together.*

in-nītor, **-ī**, **-nīxus sum**, dep., intr., *lean on, support one's self on.*

innocentia, **-ae** [**innocēns**, *harmless*], f., *uprightness, integrity.*

inopia, **-ae** [inops, *needy*], f., *want, lack, dearth, scarcity.*

in-opīnāns, gen. **-antis** [in- + pr. p. of opīnor, *suppose*], adj., *unsuspecting, unaware, by surprise.*

inquam, **inquis**, **inquit**, def., intr., *say.*

in-rīdeō, **-ēre**, **-rīsī**, **-rīsum** [rīdeō, *laugh*], tr. and intr., *laugh at, jeer, ridicule.*

in-rīdiculē [rīdiculē, *laughably*], adv., *unwittily.*

in-rumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum [rumpō, *break*], tr. and intr., *burst into, rush into, force one's way into; rush upon, make an attack.*

īn-sciēns, gen. **-entis** [in- + pr. p. of sciō], adj., *not knowing, without the knowledge of.*

īn-scientia, -ae [īnsciēns], f., *ignorance, inexperience, unfamiliarity with.*

īn-scius, -a, -um [scius, *knowing*], adj., *ignorant, unaware, unconscious.*

īn-sequor, -ī, -secūtus sum, tr., *follow up, follow after, pursue.*

īn-serō, -ere, -seruī, -sertum [serō, *entwine*], tr., *insert, fix into.*

īnsidiae, -ārum [cf. īnsideō, *sit upon*], f., *ambush; ambuscade; stratagem, craft, treachery.*

īnsīgnis, -e [in + sīgnum], adj., *noted, memorable, signal.* Subst., **īnsīgne, -is,** n., *mark, sign, signal.* Pl., *ornaments, trappings, badges.*

īnsiliō, -īre, -siluī, — [in + saliō, *leap*], intr., *leap* or *spring upon.*

īn-sinuō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [sinuō, *wind*], tr., *push in, work in;* **sē īnsinuāre,** *work one's way in.*

īnsistō, -ere, -stitī, — [sistō, *set, stand*], tr. and intr., *set foot, get a foothold, tread on, stand on; follow, adopt.*

īnsolenter [īnsolēns, *unusual; haughty*], adv., *haughtily, insolently.*

in-stabilis, -e [stabilis, *stable*], adj., *unstable, changeable, uncertain.*

īnstar, n., indecl., *image, likeness;* **īnstar mūrī,** *like a wall.*

īnstīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *goad on, drive on, instigate.*

īnstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum [in + statuō], tr., *set up, construct, build; draw up, arrange, array; prepare, furnish, provide, secure; determine upon, form, adopt; determine, resolve; undertake, begin; train, teach.*

īnstitūtum, -ī [p.p. of īnstituō], n., *practice, custom.*

īn-stō, -āre, -stitī, -stātūrus, intr., *approach, be at hand; advance, press on* or *forward.*

īnstrūmentum, -ī [īnstruō], n., *implement; equipment, furniture.*

īn-struō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctum [struō, *heap up*], tr., *build, erect; draw up, arrange, array; furnish, equip, fit out.*

īnsuēfactus, -a, -um [īnsuēscō, *accustom,* + faciō], adj., *trained, accustomed.*

īn-suētus, -a, -um [suētus, *accustomed*], adj., *unaccustomed, unused.*

īnsula, -ae, f., *island.*

in-super [super, *above*], adv., *on top, above.*

integer, -gra, -grum [in-, cf. tangō], adj., *untouched; unin-*

jured; unwearied, fresh, vigorous.

intellegō, **-ere**, **-lēxī**, **-lēctum** [inter + legō, *choose*], tr., *perceive, understand, see, know; discover, find, find out.*

intentus, **-a**, **-um** [p.p. of intendō, *stretch*], adj., *intent, intent upon.*

inter, prep. with acc., *between, among, in the midst of;* **inter sē**, *to, with* or *from one another.*

inter-cēdō, **-ere**, **-cessī**, **-cessum**, intr., *come between, be* or *lie between, exist between; lie in the way; intervene, elapse, pass.*

intercipiō, **-cipere**, **-cēpī**, **-ceptum** [inter + capiō], tr., *intercept, cut off.*

interclūdō, **-ere**, **-clūsī**, **-clūsum** [inter + claudō], tr., *cut off, block up.*

inter-dīcō, **-ere**, **-dīxī**, **-dictum**, tr., *forbid, prohibit; enjoin, command.*

interdiū [inter, cf. diēs], adv., *in the daytime, by day.*

inter-dum, adv., *from time to time, sometimes, occasionally.*

intereā [inter + eā], adv., *meanwhile, in the meantime.*

intereō, **-īre**, **-iī**, **-itūrus**, intr., *perish, be lost.*

interficiō, **-ficere**, **-fēcī**, **-fectum** [inter + faciō], tr., *kill, slay.*

intericiō, **-icere**, **-iēcī**, **-iectum** [inter + iaciō], tr., *place* or *set among, intermix;* **interiectus**, p.p., *lying* or *occurring at intervals; lying between, intervening, having intervened.*

interim, adv., *meanwhile, in the meantime.*

interior, **-ius** [inter], comp. adj., *inner, interior.* Subst., **interiōrēs**, **-um**, m., *people of the interior, people farther inland.*

interitus, **-ūs** [intereō], m., *destruction, death.*

inter-mittō, **-ere**, **-mīsī**, **-missum**, tr. and intr., *leave between, leave an interval; delay, postpone, suspend, neglect; cease, stop; let pass, fail to improve;* **intermissus**, p.p., *elapsed, having elapsed, intervening, having intervened.*

interneciō, **-ōnis** [cf. necō], f., *destruction, extermination.*

inter-pellō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, tr., *interrupt, obstruct, molest.*

inter-pōnō, **-ere**, **-posuī**, **-positum**, tr., *put between; interpose, put forward; try to cause;* **interpositus**, p.p., *intervening, having intervened.*

interpres, **-etis**, m., *interpreter.*

inter-scindō, **-ere**, **-scidī**, **-scissum** [scindō, *tear*], tr., *tear asunder; break down, destroy.*

inter-sum, **-esse**, **-fuī**, intr., *be* or *lie between; be an interval; be present at, take part in, participate in;* **interest**, impers., *it is of importance, is of interest, concerns.*

inter-vāllum, **-ī**, n., (*space between palisades*), *intervening*

space, *interval*, *distance away*, *distance*.

interventus, **-ūs** [interveniō, *come between*], m., *intervention*.

in-texō, **-ere**, **-texui**, **-textum** [texō, *weave*], tr., *weave in* or *together*.

intrā [cf. inter], prep. with acc., *within*, *inside of*; *into*.

in-trītus, **-a**, **-um** [in- + p.p. of terō, *wear away*], adj., *not exhausted*.

1. **intrō** [cf. inter], adv., used in composition, *to the inside*, *within*, *in*.

2. **intrō**, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [cf. inter and 1 intrō], tr., *enter*, *penetrate*.

intrō-dūcō, **-ere**, **-dūxī**, **-ductum**, tr., *lead into*, *conduct into*.

intro-eō, **-īre**, **-īvī** or **-iī**, —, intr., *go in*; *enter*.

introitus, **-ūs** [introeō], m., *entrance*; *place of entrance*, *passage*.

intrō-mittō, **-ere**, **-mīsī**, **-missum**, tr., *send in*; *let in*, *admit*.

intrōrsus [intrō + **versus**], adv., *towards the inside*, *into*, *on the inside*.

intrō-rumpō, **-ere**, **-rūpī**, **-ruptum** [rumpō, *break*], intr., *break in* or *through*, *force an entrance*.

in-tueor, **-ērī**, **-tuitus sum**, dep., tr., *look* or *gaze upon*.

intus, adv., *inside*, *within*.

in-ūsitātus, **-a**, **-um** [in- + p.p. of **ūsitor**, *use often*], adj., *unusual*, *unfamiliar*.

in-ūtilis, **-e**, adj., *useless*, *incapable of service*.

in-veniō, **-īre**, **-vēnī**, **-ventum**, tr., *find*, *discover*; *find out*, *learn*.

in-veterāscō, **-ere**, **-āvī**, — [**veterāscō**, *grow old*], intr., *grow old*; *become fixed* or *established*, *gain a foothold*.

in-victus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *unconquered*; *invincible*.

in-videō, **-ēre**, **-vīdī**, **-vīsum**, intr., (*look askance at*), *envy*, *be jealous of*.

in-violātus, **-a**, **-um** [in- + p.p. of violō, *injure*], adj., (*unhurt*); *inviolable*, *inviolate*.

in-vītō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, tr., *invite*, *summon*; *allure*, *lure on*, *entice*.

invītus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *unwilling*, *against one's will* or *wish*.

ipse, **-a**, **-um**, gen. **ipsīus**, intensive pron., with another word, *himself*, *herself*, *itself*. Pl., *themselves*; *in person*; *very*, *just*, *precisely*, *mere*. Alone, *he himself*, *she herself*, etc.; *he*, *she*, *it*, *they*.

īrācundus, **-a**, **-um** [**īrāscor**, *be angry*], adj., *irascible*, *passionate*.

is, **ea**, **id**, gen. **ēius**, dem. pron. and adj., *he*, *she*, *it*. Pl., *they*; *this*, *these*, *that*, *those*, *the*; *such*.

ita, adv., *thus*, *in this way* or *manner*, *so*; *so accordingly*; *as follows*; **nōn ita**, *not very*, *not so very*; **ita . . . ut**, *just as*, *in such a way . . . that*, *so*

. . . *that;* **ut** . . . **ita,** *just as* . . . *so also.*

Ītalia, -ae, f., *Italy.* I. 10, etc.

ita-que, conj., *and so; accordingly, therefore, consequently.*

item, adv., *likewise, also, too, as well.*

iter, itineris, n., *journey, march; road, route, way, course; passage, right of way;* **ex itinere,** *(immediately) after a march, on the way, without halting, at once;* **iter facere,** *to march, to pass, to be on one's way;* **māgna itinera,** *forced marches.*

iterum, adv., *again, a second time;* **semel atque iterum,** *more than once, repeatedly.*

Itius, -ī, m., **portus Itius** (Ĭsh′-i-us), a harbor on the north coast of Gaul, probably Wissant, where Caesar embarked on his British campaigns. V. 2, 5.

iuba, -ae, f., *mane.*

iubeō, -ēre, -iussī, -iussum, tr., *order, command, direct, bid.*

iūdicium, -ī [**iūdex,** *judge*], n., *trial; judgment, decision, opinion;* **iūdicium facere,** *express an opinion.*

iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**iūdex,** *judge*], tr., *judge, pass judgment, decide; adjudge, declare; think, consider, be of an opinion.*

iugum, -ī [cf. **iungō**], n., *yoke, collar; yoke* (of spears); *summit; ridge, chain* (of mountains or hills).

iūmentum, -ī [cf. **iungō** and **iugum**], n., *beast of burden, draught-animal, pack-animal.*

iūnctūra, -ae [**iungō**], f., *a joining, joint.*

iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūnctum, tr., *join* or *lash together, bind.*

Iūnius, -ī, m. (jūn′-yus), (1) see **Brūtus.** (2) *Quintus Junius,* a Spaniard in Caesar's army. V. 27, 28.

Iūra, -ae, m. (jū′-ra), a range of mountains, *the Jura.* I. 2, 6, 8. II 3.

iūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**iūs**], intr., *swear, take oath.*

iūs, iūris, n., *legal right, right, privilege; law, power, authority.*

iūs-iūrandum, iūris-iūrandī, n., *an oath.*

iūstitia, -ae [**iūstus**], f., *justice, uprightness.*

iūstus, -a, -um [**iūs**], adj., *just, lawful, rightful, valid; regular, usual.*

iuventūs, -ūtis [**iuvenis,** *young*], f., *youth.* Collective, *young persons, young men.*

iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtum, tr., *aid, assist, support.*

iūxtā, prep. with acc., and adv., *near, near by.*

K

Kal., abbr. for **Kalendae.**

Kalendae, -ārum, f., *Calends,* the first day of the month.

L

L., abbr. for the praenomen **Lūcius** (loo′-sh(i)us).

Laberius, **-ī**, m. (la-bē′-ri-us), *Quintus Laberius Durus*, a tribune in Caesar's army. V. 15.

Labiēnus, **-ī**, m. (lă-bi-ē′-nus), *Titus Labienus*, Caesar's foremost lieutenant in the Gallic War. I. 10, etc. ; II. 1, 11, 26 ; III. 11 ; IV. 38 ; V. 8, 17, 23, 24, 27, 37, 46, 47, 53–58.

lābor, **-ī**, **lāpsus sum**, dep., intr., *slip ; go wrong, commit a folly; fall away, fail in allegiance ; be deceived, be disappointed.*

labor, **-ōris**, m., *labor, toil, exertion ; endurance ; hardship.*

labōrō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [labor], intr., *labor, strive for, exert one's self ; be hard pressed, be in danger.*

lābrum, **-ī**, n., *a lip ; edge, margin, brim.*

lāc, **lactis**, n., *milk.*

lacessō, **-ere**, **-cessīvī**, **-cessītum**, tr., *provoke, exasperate, harass, attack, assail.*

lacrima, **-ae**, f., *tear.*

lacus, **-ūs**, m., *lake.*

laetitia, **-ae** [laetus], f., *joy, rejoicing, exultation.*

laetus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *joyful, exultant.*

languidus, **-a**, **-um** [langueō, *be weak*], adj., *weak, exhausted.*

languor, **-ōris** [langueō, *be weak*], m., *feebleness, weariness.*

lapis, **-idis**, m., *a stone.*

largior, **-īrī**, **-ītus sum** [largus, *abundant*], dep., tr., and intr., *give lavishly ; bestow, furnish.*

largiter [largus, *abundant*], adv., *abundantly, much ;* **largiter posse**, *to have great influence.*

largītiō, **-ōnis** [largior], f., *lavish giving, generosity.*

lassitūdō, **-dinis** [lassus, *faint*], f., *weariness, exhaustion.*

lātē [lātus], adv., *widely, extensively ;* **longē latēque**, *far and wide, on all sides.*

lateō, **-ēre**, **-uī**, —, intr., *lurk, lie hid, escape notice.*

lātitūdō, **-dinis** [lātus], f., *breadth, width, extent ;* **in lātitūdinem**, *in width, in extent ; horizontally, sidewise.*

Latobrigī, **-ōrum**, m. (lăt-o-brī′-jī), a tribe in Germany. I. 5, 28, 29. I 2.

latrō, **-ōnis**, m., *robber, brigand.*

lātus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *broad, wide, extensive.*

latus, **lateris**, n., *side, flank.*

laus, **laudis**, f., *praise, glory.*

lavō, **-āre**, **lāvī**, **lautum** or **lōtum**, tr., *wash, bathe.*

laxō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [laxus, *loose*], tr., *extend, open, open out.*

lēgātiō, **-ōnis** [lēgō, *depute*], f., *the office of ambassador ; mission ; deputation, commission, embassy.*

lēgātus, **-ī** [p.p. of lēgō, *depute*], m., *representative, commissioner, envoy ; lieutenant.*

legiō, **-ōnis** [legō, *select, collect*], f., *legion.*

legiōnārius, **-a**, **-um** [legiō], adj., *legionary, of the line.*

Lemannus, **-ī**, m., **lacus Lemannus**, *Lake Leman*, *Lake Geneva*. I. 2, 8; III. 1. H 3.

lēnis, **-e**, adj., *soft*, *mild*, *gentle*, *moderate*.

lēnitās, **-ātis** [lēnis], f., *smoothness*, *gentleness*.

lēniter [lēnis], adv., *mildly*, *gently*; *gradually*.

Lepontiī, **-ōrum**, m. (le-pŏn′-shi-ī), an Alpine tribe. IV. 10. I 3.

lepus, **-oris**, m., *a hare*.

Leucī, **-ōrum**, m. (lū′-sī), a tribe in Celtic Gaul. I. 40. G H 2.

Levācī, **-ōrum**, m. (le-vā′-sī), cf. French Léau: a tribe in Belgic Gaul. V. 39. G 1.

levis, **-e**, adj., *light*; *heedless*, *imprudent*.

levitās, **-ātis** [levis], f., *lightness*; *thoughtlessness*, *fickleness*, *inconstancy*.

levō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [levis], tr., *lighten*, *lift up*; *relieve*, *free*.

lēx, **lēgis**, f., *law*; *resolution*.

Lexoviī, **-ōrum**, m. (lĕk-sō′-vi-ī), a tribe in Celtic Gaul. III. 9, 11, 17, 29. D E 2.

libenter [libēns, *willing*], adv., *willingly*, *gladly*.

līber, **-era**, **-erum**, adj., *free*, *unrestricted*. Subst., **līberī**, **-ōrum**, m., (*free persons*), *children*.

līberālitās, **-ātis** [līberālis, *befitting a freeman*], f., *affability*; *liberality*, *generosity*.

līberāliter [līberālis, *befitting a freeman*], adv., *courteously*, *kindly*, *graciously*.

līberē [līber], adv., *freely*, *openly*, *frankly*, *boldly*.

līberī, **-ōrum**, see līber.

līberō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [līber], tr., *set free*, *free*, *relieve*.

lībertās, **-ātis** [līber], f., *freedom*, *liberty*, *independence*.

liceor, **-ērī**, **licitus sum**, dep., intr., *to bid*.

licet, **-ēre**, **licuit** or **licitum est**, intr., impers., *it is allowed* or *permitted*; *one is permitted*, *one may*.

Liger, **-eris**, m. (lī′-jer), a river in Celtic Gaul, *the Loire*. III. 9. D E F 3.

līgnātiō, **-ōnis** [līgnor, *gather wood*], f., (*the act of*) *getting wood*.

līgnātor, **-ōris** [līgnor, *gather wood*], m., *wood-cutter*.

Lingonēs, **-um**, m. (lĭng′-go-nēz), a tribe in Celtic Gaul. I. 26, 40; IV. 10. G 2.

lingua, **-ae**, f., *the tongue*; *speech*, *language*.

lingula, **-ae** [dim. of **lingua**], f., *a tongue of land*.

linter, **-tris**, f., *boat*, *skiff*.

līnum, **-ī**, n., *flax*; *linen*.

līs, **lītis**, f., *strife*; *litigation*; **lītem aestimāre**, *pass judgment*, *assess damages*.

Liscus, **-ī**, m. (lĭs′-kus), a Haeduan, chief magistrate at the time of Caesar's arrival in Gaul. I. 16, 17, 18.

littera, **-ae**, f., *a letter of the alphabet*. Pl., *writing*; *letter*,

epistle, *despatch*; **litterae pūblicae**, *official documents* or *records*.

lītus, **-oris**, n., *sea-shore*, *beach*, *strand*.

locus, **-ī** (pl., **loca**, **-ōrum**, n.), m., *place*, *spot*, *locality*, *region*; *space*, *ground*; *situation*, *condition*; *rank*, *place*, *position*; *chance*, *opportunity*.

longē [longus], adv., *far*, *far off*, *away*, *distant*; *by far*. See **lātē**.

longinquus, **-a**, **-um** [longus], adj., *far distant*, *remote*; *long continued*, *prolonged*.

longitūdō, **-dinis** [longus], f., *length*; **in longitūdinem**, *in length*.

longurius, **-ī** [longus], m., *a long pole*.

longus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *long*, *extended*. See **diēs**.

loquor, **-ī**, **locūtus sum**, dep., tr. and intr., *talk*, *speak*, *say*.

lōrīca, **-ae** [lōrum, *strap*], f., *cuirass*, *corselet*; *breastwork*, *parapet*.

Lūcānius, **-ī**, m. (loo-kā′-ni-us), *Quintus Lucanius*, a brave centurion in Caesar's army. V. 35.

Lugotorīx, **-īgis**, m. (loo-gŏt′-o-rīks), a British chief. V. 22.

lūna, **-ae**, f., *the moon*.

lūx, **lūcis**, f., *light*; *daylight*, *day*; **prīmā lūce**, *at daybreak*, *at dawn*; **ortā lūce**, *in the morning*, *by morning*.

lūxuria, **-ae** [lūxus, *excess*], f., *luxury*, *extravagant living*.

M

M. = mīlle, 1000.

M., abbr. for the praenomen **Mārcus** (mär′-kus).

māchinātiō, **-ōnis** [māchinor, *invent*], f., *mechanical contrivance*, *machine*, *engine of war*.

Magetobriga, **-ae**, f. (măj-e-tŏb′-ri-ga), a Gallic town, site unknown, near which the Haedui and allies were defeated by Ariovistus. I. 31. H 3 (?).

magis [cf. māgnus], comp. adv., *more*, *rather*. Superl., **māximē** [māximus], *in the highest degree*, *most*, *very*; *most of all*, *more than anything else*, *principally*, *especially*.

magistrātus, **-ūs** [magister, *master*], m., *magistracy*, *office*; *magistrate*.

māgnitūdō, **-dinis** [māgnus], f., *greatness*, *great size*, *size*, *magnitude*; *severity*, *violence*.

māgnopere [māgnō + opere], adv., *very much*, *strongly*, *earnestly*.

māgnus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., comp., **māior**, **-ius**, superl., **māximus**, *large*, *great*; **māgnī** (n. gen.), *of great importance* or *weight*. Pl. comp. as subst., **māiōrēs**, **-um**, m., *ancestors*, *forefathers*; **māiōrēs nātū**, *older people*, *elders*, *old men*.

malacia, **-ae**, f., *a calm* (at sea).

male [malus, *bad*], adv., comp., **pēius**, superl., **pessimē**, *badly*, *unsuccessfully*. **Pēius**, *worse*.

maleficium, **-ī** [maleficus,

wicked], n., *wrong-doing, mischief, damage.*

mālō, mālle, māluī [**magis** + **volō**], tr., *choose rather, prefer.*

mālus, -ī, m., *pole; mast.*

mandātum, -ī [p.p. of **mandō**], n., *injunction, command, order.*

mandō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**manus** + **dō**], tr., *hand over; intrust, commit, confide; assign a task* or *duty, direct, instruct.* See **fuga.**

Mandubracius, -ī, m. (măn′-dū-brā′-sh(i)-us), a prince of the Trinovantes, in Britain. V. 20, 22.

māne, adv., *in the morning.*

maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsum, intr., *stay, remain; persist, remain steadfast.*

manipulus, -ī, m., *a maniple, one-third of a cohort.*

Mānlius, -ī, m. (măn′-li-us), *Lucius Manlius*, a Roman proconsul defeated by the Aquitani in 78. III. 20.

mānsuētūdō, -dinis [**mānsuētus**, *tamed*], f., *gentleness, leniency.*

manus, -ūs, f., *the hand; band, force, forces;* **manū** (in contrast to **nātūrā**), *by hand, artificially;* **manūs dare**, *give up, yield;* **in manibus nostrīs**, *close upon us.*

Marcomannī, -ōrum, m. (mär-ko-măn′-nī), a tribe in Germany. I. 51. J 2.

mare, -is, n., *the sea;* **mare Ōceanum**, *the ocean.*

maritimus, -a, -um [**mare**], adj., *of the sea, along the coast, maritime;* **maritimae rēs**, *seafaring, naval tactics* or *operations.*

Marius, -ī, m. (mā′-ri-us), *Gaius Marius*, a Roman general, conqueror of the Cimbri and Teutones. I. 40.

matara, -ae, f. (Celtic word), *javelin, pike.*

māter, -tris, f., *mother;* **mātrēs familiae**, *matrons.*

māteria, -ae, f., *material; timber, lumber.*

mātrimōnium, -ī [**māter**], n., *marriage;* **in mātrimōnium dare**, *give in marriage;* **in mātrimōnium dūcere**, *marry.*

Matrona, -ae, m. (măt′-ro-na), a river in Gaul, *the Marne.* I. 1. F G 2.

mātūrē [**mātūrus**], adv., *early, soon, quickly.*

mātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**mātūrus**], tr. and intr., *make haste, hasten.*

mātūrus, -a, -um, adj., *ripe, mature; early.*

māximē, see **magis.**

māximus, -a, -um, see **māgnus.**

Māximus, -ī, m. (măk′-si-mus), see **Fabius.**

medeor, -ērī, —, dep., intr., *to remedy, relieve.*

mediocris, -e [**medius**], adj., *moderate, ordinary.*

mediocriter [**mediocris**], adv., *moderately;* **nōn mediocriter**, *in no slight degree.*

Mediomatricī, **-um**, m. (mē″-di-o-măt′-ri-sī), a tribe in Celtic Gaul. IV. 10. G H 2.

mediterrāneus, **-a**, **-um** [**medius** + **terra**], adj., *inland, of the interior.*

medius, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *middle, central; middle of, midst of; halfway up, across,* or *between.*

Meldī, **-ōrum**, m. (mĕl′-dī), a tribe in Celtic Gaul. V. 5. F 2.

membrum, **-ī**, n., *limb* (of the body).

meminī, **-isse**, def., tr., *remember.*

memoria, **-ae** [memor, *mindful*], f., *memory, remembrance;* **memoriā**, *within the memory, in the time.*

Menapiī, **-ōrum**, m. (me-nā′-pi-ī), a tribe in Belgic Gaul. II. 4; III. 9, 28, 29; IV. 4, 22, 38. G H 1.

mēns, **mentis**, f., *mind; reason, judgment; disposition, character.*

mēnsis, **-is**, m., *a month.*

mēnsūra, **-ae** [**mētior**], f., *measurement.*

mercātor, **-ōris** [**mercor**, *to trade*], m., *trader, merchant.*

mercēs, **-ēdis** [cf. **mercor**, *to trade*], f., *price, hire, compensation.*

mereor, **-ērī**, **-itus sum**, dep., tr. and intr., *deserve, merit; win, acquire; serve, render service;* **dē . . . merērī**, *render service to, be deserving of.*

merīdiānus, **-a**, **-um** [**merīdiēs**], adj., *of midday;* **merīdiānum tempus**, *noon.*

merīdiēs, **-ēī**, m., *noon; the south.*

meritum, **-ī** [p.p. of **mereō**, *deserve; serve*], n., *merit, service, favor, kindness.*

Messāla, **-ae**, m. (me-sā′-la), *Marcus Valerius Messala,* consul along with Marcus Pupius Piso in 61. I. 2, 35.

mētior, **-īrī**, **mēnsus sum**, dep., tr., *measure out, deal out, distribute.*

Metius, **-ī**, m. (mē′-sh(i)-us), *Marcus Metius,* a friend of Caesar's sent as envoy to Ariovistus. I. 47, 53.

metō, **-ere**, **messuī**, **messum**, tr., *reap, cut* (grain).

metus, **-ūs**, m., *fear, dread.*

meus, **-a**, **-um**, possess. adj., *my, my own, mine.*

mīles, **-itis**, m., *soldier.*

mīlitāris, **-e** [**mīles**], adj., *of war, military;* **rēs mīlitāris**, *science* or *art of war, military service.*

mīlle, num., indecl. in sing., pl., **mīlia**, **-ium**, *a thousand.*

minimē, see **parum**.

minimus, **-a**, **-um**, see **parvus**.

minor, **-us**, see **parvus**.

minuō, **-ere**, **-uī**, **-ūtum**, tr. and intr., *lessen, diminish, impair, weaken; settle, adjust; ebb* (of the tide).

minus, see **parum**.

mīror, **-ārī**, **-ātus sum** [**mīrus**], dep., tr. and intr., *wonder, wonder at.*

mīrus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *wonderful*, *strange*, *extraordinary*.

miser, **-era**, **-erum**, adj., *wretched*, *pitiable*, *deplorable*.

misericordia, **-ae** [misericors, *compassionate*], f., *pity*, *compassion*, *mercy*.

miseror, **-ārī**, **-ātus sum** [miser], dep., tr., *lament*, *commiserate*.

(**missus**, **-ūs**) [mittō], m., only in abl. sing., *a sending;* **missū Caesaris**, *sent by Caesar*, *as Caesar's representative*.

mittō, **-ere**, **mīsī**, **missum**, tr., *send*, *despatch;* *hurl*, *cast*, *launch*.

mōbilis, **-e** [moveō], adj., *unstable*, *thoughtless*, *impulsive*.

mōbilitās, **-ātis** [mōbilis], f., *rapidity*, *mobility;* *instability*, *impulsiveness*.

mōbiliter [mōbilis], adv., *quickly;* *easily*.

moderor, **-ārī**, **-ātus sum** [modus], dep., tr., *manage*, *control*, *guide*.

modo [abl. of modus], adv., *only*, *merely*, *even*, *so much as*.

modus, **-ī**, m., *measure*, *size*, *amount;* *sort*, *kind;* *way*, *method*, *manner;* *capacity;* **ad eundem modum**, *in the same manner;* **ad hunc modum**, *in the following manner;* **quem ad modum**, *as;* *how;* **ēius modī**, *of such a sort* or *kind*, *such;* **hūius modī**, *of this sort*, *as follows;* **in mīrum modum**, *surprisingly*, *astonishingly;* **nūllō modō**, *in no way*, *not at all*.

moenia, **-ium**, n., *walls* (of a town).

mōlēs, **-is**, f., *a mass;* *dike*, *mole*.

molestē [molestus, *troublesome*], adv., *with trouble* or *vexation;* **molestē ferre**, *be vexed* or *annoyed*, *resent*.

mōlīmentum, **-ī** [mōlior, *exert one's self*], n., *trouble*, *effort*.

mollis, **-e**, adj., *gentle*, *timid*, *weak;* *smooth*, *gently sloping*.

molō, **-ere**, **moluī**, **molitum**, tr., *grind*.

Mona, **-ae**, f. (mō′-na), an island in the Irish Sea, Anglesey. V. 13.

moneō, **-ēre**, **-uī**, **-itum**, tr., *warn*, *urge*, *advise*, *direct*.

mōns, **montis**, m., *a mountain*, *range of mountains*.

mora, **ae**, f., *delay*.

Morinī, **-ōrūm**, m. (mŏr′-i-nī), a tribe in Belgic Gaul. II. 4; III. 9, 28, 29; IV. 21, 22, 37, 38; V. 24. F 1.

morior, **morī**, **mortuus sum** [cf. mors], dep., intr., *die*.

Moritasgus, **-ī**, m. (mŏr-i-tăs′-gus), a king of the Senones. V. 54.

moror, **-ārī**, **-ātus sum** [mora], dep., tr. and intr., *delay*, *linger*, *wait*, *remain;* *hinder*, *impede*.

mors, **mortis**, f., *death*.

mōs, **mōris**, m., *manner*, *fashion*, *custom*, *practice*.

Mosa, **-ae**, m. (mō′-sa), a river in Celtic and Belgic Gaul,

the Meuse or *Maas.* IV. 9 ff.; V. 24. G 1, 2.

mōtus, **-ūs** [**moveō**], m., *motion*, *movement; disturbance*, *uprising*, *insurrection.*

moveō, **-ēre**, **mōvī**, **mōtum**, tr., *move; break* (camp).

mulier, **-eris**, f., *woman.*

multitūdō, **-dinis** [**multus**], f., *large number*, *multitude; overpowering numbers; the multitude*, *the common people.*

multō [abl. n. of **multus**], adv., *much*, *far*, *by far.*

multum [acc. n. of **multus**], adv., *much*, *greatly; often.*

multus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., comp., **plūs**, superl., **plūrimus**, *much;* pl., *many.* Subst., **multum**, **-ī**, n., *a great part*, *much;* pl., *many things.* Subst., **plūs**, **-ūris**, n., *more*, *a greater amount;* **plūrēs**, subst. or adj., *more; several; many*, *too many.* Subst., **plūrimum**, **-ī**, n., *a great deal*, *most;* **plūrimī**, **-ōrum**, m., *a great many*, *very many*, *the most.*

Munātius, **-ī**, m. (mū-nā′-sh(i)us), *Lucius Munatius Plancus*, one of Caesar's lieutenants. V. 24, 25.

mūnīmentum, **-ī** [**mūniō**], n., *defence*, *fortification.*

mūnio, **-īre**, **-īvī**, **-ītum** [**moenia**], tr., (*furnish with walls*); *fortify*, *protect; construct.*

mūnītus, **-a**, **-um** [p.p. of **mūniō**], adj., *fortified*, *protected*, *defended.*

mūnītiō, **-ōnis** [**mūniō**], f., *the work of fortifying; defence*, *fortifications*, *intrenchments.*

mūrālis, **-e** [**mūrus**], adj., *of a wall*, *wall-*, *mural.* See **falx**, **pīlum.**

mūrus, **-ī**, m., *a wall*, *city wall.*

N

nactus, **-a**, **-um**, see **nancīscor.**

nam, conj., *for;* enclitic with interrogatives, *pray*, *indeed.*

Nammēius, **-ī**, m. (na-mē′-yus), a Helvetian, sent as envoy to Caesar. I. 7.

Namnetēs, **-um**, m. (năm′-ne-tēz), cf. French Nantes: a tribe in Celtic Gaul. III. 9. D 3.

nam-que, conj., *for indeed*, *naturally enough for*, *inasmuch as*, *seeing that.*

nancīscor, **-ī**, **nactus sum**, dep., tr., *obtain*, *secure*, *find*, *meet with.*

Nantuātēs, **-ium**, m. (năn-tū-ā′-tēz), a tribe in Celtic Gaul. III. 1–6; IV. 10. H 3, 4.

Narbō, **-ōnis**, m. (när′-bō), a city in the Transalpine province, now *Narbonne.* III. 20. F 5.

nāscor, **-ī**, **nātus sum**, dep., intr., *be born*, *spring from; be produced*, *be raised; be found; rise*, *arise.*

Nasua, **-ae**, m. (năsh′-ū-a), a leader of the Suebi. I. 37.

nātiō, **-ōnis** [**nāscor**], f., *tribe*, *race*, *people.*

nātūra, **-ae** [**nāscor**], f., *nature*, *character;* **nātūrā**, *naturally*, *by nature.*

(**nātus**, **-ūs**) [**nāscor**], m., used only in abl. sing., *birth*, *age*. See **māiōrēs**.

nauta, **-ae** [for **nāvita**, from **nāvis**], m., *sailor*, *seaman*.

nauticus, **-a**, **-um** [**nauta**], adj., *naval*, *nautical*; **rēs nauticae**, *naval affairs*, *seamanship*.

nāvālis, **-e** [**nāvis**], adj., *naval*.

nāvicula, **-ae** [dim. of **nāvis**], f., *skiff*, *boat*.

nāvigātiō, **-ōnis** [**nāvigō**], f., *sailing*, *navigation*; *voyage*.

nāvigium, **-ī** [**nāvigō**], n., *vessel*, *ship*; **nāvigium vectōrium**, *transport-ship*, *transport*; **nāvigium speculātōrium**, *spy-boat*.

nāvigō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [**nāvis** + **agō**], intr., *sail*, *navigate*.

nāvis, **-is**, f., *ship*; **nāvis āctuāria**, *a swift galley*; **nāvis longa**, *war-galley*, *man-of-war*; **nāvis onerāria**, *transport-ship*, *transport*.

nāvō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [**nāvus**, *busy*], tr., *do zealously*; **operam nāvāre**, *do one's best*.

nē, conj., *not*. In clauses of purpose, *that not*, *in order that not*, *in order not to*, *not to*; *lest*, *for fear that*. In substantive object clauses, *not to*, *that not*; after verbs of fear, *that*; verbs of hindering, *from*. In substantive clauses used as subject or in apposition, *that not*. **Nē quis**, see **quis**. Adv., in the combination **nē** . . . **quidem**, *not even*.

-ne, enclitic particle, sign of a question. In indirect double questions, **-ne** . . . **an**, or **-ne** . . . **-ne**, *whether* . . . *or*.

nec, see **neque**.

necessāriō [abl. n. of **necessārius**], adv., *necessarily*, *inevitably*, *unavoidably*.

necessārius, **-a**, **-um** [**necesse**], adj., *necessary*, *indispensable*, *essential*; *urgent*, *critical*. Subst., **necessāriī**, **-ōrum**, m., *close friends*, *kinsmen*.

necesse, adj., only nom. and acc. sing. n., *necessary*, *inevitable*.

necessitās, **-ātis** [**necesse**], f., *necessity*, *need*, *exigency*.

necessitūdō, **-dinis** [**necesse**], f., *close connection*, *intimate friendship*.

nec-ne, conj., in indirect double questions, **utrum** . . . **necne**, *whether* . . . *or not*.

necō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [**nex**], tr., *kill*, *put to death*.

neglegō, **-ere**, **-lēxī**, **-lēctum** [**nec** + **legō**, *gather*, *choose*], tr., *disregard*, *overlook*, *neglect*, *let go unpunished* or *unavenged*.

negō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, tr. and intr., *say not*; *refuse*, *deny*; *stand out against*.

negōtium, **-ī** [**nec** + **ōtium**, *leisure*], n., *business*, *affair*; *task*, *duty*; *undertaking*, *purpose*; *trouble*, *difficulty*.

Nemetēs, **-um**, m. (nĕm-e-tēz), a German tribe near the Rhine. I. 51. I 2.

nēmō, no gen., dat. **nēminī** [**nē** + **homō**], m. and f., *nobody.*

nē-quāquam, adv., *by no means, not at all.*

neque or **nec**, adv. and conj., *and not, nor; and yet not, but not;* **neque . . . neque**, *neither . . . nor.*

nēquīquam [**nē** + **quīquam**, abl. of **quisquam**], adv., *in vain; without purpose, recklessly.*

Nervicus, -a, -um, adj., *of* or *with the Nervii.* III. 5.

Nervius, -ī, m., *one of the Nervii.* Pl., *the Nervii* (nĕr′-vi-ī), a tribe in Belgic Gaul. II. 4, 15–29, 32; V. 24, 38–52, 56, 58. F G 1.

nervus, -ī, m., *sinew.* Pl., *strength, power.*

neu or **nē-ve**, conj., usually following **ut** or **nē**, *and not, and that not.*

neuter, -tra, -trum, gen. **-trīus** [**nē**+**uter**], pronom. adj., *neither.* Pl., *neither side, neither party.*

nex, necis, f., *death* (by violence).

nihil [nihilum], n., indecl., *nothing.* Adverbially, *not at all, not in the least;* **nōn nihil**, *somewhat, to some extent.*

nihilum, -ī [ne = **nē**, *not,* + **hilum**, *a bit*], n., *nothing.* Abl. **nihilō**, with comparatives, *by nothing, none the;* **nihilō magis**, *none the more;* **nihilō minus**, *none the less, nevertheless;* **nihilō sētius**, *nevertheless, however.*

nisi [ne = **nē**, *not,* + **sī**], conj., *if not, unless.* With adversative force, *except, but.*

nītor, -ī, nīxus or **nīsus sum**, dep., intr., *lean; rely* or *depend upon; strive, endeavor.*

nōbilis, -e [**nōscō**], adj., *famous, noted; of high birth* or *rank, nobly born, noble.* Subst., **nōbilēs, -ium**, m., *men of high rank, nobles.*

nōbilitās, -ātis [**nōbilis**], f., *fame; high* or *noble birth, nobility.* Collective, *the nobility, nobles.*

noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, intr., *injure, harm, do harm;* **nihil nocēre**, *do no harm.*

noctū [cf. **nox**], adv., *in the night, at* or *by night.*

nocturnus, -a, -um [**nox**], adj., *by* or *at night, nocturnal.*

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī [**nē** + **volō**], tr. and intr., *wish not, be unwilling.*

nōmen, -inis, n., *name, title; guise, pretext; fame, prestige; power, nation.*

nōminātim [**nōminō**], adv., *by name, one by one.*

nōminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**nōmen**], tr., *name, call; mention.*

nōn, adv., *not.*

nōnāgintā, indecl. num., *ninety.*

nōn-dum, adv., *not yet.*

nōnus, -a, -um [**novem**], num. adj., *ninth.*

Nōrēia, -ae, f. (no-rē′-ya), capital of the Norici, now *Neumarkt.* I. 5.

Nōricus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *of the Norici*, *Norican;* ager **Nōricus**, *the land of the Norici.* I. 5. Subst., **Nōrica**, **-ae**, f., *a Norican woman.* I. 53.

nōscō, **-ere**, **nōvī**, **nōtum**, tr., *become acquainted with*, *learn.* Perfect, *know*, *be acquainted with.*

noster, **-tra**, **-trum** [nōs], possess. adj., *our*, *ours*, *our own.* Subst., **nostrī**, **-ōrum**, m., *our men*, *troops*, or *soldiers.*

nōtus, **-a**, **-um** [p.p. of **nōscō**], adj., *known*, *familiar.*

novem, indecl. num., *nine.*

Noviodūnum, **-ī**, n. (nō″-vi-o-dū′-num), (1) A town of the Bituriges. F 3. (2) A town of the Haedui, now *Nevers.* F 3. (3) A town of the Suessiones, now *Soissons.* II. 12. F 2.

novitās, **-ātis** [**novus**], f., *novelty*, *strangeness.*

novus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *new*, *recent*, *fresh;* *unusual*, *novel*, *strange;* **nova imperia** or **novae rēs**, *change in government*, *revolution.* Superl., *last*, *latest*, *most recent;* *rear.* Subst., **novissimī**, **-ōrum**, m., *those in the rear line*, *the rear line.*

nox, **noctis**, f., *night.* See **adversus**. **media nox**, *midnight;* **multā** nocte, *late at night;* **ad multam noctem**, *till late at night;* **prīmā** nocte, *at night-fall*, *early at night.*

nūbō, **-ere**, **nūpsī**, **nūptum**, intr., (*veil one's self*), *be married;* conlocāre nūptum, *give in marriage.*

nūdō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [nūdus], tr., *lay bare*, *strip*, *leave exposed* or *unprotected.*

nūdus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *naked*, *bare;* *exposed*, *unprotected.*

nūllus, **-a**, **-um**, gen. **nullīus** [**ne** = **nē** + **ūllus**], pronom. adj., *no*, *none*, *not any;* *no one*, *nobody;* nōn nūllus, *some;* pl., *some*, *several*, *certain.*

num, interrog. particle, anticipating a negative answer.

numerus, **-ī**, m., *number;* *rank*, *esteem.*

Numidae, **-ārum**, m., *the Numidians*, a people of northern Africa, employed in Caesar's army as archers and other light-armed troops. II. 7, 10, 24.

nummus, **-ī**, m., *a coin;* *money.*

numquam [**ne** = **nē** + **umquam**], adv., *never;* **nōn numquam**, *sometimes*, *occasionally.*

nunc, adv., *now*, *at present.*

nūntiō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [nūntius], tr., *announce*, *report;* *give orders*, *direct.*

nūntius, **-ī**, m., *messenger*, *courier;* *message*, *report*, *news.*

nūper, adv., *recently*, *lately.*

nūtus, **-ūs** [nuō, *nod*], m., *nod*, *beckoning*, *gesture;* **ad nūtum**, *at a nod.*

O

ob, prep. with acc., (*over against*), *on account of*, *because of*, *for;* ob **eam causam** or ob **eam rem**, *for that reason*, *for*

this reason; quam ob rem, *therefore; why.*

obaerātus, -a, -um [ob + aes], adj., *in debt.* Subst., **obaerātī, -ōrum,** m., *debtors.*

ob-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, tr., *construct, extend.*

ob-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, tr., (*go to meet*), *attend to.*

obiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum [ob + iaciō], tr., *throw before* or *in the way, place in front, interpose; expose, present;* **obiectus,** p.p., *lying opposite* or *in the way, presenting itself.*

obitus, -ūs [obeō], m., *downfall, destruction.*

oblīquē [oblīquus, *slanting*], adv., *obliquely, slantingly.*

oblīvīscor, -ī, -lītus sum, dep., tr. and intr., *forget.*

obsecrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ob + sacrō, *make sacred*], tr., *beseech, entreat, implore.*

ob-servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *watch, observe, heed, regard, obey.*

obses, -sidis [cf. obsideō], m. and f., *hostage.*

obsideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum [ob + sedeō, *sit*], tr., *besiege, invest; take possession of, blockade.*

obsidiō, -ōnis [obsideō], f., *siege, investment, blockade; oppression, persecution.*

ob-sīgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [sīgnō, *mark, seal*], tr., *to seal, attest under seal.*

obstinātē [obstinātus, *resolved*], adv., *firmly, resolutely.*

ob-stringō, -ere, -strīnxī, -strictum [stringō, *draw tight*], tr., *bind, place under obligations.*

ob-struō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctum [struō, *pile up*], tr., *bar, barricade.*

ob-temperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr., *submit to, obey.*

ob-testor, -ārī, -ātus sum [testor, *invoke*], dep., tr., *beg, implore, urge.*

obtineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum [ob + teneō], tr., *have, hold, possess, occupy; keep, maintain; acquire, obtain, secure.*

ob-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, intr., *come up to, meet.*

occāsiō, -ōnis [occidō], f., *opportunity, favorable opportunity.*

occāsus, -ūs [occidō], m., *a falling, setting;* **sōlis occāsus,** *sunset; the west.*

occidō, -ere, -cidī, -casum [ob + cadō], intr., *fall down, fall; set; perish;* **occidēns sōl,** *the west.*

occīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum [ob + caedō], tr., *cut down, kill, slay.*

occultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [freq. of **occulō,** *cover*], tr., *hide, conceal.*

occultus, -a, -um [p.p. of **occulō**], adj., *hidden, concealed, secret.* Subst., n., **ex occultō,** *from hiding;* **in occultō,** *in hiding, in secret.*

occupātiō, -ōnis [occupō], f., *occupation, employment, duty, devotion to;* **occupātiōnēs reī**

pūblicae, *public* or *official duties.*

occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ob, cf. **capiō**], tr., *take possession of, seize, become master of; occupy, cover; employ, busy.*

occurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursum [ob + **currō**, *run*], intr., *run to meet; dare to meet* or *oppose; fall in with, happen upon, meet, encounter, find; run to the rescue; provide against, obviate, frustrate.*

Ōceanus, -ī, m., *the ocean.* Neuter with **mare**, *the sea.*

Ocelum, -ī, n. (ŏs′-e-lum), a town of the Graioceli. I. 10. H 4.

octāvus, -a, -um [**octō**], num. adj., *eighth.*

octingentī, -ae, -a [**octō** + **centum**], num. adj., *eight hundred.*

octō, indecl. num., *eight.*

Octodūrus, -ī, m. (ŏk-to-dū′-rus), a town of the Veragri. III. 1–6. H 3.

octōgintā [**octō**], indecl. num., *eighty.*

oculus, -ī, m., *eye.*

ōdī, ōdisse, ōsūrus, def., tr., *hate.*

offendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsum [ob + **-fendō**, *strike*], tr., (*dash against*); *offend.*

offēnsiō, -ōnis [**offendō**], f., *offence.*

offerō, -ferre, obtulī, oblātum [ob + **ferō**], tr., *carry along, take; present, offer.*

officium, -ī [for **opificium**, cf. **opus** + **faciō**], n., *service; duty, sense of duty, allegiance;* **in officiō esse** or **manēre**, *remain obedient* or *loyal, maintain one's allegiance;* **in officiō tenēre**, *keep loyal.*

omittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum [ob+**mittō**], tr., *let go; neglect, disregard.*

omnīnō [**omnis**], adv., *wholly, altogether; in all, only.* With negatives, *at all.*

omnis, -e, adj., *all, every, each; the entire, the whole, the whole of, as a whole, in general; every kind* or *sort of.* Subst., **omnēs, -ium**, m., *all, everybody;* **omnia, -ium**, n., *all things, everything.*

onerārius, -a, -um [**onus**], adj., *of burden.* See **nāvis.**

onerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**onus**], tr., *to load.*

onus, -eris, n., *load, burden, weight.*

opera, -ae [**opus**], f., *toil, exertion, trouble; services, assistance;* **ēius operā**, *by his agency, thanks to him;* **dare operam ut**, *take pains to, exert one's self to.* See **nāvō.**

opīniō, -ōnis [**opīnor**, *suppose*], f., *opinion, belief, supposition, impression, idea, expectation; reputation, fame;* **celerius omnium opīniōne**, *more quickly than any one expects.*

oportet, -ēre, oportuit, impers., intr., *it is necessary;* translated personally, *one ought, one must.*

oppidānus, -a, -um [oppidum], adj., *of a town.* Subst., **oppidānī, -ōrum**, m., *townspeople.*

oppidum, -ī, n., *town, city.*

opportūnē [**opportūnus**], adv., *opportunely, luckily.*

opportūnitās, -ātis [**opportūnus**], f., *opportuneness, advantage, superiority; favorable opportunity* or *occasion.*

opportūnus, -a, -um, adj., *adapted, convenient, favorable, opportune.*

opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum [**ob + premō**], tr., *weigh down, overcome, overwhelm, crush; surprise.*

oppūgnātiō, -ōnis [**oppūgnō**], f., *attack, assault, siege; method of attack.*

oppūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**ob + pūgnō**], tr., *attack, assail, assault, try to take by storm.*

(**ops**), **opis**, f., no nom. or dat. sing., *aid, help.* Pl., *means, resources; might, power.*

optimē, see **bene.**

optimus, -a, -um, see **bonus.**

opus, -eris, n., *work, labor, toil; work, structure; works, siege-works, defensive works;* **opere** (in contrast to **nātūrā**), *by art, artificially;* **quantō opere**, *how greatly, how much.* Indecl., *need, necessity;* **opus est**, *it is necessary, there is need.*

ōra, -ae, f., *coast, sea-coast.*

ōrātiō, -ōnis [**ōrō**], f., *talk, words, speech, address.*

ōrātor, -ōris [**ōrō**], m., *speaker; envoy, official representative.*

orbis, -is, m., *ring, circle;* **in orbem cōnsistere**, *form a circle.*

ōrdō, -dinis, m., *row, line, rank; class, grade; order, arrangement.*

Orgetorix, -īgis, m. (ôr-jĕt′-o-rĭks), a chief of the Helvetii. I. 2–5, 9, 26.

orior, -īrī, ortus sum, dep., intr., *arise, rise; start, begin; spring from, be descended, originate;* **oriēns sōl**, *sunrise; the east.* See **lūx.**

ōrnāmentum, -ī [**ōrnō**, *fit out*], n., *equipment; honor, distinction.*

ōrnātus, -a, -um [p.p. of **ōrnō**, *fit out*], adj., *furnished, equipped.*

ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**ōs**], tr., *urge, beg, entreat, implore.*

ōs, ōris, n., *mouth, face.*

Osismī, -ōrum, m. (o-sĭs′-mī), a tribe in Celtic Gaul. II. 34; III. 9. C 2.

ostendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum [**obs = ob + tendō**, *stretch*], tr., *point out, show; make known, make clear, tell, declare; display, unmask, bring into action.*

ostentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [freq. of **ostendō**], tr., *show, exhibit, display, call attention to.*

ōvum, -ī, n., *an egg.*

P

P., abbr. for the praenomen **Pūblius** (pŭb′-li-us).

pābulātiō, **-ōnis** [pābulor], f., *foraging*, *foraging raids*.

pābulātor, **-ōris** [pābulor], m., *a forager*.

pābulor, **ārī**, **-ātus sum** [pābulum], dep., intr., *to forage*.

pābulum, **-ī**, n., *forage*, *fodder*, *pasturage*.

pācātus, **-a**, **-um** [p.p. of pācō], adj., *in a state of peace*, *tranquil*, *submissive*.

pācō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [pāx], tr., *make peaceful*, *subdue*.

Padus, **-ī**, m. (pā'-dus), *the river Po*. V. 24. H I J 4.

paene, adv., *almost*, *nearly*.

paenitet, **-ēre**, **paenituit**, impers., tr., *it repents*, *it makes sorry;* **eum paenitet**, *he repents* or *regrets*.

pāgus, **-ī**, m., *district*, *canton*, *division*.

palam, adv., *openly*, *publicly*.

palūs, **-ūdis**, f., *swamp*, *marsh*.

pandō, **-ere**, **pandī**, **passum**, tr., *spread out*, *stretch out*, *extend;* *dishevel*.

pār, gen. **paris**, adj., *equal*, *the same;* *a match for*, *well-matched;* **pār atque**, or **pār quī**, *the same as*.

parātus, **-a**, **-um** [p.p. of parō], adj., *prepared*, *ready*, *in readiness;* *equipped*.

parcō, **-ere**, **peperci**, **parsūrus**, intr., *spare*, *treat with forbearance*, *show mercy to*.

parēns, **-entis** [pr. p. of **pariō**], m. and f., *parent*.

pāreō, **-ēre**, **-uī**, —, intr., *obey*, *submit to*.

pariō, **parere**, **peperī**, **partum**, tr., (*bring forth*) ; *win*, *acquire*.

parō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, tr., *prepare*, *prepare for;* *furnish*, *provide*, *raise*, *secure*, *acquire*.

pars, **partis**, f., *part*, *portion*, *share*, *division ;* *region*, *district ;* *direction*, *quarter*, *side;* *faction*, *party ;* **ab eā parte**, *in that quarter* or *direction*, *on that side ;* **ab extrēmā parte**, *at the end ;* **ab īnferiōre parte**, *lower down*, *on the lower side;* **ab superiōre parte**, *in the upper part ;* **māgnā ex parte**, *to a great extent*, *largely ;* **ex omnī parte** or **ex omnibus partibus**, *from* or *on all sides;* **ūnā ex parte**, *on one side*.

partim [pars], adv., *partly*, *in part*.

partior, **-īrī**, **-ītus sum** [pars], dep., tr., *share*, *divide*, *distribute*.

parum, adv., *too little*, *not enough*, *not very*. Comp., **minus**, *less*. Superl., **minimē**, *least*, *very little*, *by no means*.

parvulus, **-a**, **-um** [dim. of **parvus**], adj., *very small*, *slight ;* *unimportant ;* *very young*. See **proelium**.

parvus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *small*, *trifling*, *slight*, *low*. Comp., **minor**, **-us**, *smaller*, *less*. Superl., **minimus**, **-a**, **-um**, *least*, *slightest*.

passim [**passus**, **pandō**], adv., *here and there*, *in all directions*.

passus, **-ūs**, m., *step*, *pace*. As a measure, *a pace*, 5 Roman feet = 4 English feet + 10¼ inches; **mīlle passūs**, *a mile* (Roman) = 1616 yards, 2 feet, 2 inches.

patefaciō, **-facere**, **-fēcī**, **-factum** [**pateō** + **faciō**], tr., *throw open*, *open*, *open up*. Pass., **patefīō**, **-fierī**, **-factus sum**.

patēns, gen. **-entis** [pr. p. of **pateō**], adj., *open*, *exposed*, *unprotected*.

pateō, **-ēre**, **-uī**, —, intr., *be open*, *stand open*; *be accessible*, *be passable*; *stretch out*, *extend*.

pater, **-tris**, m., *father*. Pl., *ancestors*, *forefathers*.

patior, **patī**, **passus sum**, dep., tr., *bear*, *endure*; *allow*, *permit*.

patrius, **-a**, **-um** [**pater**], adj., *of a father*; *ancestral*.

paucī, **-ae**, **-a**, adj., *few*, *a few*. Subst., **paucī**, **-ōrum**, m., *few*, *a few*; **pauca**, **-ōrum**, n., *a few things* or *words*; *briefly*.

paucitās, **-ātis** [**paucus**], f., *small number* or *numbers*.

paulātim [**paulum**], adv., *gradually*; *a few at a time*.

paulisper [**paulum** + **per**], adv., *for a little while*, *a short time*.

paulō [abl. n. of **paulus**, *little*], adv., *a little*, *somewhat*; *shortly*, *a little while*; *a short distance*.

paululum [acc. n. of **paululus**, *a very little*], adv., *a very little*, *slightly*.

paulum [acc. n. of **paulus**, *little*], adv., *a little*, *somewhat*; *a short distance*, *a short time*.

pāx, **pācis**, f., *peace*, *friendly relations*.

peccō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, intr., *give offence*, *do injury*.

pecūnia, **-ae** [**pecus**, *cattle*], f., *property*, *wealth*, *money*, *sum of money*.

pecus, **-oris**, n., *cattle*; *herds*, *flocks*; *flesh*, *meat*.

pedālis, **-e** [**pēs**], adj., *a foot in measure*, *a foot high* or *thick*.

pedes, **-itis** [**pēs**], m., *foot-soldier*, *infantryman*. Pl., *the infantry*.

pedester, **-tris**, **-tre** [**pēs**], adj., *on foot*, *infantry*; *by* or *on land*; **pedestrēs cōpiae**, *infantry*.

peditātus, **-ūs** [**pedes**], m., *infantry*.

Pedius, **-ī**, m. (pē′-di-us), *Quintus Pedius*, grand-nephew of Caesar and one of his lieutenants. II. 2, 11.

pēius, see **male**.

pellis, **-is**, f., *a skin*, *hide*; **sub pellibus**, *in tents*.

pellō, **-ere**, **pepulī**, **pulsum**, tr., (*beat*); *drive out*, *expel*; *drive in confusion*, *put to flight*, *rout*.

pendō, **-ere**, **pependī**, **pēnsum**, tr., *weigh out*; *pay*.

per, prep. with acc., *through*, *across*, *over*, *along*; *during*, *in*; *by the agency of*, *by*, *by means of*; *on account of*, *because of*; **per sē**, *of one's own accord*; *so far as one is concerned*; *of* or *by itself*.

per-agō, **-ere**, **-ēgī**, **-āctum**, tr., *finish*, *end*.

percipiō, **-cipere**, **-cēpī**, **-ceptum** [per + capiō], tr., *seize*; *win*, *gain*; *hear*, *listen to*, *hear of*, *learn of*.

percontātiō, **-ōnis** [percontor, *to question strictly*], f., *persistent inquiry*, *repeated questions*.

per-currō, **-ere**, **-cucurrī** or **-currī**, **-cursum** [currō, *run*], tr. and intr., *run through*, *run along*, *run over*.

percutiō, **-cutere**, **-cussī**, **-cussum** [per + quatiō, *shake*], tr., *thrust through*, *pierce*.

perditus, **a**,- **-um** [p.p. of perdō, *ruin*], adj., *ruined*, *desperate*; **perditi hominēs**, *desperadoes*, *adventurers*.

per-dūcō, **-ere**, **-dūxī**, **-ductum**, tr., *lead* or *conduct through*, *bring across*, *bring*; *construct*; *prolong*.

perendinus, **-a**, **-um** [perendiē, *on the day after to-morrow*]; adj., *after to-morrow*; **perendinō diē**, *day after to-morrow*.

per-eō, **-ire**, **-iī**, **-itūrus**, intr., *perish*, *fall*.

per-equitō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, — [equitō, *ride*], intr., *ride* or *drive through*, *ride* or *drive about*.

per-exiguus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *very small*.

per-facilis, **-e**, adj., *very easy*.

per-ferō, **-ferre**, **-tuli**, **-lātum**, tr., *bear* or *bring through*; *bring* or *spread news of*, *report*, *noise abroad*; *bear*, *endure*, *suffer*, *submit to*, *withstand*.

perficiō, **-ficere**, **-fēcī**, **-fectum** [per + faciō], tr., *finish*, *complete*; *carry out*, *execute*; *build*, *construct*; *bring about*, *effect*.

perfidia, **-ae** [perfidus, *faithless*], f., *faithlessness*, *treachery*.

perfringō, **-ere**, **-frēgī**, **-frāctum** [per + frangō], tr., *break through*, *break*.

perfuga, **-ae** [perfugiō], m., *a deserter*.

per-fugiō, **-fugere**, **-fūgī**, **-fugitūrus**, intr., *flee for refuge*; *go over*, *desert*.

perfugium, **-ī** [perfugiō], n., *place of refuge*.

pergō, **-ere**, **perrēxī**, **perrēctum** [per + regō], intr., *go on*, *proceed*, *press on*.

periclitor, **-ārī**, **-ātus sum** [perīculum], dep., tr. and intr., *make trial of*, *try to find out*.

perīculōsus, **-a**, **-um** [perīculum], adj., *dangerous*, *hazardous*.

perīculum, **-ī**, n., *trial*, *test*, *proof*; *danger*, *peril*, *risk*.

peritus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *experienced*, *trained*, *skilled in*, *familiar with*.

per-legō, **-ere**, **-lēgī**, **-lēctum** [legō, *gather*; *read*], tr., *read through*.

per-maneō, **-ēre**, **-mānsī**, **-mānsūrus**, intr., *remain*; *abide by*.

per-mittō, **-ere**, **-mīsī**, **-missum**, tr., *deliver over*, *intrust*; *permit*, *give permission*.

per-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, tr., *move deeply*, *arouse thoroughly*, *influence; excite*, *disturb*, *discourage*, *dismay; impel*, *induce.*

per-mulceō, -ēre, -mulsī, -mulsum [mulceō, *stroke*], tr., *soothe*, *flatter*, *conciliate.*

perniciēs, -ēī [**per**, cf. **nex**], f., *destruction*, *ruin.*

per-paucī, -ae, -a, adj., *very few.*

perpendiculum, -ī [perpendō, *weigh carefully*], n., *plumb line;* **ad perpendiculum**, *perpendicularly.*

perpetuō[abl.n. of **perpetuus**], adv., *permanently*, *constantly.*

perpetuus, -a, -um [per, cf. petō], adj., *continuous*, *unbroken; continual*, *uninterrupted*, *whole*, *permanent*, *perpetual.* Subst., n., **in perpetuum**, *forever*, *permanently.*

per-rumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum [rumpō, *break*], tr. and intr., *break through*, *force a way through* or *across.*

per-scrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum, tr., *recount*, *relate in detail.*

per-sequor, -ī, -secūtus sum, dep., tr., *follow up*, *pursue*, *harass*, *persecute.*

persevērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**persevērus**, *very strict*], intr., *persist*, *persist in.*

per-solvo, -ere, -solvi, -solūtum, tr., (*unloose*); *pay.*

perspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum [per + -spiciō, *look*, *spy*], tr., *look* or *see through*, *into; inspect*, *examine carefully*, *reconnoitre; observe*, *see* or *perceive clearly*, *discover; prove* or *test fully.*

per-suādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsum [suadeō, *urge*], tr. and intr., *persuade*, *induce; convince.*

per-terreō, -ēre, -terruī, -territum, tr., *frighten thoroughly*, *dismay*, *appall;* **timōre perterritī**, *panic stricken.*

pertinācia, -ae [**pertināx**, *persevering*], f., *obstinacy.*

pertineō, -ēre, -tinuī, — [per + **teneō**], intr., *stretch*, *extend*, *reach; belong*, *relate*, *pertain*, *tend; mean*, *have a meaning* or *purpose; concern*, *involve*, *implicate.*

perturbātiō, -ōnis [**perturbō**], f., *confusion*, *disorder.*

per-turbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**turbō**, *confuse*], tr., *throw into confusion* or *disorder; disturb*, *frighten*, *dismay*, *perplex.*

per-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, intr., *come to*, *arrive*, *reach*, *come up with.*

pēs, pedis, m., *the foot;* **pedibus**, *afoot; by land;* **pedem referre**, *fall back*, *retire*, *withdraw.* As a measure, *a foot* = .9708 of an English foot.

petō, -ere, petiī or **petīvī, petītum**, tr., *seek; ask*, *request*, *beg*, *entreat; make for*, *repair to.* See **fuga.**

Petrosidius, -ī, m. (pĕt-ro-sĭd′-i-us), *Lucius Petrosidius*,

a standard-bearer in Caesar's army. V. 37.

phalanx, -angis, f., *phalanx.*

Pictonēs, -um, m. (pĭk′-to-nēz), cf. French Poitou, Poitiers: a tribe in Celtic Gaul. III. 11. D 3.

pietās, -ātis [**pius**, *dutiful*], f., *sense of duty, loyalty.*

pīlum, -ī, n., *heavy javelin;* **pīlum mūrāle**, *wall-javelin.*

pīlus, -ī, m., *a maniple of the triarii;* **prīmī pīlī centuriō** or **prīmipīlus, -ī**, m., *the chief centurion* of a legion; **prīmum pīlum dūcere**, *to hold the position of chief centurion.*

pinna, -ae, f., (*feather*); *battlement.*

Pīrūstae, -ārūm, m. (pī-rŭs′-tē), an Illyrian tribe. V. 1.

piscis, -is, m., *a fish.*

Pīsō, -ōnis, m. (pī′-sō), (1) *Lucius Calpurnius Piso*, killed by the Helvetii in 107. I. 12. (2) *Lucius Calpurnius Piso*, grandson of (1) and father-in-law of Caesar, consul in 58. I. 6, 12. (3) *Marcus Pupius Piso*, consul along with Marcus Valerius Messala in 61. I. 2, 35. (4) *Piso*, an Aquitanian, serving in Caesar's cavalry. IV. 12.

placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, intr., *be pleasing, find favor with;* **eīs** placuit, *they decided.*

Plancus, -ī, m. (plăng′-kus), see **Munātius**.

plānē [**plānus**], adv., *evenly; plainly, clearly; wholly.*

plānitiēs, -ēī [**plānus**], f., *a plain.*

plānus, -a, -um, adj., *even, level, flat.*

plēbs, plēbis, f., *the common people, the populace.*

plēnē [**plēnus**], adv., *fully, wholly.*

plēnus, -a, -um, adj., *full.*

plērīque, plēraeque, plēraque [**plērus**, *very many, most of*], adj., *most of, the majority of, the greater part of.* Subst. m., *the greater part, a great many.*

plērumque [acc. n. of **plērusque**, *most of*], adv., *generally, regularly, usually, as a rule.*

Pleumoxiī, -ōrum, m. (plū-mŏk′-si-ī), a tribe in Belgic Gaul. V. 39. G 1.

plumbum, -ī, n., *lead;* **plumbum album**, *tin.*

plūrimus, -a, -um, see **multus**.

plūs, see **multus**.

poena, -ae, f., *indemnity, compensation; penalty, punishment.*

pollex, -icis, m., *the thumb.*

polliceor, -ērī, -pollicitus sum [**por = prō + liceor**], dep., tr., *promise, offer.*

pollicitātiō, -ōnis [**polliceor**], f., *promise, pledge.*

Pompēius, -ī, m. (pŏm-pē′-yus), (1) *Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus*, the triumvir. IV. 1. (2) *Gnaeus Pompeius*, a Gaul, an interpreter in the service of Sabinus at Atuatuca. V. 36.

pondus, -eris [cf. **pendō**], n., *weight;* **ad certum pondus**, *of a fixed weight.*

pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum, tr., *place, put, deposit; pitch, set up; appoint; make depend.* Passive, *depend, be dependent;* **positus, -a, -um,** p.p. as adj., *situated, located, lying; dependent.*

pōns, pontis, m., *bridge.*

populātiō, -ōnis [populor], f., *ravaging, devastation.*

populor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., tr., *lay waste, ravage, devastate.*

populus, -ī, m., *a people, nation.*

porrigō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctum [por = prō + regō], tr., *stretch out, extend.*

porrō, adv., *furthermore.*

porta, -ae, f., *gate.*

portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *carry, bring, convey.*

portōrium, -ī, n., *tax, toll, duty.*

portus, -ūs, m., *harbor, port.*

poscō, -ere, poposcī, —, tr., *demand, require.*

possessiō, -ōnis [possīdō], f., *possession, occupation.* Pl., *possessions, property.*

possideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum [por = prō + sedeō, *sit*], tr., *possess, hold, be master of.*

possīdō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessum [por = prō + sīdō, *sit down*], tr., *take possession of, seize.*

possum, posse, potuī [potis, *able,* + **sum**], intr., *be able, can; have power* or *influence, be powerful* or *influential;* **cum prīmum potest,** *as soon as possible.* With acc. of neuter pronouns and adjectives, **multum, plūs, plūrimum, tantum posse,** *have great, more, most, so great power* or *influence, be very, more, most, so very powerful* or *influential;* **nihil posse,** *have no strength.*

post, prep. with acc., *behind, back of; after.* Adv., *afterwards, after, later.*

posteā [post + eā], adv., *afterwards;* **posteā . . . quam,** = conj., **postquam,** *after.*

posterus, -a, -um [post], adj., comp. **posterior, -ius,** superl. **postrēmus, -a, -um,** *following, next.*

post-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, tr., *set aside, postpone.*

post-quam, conj., *after; when, as soon as.*

postrēmō [abl. n. of postrēmus], adv., *at last, finally; in fine.*

postrīdiē [posterus + diēs], adv., *the next day;* **postrīdiē ēius diēī,** *the next day.*

postulātum, -ī [p.p. of **postulō**], n., *demand, requirement.*

postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *demand, claim, require.*

potēns, gen. **-entis** [pr. p. of **possum**], adj., *strong, powerful, influential.* Subst., comp., **potentiōrēs, -um,** m., *the more powerful;* superl., **potentissimus, -ī,** m., *the most powerful man.*

potentātus, -ūs [potēns], m., *power, supremacy.*

potentia, -ae [potēns], f., (*personal*) *power* or *influence.*

potestās, -ātis [potis, *able*], f., (*official*) *power, authority, sway; chance, opportunity;* in **potestāte esse,** *be under* (*one's*) *authority* or *control;* **potestātī permittere,** *put under* (*one's*) *protection;* **in potestātem venīre,** *place one's self under* (*one's*) *protection;* **in potestātem redigere,** *bring under one's authority.*

potior, -īrī, -ītus sum [potis, *able*], dep., intr., *become master of, get possession of, acquire, win, gain, capture.*

potius [potis, *able*], comp. adv., *rather.*

prae, prep. with abl., *in front of; in comparison with.*

prae-acūtus, -a, -um [acūtus, p.p. of **acuō,** *sharpen*], adj., *sharpened at the end, pointed.*

praebeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum [prae + habeō], tr., (*hold forth*); *furnish, afford.*

prae-caveō, -ēre, -cāvī, -cautum, intr., *be on one's guard, guard against.*

prae-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, tr., *go before; surpass.*

praeceps, gen. **-cipitis** [prae, cf. caput], adj., *headlong; steep, precipitous.*

praeceptum, -ī [p.p. of **praecipiō**], n., *order, command.*

praecipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum [prae + capiō], tr., *anticipate; direct, instruct, order, give directions.*

praecipitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [praeceps], tr., *hurl headlong.*

praecipuē [praecipuus], adv., *specially, particularly.*

praecipuus, -a, -um [prae, cf. **capiō**], adj., *special, particular.*

praeclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsum [prae + claudō], tr., *cut off, shut off, close.*

praecō, -ōnis, m., *a crier, herald.*

Praeconīnus, -ī, m. (prĕk-o-nī -nus), see **Valerius.**

praeda, -ae, f., *booty, plunder.*

prae-dicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [dicō, *dedicate*], tr. and intr., *announce, proclaim, spread news of; declare, boast, vaunt.*

praedor, -ārī, -ātus sum [praeda], intr., *to plunder.*

praefectus, -ūs [p.p. of **praeficiō**], m., *officer, commander, prefect.*

prae-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, tr., *put before; hold* or *make superior;* **sē praeferre,** *outdo, surpass.*

praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum [prae + faciō], tr., *put in charge* or *command of, place at the head of.*

prae-fīgō, -ere, -fīxī, -fīxum [fīgō, *fix*], tr., *fasten before; fix* or *set in front.*

prae-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, tr., *send ahead* or *in advance.*

praemium, -ī [prae, cf. emō], n., *reward.*

prae-optō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [optō, *choose*], tr., *choose rather*, *prefer*.

prae-parō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, tr., *make ready beforehand*.

prae-pōnō, **-ere**, **-posuī**, **-positum**, tr., *place in charge* or *command of*.

prae-rumpō, **-ere**, **-rūpī**, **-ruptum** [rumpō, *break*], tr., *break off*.

prae-scrībō, **-ere**, **-scrīpsī**, **-scrīptum**, tr., *dictate*, *determine*.

praescrīptum, **-ī** [p.p. of praescrībō], n., *dictation*, *command*.

praesēns, gen. **-entis** [pr.p. of praesum], adj., *present*, *in person*; *immediate*, *for the time being*.

praesentia, **-ae** [praesēns], f., *presence*; *the present*; **in praesentiā**, *for the present*; **praesentia animī**, *presence of mind*, *intrepidity*.

prae-sentiō, **-īre**, **-sēnsī**, **-sēnsum**, tr. and intr., *feel beforehand*, *anticipate*.

praesertim [prae, cf. serō, *bind*], adv., *especially*, *particularly*.

praesidium, **-ī** [praeses, *protector*], n., *protection*, *defence*, *help*, *aid*; *guard*, *garrison*, *escort*; *post*, *station*.

praestō, adv., *at hand*, *ready*; **praestō esse**, *appear before*, *go to meet*.

prae-stō, **-āre**, **-stitī**, **-stitum**, tr. and intr., *be superior*, *excel*; *exhibit*, *display*, *give evidence of*; *do*, *perform*; **praestat**, impers., *it is better*, *preferable*.

prae-sum, **-esse**, **-fuī**, intr., *be in charge* or *command of*, *command*; *rule over*.

praeter, prep. with acc., *past*, *by*; *besides*, *in addition to*; *except*, *apart from*; *contrary to*.

praetereā [praeter + eā], adv., *furthermore*, *besides*, *in addition*.

praeterita, **-ōrum** [p.p. of praetereō, *pass by*], n., *the past*.

praeter-mittō, **-ere**, **-mīsī**, **-missum**, tr., *allow to go by*, *let pass*, *lose*.

praeter-quam, adv., *besides*, *other than*, *except*.

praetor, **-ōris** [for praeitor, from praeeō, *go in front*], m., *general*; *praetor*, a Roman magistrate; **lēgātus prō praetore**, *lieutenant with authority of general*.

praetōrius, **-a**, **-um** [praetor], adj., *of a general*, *praetorian*. See **cohors**.

prae-ustus, **-a**, **-um** [p.p. of praeūrō, *burn at the end*], adj., *burned at the point*.

prehendō or **prēndō**, **-ere**, **prehendī** or **prēndī**, **prehēnsum** or **prēnsum**, tr., *grasp*.

premō, **-ere**, **pressī**, **pressum**, tr., *press*, *weigh down*; *press hard*, *harass*. Passive, *be hard pressed*, *be in distress* or *danger*.

pretium, **-ī**, n., *price*, *cost*.

(**prex**, **precis**), only dat., acc., and abl. in sing., always pl. in

Caesar, f., *prayers, entreaties; curses, imprecations.*

prīdiē [cf. prō, prior, + diēs], adv., with or without **ēius diēī**, *on the day before.*

prīmipīlus, -ī, m. See **pilus.**

prīmō [abl. n. of **prīmus**], adv., *at first.*

prīmum [acc. n. of **prīmus**], adv., *first, in the first place, first of all;* **cum prīmum** or **ubi prīmum,** *as soon as;* **cum prīmum potest, quam prīmum, quam prīmum potest,** *as soon as possible.*

prīmus, -a, -um. See **prior.**

prīnceps, -ipis [cf. **prīmus** + **capiō**], adj., *first, chief.* Subst., m., *leading person, leader, chief; author, instigator, ringleader.*

prīncipātus, -ūs [**prīnceps**], m., *first place, leadership, supremacy.*

prior, -ius [cf. **prō**], comp. adj., *former, previous, first.* Subst., **priōrēs, -um,** m., *those in front.* Superl., **prīmus, -a, -um,** *first, front; first part of; head of, beginning of.* Subst., **prīmī, -ōrum,** m., *foremost* or *leading men; the first, those in front, the front ranks;* **in prīmīs** *especially, particularly.*

prīstinus, -a, -um [cf. **prius**], adj., *former, previous, old-time;* **prīstinus diēs,** *the day before.*

prius [n. of **prior**], adv., *before, earlier.*

prius-quam, conj., the two parts being often separated, *before, until.*

prīvātim [**prīvātus**], adv., *individually, as a private person; privately, in private.*

prīvātus, -a, -um [p.p. of **prīvō**, *set free*], adj., *personal, individual, private.*

prō, prep. with abl., *before, in front of; for, in behalf of; in place of, instead of; in the guise* or *character of; to serve as, as; in return* or *retaliation for; in accordance with, by virtue of; in proportion to, in comparison with;* **prō sē,** *according to one's ability; for one's own part;* **prō vīsō,** *as seen.*

probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**probus**, *good*], tr., *approve, sanction; have confidence in; make good, prove; demonstrate, show.*

prō-cēdō, -ere, -cessī,—, intr., *go forward, advance, proceed.*

Procillus, -ī, m. (pro-sĭl′-us). See **Valerius.**

prō-cōnsul, -ulis, m., *proconsul, ex-consul,* governor of a province.

procul, adv., *in the distance, at* or *from a distance;* **procul ab,** *far from.*

prōcumbō, -ere, -cubuī, -cubitum [**prō** + **-cumbō**, *recline*], intr., *fall down, fall prostrate, fall; incline.*

prō-currō, -ere, -cucurrī or **-currī, -cursum** [**currō**, *run*], intr., *run* or *rush forward, charge.*

prōdeō, -īre, -iī, -itum [**prō (d)** + **eō**], intr., *go* or *come forth, forward; advance.*

prō-dō, -dere, -didī, -ditum,

tr., *hand down, transmit; surrender, betray.*

prō-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, tr., *lead forth or forward; prolong.*

proelior, -ārī, -ātus sum [proelium], intr., *engage in battle, fight.*

proelium, -ī, n., *battle, combat;* proelium facere, *fight a battle;* proelia parvula, *skirmishes.*

profectiō, -ōnis [proficīscor], f., *departure, withdrawal.*

prōficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum [prō + faciō], tr., *accomplish, achieve; derive advantage.*

proficīscor, -ī, -fectus sum [proficiō], dep., intr., *set out, depart, march on* or *forward, proceed, advance.*

profiteor, -ērī, -fessus sum [pro + fateor, *confess*], dep., tr., *declare publicly, avow; offer.*

prōflīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [prō + -flīgō, *dash, strike*], tr., *overcome, rout.*

prō-fluō, -ere, -flūxī, —, intr., *flow forth, rise.*

pro-fugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, —, intr., *flee, escape.*

prō-gnātus, -a, -um [(g)nātus, *born*], adj., *descended, sprung.*

prōgredior, -gredī, -gressus sum [prō + gradior, *step*], dep., intr., *go forth, go forward, proceed, advance.*

prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum [prō + habeō], tr., *hold back, hold off, keep off, away, from,* or *out of; ward off, beat back; cut off, prevent, prohibit; protect, defend.*

prōiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum [prō + iaciō], tr., *throw forward, throw, hurl; throw down* or *away, abandon.*

pro-inde, adv., *hence, therefore, accordingly.*

prō-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, tr., *let go, let grow.* **prōmissus**, p.p. as adj., (of hair), *long, hanging.*

prō-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, tr., *move forward.*

prōmptus, -a, -um [p.p. of prōmō, *put forth*], adj., *ready, quick.*

prōmunturium, -ī [prōmineō, *project*], n., *headland, promontory.*

prōnē [prōnus, *inclined*], adv., *slanting.*

prō-nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *proclaim, announce, tell; issue orders.*

prope, adv., *near, nearly, almost.* Prep. with acc., *near.* Comp., **propius**, *nearer.* Superl., **proximē**, *most* or *very recently, last.*

prō-pellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum, tr., *drive forth, away,* or *back, beat back, rout.*

properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [properus, *quick*], intr., *hasten, hurry, make haste to.*

propinquitās, -ātis [propinquus], f., *nearness, proximity; relationship, kinship.*

propinquus, -a, -um [prope],

adj., *near*, *near at hand*, *neighboring; related.* Subst., **propinquī**, **-ōrum**, m., *relations*, *kinsmen.*

propior, **-ius** [prope], comp. adj., *nearer.* Superl., **proximus**, **-a**, **-um**, *nearest; nearest to*, *next to*, *along; next*, *last; shortest.* Subst., **proximī**, **-ōrum**, m., *those nearest*, *those next.*

propius, see prope.

prō-pōnō, **-ere**, **-posuī**, **-positum**, tr., *set forth; display; set* or *keep before*, *offer; point out*, *call attention to*, *relate*, *describe.*

propter [prope], prep. with acc., *near; on account of*, *because of*, *from.*

propterea [propter + eā], adv., *for this reason;* **propterea** quod, *because*, *for the reason that.*

prō-pūgnō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, intr., *go forth to fight*, *make sorties; fight in defence*, *repel an assault.*

prōpulsō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [freq. of **prōpellō**], tr., *repel*, *drive back.*

prōra, **-ae**, f., *prow*, *bow.*

prō-ruō, **-ere**, **-ruī**, **-rutum** [ruō, *tumble down*], tr., *tear down*, *demolish.*

prō-sequor, **-ī**, **-secūtus sum**, dep., tr., *follow up*, *pursue; address.*

prōspectus, **-ūs** [prōspiciō], m., *view*, *sight.*

prōspiciō, **-spicere**, **-spexī**, **-spectum** [prō + -spiciō, *look*, *spy*], intr., *look forward; provide for; guard against*, *try to prevent.*

prō-tegō, **-ere**, **-tēxī**, **-tēctum**, tr., *cover over; shield*, *protect.*

prōtinus [prō + **tenus**, *as far as*], adv., *right on*, *straight on; forthwith*, *at once.*

prō-turbō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [turbō, *confuse*], tr., *drive in confusion*, *drive away*, *repel*, *rout.*

prō-vehō, **-ere**, **-vexī**, **-vectum** [vehō, *convey*], tr., *carry forward.* Passive, *advance*, *proceed.*

prō-veniō, **-īre**, **-vēnī**, **-ventum**, intr., *come forth; be produced*, *grow.*

prō-videō, **-ēre**, **-vīdī**, **-vīsum**, tr., *foresee; make provision for*, *provide*, *make ready; take precautions.*

prōvincia, -ae, f., *a province*, used particularly in Caesar of the Transalpine province.

prō-volō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **—** [volō, *fly*], intr., *fly forth*, *rush forth.*

proximē, see prope.

proximus, **-a**, **-um**, see propior.

prūdentia, **-ae** [prūdēns, *foreseeing*], f., *foresight*, *sagacity*, *practical wisdom.*

Ptianiī, **-ōrum**, m. (tī-ā′-ni-ī), a tribe in Aquitania. III. 27. D 5.

pūbēs, **-eris**, adj., *adult.* Subst., **pūberēs**, **-um**, m., *adults*, *men.*

pūblicē [**pūblicus**], adv., *for the state, in the name of the state, officially; from the standpoint of the state.*

pūblicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**pūblicus**], tr., *convert to public use, confiscate.*

pūblicus, -a, -um [cf. **populus**], adj., *of the people* or *state, official; common, public.* **rēs pūblica,** *the state, commonwealth; public interests, the common weal; matters of state, matters of common interest, official matters.*

pudor, -ōris [**pudet,** *it shames*], m., *sense of shame, shame, honor.*

puer, -erī, m., *boy, child.*

pūgnā, -ae, f., *battle, combat, fight, fighting.*

pūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**pūgna**], intr., *fight, contend, engage in battle, fight a battle.* Passive, impers., **pūgnātum est,** *the battle was fought, they fought, the battle lasted.*

Pullō, -ōnis, m. (pŭl′-lō), *Titus Pullo,* a brave centurion in Caesar's army. V. 44.

pulsus, -ūs [**pellō**], m., *impulse, stroke.*

pulvis, -veris, m., *dust.*

puppis, -is, f., *stern of a ship.*

pūrgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**pūrus,** *clean,* + **agō**], tr., *excuse, free from blame.*

putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**putus,** *clean*], tr., (*clear up*); *think, consider, believe.*

Pȳrēnaeus, -a, -um, adj., with **montēs,** *the Pyrenees Mountains.* I. 1. D E 5.

Q

Q., abbr. for the praenomen **Quīntus.**

quā [abl. f. of **quī**], adv., *where, by which, along which.*

quadrāgēnī, -ae, -a [**quadrāgintā**], distrib. num. adj., *forty each.*

quadrāgintā [**quattuor**], indecl. num., *forty.*

quadringentī, -ae, -a [**quattuor + centum**], num. adj., *four hundred.*

quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum, tr., *seek, look for; ask, inquire, make inquiry.*

quaestor, -ōris [for **quaesitor,** from **quaerō**], m., *quaestor,* a Roman magistrate.

quālis, -e, interrog. adj., *what kind of? of what nature?*

quam [**quī**], adv., *how; than, as.* With superlatives, indicating the highest degree, e.g., **quam māximus,** *the largest possible;* **quam diū potest,** *as long as possible.*

quam-quam, conj., *although.*

quam-vīs [**vīs,** *you wish,* from **volō**], adv., *however much, however;* **quamvīs paucī,** *however few.*

quandō, adv., *at any time, ever.*

quantus, -a, -um, adj., rel., *as much as, as great as.* Subst., **quantum, -ī,** n., *so much of as.* Correl., **tantus . . . quantus,** *as*

great . . . as. Subst., **tantum . . . quantum**, *as much . . . as.* Abl., **tantō** (with comp.) . . . **quantō** (with comp.), *the . . . the.* Interrog., *how great? how much? how powerful?* Subst., **quantum, -ī**, n., *how much?* **quantum bonī**, *how much good.*

quantus-vīs, -tavīs, -tumvīs [**vīs**, *you wish*, from **volō**], adj., *as great as you wish, however great.*

quā-rē [**rē**, abl. of **rēs**], adv., rel., *on account of which, for which; therefore, accordingly.* Interrog., *why? wherefore?*

quārtus, -a, -um [**quattuor**], num. adj., *fourth.*

quattuor, indecl. num., *four.*

quattuordecim [**quattuor + decem**], indecl. num., *fourteen.*

-que, conj., enclitic, *and.*

queror, -ī, questus sum, dep., tr. and intr., *complain, complain of, lament.*

quī, quae, quod, gen. **cūius**, rel. pron. and adj., *who, which, what, that, as.* Antecedent omitted, *he who, those who, such as, those things which, such things as.*

quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, gen. **cūiuscumque**, indef., rel. pron. and adj., *whoever, whatever, any one who, anything which; any* or *every . . . which.*

quid [acc. n. of **quis**], interrog. adv., *why?*

quīdam, quaedam, quoddam, gen. **cūiusdam**, indef. pron. and adj., *a certain one*, pl. *certain ones, some; a certain, certain.*

quidem, adv., emphasizing a word immediately preceding, *assuredly, indeed, in fact; at any rate, at least; for his part, as for him.* Adversative, *on the other hand, but;* **nē . . . quidem**, *not even, not either.*

quiēs, -ētis, f., *rest, repose; sleep.*

quiētus, -a, -um [p.p. of **quiēscō**, *become quiet*], adj., *at rest, peaceful.*

quīn [old abl. **quī**, *how, why*, + **ne**], conj., *without, that . . . not.* After expressions of doubting, *that;* of hesitating or refusing, *to* (*do so and so*); hindering, *from* (*doing so and so*); **quīn etiam**, see **etiam**.

quīnam, quaenam, quodnam [**quī + nam**], interrog. pronom. adj., *what, pray? what, really?*

quīndecim [**quīnque + decem**], indecl. num., *fifteen.*

quīngentī, -ae, -a [**quīnque + centum**], num. adj., *five hundred.*

quīnī, -ae, -a, [**quīnque**], distrib. num. adj., *five each.*

quīnquāgintā [**quīnque**], indecl. num., *fifty.*

quīnque, indecl. num., *five.*

quīntus, -a, -um [**quīnque**], num. adj., *fifth.*

quis, quae, quid, gen., **cūius**, interrog. pron., *who? which? what?* **quī, quae, quod**, gen.

cūius, interrog. pronom. adj., *which? what?*

quis, quid, indef. pron., *any one, anything;* **nē quis**, *in order that no one, that no one, that no;* **sī quis**, *if any one, if any;* **quī qua(e), quod**, indef. pronom. adj., *any;* **nē quī**, *that no;* **sī quī**, *if any, whatever.*

quispiam, quaepiam, quodpiam, indef. pron. and adj., *any one, anything, any.*

quis-quam, quicquam (for **quidquam**), indef. pron., generally used after negatives, *any one, anything.*

quis-que, quaeque, quidque, gen. **cūiusque**, indef. pron. and adj., *each one, each man; each, any, every;* **quisque decimus**, *every tenth man;* **nōbilissimus quisque**, *all the most prominent men.*

quis-quis, quicquid (for **quidquid**), indef. pron., *whoever, whatever.*

quī-vīs, quaevīs, quidvīs, gen. **cūiusvīs** [**vīs**, *you wish*, from **volō**], indef. pron. and adj., *whoever, whatever, any whatever, any possible.*

quō [**quī**], adv., rel., *where, whither, the point* or *place to which; to whom.* Correl., **quō** (with comp.) . . . **eō** or **hōc** (with comp.), *the . . . the.* Interrog., *whither? in what direction? where?* Indef., **sī quō**, *if to any place, if anywhere.* Conj., with comp., = **ut eō**, *in order that.* Without a comp., after **quam**, = *because.*

quo-ad, conj., *as long as; until.*

quod [acc. n. of **quī**], conj., *because, since, so far as; that, the fact that, in that; as to the fact that, whereas, as to, in* (*doing so and so*); **propterea quod**, *because, for the reason that;* **quod sī**, *but if, now if.*

quō-minus, conj., *in order that not; from* (*doing so and so*).

quoniam [**quom** = **cum**, + **iam**], conj., *since, because, in view of the fact that.*

quoque, adv., *also, too.*

quōque = **et quō**, *and whither*, see **versus.**

quot, indecl. adj., pl., *how many? as many as, a number which.*

quot-annīs, adv., *annually, year after year.*

quotiēns [quot], adv., *how often? as often as, whenever.*

R

rādīx, -īcis, f., *root.* Pl., (of mountains and hills), *lower part, foot, base.*

rādō, -ere, rāsī, rāsum, tr., *shave.*

raeda, -ae, f., *carriage, wagon* (four wheeled).

rāmus, -ī, m., *branch, bough.*

rapiditās, -ātis [**rapidus**, *swift*], f., *swiftness, rapidity.*

rapīna, -ae [rapiō, *seize*], f., *plundering, pillage.*

rārus, -ā, -um, adj., *thin; far apart, scattered, few; few at a time, in small detachments.*

ratiō, **-ōnis** [**reor**, *reckon*], f., *reckoning, computation, account; record, list; reasoning, theory, theoretical knówledge, art, science; plan, design; arrangement, manner, way; condition, state; reason, cause, consideration; explanation, justification;* **habēre ratiōnem**, with gen., *have regard for;* **habere ratiōnem, ut**, *see to it that.*

ratis, **-is**, f., *raft.*

Rauracī, **-ōrum**, m. (rau′-ra-sī), a tribe in Celtic Gaul. I. 5, 29. H 3.

re- or **red-**, inseparable particle used in composition, *again, back, anew.*

rebelliō, **-ōnis** [**rebellis**, *insurgent*], f., *a renewal of war, revolt, rebellion.*

re-cēdō, **-ere**, **-cessī**, **-cessum**, intr., *fall back, retire.*

recēns, gen. **-entis**, adj., *recent, fresh; vigorous, unexhausted.* Subst., **recentēs**, **-ium**, m., *fresh troops.*

receptus, **-ūs** [**recipiō**], m., *retreat, way of retreat.*

recessus, **-ūs** [**recēdō**], m., *retreat, means* or *chance of retreat.*

recidō, **-ere**, **-cidī**, **-cāsūrus** [**re-** + **cadō**], intr., *fall back; be reduced.*

recipiō, **-cipere**, **-cēpī**, **-ceptum** [**re** + **capiō**], tr., *take back; receive, admit, welcome; receive in surrender;* **sē recipere**, *withdraw, retire, retreat; recover, regain composure.*

re-citō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [**citō**, *call forth*], tr., *read out, read aloud.*

recuperō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [**re-**, cf. **capiō**], tr., *recover, regain, win back.*

recūsō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [**re** + **causa**], tr. and intr., *give up, repudiate; object to, refuse, shun; make objections.*

red-dō, **-dere**, **-didī**, **-ditum**, tr., *give back, restore; render, make.*

red-eō, **-īre**, **-iī**, **-itum**, intr., *go back, come back, return; slope down.*

redigō, **-ere**, **-ēgī**, **-āctum** [**red-** + **agō**], tr., *reduce, bring; bring under (one's power); make, render.*

redimō, **-ere**, **-ēmī**, **-ēmptum** [**red-** + **emō**], tr., *buy back, get in return; buy up, purchase, take a contract for.*

red-integrō, **-āre**, **-avī**, **-ātum** [**integrō**, *make whole*], tr., *renew, refresh, revive.*

reditiō, **-ōnis** [**redeō**], f., *a returning, return.*

reditus, **-ūs** [**redeō**], m., *a returning, return.*

Redonēs, **-um**, m. (rĕd′-o-nēz), cf. French Rennes: a tribe in Celtic Gaul. II. 34. D 2, 3.

re-dūcō, **-ere**, **-dūxī**, **-ductum**, tr., *lead* or *bring back; draw back, draw inside.*

re-ferō, **-ferre**, **rettulī**, **relātum**, tr., *bring* or *carry back; deliver, report.* See **grātia**, **pēs**.

reficiō, **-ficere**, **-fēcī**, **-fectum**

[re- + faciō], tr., *rebuild, repair; refresh, rest.*

refringō, -ere, -frēgī, -frāctum [re- + frangō], tr., *break open, break down.*

re-fugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, —, intr., *flee back, fall back.*

regiō, -ōnis [regō], f., *direction, line; region, district.*

rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [rēgnum], intr., *rule, reign.*

rēgnum, -ī [regō], n., *royal* or *supreme power, sovereignty; kingdom, realm, state.*

regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctum, tr., *keep straight; guide, control, manage; preside over, rule.*

rēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum [re- + iaciō], tr., *hurl back, drive back; beat back, repulse; throw aside; cut off, separate.*

re-languēscō, -ere, -guī, — [languēscō, *become weak*], intr., *become enfeebled* or *enervated, relax.*

re-lēgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [lēgō, *despatch*], tr., *send away, detach.*

religiō, -ōnis, f., *religious principles* or *scruples; religious beliefs* or *superstitions.*

re-linquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictum [linquō, *leave*], tr., *leave behind, leave; abandon, desert; let escape.* Passive, *be left, remain; be afforded.*

reliquus, -a, -um [cf. relinquō], adj., *remaining, all other; the remainder of, rest of.* Subst., **reliquī, -ōrum,** m., *the others, the rest of them;* **reliquum, ī,** n., *remainder,* e.g., **nihil reliquī,** *nothing left;* **reliqua, -ōrum,** *all other things, conditions, or circumstances.*

re-maneō, -ēre, -mānsī, —, intr., *stay behind, remain.*

rēmex, -igis [rēmus, cf. agō], m., *rower, oarsman.*

rēmigō, -āre, —, — [rēmus + agō], intr., *to row.*

re-migrō, -āre, -āvī, — [migrō, *remove*], intr., *go back, return.*

reminīscor, -ī, —, dep., intr., *recall, remember.*

remissus, -a, -um [p.p. of remittō], adj., *mild, not severe.*

re-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, tr., *send back, restore; hurl back; send in reply; relax, abate, lose.*

re-mollēscō, -ere, —, — [mollēscō, *become soft*], intr., *grow weak, become enervated.*

remōtus, -a, -um [p.p. of removeō], adj., *remote, out-of-the-way.*

re-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, tr., *move back, withdraw, remove; lure away.*

re-mūneror, -ārī, -ātus sum [mūneror, *reward*], tr., *reward, recompense.*

rēmus, -ī, m., *oar.*

Rēmus, -ī, m., *one of the Remi.* II. 6. Pl., *the Remi* (rē′-mī), cf. French Reims: a tribe in Belgic Gaul. II. 3–7, 9, 12; III. 11; V. 3, 24, 53, 54, 56. G 2.

re-novō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [novō, *make new*], tr., *renew.*

re-nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *bring back word*, *report*.

re-pellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsum, tr., *drive back*, *repulse*; *deprive of*, *disappoint in*.

repente [repēns, *sudden*], adv., *suddenly*, *without warning*.

repentīnus, -a, -um [repēns, *sudden*], adj., *sudden*, *unexpected*, *hasty*.

reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertum [re- + pariō], tr., *find*, *discover*; *invent*, *hit upon*; *find out*, *learn*, *ascertain*.

re-petō, -ere, -petīvī, -petītum, tr., *seek* or *demand again*, *ask* or *demand back*; *demand in return*; *visit upon in return*.

re-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *carry back*, *transport back*.

re-poscō, -ere, —, —, tr., *demand back*, *require*.

re-praesentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [praesentō, *place before*], tr., *do* or *carry out at once*.

re-prehendō, -ere, -prehendī, -prehēnsum, tr., *hold back*; *censure*, *find fault with*.

reprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum [re- + premō], tr., *check*, *restrain*, *prevent*.

repudiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [repudium, *a putting away*], tr., *reject*, *disdain*.

re-pūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr., *fight back*, *defend one's self*, *offer resistance*, *oppose*.

rēs, reī, f., *thing*, *matter*, *affair*; *event*, *fact*, *circumstance*, *undertaking*, *exploit*, *measure*, *arrangement*, etc., according to the context.

re-scindō, -ere, -scidī, -scissum, tr., *cut* or *break down*, *destroy*.

re-scīscō, -ere, -scīvī, -scītum [scīscō, *approve*], tr., *learn*, *find out*.

re-scrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum, tr., *write again* or *anew*; *transfer*, *promote*.

re-servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *hold back*, *reserve*.

re-sistēns, gen. -entis [pr. p. of resistō], adj., *firm*, *enduring*.

re-sistō, -ere, -stitī, — [sistō, *set*, *stand*], intr., *stop*, *halt*, *remain*; *make a stand*, *offer resistance*; *resist*, *oppose*, *withstand*.

respiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum [re- + -spiciō, *look*, *spy*], *look back*; *have regard for*, *consider*.

re-spondeō, -ēre, -spondī, spōnsum [spondeō, *promise*], tr., *reply*, *respond*, *answer*.

respōnsum, -ī [p.p. of respondeō], n., *answer*, *reply*.

rēs pūblica, see pūblicus.

re-spuō, -ere, -spuī, — [spuō *spit*], tr., *reject*, *refuse*.

restituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum [re- + statuō], tr., *restore*, *rebuild*, *renew*.

retineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum [re- + teneō], tr., *hold back*; *retain*, *keep*, *detain*, *restrain*; *maintain*, *not abandon*.

re-trahō, -ere, -trāxī, -tractum, tr., *bring back by force*.

re-vellō, -ere, -vellī, -vul-

sum [vellō, *tear*], tr., *pull away; tear down.*

re-vertor, **-ī**, **-vertī** [vertō, *turn*], semi-dep., intr., *return, come back.*

re-vinciō, **-īre**, **-vīnxī**, **-vinctum**, tr., *bind, fasten, make fast.*

re-vocō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, tr., *call back, recall, summon to return.*

rēx, **rēgis** [regō], m., *king.*

Rhēnus, **-ī**, m., *the river Rhine.* I. 1 and often. G H I 1, 2, 3.

Rhodanus, **-ī**, m., *the river Rhone.* I. 2 and often. G H 3, 4, 5.

rīpa, **-ae**, f., *bank* (of a river).

rīvus, **-ī**, m., *small stream, brook.*

rōbur, **-oris**, n., *oak, oak timber.*

rogō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, tr., *ask, question; request, solicit, beg.*

Rōma, **-ae**, f., *Rome.* I. 31.

Rōmānus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *Roman.* Subst., **Rōmānus**, **-ī**, m., *a Roman;* pl., *the Romans.*

Rōscius, **-ī**, m. (rŏsh′-(i)us), *Lucius Roscius*, one of Caesar's lieutenants. V. 24, 53.

rōstrum, **-ī** [rōdō, *gnaw*], n., *beak; ship's beak.*

rota, **-ae**, f., *wheel.*

rubus, **-ī**, m., *bramble-bush.*

Rūfus, **-ī**, m. (roo′-fus), see **Sulpicius.**

rūmor, **-ōris**, m., *rumor, report.*

rūpēs, **-is** [cf. **rumpō**, *break*], f., *rock, cliff.*

rūrsus [for **reversus**, *turned back*], adv., *again, anew, once more; in turn; on the other hand.*

Rutēnī, **-ōrum**, m. (roo-tē′-nī), a tribe whose territory lay partly in the Transalpine province, partly in Celtic Gaul. I. 45. F 4, 5.

S

Sabīnus, **-ī**, m. (sa-bī′-nus), see **Titūrius.**

Sabis, **-is**, m. (sā′-bis), a river in Belgic Gaul, *the Sambre.* II. 16, 18. G 1.

saepe, adv., *often, frequently, many times;* **saepe numerō**, *oftentimes, again and again.*

saepēs, **-is**, f., *a hedge.*

saeviō, **-īre**, **-iī**, **-ītum** [**saevus**, *raging*], intr., *be violent, rage; blow hard.*

sagitta, **-ae**, f., *arrow.*

sagittārius, **-ī** [**sagitta**], m., *archer, bowman.*

sagulum, **-ī** [dim. of **sagum**, *cloak*], n., *military cloak.*

salūs, **-ūtis** [**salvus**, *well*], f., *health; safety, preservation.*

Samarobrīva, **-ae**, f. (săm″-a-ro-brī′-va), chief city of the Ambiani, in Belgic Gaul, now *Amiens.* V. 24, 47, 53. F 2.

sanciō, **-īre**, **sānxī**, **sānctum**, tr., *make sacred* or *inviolable; decree;* **inter sē sancīre**, *bind one another.*

sānctus, **-a**, **-um** [p.p. of **sanciō**], adj., *sacred, inviolable.*

sānitās, **-ātis** [**sānus**], f., *soundness; good sense, good judgment;* **ad sānitātem revertī**, *come to one's senses.*

Santonī, **-um**, m. (săn′-to-nī), cf. French Saintes and Saintonge: a tribe in Celtic Gaul. I. 10, 11; III. 11. E 4.

sānus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *sound, sane, sensible;* **prō sānō**, *like a sane person, rational.*

sapiō, **sapere**, **-īvī**, —, tr. and intr., *taste of; be wise, have discernment, understand.*

sarcina, **-ae**, f., *bundle.* Pl., *soldiers' packs, light baggage;* **sub sarcinīs**, *in heavy marching order.*

sarmentum, **-ī** [**sarpō**, *cut, prune*], n., *twig.* Pl., *fagots, brushwood.*

satis, adv., *sufficiently, enough, quite, very.* Indecl. adj., *enough, sufficient.* Subst., *enough, a sufficiency;* **satis causae**, *reason enough.*

satis-faciō, **-facere**, **-fēcī**, **-factum**, intr., *make reparation, make apology.*

satisfactiō, **-ōnis** [**satisfaciō**], f., *apology, excuse.*

saucius, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *wounded.* Subst., **saucius**, **-ī**, m., *a wounded man.*

saxum, **-ī**, n., *a large stone, a rock.*

scālae, **-ārum** [cf. **scandō**, *climb*], f., *ladder, scaling-ladder.*

scapha, **-ae**, f., *skiff.*

scelus, **-eris**, n., *wickedness, wrong-doing.*

scientia, **-ae** [**sciēns**, *knowing*], f., *knowledge, skill.*

scindō, **-ere**, **scidī**, **scissum**, tr., *tear, tear up, tear down.*

sciō, **-īre**, **-īvī**, **-ītum**, tr., *know.*

scrībō, **-ere**, **scrīpsī**, **scrīptum**, tr., *write.*

scūtum, **-ī**, n., *shield.*

sē-, **sēd-**, inseparable prep., used in composition, *apart, from.*

sē, see **suī**.

sēcrētō [abl. n. of **sēcrētus**, *separate, secret*], adv., *separately, in secret.*

sectiō, **-ōnis** [**secō**, *cut*], f., *(a dividing for sale), sale; booty.*

sectūra, **-ae** [**secō**, *cut*], f., *a cutting, excavation.*

secundum [**secundus**], prep. with acc., *next to, along; besides, in addition to; in accordance with.*

secundus, **-a**, **-um** [**sequor**], adj., *following; second; favoring, fair, favorable, successful, prosperous;* **rēs secundae**, *prosperity.*

sed, conj., *but, however, yet.*

sēdecim [**sex** + **decem**], indecl. num., *sixteen.*

sēdēs, **-is** [**sedeō**, *sit*], f., *seat; dwelling-place, abode.*

sēditiōsus, **-a**, **-um** [**sēditiō**, *mutiny*], adj., *mutinous, seditious.*

Sedūnī, **-ōrum**, m. (se-dū′-nī), a tribe in the Alps. III. 1, 2, 7. H I 3.

Sedusii, **-ōrum**, m. (se-dū′-

shi-ī), a tribe in Germany. I. 51. I 2.

Segontiācī, -ōrum, m. (se-gŏn′′-shi-ā′-sī), a tribe in Britain. V. 21. D E 1.

Segovax, -actis, m. (sĕg′-o-văks), a king of Cantium, in Britain. V. 22.

Segusiāvī, -ōrum, m. (se-gū′′-shi-ā′-vī), a tribe in Celtic Gaul. I. 10. F G 4.

semel, adv., *at one time, once.* See **iterum.**

sēmentis, -is [sēmen, *seed*], f., *a sowing, crop;* **sēmentēs facere,** *sow crops.*

sēmita, -ae, f., *lane, path.*

semper, adv., *always, continually, constantly.*

senātor, -ōris [**senex**], m., *senator.*

senātus, -ūs [**senex**], m., *senate.*

senex, gen. **senis,** *old, advanced in years.* Subst., *old man.*

sēnī, -ae, -a [**sex**], distrib. num. adj., *six each.*

Senonēs, -um, m. (sĕn′-o-nēz), cf. French Sens: a tribe in Celtic Gaul. II. 2; V. 54, 56. F G 2.

sententia, -ae [**sentiō**], f., *opinion, view; decision, determination.*

sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsum, tr. and intr., *perceive, see, notice, become aware; know; think, hold an opinion, be of the opinion, be of a mind.*

sentis, -is, m., *brier, bramble.*

sēparātim [**sēparātus**], adv., *separately, individually, severally.*

sēparātus, -a, -um [p.p. of **sēparō,** *divide*], adj., *separate, individual.*

septem, indecl. num., *seven.*

septentriō, -ōnis, m., usually pl. [**septem + triōnēs,** *the plough-oxen*], (*the seven stars of the Great Bear*), *the north.*

septimus, -a, -um [**septem**], num. adj., *seventh.*

septingentī, -ae, -a [**septem + centum**], num. adj., *seven hundred.*

septuāgintā [**septem**], indecl. num., *seventy.*

sepultūra, -ae [**sepeliō,** *bury*], f., *burial.*

Sēquana, -ae, f. (sĕk′-wa-na), *the river Seine.* I. 1. E F 2.

Sēquanus, -a, -um, adj., *of the Sequani, Sequanian.* Subst., **Sēquanus, -ī,** m., *a Sequanian,* I. 3. Pl. *the Sequani* (sĕk′-wa-nī), *Sequanians,* a tribe in Celtic Gaul. I. 1, 2, etc.; IV. 10. G H 3.

sequor, -ī, secūtus sum, dep., tr. and intr., *follow, accompany; follow up, pursue; ensue, succeed.*

Ser., abbr. for the praenomen Servius (sēr′-vi-us).

sermō, -ōnis [cf. **serō,** *entwine, weave*], m., *conversation, discourse.*

serō, -ere, sēvī, satum, tr., *sow, plant.*

sērō [abl. of **sērus,** *late*], adv., *late, too late.*

Sertōrius, **-ī**, n. (sĕr-tō′-ri-us), *Quintus Sertorius*, a Roman general. See note on III. 23.

servīlis, **-e** [**servus**], adj., *of* or *with slaves*, *servile.*

serviō, **-īre**, **-īvī**, **-ītum** [**servus**], intr., *be a slave to*, *be governed by.*

servitūs, **-ūtis** [**servus**], f., *slavery*, *subjection.*

servō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, tr., *keep safe*, *save; pay attention to*, *observe*, *watch; keep*, *maintain*, *keep in order.*

servus, **-ī**, m., *a slave.*

sēscentī, **-ae**, **-a** [**sex** + **centum**], num. adj., *six hundred.*

sēsē, see **suī**.

sēsqui-pedālis, **-e** [**sēsqui-**, *one-half*, + **pedālis**, *of a foot*], adj., *of a foot and a half*, *a foot and a half in measure.*

sētius, comp. adv., *less.* See **nihilō**.

seu, see **sīve**.

sē-vocō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, tr., *call aside*, *interview privately; withdraw; tempt away.*

sex, indecl. num., *six.*

sexāgintā [**sex**], indecl. num., *sixty.*

Sextius, **-ī**, m. (sĕks′-ti-us), *Publius Sextius Baculus*, a centurion in Caesar's army, distinguished for bravery. II. 25; III. 5.

sī, conj., *if; whether;* **sī modo**, *if only*, *provided.*

sibi, see **suī**.

Sibusātēs, **-um**, m. (sĭb-ū-sā′-tēz), a tribe in Aquitania. III. 27. D 5.

sīc, adv., *thus*, *in this way*, *so; as follows;* **sīc ut**, *so that*, *in such a way that*, *to such an extent that;* **ut . . . sīc**, *just as . . . so*, *although . . . yet.*

siccitās, **-ātis** [**siccus**, *dry*], f., *dryness*, *drought.*

sīc-ut or **sīc-utī**, adv., *just as*, *just as if.*

signifer, **-erī** [**sīgnum** + **ferō**], m., *standard-bearer.*

sīgnificātiō, **-ōnis** [**sīgnificō**], f., *sign*, *signal*, *indication.*

sīgnificō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [**sīgnum**, cf. **faciō**], tr., *show by signs; indicate*, *make known*, *give notice.*

sīgnum, **-ī**, n., *sign*, *signal;* (*military*) *standard.* **ad sīgna cōnsistere**, *take one's place in line;* **sīgna convertere**, *face about;* **ab sīgnīs discēdere**, *leave one's place in line*, *break ranks;* **sīgna ferre**, *advance to the attack*, *charge*, *advance;* **conversa sīgna īnferre**, *face about and charge.*

Sīlius, **-ī**, m. (sĭl′-i-us), *Titus Silius*, a tribune in Caesar's army. III. 7, 8.

silva, **-ae**, f., *forest*, *wood*, *woods.*

silvestris, **-e** [**silva**], adj., *wooded.*

similis, **-e**, adj., *like*, *similar.* **vērī simile**, *likely*, *probable.*

simul, adv., *at the same time; also*, *then too*, *in addition*, *likewise.* With or without **atque**,

as soon as; **simul . . . et,** *both . . . and;* **simul . . . simul,** *both . . . and.*

simulātiō, -ōnis [simulō], f., *pretence, show, deceit.*

simulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [similis], *imitate, feign, pretend.*

simultās, -ātis [simul], f., *dissension, jealousy, rivalry.*

sin [**sī** + **ne**], conj., *if however, but if.*

sine, prep. with abl., *without.*

singillātim [singulī], adv., *one by one, individually.*

singulāris, -e [singulī], adj., *one by one, single, individual; unusual, remarkable, extraordinary.*

singulī, -ae, -a, adj., *one at a time, single, separate, individual, the several.*

sinister, -tra, -trum, adj., *on the left, left.* Subst., **sinistra, -ae,** f., *left hand.*

situs, -ūs [sinō, *leave, fix*], m., *situation, position, site.*

si-ve or **seu,** conj., *or if;* **sīve . . . sīve,** *if . . . or if, whether . . . or, either . . . or.*

socer, -erī, m., *father-in-law.*

socius, -ī, m., *associate; ally, confederate.*

sōl, sōlis, m., *the sun.* See **occāsus, orior.**

soldūriī, -ōrum, m. (Celtic word), *retainers, vassals.*

sōlitūdō, -dinis [sōlus], f., *solitude; wilderness.*

sollicitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**sollicitus,** *aroused*], tr., *disturb; stir up, arouse, incite to revolt; incite, urge.*

sollicitūdō, -dinis [**sollicitus,** *aroused*], f., *apprehension, anxiety.*

solum, -ī, n., *lowest part, bottom; ground, soil.*

sōlum [sōlus], adv., *alone, only, merely.* See **etiam.**

sōlus, -a, -um, gen. **sōlīus,** adj., *alone, only.*

solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtum [**sē-** + **luō,** *loose*], tr., *loosen, release.* With or without **nāvēs,** *set sail.*

soror, -ōris, f., *sister;* **soror ex mātre,** *half-sister.*

sors, sortis, f., *a lot, casting of lots.*

Sotiātēs, -ium, m. (sō-shi-ā′-tēz), a tribe in Aquitania. III. 20–23. D E 4, 5.

spatium, -ī, n., *space, room; distance; interval; time, length (of time).*

speciēs, -ēī [-spiciō, *look*], f., *appearance, form; aspect; spectacle, sight;* **ad** or **in speciem,** *to make a show, for effect.*

spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [freq. of -spiciō, *look*], tr. and intr., *look, face, lie, be situated; regard, look to.*

speculātor, -ōris [speculor], m., *scout, spy.*

speculātōrius, -a, -um [speculātor], adj., *for scouting purposes.* See **nāvigium.**

speculor, -ārī, -ātus sum [cf. **specula,** *watch-tower*], dep., intr., *to spy, play the spy.*

spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**spēs**], tr., *hope*, *hope for*, *expect.*

spēs, speī, f., *hope*, *ground of hope*, *expectation;* in **māgnam spem venīre**, *begin to have high hopes.*

spīritus, -ūs [**spīrō**, *breathe*], m., *breathing*, *breath.* Pl., *pride*, *haughtiness*, *airs.*

spoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**spolium**, *booty*], tr., *strip*, *deprive*, *despoil.*

(**spōns, spontis**), f., only in abl. ; **suā sponte**, *of one's own accord*, *voluntarily;* *by one's self*, *without aid.*

stabilitās, -ātis [**stabilis**, *firm*], f., *steadiness*, *stability.*

statim [**stō**], adv., *at once*, *immediately.*

statiō, -ōnis [**stō**], f., *post*, *station;* *guard*, *outpost*, *picket;* *detachment;* in **statiōnem succēdere**, *go on guard*, *relieve guard.*

statuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum [**status**, *a station*], tr. and intr., *set up*, *place;* *decide*, *decide upon*, *pass sentence;* *judge*, *deem*, *conclude.*

statūra, -ae [**stō**], f., *height*, *size*, *stature.*

stīpendiārius, -a, -um [**stīpendium**], adj., *tributary*, *subject to tribute.*

stīpendium, -ī [**stips**, *contribution*, + **pendō**, *pay*], n., *tax*, *tribute.*

stō, stāre, stetī, stātūrus, intr., *stand*, *be upright.*

strāmentum, -ī [**sternō**, *spread out*], n., *a covering;* *thatching.*

strepitus, -ūs [**strepō**, *make a noise*], m., *din*, *clatter.*

studeō, -ēre, -uī, —, intr., *pay attention to*, *be bent upon*, *strive after;* *favor*, *desire.*

studium, -ī [**studeō**], n., *eagerness*, *eager desire*, *zeal*, *fondness*, *alacrity;* *energy;* *good-will*, *devotion.*

sub, prep. with acc. and abl. With acc., *under*, *up to;* *just before*, *towards.* With abl., *under*, *beneath;* *at the foot* or *base of;* *near*, *just outside;* *under*, *subject to;* *in*, *during.*

sub-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, tr., *withdraw;* *draw up;* **nāvēs subdūcere (in āridum)**, *to beach ships.*

subductiō, -ōnis [**subdūcō**], f., *drawing up*, *beaching.*

sub-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, tr. and intr., *go under*, *enter under;* *enter*, *venture into;* *come up*, *advance;* *undergo*, *endure*, *submit to.*

sub-fodiō, -ere, -fōdī, -fossum [**fodiō**, *dig*], tr., *stab underneath.*

subiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum [**sub** + **iaciō**], tr., *throw under*, *cast from below;* *expose.*

subitō [abl. n. of **subitus**], adv., *suddenly*, *unexpectedly.*

subitus, -a, -um [**subeō**], adj., *sudden*, *unexpected*, *quickly contrived.*

sub-levō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *lift up;* *hold up*, *support;* *help*, *assist.*

sublica, **-ae**, f., *a pile.*

sub-ministrō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [**ministrō**, serve], tr., *furnish*, *afford*, *supply.*

sub-mittō, **-ere**, **-mīsī**, **-missus**, tr., *send up*, *send to the aid* or *relief of*, *send as reinforcements.*

sub-moveō, **-ēre**, **-mōvī**, **-mōtum**, tr., *drive back*, *repulse*, *dislodge.*

sub-ruō, **-ere**, **-uī**, **-utum** [**ruō**, *tumble down*], tr., *tear up*, *undermine*, *demolish.*

sub-sequor, **-ī**, **-secūtus sum**, dep., tr. and intr., *follow after*, *follow*, *keep up with.*

subsidium, **-ī** [**subsīdō**, *sit down*, *remain behind*], n., *help*, *aid*, *relief*, *support.* Pl., *reserve troops*, *reserves*, *reinforcements;* **subsidium ferre**, *to aid*, *support*, *go to the assistance of.*

sub-sistō, **-ere**, **-stitī**, — [**sistō**, *set*, *stand*], intr., *stop*, *make a stand.*

sub-sum, **-esse**, —, intr., *be at hand*, *be near*, *be near by.*

sub-trahō, **-ere**, **-trāxī**, **-tractum**, tr., *take away*, *withdraw.*

sub-vehō, **-ere**, **-vexī**, **-vectum** [**vehō**, *convey*], tr., *bring up; transport.*

sub-veniō, **-īre**, **-vēnī**, **-ventum**, intr., *come* or *go to the support of*, *succor.*

succēdō, **-ere**, **-cessī**, **-cessum** [**sub** + **cēdō**], intr., *come up*, *advance*, *approach; be near*, *adjoin; take some one's place*, *relieve.* See **statiō**.

succendō, **-ere**, **-cendī**, **-cēnsum** [**sub** + **candeō**, *be bright*], tr., *set on fire.*

succīdō, **-ere**, **-cīdī**, **-cīsum** [**sub** + **caedō**], tr., *cut down*, *fell.*

succurrō, **-ere**, **-currī**, **-cursum** [**sub** + **currō**, *run*], intr., *run up*, *run to the support of.*

sudis, **-is**, f., *stake*, *pile.*

Suēba, **-ae**, f., *a Suebian woman.* I. 53.

Suēbī, **-ōrum**, m. (swē′-bī), a powerful German people comprising a number of tribes. I. 37, 51, 54; IV. 1–7, 8, 16, 19. I J 2.

Suessiōnēs, **-um**, m. (swĕs-i-ō′-nēz), cf. French Soissons: a tribe in Belgic Gaul. II. 3, 4, 12, 13. F 2.

Sugambrī, **-ōrum**, m. (sū-găm′-brī), a tribe in Germany. IV. 16, 18, 19. H 1.

suī (gen.), dat. **sibi**, acc. and abl. **sē** or **sēsē**, 3d person reflexive pron., sing. and pl., *himself*, *herself*, *itself*, *themselves.*

Sulla, **-ae**, m. (sŭl′-a), *Lucius Cornelius Sulla*, consul in 88, dictator 81–79. I. 21.

Sulpicius, **-ī**, m. (sŭl-pĭsh′-(i)us), *Publius Sulpicius Rufus*, one of Caesar's lieutenants. IV. 22.

sum, **esse**, **fuī**, **futūrus**, intr., *be; lie*, *be situated.*

summa, **-ae** [**summus**], f., *chief place*, *leadership*, *control*, *conduct; sum total*, *the whole;* **summa imperī**, *supreme command* or *authority.*

summus, see **superus**.

sūmō, **-ere**, **sūmpsī**, **sūmp-**

tum [**sub** + **emō**], tr., *take; assume, arrogate, put on; spend, consume;* **dē . . . supplicium sūmere**, *inflict punishment on.*

sūmptus, -ūs [**sūmō**], m., *cost, expense.*

super, adv., and prep. with acc. and abl., *above, over; in addition.*

superbē [**superbus**, *proud*], adv., *haughtily, arrogantly.*

superior, see **superus**.

superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**superus**], tr. and intr., *tower* or *rise above; be superior, be victorious, prevail; exceed, excel, put at a disadvantage; overcome, conquer, defeat, vanquish.*

super-sedeō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum [**sedēo**, *sit*], intr., *refrain from, avoid.*

super-sum, -esse, -fuī, intr., *be left, remain; survive.*

superus, -a, -um [**super**], adj., *upper.* Comp., **superior, -ius**, *higher, upper; former, past, previous, preceding; superior, stronger; victorious.* Superl., **summus, -a, -um**, or **suprēmus, -a, -um**, *highest, topmost; the top* or *summit of; greatest, supreme, utmost, utter; most important, of the greatest moment; chief, most honorable.* Subst., **summum, -ī**, n., *the top.*

suppetō, -ere, -petīvī, -petītum [**sub** + **petō**], intr., *be in store, be on hand.*

supplex, -icis [cf. **supplicō**, *kneel, entreat*], adj., (*kneeling*); *entreating, suppliant.* Subst., m., *a suppliant.*

suppliciter [**supplex**], adv., *as a suppliant, submissively.*

supplicātiō [**supplicō**, *kneel, entreat*], f., (*a festival of*) *thanksgiving.*

supplicium, -ī [**supplex**], n., *punishment.* See **sūmō**.

supportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**sub** + **portō**], tr., *bring up, convey.*

suprā [**superus**], adv., *before, previously.* Prep. with acc., *above; before.*

suscipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum [**sub** + **capiō**], tr., *take up, undertake, begin.*

suspectus, -a, -um [p.p. of **suspiciō**, *suspect*], adj., *mistrusted, suspected.*

suspiciō, -ōnis [cf. **suspiciō**, *suspect*], f., *suspicion.*

suspicor, -ārī, -ātus sum [cf. **suspiciō**, *suspect*], dep., tr., *suspect, conjecture, surmise.*

sustentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [freq. of **sustineō**], tr. and intr., *hold up; hold out; endure, withstand, meet.*

sustineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum [**sub** + **teneō**], tr. and intr., *hold up, carry, support, sustain; hold back, check; endure, submit to; meet, withstand; hold out, hold one's ground.*

suus, -a, -um [cf. **suī**], possess. reflexive adj., 3d person, *his, her, its, their; his* (etc.) *own; his well-known, his usual.* Subst., **suī, -ōrum**, m., *his* (*their*) *own men, troops,* or *people.* **suum, -ī**, n., *his* (*their*)

own property; **sua, -ōrum,** n., *his (their) property* or *possessions;* **sē suaque,** *themselves and their property.*

T

T., abbr. for the praenomen Titus (tī′-tus).

tabernāculum, -ī [**taberna,** *hut*], n., *tent.*

tabula, -ae, f., *a board; writing-tablet; list.*

taceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, tr. and intr., *be silent, keep silent about.*

tacitus, -a, -um [p.p. of **taceō**], adj., *silent.*

tālea, -ae, f., *rod, bar.*

tālis, -e, adj., *such.*

tam, adv., *so, so very.*

tamen, adv., *nevertheless, however, yet.*

Tamesis, -is, m., *the river Thames.* V. 11, 18. D E 1.

tametsī [for **tamen-etsī**], conj., *although, though, despite the fact that.*

tandem [**tam**], adv., *at length, at last, finally.* In questions, *pray, one would like to know.*

tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctum, tr., *touch; reach, border on.*

tantopere [**tantō** + **opere**], adv., *so greatly, so earnestly, so much, very greatly,* etc.

tantulus, -a, -um [dim. of **tantus**], adj., *so small, so slight; unimportant, trivial.*

tantum [acc. n. of **tantus**], adv., *so much, so greatly; only so much, merely.*

tantum-modo, adv., *only, merely.*

tantus, -a, -um, adj., *so great, such a great, such great, such, so much; very great.* Correl., **tantus . . . quantus,** *as great . . . as.* Subst., **tantum, -ī,** n., *so much, as much;* **tantī esse,** *to be worth so much;* correl., **quantō** (with comp.) . . . **tantō** (with comp.), *the . . . the.*

Tarbellī, -ōrum, m. (tär-bĕl′-ī), cf. French Tarbes: a tribe in Aquitania. III. 27. D 5.

tardē [**tardus**], adv., *tardily, late.*

tardō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**tardus**], tr., *hinder, impede, delay, check.*

tardus, -a, -um, adj., *slow; without spirit, wavering.*

Tarusātēs, -ium, m. (tăr-ū-sā′-tēz), cf. French Tartas: a tribe in Aquitania. III. 23, 27. D 4, 5.

Tasgetius, -ī, m. (tăs-gē′-sh(i)-us), a prince of the Carnutes. V. 25, 29.

Taximagulus, -ī, m. (tăk-si-măg′-ū-lus), a king of Cantium, in Britain. V. 22.

tēctum, -ī [p.p. of **tegō**], n., *roof; house.*

tegimentum, -ī [**tegō**], n., *a cover, covering.*

tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctum, tr., *cover; roof over; hide, conceal.*

tēlum, -ī, n., *missile, weapon, spear, javelin.*

temerārius, -a, -um [te-

merē], adj., *rash*, *heedless*, *reckless*.

temerē, adv., *rashly*, *heedlessly*, *recklessly*, *without good reason*.

temeritās, **-ātis** [temerē], f., *rashness*, *recklessness*, *indiscretion*.

tēmō, **-ōnis**, m., *a pole*, *tongue* (of a wagon or chariot).

temperantia, **-ae** [temperāns, *moderate*], f., *moderation*, *self-control*, *discretion*.

temperātus, **-a**, **-um** [p.p. of temperō], adj., *moderate*, *temperate*.

temperō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [tempus], intr., *refrain*, *restrain*.

tempestās, **-ātis** [tempus], f., *season*; *weather*, *storm*.

temptō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [freq. of tendō], tr., *try*, *attempt*; *attack*, *assail*; *try to entice*, *allure*.

tempus, **-oris**, n., *time*, *season*, *period*; *circumstances*, *occasion*; *crisis*, *emergency*; **ad tempus**, *on time*, *promptly*; **in reliquum tempus**, *for the future*.

Tencterī, **-ōrum**, m. (tĕngk′-te-rī), a tribe in Germany. IV. 1 ff., 18; V. 55. H 1.

tendō, **-ere**, **tetendī**, **tentum**, tr., *stretch*, *stretch out*.

teneō, **-ēre**, **-uī**, **—**, tr. and intr., *hold*, *have*, *occupy*, *control*; *keep*, *maintain*; *hold back*, *restrain*; *bind*, *obligate*; *extend*; **sē tenēre**, *remain*.

tener, **-era**, **-erum**, adj., *soft*, *tender*; *young*.

tenuis, **-e**, adj., *slender*, *thin*; *weak*, *poor*.

tenuiter [tenuis], adv., *thinly*, *thin*.

ter [trēs], adv., *three times*.

tergum, **-ī**, n., *the back*; *rear*; **post tergum**, *in the rear*; **tergum vertere**, *turn and flee*, *turn in flight*.

ternī, **-ae**, **-a** [ter], distrib. num. adj., *three each*, *three at a time*.

terra, **-ae**, f., *the earth*; *land*, *country*; *the ground*.

Terrasidius, **-ī**, m. (tĕr-a-sĭd′-i-us), *Titus Terrasidius*, an officer in Caesar's army. III. 7, 8.

terrēnus, **-a**, **-um** [terra], adj., *of earth*, *earthen*.

terreō, **-ēre**, **-uī**, **-itum**, tr., *frighten*, *terrify*, *alarm*.

territō, **-āre**, **—**, **—** [freq. of terreō], tr., *frighten*, *terrify*, *fill with terror*.

terror, **-ōris** [terreō], m., *alarm*, *terror*, *panic*.

tertius, **-a**, **-um** [ter], num. adj., *third*.

testāmentum, **-ī** [testor, *call to witness*], n., *a will*.

testimōnium, **-ī** [testis], n., *testimony*, *evidence*, *proof*.

testis, **-is**, m. and f., *a witness*.

testūdō, **-dinis** [testa, *a tile*], f., *a tortoise*; *testudo*, (1) an engine of war, a shed for defence; (2) a formation in which the shields overlapped.

Teutonī, **-um**, m. (tū′-to-nī), *the Teutons*, a people of northern Germany. See note on I. 33. I. 33, 40; II. 4, 29.

tignum, **-ī**, n., *a beam*, *timber*.

Tigurīnus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *of the Tigurini*. Subst., **Tigurīnī**, **-orum**, m. (tĭg-ū-rī′-nī), *the Tigurini*, one of the four divisions of the Helvetii. I. 12. H 3.

timeō, **-ēre**, **-uī**, —, tr. and intr., *fear*, *fear for*, *be afraid*; **nihil timēre**, *have no fears*.

timidē [timidus], adv., *fearfully*, *timidly*.

timidus, **-a**, **-um** [timeō], adj., *afraid*, *faint-hearted*.

timor, **-ōris** [timeō], m., *fear*, *dread*, *panic*.

Titūrius, **-ī**, m. (tī-tū′-ri-us), *Quintus Titurius Sabinus*, one of Caesar's lieutenants, defeated and slain along with Cotta by the Eburones. II. 5, 9, 10; III. 11, 17–19; IV. 22, 38; V. 24 ff.

tolerō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [cf. tollō], tr., *bear*, *endure*, *sustain*.

tollō, **-ere**, **sustulī**, **sublātum**, tr., *lift*, *raise*; *take aboard*; *take away*, *remove*, *relieve of*; *prevent*, *frustrate*; *destroy*, *wipe out*; *lift up*, *elate*.

Tolōsa, **-ae**, f. (to-lō′-sa), a city in the Transalpine province, now *Toulouse*. III. 20. E 5.

Tolōsātēs, **-ium**, m. (tŏl-o-sā′-tēz), *the people of Tolosa*. I. 10.

tormentum, **-ī** [torqueō, *twist*], n., a machine for hurling large missiles. Pl., *artillery*.

torreō, **-ēre**, **-uī**, **tostum**, tr., *scorch*, *burn*.

tot, indecl. adj., *so many*.

totidem [tot], indecl. adj., *just as many*, *the same number of*. Subst., *the same number*.

tōtus, **-a**, **-um**, gen. **tōtīus**, adj., *all*, *all the*, *the whole*, *the whole of*, *entire*; translated adverbially, *wholly*, *entirely*, *along the whole*, *throughout*.

trabs, **trabis**, f., *beam*, *timber*.

trādō, **-ere**, **-didī**, **-ditum** [trāns + dō], tr., *give up*, *deliver up* or *over*, *surrender*; *intrust*, *intrust the command of*; *hand down*, *transmit*; *teach*, *impart*.

trādūcō, **-ere**, **-dūxī**, **-ductum** [trāns + dūcō], tr., *lead across*, *through*, or *along*, *bring across* or *over*, *transport*.

trāgula, **-ae**, f., a light *javelin* or *lance* used by Caesar's Gallic cavalry.

trahō, **-ere**, **trāxī**, **tractum**, tr., *draw*, *drag*, *drag along*.

trāiciō, **-icere**, **-iēcī**, **-iectum** [trāns + iaciō], tr., *throw across* or *through*; *pierce*, *transfix*.

trāiectus, **-ūs** [trāiciō], m., *a crossing over*, *passage*.

trānō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, —, [trāns + nō, *swim*], intr., *swim across*.

tranquillitās, **-ātis** [tranquillus, *quiet*], f., *quietness*; *calm* (at sea).

trāns, prep. with acc., *across*, *over*; *on the other side of*, *beyond*.

trānscendō, -ere, -scendī, — [**trāns** + **scandō**, *climb*], tr. and intr., *climb over; board* (a ship).

trāns-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, tr. and intr., *go across, go over, cross over, cross; pass through, pass over; desert; pass, elapse.*

trāns figō, -ere, -fīxi, -fīxum [**fīgō**, *fix*], tr., *pierce through, transfix.*

trānsgredior, -gredī, -gressus sum [**trāns**+**gradior**, *step*], dep., tr. and intr., *step across; cross.*

trānsitus, -ūs [**trānseō**], m., *a crossing, passage.*

trānsmissus, -ūs [**trānsmittō**, *send across*], m., *a crossing, passage.*

trāns-portō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., *carry across, bring over, transport.*

Trāns-rhēnānus, -a, -um [**trāns** + **Rhēnus**], adj., *across* or *beyond the Rhine.* V. 2. Subst., **Trānsrhēnānī, -ōrum**, m., *people beyond the Rhine.* IV. 16.

trānstrum, -ī [**trāns**], n., *cross-timber.*

trāns-versus, -a, -um [**versus**, *turned*], adj., *transverse, at right angles.*

Trebius, -ī, m. (trē′-bi-us), *Marcus Trebius Gallus*, an officer in Caesar's army. III. 7, 8.

Trebōnius, -ī, m. (tre-bō′-ni-us), *Gaius Trebonius*, one of Caesar's lieutenants. V. 17, 24.

trecentī, -ae, -a [**trēs** + **centum**], num. adj., *three hundred.*

trepidō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [**trepidus**, *alarmed*], intr., *be alarmed, be in confusion.*

trēs, tria, gen. **trium**, num. adj., *three.*

Trēvir, -ī, m., *one of the Treveri.* Subst., **Trēverī, -ōrum**, m. (trĕv′-e-rī), cf. modern Trier: a tribe in Celtic Gaul. I. 37; II. 24; III. 11; IV. 6, 10; V. 2–4, 24, 47, 53–58. H 2.

Tribocī, -ōrum, m. (trĭb′-o-sī), a German tribe established in Celtic Gaul. I. 51; IV. 10. H 2.

tribūnus, -ī [**tribus**, *tribe*], m., *a tribune.*

tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum [**tribus**, *tribe*], tr. and intr., *assign, bestow; attribute, credit to.*

trīduum, -ī [**trēs** + **diēs**], n., *a period of three days, three days.*

triennium, -ī [**trēs** + **annus**], n., *a period of three years, three years.*

trīgintā, indecl. num., *thirty.*

trīnī, -ae, -a [**trēs**], distrib. num. adj., *three each; threefold, triple, three.*

Trinovantēs, -um, m. (trĭn-o-văn′-tēz), a tribe in Britain. V. 20, 21, 22. E 1.

tripertītō [abl. n. of **tripertītus**, from **ter** + **partiō**, *divide*], adv., *in three parts* or *divisions.*

triplex, -icis [**trēs**, cf. **plicō**, *fold*], adj., *threefold, triple.*

triquetrus, -a, -um, adj., *triangular.*

trīstis, -e, adj., *sad*, *dejected*.

trīstitia, **-ae** [**trīstis**], f., *sadness*, *dejection*.

Troucillus, **-ī**, m. (troo-sĭl′-us), see **Valerius**.

truncus, **-ī**, m., *tree-trunk*, *log*.

tū, gen. **tuī**, pl. **vōs**, gen. **vestrum** or **vestrī**, pers. pron., *you*.

tuba, **-ae**, f., *trumpet*.

tueor, **-ērī**, **tūtus sum**, dep., tr., *look at*, *watch; protect*, *defend*.

Tulingī, **-ōrum**, m. (too-lĭn′-jī), a tribe in Germany. I. 5, 25, 28, 29. H I 3.

Tullius, **-ī**, m. (tŭl′-i-us), see **Cicero**.

tum, adv., *then*, *at that time*, *on that occasion; thereupon*, *next; then too*, *besides*. See **cum**.

tumultus, **-ūs** [cf. **tumeō**, *swell; be excited*], m., *uproar*, *commotion*, *disorder; insurrection*, *rebellion*.

tumulus, **-ī** [cf. **tumeō**, *swell*], m., *mound*, *hillock*.

turma, **-ae**, f., *a squadron of cavalry*.

Turonī, **-ōrum**, m. (tū′-ro-nī), cf. French Tours and Touraine: a tribe in Celtic Gaul. II. 35. E 3.

turpis, -e, adj., *ugly; disgraceful*, *shameful*.

turpitūdō, **-dinis** [**turpis**], f., *unsightliness; disgrace*.

turris, **-is**, f., *a tower*.

tūtō [abl. n. of **tūtus**], adv., *safely*, *securely*.

tūtus, **-a**, **-um** [p.p. of **tueor**], *safe*, *secure*.

tuus, **-a**, **-um** [**tū**], possess. adj., *your*, *yours*.

U

ubi, adv., *where; when*, *whenever;* **ubi prīmum**, *as soon as*.

Ubiī, **-ōrum**, m. (ū′-bi-ī), a tribe in Germany. I. 54; IV. 3, 8, 11, 16, 19. H I 1.

ubīque [**ubī** + **que**], adv., *anywhere*, *everywhere*.

ulcīscor, **-ī**, **ultus sum**, dep., tr., *take vengeance on*, *punish*, *requite*.

ūllus, **-a**, **-um**, gen. **-īus**, adj., *any*. Subst., **ūllus**, m., *any one*.

ulterior, **-ius** [**ultrā**], comp. adj., *farther*, *more distant*, *more remote*. Superl., **ultimus**, **-a**, **-um**, *farthest*, *most distant*, *most remote*. Subst., **ultimī**, **-ōrum**, m., *those farthest away*, *those in the rear*.

ultrā, prep. with acc., *beyond*, *past*.

ultrō [cf. **ultrā**], adv., *to the farther side; in addition*, *even*, *actually; of one's own accord*, *voluntarily; spontaneously*, *without provocation*. See **citrō**.

ululātus, **-ūs** [**ululō**, *howl*], m., *a howl*, *whoop*, *yell*.

umquam, adv., *at any time*, *ever*.

ūnā [**ūnus**], adv., *at the same time*, *together*, *along;* **ūnā cum**, *along with*.

unde, adv., *from which place*,

from which, whence; where? whence?

undecimus, -a, -um [unde-cim, *eleven*], num. adj., *eleventh.*

ūndēvīgintī [ūnus + dē + vīgintī], indecl. num., *nineteen.*

undique [unde + que], adv., *from* or *on all sides.*

ūniversus, -a, -um [ūnus + versus], adj., *all, all the, the entire, all together.* Subst., **ūniversī, -ōrum**, m., *all, everybody, the whole body.*

ūnus, -a, -um, gen. **ūnīus**, num. adj., *one; one only, the only, the sole, a single, alone; one and the same, the same, identical; a certain.* Subst., **ūnus**, m., *one, one man;* **ad ūnum omnēs**, *all to a man, all without exception;* **ūnum**, n., *one thing; the same thing.*

urbs, urbis, f., *city; the city = Rome.*

urgeō, -ēre, ursī, —, tr., *press, press hard.*

Usipetēs, -um, m. (ū-sĭp′-e-tēz), a tribe in Germany. IV. 1, 4–16, 18. G H 1.

usque, adv., *all the way;* **usque ad**, *right up to, as far as; up to, until.*

ūsus, -ūs [ūtor], m., *use, enjoyment; control, management; practical knowledge, experience, training, practice; need, necessity;* **ūsuī esse**, *be of service* or *use;* **ex ūsū**, *to the advantage of; advisable, advantageous.*

ut or **utī**, adv. and conj., *as, just as; as if, as it were; inasmuch as, since; how, when.* In clauses of plan or purpose, *that, in order that, in order to, so as to, to.* In clauses of result, *that, so that.* In concessive clauses, *although, even if.* In subst. clauses, *that, to;* after verbs of fearing, *that not.* With relatives, e.g., **ut quī**, *as being one who, since he.* Correlative, see **ita, sīc.**

uter, -tra, -trum, gen. **utrīus**, pronom. adj., *which of two? which one? which? whichever.*

uter-que, -traque, -trumque, gen. **-trīusque**, pronom. adj., *each, either, both.* Pl., **utrīque**, m., *both sides, both parties.*

ūtilis, -e [ūtor], adj., *useful, serviceable.*

ūtilitās, -ātis [ūtilis], f., *advantage; practical purpose.*

ūtor, -ī, ūsus sum, dep., intr., *use, make use of, employ; enjoy, have, take advantage of, avail one's self of; accept; adopt; find in; show, display.*

utrimque [uterque], adv., *on both sides.*

utrum [n. of **uter**], conj., introducing a double question, direct or indirect, *whether.* See **an, necne.**

uxor, -ōris, f., *wife.*

V

Vacalus, -ī, m. (văk′-a-lus), *the Waal*, an arm of the Rhine. IV. 10. G 1.

vacō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr., *be empty, be unoccupied, lie waste.*

vacuus, -a, -um [vacō], adj., *empty, unoccupied, stripped of.*

vadum, -ī, n., *a shallow place, shoal, ford.*

vāgina, -ae, f., *scabbard, sheath.*

vagor, -ārī, -ātus sum [vagus, *wandering*], dep., intr., *wander about, range, rove.*

valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, intr., *be strong, have strength; be influential, have influence.*

Valerius, -ī, m. (va-lē′-ri-us), (1) *Gaius Valerius Caburus*, a Gaul, presented with Roman citizenship by no. 2. I. 47. (2) *Gaius Valerius Flaccus*, governor of the Transalpine province in 83. I. 47. (3) *Lucius Valerius Praeconinus*, a Roman general defeated by the Aquitani. III. 20. (4) *Gaius Valerius Procillus*, son of no. 1 and one of Caesar's envoys to Ariovistus. I. 47, 53. (5) *Gaius Valerius Troucillus*, a Gaul of the Transalpine province, interpreter between Caesar and Diviciacus. I. 19.

valētūdō, -dinis [valeō], f., *health* (good or bad).

vallēs, -is, f., *valley.*

vāllum, -ī [vāllus, *stake*], n., *intrenchment, rampart.*

Vangionēs, -um, m. (văn-jī′-o-nēz), a German tribe. I. 51. I 2.

varius, -a, -um, adj., *varying, various.*

vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [vāstus], tr., *lay waste, devastate, ravage.*

vāstus, -a, -um, adj., *waste, desert; vast, boundless.*

vāticinātiō, -ōnis [vāticinor, *prophesy*], f., *prophecy.*

vectīgal, -ālis [cf. vehō, *carry*], n., *tax, import, tribute.*

vectīgālis, -e [vectīgal], adj., *paying tribute, tributary.*

vectōrius, -a, -um [vector, *bearer*], adj., *for carrying, transport-.* See **nāvigium.**

vehementer [vehemēns, *violent*], adv., *violently, fiercely, severely; greatly, strongly, exceedingly.*

vel [volō], conj., *or, or else;* vel . . . vel, *either . . . or.*

Velānius, -ī, m. (ve-lā′-ni-us). *Quintus Velanius*, an officer in Caesar's army. III. 7, 8.

Veliocassēs, -um, m. (vē″-li-o-kăs′-ēz), a tribe in Belgic Gaul. II. 4. E 2.

vēlōciter [vēlōx], adv., *swiftly, quickly.*

vēlōx, gen. **-ōcis**, adj., *swift, fleet.*

vēlum, -ī, n., *a sail.*

vel-ut, adv., *just as.*

vēnātiō, ōnis [vēnor, *hunt*], f., *hunting, hunting expedition.*

vēndō, -ere, -didī, -ditum [vēnum, *sale*, + dō], tr., *sell.*

Venellī, -ōrum, m. (ve-nĕl′-ī), a tribe in Celtic Gaul. II. 3, 4; III. 11, 17–19. D 2.

Venetī, -ōrum, m. (vĕn′-e-tī), a tribe in Celtic Gaul. II. 34; III. 7, 17, 18. C 3.

Venetia, -ae, f. (ve-nē′-

sh(i)-a), *the country of the Veneti*. III. 9.

Veneticus, -a, -um, adj., *of* or *with the Veneti*. III. 18; IV. 21.

veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum, intr., *come, go, arrive;* **ventum est**, impers., *they came, they arrived.*

ventitō, -āre, -āvī, — [freq. of **veniō**], intr., *come often, keep coming.*

ventus, -ī, m., *wind;* **sē ventō dare**, *run before the wind.*

Veragrī, -ōrum, m. (vĕr′-a-grī), a Gallic tribe in the Alps. III. 1–6. H 3, 4.

Verbigenus, -ī, m. (vĕr-bĭj′-e-nus); **pāgus Verbigenus**, one of the four divisions of the Helvetii. I. 27. H I 3.

verbum, -ī, n., *a word;* **contumēlia verbōrum**, *taunting words, taunts;* **verba facere**, *speak, act as spokesman;* **cum plūribus verbīs**, *at some length.*

vereor, -ērī, veritus sum, dep., tr. and intr., *respect, reverence; fear, be fearful, be anxious.*

vergō, -ere, —, —, intr., *be inclined; slope; lie, be situated.*

vergobretus, -ī [Celtic word, *judgment-dealer*], m., *vergobret*, the chief magistrate of the Haedui. I. 16.

vērō [abl. n. of **vērus**], adv., *in truth, indeed; however, but, while, on the other hand;* **tum vērō**, *then indeed, then at last.*

versō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [freq. of **vertō**], tr., *shift about; deal with, play with.* Passive as dep., *move about; be busy, employed,* or *engaged; engage, take part, be involved; dwell, remain.*

versus [p.p. of **vertō**], adv., *towards;* **quōque versus**, *in every direction.*

Verticō, -ōnis, m. (vĕr′-ti-kō), a Nervian noble. V. 45, 49.

vertō, -ere, -tī, versum, tr., *turn.* See **tergum**.

Verucloetius, -ī, m. (vĕr-ū-klē′-sh(i)-us), a Helvetian envoy to Caesar. I. 7.

vērus, -a, -um, adj., *true, correct; fair, just.* For n. subst., see **similis**.

verūtum, -ī [**verū**, *a spit*], n., *dart, javelin.*

Vesontiō, -ōnis, m. (ve-sŏn′-shi-ō), capital of the Sequani, now *Besançon*. I. 38, 39. G 3.

vesper, -erī or **-eris**, m., *the evening star; evening.*

vestīgium, -ī [cf. **vestīgō**, *to track*], n., *footprint, track; spot, place;* **in vestīgiō**, *forthwith, immediately.*

vestiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum [**vestis**, *clothing*], tr., *cover, clothe, dress.*

vestītus, -ūs [**vestiō**], m., *clothing.*

veterānus, -a, -um [**vetus**], adj., *old, veteran.*

vetō, -āre, vetuī, vetitum, tr., *forbid.*

vetus, gen. **-eris**, adj., *old, of*

long standing, ancient; former, previous.

vexillum, -ī [cf. **vēlum**], n., *a flag.*

vexō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [freq. of vehō, *carry*], tr., *harry, molest, persecute; overrun, lay waste, plunder.*

via, -ae, f., *way, road; journey, march.*

viātor, -ōris [**via**], m., *traveller.*

vīciēs [**vīgintī**], num. adv., *twenty times.*

(**vicis**), **-is**, f., *change, succession;* **in vicem**, *in turn.*

victor, -ōris [vincō], m., *victor, conqueror.* As adj., *victorious.*

victōria, -ae [victor], f., *victory.*

victus, -ūs [vīvō], m., *mode of living, life; food, provisions.*

vīcus, -ī, m., *village, hamlet.*

videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsum, tr., *see, catch sight of; perceive, observe.* Pass., *be seen; seem, appear, be thought, be considered; seem best* or *necessary.*

vigilia, -ae [vigil, *awake*], f., *a watching, watch; a watch,* a division of the night.

vīgintī, indecl. num., *twenty.*

vīmen, -inis, n., *twig, withe, osier.*

vincio, -īre, vīnxī, vīnctum, tr., *bind, fetter.*

vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum, tr. and intr., *conquer, defeat, vanquish, be victorious; have one's way.*

vinculum, -ī [vinciō], n., *bond.* Pl , *chains, fetters.*

vindicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**vindex**, *defender*], tr. and intr., *act as avenger; claim, demand; assert;* **in aliquem vindicāre,** *punish some one.*

vīnea, -ae [**vīnum**], f., *vine-arbor.* Pl., *sheds for defence, mantlets.*

vīnum, -ī, n., *wine.*

vir, virī, m., *a man.*

virgō, -ginis, f., *maid, maiden.*

virgulta, -ōrum [cf. **virgula,** *twig*], n., *brushwood.*

Viridovix, -icis, m. (vi-rĭd′-o-vĭks), commander of the Venelli and their allies against Sabinus. III. 17–19.

Viromanduī, -orum, m. (vĭr-o-măn′-dū-ī), cf. French Vermandois: a tribe in Belgic Gaul. II. 4, 16, 23. F 2.

virtūs, -ūtis [**vir**], f., *manliness, high character, virtue, merit, good quality; bravery, valor, courage; vigor, energy.*

vīs, —, acc., **vim,** abl., **vī,** pl., **vīrēs, -ium,** f., *strength, power, force, violence, fury.* Pl., *physical strength, strength;* **vim facere,** *use violence, offer resistance.*

vīta, -ae [vīvō], f., *life, lifetime.*

vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *avoid, shun, seek to escape.*

vitrum, -ī, n., *woad, dyer's-weed,* a plant from which blue dye is obtained.

vīvō, **-ere**, **vīxī**, **vīctum**, intr., *live*, *subsist*.

vix, adv., *with difficulty*, *hardly*, *barely*, *scarcely*.

Vocātēs, **-ium**, m. (vo-kā′-tēz), a tribe in Aquitania. III. 23, 27. E 4.

Vocciō, **-ōnis**, m. (vŏk′-shi-ō), a king of the Norici. I. 53.

vocō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [**vōx**], tr., *call*, *summon*; *invite*, *urge*, *challenge*; *name*, *designate*.

Vocontiī, **-ōrum**, m. (vo-kŏn′-shi-ī), a tribe in the Transalpine province. I. 10. G 4.

volō, **velle**, **voluī**, tr. and intr., *will*, *be willing*, *wish*, *want*, *desire*; *decide*, *decree*, *require*.

voluntārius, **-a**, **-um** [**voluntās**], adj., *willing*, *voluntary*. Subst., **voluntāriī**, **-ōrum**, m., *volunteers*.

voluntās, **-ātis** [**volō**], f., *will*, *desire*, *wish*; *consent*, *approval*; *attitude*, *principle*, *purpose*; *good-will*, *favor*.

voluptās, **-ātis** [**volō**], f., *satisfaction*, *pleasure*.

Volusēnus, **-ī**, m. (vŏl-ū-se′-nus), *Gaius Volusenus*, a tribune in Caesar's army. III. 5; IV. 21, 23.

Vorēnus, **-ī**, m. (vo-rē′-nus), *Lucius Vorenus*, a brave centurion in Caesar's army. V. 44.

Vosegus, **-ī**, m. (vŏs′-e-gus), **mōns Vosegus**, *the Vosges Mountains*, in Celtic Gaul. IV. 10. H 2, 3.

vōx, **vōcis**, f., *voice*, *tone*. Pl., *words*, *utterances*; *voices*, *cries*, *shouts*.

vulgō [abl. of **vulgus**], adv., *everywhere*, *commonly*, *generally*.

vulgus, **-ī**, n., *the multitude*, *populace*, *people*; *common soldiers*, *rank and file*,

vulnerō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [**vulnus**], tr., *wound*, *injure*.

vulnus, **-eris**, n., *wound*, *injury*.

vultus, **-ūs**, m., *expression of countenance*, *mien*, *aspect*, *face*. See **fingō**.